

# A NEW CHINA

---

An Intermediate Reader  
of Modern Chinese

CHIH-P'ING CHOU 周质平

JOANNE CHIANG 杨 玖

JIANNA EAGAR 张家惠

---

新的中国

现代汉语中级读本

REVISED EDITION

# A New China

An Intermediate Reader of Modern Chinese

新的中国

现代汉语中级读本

Revised Edition

---

## Princeton Language Program: Modern Chinese

Princeton University Press is proud to publish the Princeton Language Program in Modern Chinese. Based on courses taught through Princeton University Department of East Asian Studies and the Princeton in Beijing Program, this comprehensive series is designed for university students who wish to learn or improve upon their knowledge of Mandarin Chinese.

Students begin with either *Chinese Primer* or *Oh, China!* depending on their previous exposure to the language. After the first year, any combination of texts at a given level can be used. While all of the intermediate and advanced texts focus on modern life in China, and especially on the media, texts marked with an asterisk (\*) in the chart below compare China to the United States and are particularly appropriate for American students.

PROGRAM OVERVIEW			
FIRST YEAR	SECOND YEAR	THIRD YEAR	ADVANCED
<i>Chinese Primer</i> (For beginners with no previous knowledge of Chinese)	<i>A New China</i>	<i>A Kaleidoscope of China</i>	<i>Anything Goes</i>
OR	<i>A Trip to China</i>	<i>All Things Considered</i>	<i>China's Own Critics</i>
<i>Oh, China!</i> (For students who speak and understand some Chinese, especially “heritage” students who speak the language at home.)	<i>An Intermediate Reader of Modern Chinese*</i>	<i>Newspaper Readings*</i>	<i>China's Peril and Promise</i>
			<i>Literature and Society</i>
			<i>Readings in Contemporary Chinese Cinema</i>

# A New China

An Intermediate Reader of Modern Chinese

新的中国

现代汉语中级读本

Revised Edition

周质平 Chih-p'ing Chou

杨 玖 Joanne Chiang

张家惠 Jianna Eagar

Princeton University Press  
Princeton and Oxford

Copyright © 2011 by Princeton University Press

Published by Princeton University Press  
41 William Street, Princeton, New Jersey 08540

In the United Kingdom: Princeton University Press  
6 Oxford Street, Woodstock, Oxfordshire OX20 1TW

[press.princeton.edu](http://press.princeton.edu)

All Rights Reserved

Library of Congress Control Number: 2011925431

ISBN 978-0-691-14836-6

British Library Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available

This book has been composed in STKaiti, Simsun, and Times New Roman

The publisher would like to acknowledge the authors of this volume for  
providing the camera-ready copy from which this book was printed.

Printed on acid-free paper. ∞

Printed in the United States of America

1 3 5 7 9 10 8 6 4 2

# 新的中国

## A New China

### 目 录

### Table of Contents

修订版序		ix
Preface to the Revised Edition		xi
原序		xiii
Preface		xv
略语表	List of Abbreviations	xvii
第一课	到了北京	1
第二课	给妈妈打电话	11
第三课	早起、洗澡	24
第四课	邮局在哪儿?	37
第五课	拉肚子、睡不好	46
第六课	睡午觉、喝热水	54
第七课	洗衣服	62
第八课	理发	69
第九课	去银行换钱	78
第十课	讲价	89
第十一课	同志、小姐、先生	100
第十二课	厕所	113

第十三课	坐火车	121
第十四课	北京的公园	127
第十五课	北京的夜市	134
第十六课	北京动物园	142
第十七课	万里长城	153
第十八课	到时候再说吧!	162
第十九课	在饭桌上	170
第二十课	点菜	182
第二十一课	过马路真危险	192
第二十二课	好好学习，天天向上	200
第二十三课	普通话和规范字	208
第二十四课	中国制造	219
第二十五课	怕老婆	226
第二十六课	脱了裤子放屁	235
第二十七课	“铁饭碗”打破了	243
第二十八课	乒乓外交	250
第二十九课	高考	260
第三十课	北京的书店	269
第三十一课	爱人、先生、太太	278
第三十二课	离婚	288
第三十三课	从“发福”到“减肥”	298
第三十四课	从“温饱”到“小康”	308
第三十五课	老年人的生活	317
第三十六课	中国的交通建设	326
第三十七课	手机和电子邮件	335

第三十八课	开放留学政策	343
第三十九课	下岗	350
第四十课	北京的“古今中外”	360
第四十一课	各有所长	370
第四十二课	香港	378
第四十三课	怀旧	386
第四十四课	学习外语	395
第四十五课	看电视	405
第四十六课	《新的中国》是不是一本好教材？	415
第四十七课	中华民族	427
第四十八课	改变中的中国	435
拼音索引	Pinyin Index	445
英文索引	English Index	472
语法索引	Grammar Index	499
主要参考书目	References	503



## 修订版序

《新的中国》初稿成于 1997 年，1999 年由普林斯顿大学出版社正式出版。

过去十年来，不但中国社会有了巨大的改变，科技也有了飞跃的进步。为了在课文中进一步体现这些改变，我们对《新的中国》进行了修订。在这次修订的过程中，我们尽量让课文的内容反映当前的中国，我们也借着这次修订的机会更正了一些错误。

为了便于使用，我们将原来的两册合并为一册，并打破课文繁简两体并列的形式，将繁体课文置于简体课文之后。

这次修订，黄腾宽、Noelle Lyle 与 Cara Healey 三位同事仔细校阅了英文的说明和翻译，徐丽、张静静两位老师校看了书稿。2009 和 2010 年普林斯顿暑期北京中文培训班及普林斯顿大学的中文老师在使用和校对后，都提出了宝贵的意见。在此向以上各位表示诚挚的谢意，当然书中如有任何错误都由作者负责。

周质平

杨玖

张家惠

2010 年 10 月 15 日



## Preface to the Revised Edition

The first draft of *A New China* came out in 1997. The book was formally published by Princeton University Press in 1999.

In the past ten years, not only has Chinese society gone through a period of enormous change, but technology has also improved by leaps and bounds. *A New China* has been revised in order to better reflect these changes. In the process of creating this revised edition, we have tried our hardest to have the text portray aspects of contemporary China. We have also taken the opportunity to correct a few errors.

For ease of use, we have combined the original edition's two volumes into one. We have also placed a traditional version of each lesson after the simplified version instead of having simplified and traditional versions of each lesson on alternate pages.

Our colleagues Teng Kuan Ng, Noelle Lyle, and Cara Healey proofread the English sections of this revised edition, and Princeton teachers Li Xu and Jingjing Zhang reviewed the manuscript in its entirety. The teachers at the 2009 and 2010 summer sessions of Princeton in Beijing and at Princeton University during the 2009 and 2010 academic years all offered valuable insights. We extend our sincere thanks to the above for their help, though we as authors take full responsibility for any errors remaining in the text.

Chih-ping Chou

Joanne Chiang

Jianna Eagar

October 15, 2010



## 序

中国最近几年的变化可以说是日新月异。普林斯顿大学对外汉语教研室继《现代汉语中级读本》(1992)、《华夏行》(1995)、《中国啊!中国》(1997)等中级读本之后，编写《新的中国》，正是为了适应这一快速的改变。

《新的中国》所体现的，依旧是一个外国学生初到中国时的一些观察和体会，而所介绍的内容和词汇则不出一个留学生的日常生活用。《华夏行》所反映的是八十年代初期的中国社会，作者经常拿中国和西方比较。在《新的中国》里，作者不再作中西比较，而是拿当今的中国与改革开放之前的中国比较。在中西比较中，我们看到许多中国不能令人满意的地方；但是在当今和先前的比较中，我们发现中国近二十年来有飞跃的进步，而这个进步也缩小了中西的差距。《新的中国》正是在这个基础上编写出来的一本对外汉语中级读本。和《华夏行》比较，《新的中国》少了一点批评，多了一份“同情的理解”。

在美国对外汉语教学界纷纷编写“商用汉语”读本的今天，我们推出这本一般性的中级读本，也许有其不合时宜的地方。但是我们相信，语文的训练必须从一般的基础下手。所谓“一般”，在内容上指的是生活日用；在结构上，指的是发音和

基本语法句构的掌握。《新的中国》特别着重这些基础的训练。

《新的中国》初稿完成于 1997 年夏天，1998 年我们在普林斯顿大学北京汉语培训班试用，效果很好，并根据老师学生的意见，作了一些增删。在课文的编排上，还是繁简并列；但在词汇的安排上，为了便于学生使用，我们首次采用与本文同页互见的方式。这是形式上的一大改进。与普大前出课本比较，练习部分增添了不少新形式，当有助于实际教学。

本书课文由周质平撰写，词汇、句型和练习是由杨玖、张家惠编写的。

本书之成要特别向 Matthew Eagar 先生和 Kara Wortman、Jennifer Hunt、Robin Workman 三位小姐致谢。他们仔细校看了本书的英文部分，改正了错误。Matthew 并设计了封面，使本书大为增色。普大的同事夏岩、蒋冕华、安延明、戴晓雪四位老师，在最后定稿阶段，参加讨论，提供了许多宝贵意见，在此一并致谢。当然书中若有任何错误或不妥的地方，完全是作者的责任。

周质平、杨玖、张家惠

1999 年 2 月 28 日

## Preface

China has experienced rapid changes over the past two decades. The Chinese Language Program at Princeton University is publishing *A New China* to supplement previous textbooks and provide up-to-date material on the changing face of China.

Like some earlier textbooks in our series, *A New China* is written from the perspective of a foreign student who has just arrived in China. Its predecessor *A Trip to China* reflects Chinese society in the early 1980s and compares China to the Western world. In *A New China*, we no longer compare China to the West, but rather compare contemporary China to its pre-reform eras. When we compared China and the West, we found it inevitable that China fell short in many respects. In our comparison between contemporary and pre-reform China, however, we have found great improvements in Chinese society in the recent decade. These improvements have in fact narrowed the gap between China and the western world.

Nowadays in the field of Chinese language instruction in the U.S., it has become very popular to publish textbooks in “business Chinese.” We insist, however, that providing a solid foundation in grammar and pronunciation is more essential than teaching vocabulary geared toward specific usage.

As we have done in previous textbooks, we have made every effort in *A New China* to fill each lesson not only with mere description and dialogue, but also with the authors' viewpoints. We hope this will provoke discussion and will inspire students' interest in Chinese.

The draft of *A New China* was written in the summer of 1997 and was field- tested at the 1998 session of *Princeton in Beijing* summer intensive language program. The book was well received by students. As in previous textbooks, we have included both traditional and simplified versions of the text. For the first time, however, we have included vocabulary on the same page as the text. This change should make the book more convenient for students. We have also added several new exercises.

We would sincerely like to thank Matthew Eagar, Kara Wortman, Jennifer Hunt, and Robin Workman, who have taken pains to edit the English glossary and grammar notes. Their efforts have greatly improved the English portions of this book. Matthew also designed the cover which has significantly enhanced the presentation of this text. We would also like to extend thanks to our colleagues, Xia Yan, Chiang Mien-hwa, An Yanming, and Dai Xiaoxue, who have made valuable suggestions for the final revision of the textbook. Any errors are strictly the responsibility of the authors.

Chih-ping Chou  
Joanne Chiang  
Jianna Eagar

Princeton University  
February 28, 1999

## 略语表

### List of Abbreviations

<i>adj.</i>	.....	adjective
<i>adv.</i>	.....	adverb
<i>AN</i>	.....	auxiliary noun
<i>aux.</i>	.....	auxiliary
<i>comp.</i>	.....	complement
<i>conj.</i>	.....	conjunction
<i>idm.</i>	.....	idiom
<i>interj.</i>	.....	interjection
<i>L.</i>	.....	lesson
<i>n.</i>	.....	noun
<i>No.</i>	.....	number
<i>o.</i>	.....	object
<i>postp.</i>	.....	postposition
<i>pref.</i>	.....	prefix
<i>prep.</i>	.....	preposition
<i>pron.</i>	.....	pronoun
<i>prov.</i>	.....	proverb
<i>p.w.</i>	.....	place word
<i>suffix</i>	.....	suffix
<i>t.w.</i>	.....	time word
<i>v.</i>	.....	verb
<i>v.-c.</i>	.....	verb-complement
<i>v.-o.</i>	.....	verb-object



轻声字注音不标调号，但在注音前加一个圆点，如“桌子”：zhuō.zi。一般轻读，有时重读的字，在注音上标调号，注音前再加一个圆点。如“因为”：yīn.wèi。两字之间可插入其他成分时，加//，如：“理发”：lǐ//fà。各词条的注音都依据商务印书馆出版的《现代汉语词典》。

Characters pronounced with a neutral tone are transcribed not with a tone marker on top of the main vowel, as ordinary characters are, but with a dot before the initial consonant, such as “桌子”: zhuō.zi. Characters usually pronounced with a neutral tone but occasionally with a stress are transcribed with both a tone marker and a dot before the initial consonant, such as “因为”: yīn.wèi, where 为 is usually pronounced with a neutral tone but sometimes with a falling tone (the fourth tone). When there can be an insertion between two characters, a // is added, such as “理发”: lǐ//fà. The phonetic notation for all entries is based on *Xiandai Hanyu Cidian* published by The Commercial Press.



The numbers in parentheses within the lesson text correspond to the grammar notes for that lesson.

## 第一课 到了北京

飞机是今天晚上七点钟准时降落在(1)北京首都国际机场的。学校外事处派来的一位张先生在机场接我们。

通过海关的时候儿，我有点儿(2)担心，因为我带了

---

北京	Běijīng	<i>n.</i>	Beijing
飞机	fēijī	<i>n.</i>	airplane
准时	zhǔnshí	<i>adv./adj.</i>	punctually; on time 准时上课/准时到学校来/他总是很准时。
降落	jiàngluò	<i>v.</i>	land; descend
首都	shǒudū	<i>n.</i>	capital
国际	guójì	<i>adj.</i>	international
机场	jīchǎng	<i>n.</i>	airport
外事处	wàishìchù	<i>n.</i>	foreign affairs office
派	pài	<i>v.</i>	dispatch; send
张	Zhāng	<i>n.</i>	Zhang (a surname)
先生	xiān.sheng	<i>n.</i>	Mr.
接	jiē	<i>v.</i>	meet; welcome; fetch
通过	tōngguò	<i>v.</i>	pass; pass through; go through
海关	hǎiguān	<i>n.</i>	customs
担心	dānxīn	<i>v.</i>	worry; feel anxious 很担心/别担心 我很担心飞机不能准时降落。
带	dài	<i>v.</i>	take; bring; carry

几本儿《花花公子》给我的中国朋友。据说(3)中国海关对(4)这类杂志查得很严，好在(5)他们根本(6)没打开我的行李就让(7)我通过了。后来(8)我们坐上了一部大巴，开了差不多一个小时就到学校了。

花花公子	Huāhuā gōngzǐ	<i>n.</i>	<i>Playboy</i>
据说	jùshuō	<i>adv.</i>	it is said; they say
对	duì	<i>prep.</i>	about; toward; on; to
类	lèi	<i>n.</i>	type; category
杂志	zázhì	<i>n.</i>	magazine
查	chá	<i>v.</i>	check; inspect
严	yán	<i>adj.</i>	strict; severe; stern 老师很严。/学校对学生很严。
好在	hǎozài	<i>adv.</i>	luckily; fortunately
根本	gēnběn	<i>adv.</i>	utterly; completely; at all (always used in negative sentences) 根本没去/根本不会/根本听不懂
打开	dǎ//kāi	<i>v.-c.</i>	open
行李	xíng.li	<i>n.</i>	luggage; baggage
让	ràng	<i>v.</i>	let; allow
后来	hòulái	<i>n.</i>	afterwards
坐上	zuò//.shàng	<i>v.-c.</i>	get on (a vehicle)
部	bù	<i>AN</i>	measure word for cars or movies 一部汽车/一部电影
大巴	dàbā	<i>n.</i>	large bus
开(车)	kāi	<i>v.</i>	drive (a car)
差不多	chà .bu duō	<i>adv.</i>	around; about (a certain number) 睡了差不多十个小时 花了差不多一千块钱

北京给我的第一个印象<sup>(9)</sup>是海关的检查很松，没有我想的那么严。从机场到城里的高速公路又宽又<sup>(10)</sup>平，非常现代化。这和我想象中<sup>(11)</sup>古老的北京完全不同<sup>(12)</sup>。

今天很累，可是也很兴奋。我们的宿舍很好，房间很大，床也很舒服，不过因为时差的关系<sup>(13)</sup>，一直到晚上三点还没睡着。

---

印象	yìnxiàng	n.	impression
检查	jiǎnchá	v./n.	check; examine; inspect; inspection
松	sōng	adj.	loose; slack
城里	chénglǐ	p.w.	within the city; downtown
高速公路	gāosù gōnglù	n.	expressway; freeway
宽	kuān	adj.	wide; broad
平	píng	adj.	flat; smooth; level
现代化	xiàndàihuà	adj./n.	modern, modernization
想象	xiǎngxiàng	v./n.	imagine, imagination
古老	gǔlǎo	adj.	ancient; age-old
兴奋	xīngfèn	adj.	excited
宿舍	sùshè	n.	dormitory
舒服	shū.fu	adj.	comfortable
不过	búguò	adv.	but; however
时差	shíchā	n.	jet lag; time difference
关系	guān.xì	n.	relevance, relationships (used with 因为 to indicate cause or reason)
一直	yìzhí	adv.	all the way; all along; continuously 我等他一直等到十点钟。
睡着	shuì//zháo	v.-c.	fall asleep

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén, Text in Traditional Characters)

飛機是今天晚上七點鐘準時降落在(1)北京首都國際機場的。學校外事處派來的一位張先生在機場接我們。

通過海關的時候兒，我有點儿(2)擔心，因為我帶了幾本儿《花花公子》給我的中國朋友。據說(3)中國海關對(4)這類雜誌查得很嚴，好在(5)他們根本(6)沒打開我的行李就讓(7)我通過了。後來(8)我們坐上了一部大巴，開了差不多一個小時就到學校了。

北京給我的第一個印象(9)是海關的檢查很鬆，沒有我想的那麼嚴。從機場到城裏的高速公路又寬又(10)平，非常現代化。這和我想像中(11)古老的北京完全不同(12)。

今天很累，可是也很興奮。我們的宿舍很好，房間很大，床也很舒服，不過因為時差的關係(13)，一直到早上三點還沒睡着。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn, Grammar Notes)

(1) 飞机是今天晚上七点钟准时降落在北京首都国际机场的。

It was at seven o'clock this evening that the plane landed as scheduled at Beijing Capital International Airport.

Together with a word or phrase denoting place, 在 forms a prepositional phrase which can be placed before a verb as an adverbial phrase. For instance, in 在图书馆看书 or 在饭馆里吃饭, the 在 construction indicates the place where an action occurs. When placed after the verb as a complement, the 在 phrase can also indicate the place at which a person or thing has arrived after or as a result of the action, e.g. 放在桌子上, or 降落在国际机场. Moreover, verbs such as 住 and 降落

can be modified by either the 在 adverbial or the 在 complement; therefore, it is possible to say 降落在国际机场 or 在国际机场降落.

(2) 通过海关的时候儿，我有点儿担心。

When I passed through customs, I was a little worried.

有一点儿+ *adj.* indicates a small degree of something dissatisfactory or disagreeable. It can modify negative adjective forms. The “—” can also optionally be dropped.

1. 昨天我有一点儿不舒服。

I felt a little uncomfortable yesterday.

2. 我今天有点儿累。

I am a bit tired today.

(3) 据说中国海关对这类杂志查得很严。

It is said that China's customs is very strict about inspecting this kind of magazine.

据说 introduces hearsay. The phrase may sometimes be split to provide additional information. Note: This phrase is in the passive voice, and thus a subject like “我” or “你” cannot be added before it.

1. 据说他来中国以前，只学了一年中文。

It is said that he studied only one year of Chinese before he came to China.

2. 据学校派来的张先生说，现在的北京和从前完全不同了。

According to Mr. Zhang, the man whom the school sent, present-day Beijing is completely different from the old Beijing.

(4) 据说中国海关对这类杂志查得很严。

对 often takes a noun or verb-object construction as its object, which is the recipient of the verb that follows.

1. 他对中国的情况知道得很少。

He knows very little about China's situation.

2. 我对北京的机场有很好的印象。

I have a very good impression of Beijing's airport.

(5) 好在他们根本没打开我的行李就让我通过了。

Fortunately, they let me pass without opening my luggage at all.

好在 points out an advantageous condition in unfavorable circumstances. It is an adverb, and there is no negative form.

1. 这是我第一次到北京来，我有点儿紧张。好在学校派来的张先生在机场接我。

This was the first that I'd been to Beijing, and I was a little nervous. Fortunately, Mr. Zhang, the man whom the school sent, was at the airport to meet me.

2. 好在学校不太远，开车差不多一个钟头就能到。

Luckily the school is not too far. You can get there in about one hour by driving.

(6) 好在他们根本没打开我的行李就让我通过了。

根本 usually modifies a negative form and conveys a strong feeling.

1. 海关的检查根本不严，你不必担心。

The customs inspection isn't strict at all. You don't need to worry.

2. 他根本不会开车，你怎么能让他去机场接人呢？

He doesn't know how to drive at all. How could you ask him to pick someone up at the airport?

(7) 好在他们根本没打开我的行李就让我通过了。

让 in this context means “to let” or “to allow (someone to do something).”

1. 这件事让他做吧！

Let him do it.

2. 我妈妈不让我一边吃东西一边看书。

My mother doesn't allow me to eat and read at the same time.

(8) 后来我们坐上了一部大巴。

Later on we rode in a large bus.

后来 and 然后 both mean afterwards, but 后来 can be used only to describe events which have already transpired. 然后 indicates the

sequence of what's happening. The pattern is often 先…，然后（再，又，还）….

1. A: 后来怎么样? B: 后来海关就让我通过了。

A: What happened afterwards? B: Afterwards, customs let me passed.

2. 我想先去北京，然后去别的地方。

I plan to go to Beijing first and go to other places afterwards.

3. 他先买了一本书，然后又买了几只笔。

He bought a book and then bought a few pens as well.

(9) 北京给我的第一个印象是海关的检查很松。

The first impression that Beijing gave me is that the customs is lax.

北京给我的第一个印象 means “the first impression that Beijing gave me.” This idea can also be expressed as “我对北京的第一个印象。”

1. 北京首都国际机场给我们的印象很好。

The Beijing Capital International Airport impressed us very much.

2. 高速公路又宽又平，给了我们很好的印象。

We were impressed by how wide and level the highway was.

3. 我对那个学生的印象是：他很爱说话。

The impression I have of that student is that he is quite talkative.

4. 我对中国海关的印象很好。

My impression of China's customs is very favorable.

(10) 从机场到城里的高速公路又宽又平。

The highway from the airport to the city is both wide and flat.

With verbs, adjectives, or phrases, the pattern 又…又… indicates that two or more actions, states, or qualities coexist.

1. 我们的宿舍又大又舒服。

Our dorm is both big and comfortable.

2. 他又会说中文又会说英文。

He can speak Chinese, and he can speak English.

3. 昨天晚上他们又吃又喝，花了不少钱。

They ate and drank last night, spending more than a little money.

(11) 这和我想象中古老的北京完全不同。

This Beijing and the ancient one I had imagined are completely different.

中 means “middle;” therefore, 想象中 means “in one’s imagination,” 生活中的困难 means “the problems in one’s life” and 社会中的问题 means “the issues in a society.” The structure “verb 中” also means “in the middle of verb.”

(12) 这和我想象中古老的北京完全不同。

A 和 B 不同 means A is different from B. Do not use 同 for positive forms; instead use 一样.

1. 这本杂志和我想象中的有点儿不同。

This magazine is a little different from what I imagined.

2. 北京的海关和美国的一样，都检查得很松。

Beijing customs is just like customs in America, it is very lax.

(13) 因为时差的关系，一直到早上三点还没睡着。

Because of jet lag, I did not fall asleep until after three o’clock in the morning.

关系 means “relations,” “influence” or “relevance.” When it is used with 因为, it indicates cause or reason. The expression 因为…的关系 may be used with a reason which is slightly vague.

1. 因为天气的关系，飞机不能准时降落。

Because of the weather, the airplane was unable to land on schedule.

2. 因为时间的关系，我们就谈到这儿。

We will have to stop because of the time.

## ✍ 练习 (liànxí, Exercise)

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures provided.

1. 你为什么要学中文呢? (因为…的关系)
2. 你来中国以前, 对中国有什么样的印象? (据说)
3. 你来中国, 坐飞机坐了多长时间? (V. 了+time duration 的 O.)
4. 你对北京首都国际机场的第一个印象是什么? (又…又…)
5. 你到中国以前, 最担心什么? 现在还担心吗? (好在)
6. 中国的海关严还是美国的海关严? (A 没有 B 那么 adj.)

### II. Choose the correct answer in parentheses to complete each sentence.

1. 他现在又高又黑, 和我想象 (上, 中, 下) 完全不同。
2. (我据说, 据中国海关说) 《花花公子》不能带进中国。
3. 我们应该先到宿舍去, (后来, 然后) 到外事处去。
4. 要通过海关的人不多, 我们花了半个小时 (就, 不过, 还) 通过检查了。
5. 走高速公路很快, (从机场到学校, 开从机场到学校) 只要一个小时。
6. 他一 (坐了上, 坐上了) 车就 (睡不着, 不睡着)。
7. 我们对学生 (一点儿, 有一点儿) 松, 我 (担心一点儿, 有一点儿担心)。

### III. Make a sentence using the underlined structure(s).

1. 通过海关的时候儿, 我有点儿担心, 因为我带了几本儿《花花公子》给我的中国朋友。
2. 据说中国海关对这类杂志查得很严, 好在他们没打开行李就让我通过了。
3. 今天很累, 也很兴奋。不过因为时差的关系, 一直到早上三点还没睡着。

### IV. Combine the following pairs of sentences into a single sentence.

Example: 张先生在学校的外事处工作。他到机场来接我。

→ 在学校外事处工作的张先生到机场来接我。

1. 我跟一个美国学生住在一起。他只学了一个月中文。
2. 我的中国朋友到宿舍来看我。他们住在北京。
3. 中国的海关打开了行李。行李里有《花花公子》杂志。
4. 外事处派来一部大巴。我们坐上了大巴。

**V. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你学中文已经两年了，你不想去中国看看吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (因为…的关系，一直还…)
2. A: 你对这个学校宿舍的印象怎么样?  
B: 不太好，\_\_\_\_\_。 (又…又…，有点儿adj.)
3. A: 通过海关的时候，你担心吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一点儿也不，因为，根本)

**VI. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Don't worry! There are not many cars on the highway from downtown to the airport at this time (of day). You will be able to catch (use “坐上” ) the airplane on time.
2. This school is not as modernized as I thought. The dormitory is old and small. It is totally different from what I had imagined.
3. Because of 911, Customs at American airports is very strict. If you have water in your luggage, they simply won't let you pass.
4. I waited at the airport until 6 o'clock, but didn't see Mr. Zhang, dispatched from the foreign affairs office.

**VII. Composition**

Write a journal of what you see in your first day/week here in China. What is your first impression? What surprises you most? Have you seen any stark contrasts: new and old, fast and slow, modern and traditional? As a new visitor, what do you think about these extremes?

## 第二课 给妈妈打电话

女：妈，我已经到了北京了，一切都很顺利。

母：那<sup>(1)</sup>我就放心了。你累不累啊？

女：累是有点儿累<sup>(2)</sup>，可是很兴奋。

母：宿舍怎么样啊？是单人间还是双人间？

女：是双人间。同屋是个美国学生，我们很谈得来<sup>(3)</sup>。

电话	dìanhuà	n.	telephone; phone call
打电话	dǎ dìanhuà	v.-o.	make a phone call; call 给他打了一个电话 打了一个电话给他
一切	yíqìè	n.	all; every; everything (一切 is usually followed by 都.)
顺利	shùnlì	adj.	smooth; successful
放心	fàng//xīn	v.-o.	set one's mind at rest; feel relieved
单人间	dānrénjiān	n.	single room
双人间	shuāngrénjiān	n.	double room
同屋	tóngwū	n.	roommate
谈得来	tán .de lái	v.-c.	get along well (negative form: 谈不来) 我跟他很谈得来。

母：那很好。天气预报说今年夏天北京特别热，宿舍

里有空调吗？

女：有。不但(4)有空调，还有电视、电话、热水和自己

的浴室呢！

母：这样的条件比(5)你在美国的宿舍还好嘛(6)！

女：是啊！每天还有人给我们换毛巾、整理床铺、打

扫房间呢！

天气	tiānqì	n.	weather
预报	yùbào	n.	forecast
夏天	xiàtiān	n.	summer
特别	tèbié	adv./adj.	especially, special 特別快/特別有意思/很特別
热	rè	adj.	hot
空调	kōngtiáo	n.	air-conditioning
电视	diànshì	n.	television
浴室	yùshì	n.	bathroom; washroom
条件	tiáojìan	n.	condition 宿舍的条件非常好。
嘛	.ma		modal particle
换	huàn	v.	change 换衣服/换钱
毛巾	máojīn	n.	towel
整理	zhěnglǐ	v.	put in order; straighten up 整理房间
床铺	chuángpù	n.	bedding
打扫	dǎsǎo	v.	sweep; clean

母：这听起来<sup>(7)</sup>简直<sup>(8)</sup>像个旅馆。学校太照顾外国学生了。我真<sup>(9)</sup>担心你们要被<sup>(10)</sup>惯坏了。

女：住得舒服点儿才<sup>(11)</sup>能好好儿学习啊！

母：校园怎么样呢？安全不安全啊？

女：听说<sup>(12)</sup>安全得很，而且校园里又有饭馆儿又有商店，留学生食堂离<sup>(13)</sup>我的宿舍也很近，方便极了。

简直	jiǎnzhí	<i>adv.</i>	simply; virtually 简直太好了
旅馆	lǚguǎn	<i>n.</i>	hotel
照顾	zhào.gù	<i>v.</i>	take care of; look after
惯坏	guàn//huài	<i>v.-c.</i>	spoil 把孩子惯坏了
学习	xuéxí	<i>v.</i>	study
校园	xiàoyuán	<i>n.</i>	campus
安全	ānquán	<i>adj.</i>	safe
听说	tīngshuō	<i>v.</i>	be told; hear of; hear 听说海关检查得很严。
<i>adj.</i> 很 得	....dehěn		very 好得很/方便得很
而且	érqìe	<i>conj.</i>	and; as well (as), furthermore
饭馆儿	fànguǎnr	<i>n.</i>	restaurant
商店	shāngdiàn	<i>n.</i>	store; shop
留学生	liúxuéshēng	<i>n.</i>	foreign student
食堂	shítáng	<i>n.</i>	dining hall
离	lí	<i>v.</i>	be away from; from
近	jìn	<i>adj.</i>	close; near

母：去了北京，条件又<sup>(14)</sup>那么好，要是再<sup>(15)</sup>学不好中文，可<sup>(16)</sup>就没有借口了。

女：您放心，我会努力学习的。

母：你一方面<sup>(17)</sup>要努力学习，一方面也得注意健康啊！

女：我知道。妈，国际长途电话太贵了，下星期再给您打吧！再见再见！

母：好，好。再见再见！

方便	fāngbiàn	adj.	convenient
adj. 极了	...jíle		extremely; very 好极了/舒服极了/担心极了
借口	jièkǒu	n.	excuse
您	nín	pron.	you (polite form)
努力	nǔlì	adv./adj.	with great effort 特别努力/努力工作
方面	fāngmiàn	n.	respect; aspect; side
得	děi	v.	must; have to
注意	zhùyì	v.	pay attention to 注意听/没注意这件事
健康	jiànkāng	n./adj.	health; physique, healthy
长途	chángtú	adj.	long distance 长途电话/长途车

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén, Text in Traditional Characters)

- 女：媽，我已經到了北京了，一切都很順利。
- 母：那<sup>(1)</sup>我就放心了。你累不累啊？
- 女：累是有點兒累<sup>(2)</sup>，可是很興奮。
- 母：宿舍怎麼樣啊？是單人間還是雙人間？
- 女：是雙人間。同屋是個美國學生，我們很談得來<sup>(3)</sup>。
- 母：那很好。天氣預報說今年夏天北京特別熱，宿舍裏有空調嗎？
- 女：有。不但<sup>(4)</sup>有空調，還有電視、電話、熱水和自己的浴室呢！
- 母：這樣的條件比<sup>(5)</sup>你在美國的宿舍還好嘛<sup>(6)</sup>！
- 女：是啊！每天還有人給我們換毛巾、整理床鋪、打掃房間呢！
- 母：這聽起來<sup>(7)</sup>簡直<sup>(8)</sup>像個旅館。學校太照顧外國學生了。我真<sup>(9)</sup>擔心你們要被<sup>(10)</sup>慣壞了。
- 女：住得舒服點兒才<sup>(11)</sup>能好好兒學習啊！
- 母：校園怎麼樣呢？安全不安全啊？
- 女：聽說<sup>(12)</sup>安全得很，而且校園裏又有飯館兒又有商店，留學生食堂離<sup>(13)</sup>我的宿舍也很近，方便極了。
- 母：去了北京，條件又<sup>(14)</sup>那麼好，要是再<sup>(15)</sup>學不好中文，可<sup>(16)</sup>就沒有藉口了。
- 女：您放心，我會努力學習的。
- 母：你一方面<sup>(17)</sup>要努力學習，一方面也得注意健康啊！
- 女：我知道。媽，國際長途電話太貴了，下星期再給您打吧！再見再見！
- 母：好，好。再見再見！

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn, Grammar Notes)

(1) 那我就放心了。

Then I won't worry about it.

那 here means “in that case” or “then.”

1. 要是你不累，那我们就开始打扫房间吧！

If you're not tired, then let's start to clean the room.

2. 房间里有电话，那你就可以常给父母打电话了。

There is a phone in your room; you may call your parents often then.

(2) 累是有点儿累，可是很兴奋。

I was a bit tired, but I was very excited.

是 can be inserted between verbs or adjectives to make a concession, usually followed by 但是, 不过, 可是, etc. Adverbs can modify the repeated verb or adjectives, but must be placed immediately before the second occurrence or before both occurrences.

1. 海关的检查严是不严，但是你最好别带不该带的东西。

You are right, the customs inspection is not strict, but you'd better not bring anything that you shouldn't be bringing.

2. 他的行李大是大，不过并不重。

His baggage may be large, but it is not heavy.

(3) 我们很谈得来。

We get along well.

谈得来 means “get along well.” The negative form is 谈不来. Use 跟 to introduce the object.

1. 我跟他虽然是新朋友，可是很谈得来。

Although he and I are only new friends, we get along very well.

2. 你跟你的同屋谈不来啊？那真糟糕！

You don't get along well with your roommate? That's really too bad!

(4) 不但有空调，还有电视、电话和自己的浴室呢！

We not only have air-conditioning, but also a color TV, a telephone and a private bathroom.

不但 is used in the first clause of a complex sentence in conjunction with 而且, 并且, 也 or 还 in the second clause to introduce a further statement which expands upon the initial one.

1. 这个校园不但漂亮而且安全。

This campus is not only pretty, but also safe.

2. 你不但得努力学习, 也得注意健康。

Not only must you study hard, you must also pay attention to your health.

(5) 这样的条件比你在美国的宿舍还好嘛! .

These kinds of conditions are even better than your dorm in America.

“A 比 B 还 *adj.*” means “A is even more *adj.* than B.” When 还 is stressed, it indicates that the situation is surprising or unexpected.

1. 北京虽然是个古老的城市, 可是高速公路比美国的还好。

Beijing may be an old city, but the highways there are even better than those in the States.

2. 我们的房间比旅馆的还舒服。

Our rooms are even more comfortable than those in a hotel.

3. 没想到北京的夏天比美国的还热!

I never thought that the summer in Beijing could be even hotter than summer in America!

(6) 这样的条件比你在美国的宿舍还好嘛!

When 嘛 occurs at the end of a declarative sentence, it emphasizes affirmation and shows that a reason or cause is obvious.

1. 又有空调, 又有电视和电话, 这个房间很不错嘛!

This room has air-conditioning, a color TV and a telephone; it is not bad at all!

2. 他说得比我好, 因为他学的时间比我长嘛!

Of course he speaks better than I do -- because he has studied longer than I have!

(7) 这听起来简直像个旅馆。

This place sounds just like a hotel.

When 起来 follows the verbs such as 看, 听, 闻 or 吃, it means “it appears,” “it sounds,” “it smells,” and “it tastes” respectively.

1. 听起来这个学校很照顾外国学生。

It sounds like the school takes good care of foreign students.

2. 这个菜看起来不错，不知道吃起来怎么样。

This dish looks good; I wonder how it tastes.

(8) 这听起来简直像个旅馆。

简直 is an emphatic expression meaning “simply, at all,” and usually modifies descriptive words and phrases, which may imply exaggeration or emphasis.

1. 这本杂志简直太有意思了！

This magazine is so interesting!

2. 这个宿舍的条件简直太好了！

The conditions in this dormitory are simply terrific!

3. 他简直一个朋友都没有！

He simply has no friends at all!

(9) 我真担心你们要被惯坏了。

I am really worried that you will be spoiled.

真 means “really,” “truly,” or “indeed.” It is used to indicate the truth of a fact and also for emphasis.

1. 这个校园真好，又大又漂亮。

This campus is really great! It is big and pretty.

2. 每天都有人给我们换毛巾，整理床铺，学校真太照顾外国学生了。

There is somebody who comes to change our towels and make our beds everyday. The school really takes good care of foreign students.

真 is used in exclamatory sentences only. To say “This is a very good university,” use the expression 这是一个很好的大学 instead of 这是一个真好的大学。For more information about this usage, see L. 46, Note (4).

(10) 我真担心你们要被惯坏了。

被 is a passive voice marker. The passive voice is usually expressed in the following pattern: receiver of action + 被 + doer of action + other elements, e.g. 这个孩子被父母惯坏了.

When the doer needs not or cannot be mentioned, 被 can be placed immediately before the verb. All adverbs, including 不 and 没, come before 被, not immediately before the verb. In general, verbs used with 被 are transitive and must take some post-element to explain how they affect their subjects. Originally, the 被 pattern applied to events concerning human beings, and verbs used were infiictive in most cases. Under the influence of western languages, 被 now applies also to non-human events in science and in literature, and verbs may need not be infiictive, although they generally have negative connotations.

1. 所有的菜都被他一个人吃光了。

He ate all the food. (All the food was eaten up by him.)

2. 我的车被我同屋开出去了。

My roommate took my car. (My car was taken away by my roommate)

(11) 住得舒服点儿才能好好儿学习啊!

Only by living a little more comfortably can one study well.

才 in the second clause indicates that the first clause is the necessary condition, without which the result in the second clause would be impossible.

1. 房间里一定得有空调才能住得舒服。

A room must have air-conditioning for one to be able to live there comfortably.

2. 天天说中文才能说得很好。

Only by speaking Chinese everyday can one speak Chinese well.

(12) 听说校园安全得很。

I heard that the campus is very safe.

听说 differs from 据说 in that 听说 can take a subject and can be modified by 没 or 从来没...过。

1. 听说留学生宿舍的条件特别好。

They say that the living conditions in the foreign students' dormitories are especially good.

2. 我听说他跟同屋谈不来，是真的吗？

I heard that he doesn't get along with his roommate. Is that true?

3. 我从来没听说过这件事。

I have never heard of this before.

(13) 留学生食堂离我的宿舍也很近。

The foreign students' dining hall is very close to my dorm.

离 is used to denote separation and to indicate distance.

1. 学校离机场很远，得开一个小时车才能到。

The school is quite far from the airport; it takes one hour of driving to get there.

2. 外事处离这儿并不远。

The Foreign Affairs Office is not far from here.

(14) 去了北京，条件又那么好，要是再学不好中文，可就没有借口了。

You are in Beijing, and your living conditions are so good; therefore, you have no excuse if you still cannot learn Chinese well.

又 means “on top of,” “in addition to,” or “moreover.”

1. 我很兴奋，又有时差，所以睡不着觉。

In addition to having jet lag, I was also very excited, therefore I couldn't fall asleep.

2. 天气特别热，又没有空调，人人都觉得很不舒服。

It is very hot and there is no air-conditioning; everybody feels uncomfortable.

(15) 去了北京，条件又那么好，要是再学不好中文，可就没有借口了。

再 here indicates the continuation of an action which has not yet occurred or may possibly occur.

1. 不要再吃了！你吃得太多了！

Don't eat any more! You've eaten too much!

2. 要是你再这么说，我就要生气了。

If you keep talking like this, I will be angry.

- (16) 去了北京，条件又那么好，要是再学不好中文，可就没有借口了。

可 is used as an emphatic word meaning “surely,” “certainly,” or “finally.” It is often followed by particles such as 了, 呀 or 啊 to make the sentence an exclamation.

1. 这本书我找了两个月，今天可买着了。

I've been looking for this book for two months. I finally bought it today.

2. 你走了以后，可别忘了给我写信啊！

Don't forget to write me after you leave.

- (17) 你一方面要努力学习，一方面也得注意健康啊！

On the one hand, you need to study hard, while on the other hand, you have to pay attention to your health.

With two words, phrases, or clauses, 一方面…一方面 indicates that two actions or situations coexist and may contrast with or supplement each other. 另 may occur before the second 一方面, and is often followed by 又, 也 or 还.

1. 我一方面想学中文，(另)一方面也想看看北京。

I want to study Chinese and also want to see Beijing.

2. 我一方面想到外国去念书，可是(另)一方面又不愿意离开家。

On the one hand, I want to study abroad, but on the other hand, I don't want to be away from home.

3. 一方面这家旅馆离车站太远，(另)一方面价钱也很贵，

所以我们想换一个旅馆。

We are thinking of switching to another hotel because this one is too far from the station and is also very expensive.

## 练习 (liànxí, Exercise)

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

- 要是没有人到机场接你，你怎么办？(那 then)
- 校园附近的饭馆都好不好？(adj. 是 adj., 可是...)
- 你喜欢这儿的宿舍吗？为什么？(简直)
- 你睡觉的时候，为什么一定要开空调？(才)
- 他的中文为什么说得这么好？(reason 1, 又 reason 2)
- 你明年还想不想到中国来学中文？(一方面..., 一方面...)

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

长途 预报 电视 借口  
条件 兴奋 空调 安全

- 你没有准时到机场，就应该道歉 (dàoqiān, apologize) ，别找\_\_\_\_\_。
- 天气\_\_\_\_\_说今年夏天会很热，所以我想买个\_\_\_\_\_。
- 最近校园里问题很多，不太\_\_\_\_\_，我妈妈担心得很。
- 现在家家 (jiājiā, every household) 都有\_\_\_\_\_，已经不是很特别的东西了。
- \_\_\_\_\_电话很便宜 (pián.yi, cheap) ，所以我常常给北京的朋友打电话。

### III. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

- 宿舍里不但有空调，还有电视、电话和热水。
- 听说这个校园安全得很，而且非常方便。
- 你去了北京，又有那么好的条件，要是再学不好汉语，可就没有借口了。
- 住得舒服一点儿才能好好儿学习啊！

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 对不起, 我们旅馆里已经没有单人间了!  
B: 什么? \_\_\_\_\_。 (简直)
2. A: 这家商店又没有毛巾, 又没有肥皂 (fēizào, soap) , 真是太不方便了!  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (adj. 是 adj., 可是/不过…; A 离 B 近/远)
3. A: 整理床铺只是一件小事情, 你为什么不自己整理呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (听起来, A 比 B 还 adj.)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Yes, health is very important (重要, zhòngyào), but it should not be an excuse for not studying hard. If you keep on neglecting your studies, I am afraid that you will not be able to learn Chinese well.
2. He was spoiled by his parents. After he got to college, he could neither get along with his roommates, nor take care of himself. Nothing (in his life) is on track.
3. I don't know if I want to attend this university. On the one hand the learning environment (conditions) at this school is very good, but on the other hand it is said that the campus is not safe at all.

**VI. Composition**

Overseas students in America often complain that schools don't take good care of them. As an overseas student here in China, do you find that the same thing is happening to you, or is it true that foreign students are treated better in China? Now that you have had the experience of being an international student, what has been the newest thing for you? What has been the most difficult?

## 第三课 早起、洗澡

到了北京以后，早上七点半就<sup>(1)</sup>开始上课，我真不习惯。我在美国上大学，从来没<sup>(2)</sup>这么早起来过。九点钟的课还<sup>(3)</sup>常常迟到，更<sup>(4)</sup>不用说七点半的课了。

因为我喜欢晚睡，早起对我就特别困难。中国人

---

早起	zǎoqǐ	v.	get up early
洗澡	xǐ//zǎo	v.-o.	have a bath; bathe 洗: wash
开始	kāishǐ	v.	start; begin
习惯	xíguàn	v./n.	be accustomed to; be used to, habit; custom 我已经习惯每天早起早睡了。
上	shàng	v.	go to; be engaged (in work, study, etc.) at a fixed time 上中文课/上大学
从来没 v. 过	cónglái méi V. guò		have never V-ed before 从来没看见过/从来没吃过
迟到	chídào	v.	be late (for a fixed schedule or appointment) 上课不能迟到。 (迟到 is used for human actions only, and cannot take on an object.)
更	gèng	adv.	even more; more; still more
不用说	búyòngshuō	conj.	not to mention; needless to say
晚睡	wǎnshuì	v.	go to bed late
困难	kùnnán	adj./n.	difficult; difficulty

常说早晨头脑最清楚，是学习最好的时候。可对我来说(5)，早上刚(6)起来的时候头脑最不清楚，需要喝两三杯咖啡才能完全醒过来(7)。我真不懂为什么得这么早上课。

中国人也常说：早睡早起身体好。我却(8)觉得起得早晚跟身体健康没有什么关系(9)。不过，我现在是每天晚睡早起，整天都累得要命(10)。

除了早起以外(11)，中国人晚上洗澡的习惯也是我

---

早晨	zǎo.chen	<i>n.</i>	morning
头脑	tóunǎo	<i>n.</i>	brains; mind (It is not used for the physical brain.) 脑: brain
			头脑不清楚/很有头脑
清楚	qīng.chu	<i>adj.</i>	clear
可	kě	<i>adv.</i>	but; 可是
刚	gāng	<i>adv.</i>	just
需要	xūyào	<i>v./n.</i>	need; want; require 我需要一支笔。/我需要早点儿起来。
咖啡	kāfei	<i>n.</i>	coffee
醒	xǐng	<i>v.</i>	wake up; sober up
懂	dǒng	<i>v.</i>	understand; comprehend; know
身体	shēntǐ	<i>n.</i>	body; health
却	què	<i>adv.</i>	but; yet; however
整天	zhěngtiān	<i>adv.</i>	the whole day; all day long
<i>adj.</i> 得要命	... .de		awfully; extremely
	yàomìng		
除了…以外	chú.le ... yǐwài		except for; aside from

到了北京以后才<sup>(12)</sup>发现的。一般来说<sup>(13)</sup>，美国人经常早上洗澡，中国人却喜欢在晚上洗澡，所以中国的学生宿舍多半儿是在晚饭以后、睡觉以前提供热水。我本来<sup>(14)</sup>总是早上洗澡，来了中国以后，不得不<sup>(15)</sup>改成<sup>(16)</sup>晚上洗澡了。以前我觉得，早上洗完澡，干干净净<sup>(17)</sup>的，开始一天的工作很不错。现在我认为，晚上洗完澡，舒舒服服地睡觉也很好。

来中国以前，我从来没想过早上洗澡好还是晚上洗澡好。有许多事情，我本来以为<sup>(18)</sup>一定是这样做的，

---

发现	fāxiàn	v.	find; discover
一般来说	yìbān lái shuō	adv.	generally speaking
经常	jīngcháng	adv.	often; frequently
多半儿	duōbànr	adv.	mostly
提供	tígōng	v.	offer; provide; supply
本来	běnlái	adv.	originally; at first
总是	zǒngshì	adv.	always
不得不	bùdèbù	adv.	have no choice but to; have to
改	gǎi	v.	change; alter; correct
成	chéng	comp.	into; become
干净	gānjìng	adj.	clean; neat and tidy
认为	rènwéi	v.	think; consider; hold
以为	yǐwéi	v.	mistakenly think
事情	shì.qing	n.	thing
一定	yídìng	adv./adj.	definitely, definite

到了中国，却发现中国人不一定这样做。我学会了从另<sup>(19)</sup>一个角度看事情，这就是到外国去的好处。

学会	xué/huì	v.-c.	learn 他一到中国，就学会了怎么用筷子吃饭。
另	lìng	adj.	the other; another
角度	jiǎodù	n.	angle; point of view
外国	wàiguó	n.	foreign country
好处	hǎo.chu	n.	benefit; gain; profit; advantage

### ★ 繁體字課文 (fántǐzì kèwén, Text in Traditional Characters)

到了北京以後，早上七點半就<sup>(1)</sup>開始上課，我真不習慣。我在美國上大學，從來沒<sup>(2)</sup>這麼早起來過。九點鐘的課還<sup>(3)</sup>常常遲到，更<sup>(4)</sup>不用說七點半的課了。

因為我喜歡晚睡，早起對我就特別困難。中國人常說早晨頭腦清楚，是學習最好的時候。可對我來說<sup>(5)</sup>，早上剛<sup>(6)</sup>起來的時候頭腦最不清楚，需要喝兩三杯咖啡才能完全醒過來<sup>(7)</sup>。我真不懂為什麼得這麼早上課。

中國人也常說：早睡早起身體好。我卻<sup>(8)</sup>覺得起得早晚跟身體健康沒有什麼關係<sup>(9)</sup>。不過，我現在是每天晚睡早起，整天都累得要命<sup>(10)</sup>。

除了早起以外<sup>(11)</sup>，中國人晚上洗澡的習慣也是我到了北京以後才<sup>(12)</sup>發現的。一般來說<sup>(13)</sup>，美國人經常早上洗澡，中國人卻喜歡在晚上洗澡，所以中國的學生宿舍多半兒是在晚飯以後、睡覺以前提供熱水。我本來<sup>(14)</sup>總是早上洗澡，來了中國以後，不得不<sup>(15)</sup>改成<sup>(16)</sup>晚上洗澡了。

以前我覺得，早上洗完澡，乾乾淨淨<sup>(17)</sup>的，開始一天的工作很不錯。現在我認為，晚上洗完澡，舒舒服服地睡覺也很好。

來中國以前，我從來沒想過早上洗澡好還是晚上洗澡好。有許多事情，我本來以為<sup>(18)</sup>一定是這樣做的；到了中國，卻發現中國人不一定這樣做。我學會了從另<sup>(19)</sup>一個角度看事情，這就是到外國去的好處。

### 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn, Grammar Notes)

(1) 早上七点半就开始上课。

Classes start promptly at 7:30 am.

就 used after a word or phrase denoting time indicates that it is early or that something or someone is quick, or that the time concerned is short. 就 is pronounced in the neutral one with stress on the time word or phrase.

1. 我们明天就走。

We will leave tomorrow.

2. 你们先去，我马上就来。

You go first, and I will come immediately.

3. 他只学了一年就说得很好了。

He already speaks very well after having studied for only one year.

(2) 我从来没这么早起来过。

I have never gotten up so early.

从来 indicates that something has remained unchanged throughout time, from the past to the present. It implies a sense of emphatic negation. 从来没 v. 过 implies that the action has not happened in the past, although it might happen in the future. 从来不 v. suggests that the subject has a kind of policy or resolve that has prevented action in the past and probably will continue to prevent it in the future.

1. 我从来没打过国际长途电话。

I have never made an international call.

2. 我一喝咖啡肚子就不舒服，所以我从来不喝咖啡。

My stomach gets upset whenever I drink coffee, so I never drink it.

(3) 九点钟的课还常常迟到，更不用说七点半的课了。

I was often late even for 9 o'clock class, not to mention the 7:30 class.

When citing an extreme case, use 还 to convey the notion that even such a case does not satisfy the conditions stated, let alone anything else. It is always followed by a second clause that uses 不用说 or a rhetorical question such as 怎么…呢, 哪儿…呢.

1. 老师还看不懂这篇文章，更不用说我了。

Even the teacher cannot understand this article, not to mention myself.

2. 我连功课还做不完，哪儿有时间看电影呢！

I cannot even finish my homework; how would I have time to see a movie?

3. 中文考试总是很难，我好好儿地预备还考不好，怎么能不预备呢？

Chinese quizzes are always so difficult. I do poorly even when I prepare for them; how could I not prepare?

(4) 九点钟的课还常常迟到，更不用说七点半的课了。

更, meaning “even more” or “more,” is used in a comparative clause to indicate that the subject is going to be or already is of a greater extent or degree than the things to which it is compared.

1. 我的头脑早晨不太清楚，晚上更不清楚。

My mind is not clear in the morning; it is even worse in the evening.

2. 学外国语比学别的更需要练习。

One has to practice even more when studying a foreign language than when studying anything else.

3. 现在你住在外国，更需要注意健康。

Now that you are living in a foreign country, you need to pay even more attention to your health.

(5) 对我来说，早上刚起来的时候头脑最不清楚。

As for myself, my mind is most unclear when I have just gotten up in the morning.

对…来说 indicates the person or thing to whom or to which a statement pertains.

1. 对我来说，食堂离宿舍近很重要。

It is very important to me that the dining hall is close to the dormitory.

2. 对学习语言来说，听录音带特别有帮助。

Listening to tapes is especially helpful in studying a foreign language.

(6) 对我来说，早上刚起来的时候头脑最不清楚。

刚 is an adverb which indicates that an action has recently occurred.

1. 我刚到北京的时候，常打电话给父母，现在不常打了。

When I first arrived in Beijing I called my parents frequently, but I don't call them often anymore.

2. 昨天我刚到学校，就看见了外事处的张先生。

When I had just arrived at school yesterday, I saw Mr. Zhang from the Foreign Affairs Office.

(7) 需要喝两三杯咖啡才能完全醒过来。

I need to drink two or three cups of coffee to really wake up.

V. 过来 usually indicates that someone or something is approaching, e.g. 走过来, 跑过来. But when it is used after certain verbs, such as 醒 or 明白, it means that the subject has returned to the original and normal situation.

1. 我说了好几次，他才明白过来。

He understood only after I explained it several times.

2. 要是他早晨不喝咖啡，就醒不过来。

If he doesn't drink coffee in the morning, he never really wakes up.

(8) 中国人常说：早睡早起身体好。我却觉得起得早晚跟身体健康没有什么关系。

Chinese people always say that early to bed early to rise makes one healthy. I, however, still think that there is no relation between waking up early or late and one's health.

却 is an adverb inserted between the subject and predicate of a sentence. Its function of indicating contrast is similar to that of 但是, 可是, and 不过. It can be used with these conjunctions to intensify contrast.

1. 北京是一个古老的城市，但是北京的高速公路却很新。

Beijing is an old city, but its highways are pretty new.

2. 我很累，可是却睡不着觉。

I was very tired, but I couldn't sleep.

(9) 我却觉得起得早晚跟身体健康没有什么关系。

A 跟 B 有/没有关系 means “A has/has nothing to do with B.”

1. 我跟这件事情完全没有关系，你别问我。

I have nothing to do with this matter. Don't ask me.

2. 一个人的生活习惯和他是哪儿的人很有关系。

One's living habits have a lot to do with the place from which one comes.

(10) 我整天都累得要命。

I was terribly tired the whole day.

要命 literally means “to drive somebody to his death.” The structure *adj.* 得要命 means “extremely/awfully adjective.” It is usually used in an undesirable situation.

1. 去年夏天，北京热得要命。

Beijing was terribly hot last summer.

2. 我累得要命，得休息休息。

I am terribly tired. I need to rest for a while.

(11) 除了早起以外，中国人晚上洗澡的习惯也是我到了北京以后才发现的。

Only after I arrived in Beijing did I learn that, besides getting up early, Chinese people are also accustomed to taking a bath in the evening.

除了 is often used in conjunction with 以外. When 除了… (以外) is followed by 也 or 还, it means “in addition to” or “besides.”

1. 除了学习以外，我们也常一块儿出去玩。

In addition to studying, we often go out to have fun together.

2. 除了书以外，我还买了两条毛巾。

In addition to books, I bought two towels.

When 除了… (以外) is followed by 都 or a negative construction, it means “except.”

3. 除了我以外，别人都晚上洗澡。

All the others take baths in the evening except me.

4. 教室里除了几个学生以外，没有别人。

There were no others in the classroom except for a few students.

(12) 中国人晚上洗澡的习惯也是我到了北京以后才发现的。

This 才 is different from the one in L. 2, Note (11). In this lesson, 才 is used after a word or a phrase to denote a time which is later than expected or of long duration. In this usage, 才 is pronounced in the neutral tone and the time expression is stressed. It may be applied either to a fulfilled or an unfulfilled event. 才 sometimes implies “not until” or “only then.”

1. 我得做完功课才能跟你谈话。

I have to finish my homework before I can talk with you.

2. 我今天才知道他不是中国人。

I didn't know that he was not Chinese until today.

(13) 一般来说，美国人经常早上洗澡。

Generally speaking, Americans take baths in the morning.

一般来说 means “generally speaking.” It is the same as 一般说来.

1. 一般来说，中国人先吃饭再喝汤，美国人却不是这样。

Generally speaking, Chinese people eat first and then have soup, but American people don't do it this way.

2. 一般来说，美国学生宿舍的大门是不锁的。

Generally speaking, in America, the main entrances of student dorms are left unlocked.

(14) 我本来总是早上洗澡。

I used to take baths in the morning.

本来 means “originally,” implying that the situation has changed.

1. 我本来想给他打电话，后来给他写了一封信。

I originally planned to call him, but later I wrote him a letter instead.

2. 海关的检查本来很严，可是现在特别松。

Customs inspection used to be strict, but it is very lax now.

(15) 来了中国以后，不得不改成晚上洗澡了。

After I came to China, I had to change over to taking baths in the evening.

不得不 means “to have no choice but to” or “to have to.” It is used as an adverbial expression.

1. 没有人到机场接我，我不得不自己坐车到学校去。

There was no one to pick me up in the airport, so I had to take a bus to school on my own.

2. 今年夏天特别热，我不得不买个空调。

It is so hot this summer that I have no choice but to buy an air conditioner.

(16) 来了中国以后，不得不改成晚上洗澡了。

成 is a resultative complement which is used after verbs to convey the sense of “becoming” or “being completed.” It is often used in conjunction with the 把 construction.

1. 你帮我把这件事办成以后，我一定要请你吃饭。

I will be sure to treat you to dinner after you help me complete this job.

2. 你不应该把住在外国说成是一件那么可怕的事。

You shouldn't describe living in a foreign country as such a terrifying thing.

(17) 早上洗完澡，干干净净的，开始一天的工作很不错。

It is not bad taking a shower in the morning and starting the day's work cleanly (with a clean feeling).

干干净净 is an adjective created by duplicating the adjective 干净 in an AABB pattern for emphasis. Such a pattern can be used as an adjective or an adverb. In spoken language a 的 or 地 is added after the AABB syllable, e.g. 舒舒服服地坐着, or 高高兴兴地回了家.

- (18) 有许多事情，我本来以为一定是这样做的。

There were many things that I thought had to be done this way.

以为 means “to think,” usually implying “to think incorrectly.”

1. 我以为从机场到学校很远，其实只要半个钟头。

I thought that the school was very far from the airport, but actually it only took half an hour.

2. 他以为中国的海关查得很严，其实查得很松。

He thought that China's customs was strict, but it was actually lax.

- (19) 我学会了从另一个角度看事情。

I learned to look at things from another angle.

When 另 or 另外 modifies a noun, it is a demonstrative pronoun indicating something other than what has been mentioned. It differs with 别的 in that 另 or 另外 can be followed by a number + AN, meaning “the one or few in particular,” while 别的 indicates others in general. Compare the following two sentences:

1. 这间屋子太热，他搬到另外一间去了。

This room is too hot. He has moved to another room.

2. 我觉得这间不够大，能不能看看别的屋子？

I think that this room is not big enough. Can I have a look at others?

## ✍ 练习 (liànxí, Exercise)

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 刚到中国的时候，你有没有时差的问题？你习惯不习惯中国的生活？（…得要命）
2. 你上课常常迟到吗？（从来没 v. 过）
3. 你喜欢在北京学习吗？除了学习以外，有没有时间出去玩呢？（连…都…，更不用说…）
4. 你认为学习好不好跟住的条件有没有关系？
5. 你不是天天喝咖啡吗？现在怎么喝起茶来了？（不得不）
6. 中国海关的检查严不严？（本来以为…）
7. 你跟父母关系好不好？他们是你的朋友吗？（把…看成…）
8. 有什么事情你本来以为一定是这样做，到了中国却发现中国人不一定这样做？

### II. Make a sentence using the underlined expression.

1. 对我来说，早上刚起来的时候头脑最不清楚。
2. 一般来说，美国人经常早上洗澡，中国人却喜欢晚上洗澡。
3. 除了早起以外，中国人晚上洗澡的习惯也是我到了北京以后才发现的。
4. 我学会了从另一个角度看事情，这就是到外国去的好处。

### III. Choose the correct answer.

1. 要是你不想去，你应该明明白白 \_\_\_\_\_ 告诉我。  
① 的 ② 地 ③ 得 ④ 着
2. 我 \_\_\_\_\_ 你应该努力学习，不应该找借口。  
① 认为 ② 以为 ③ 学会 ④ 喜欢
3. 我到了中国以后，\_\_\_\_\_ 打过电话。  
① 从来给父母不 ② 从来给父母打  
③ 从来没给父母 ④ 不从来给父母
4. 你要是带了花花公子杂志，就 \_\_\_\_\_ 通过海关。  
① 很难 ② 有困难 ③ 困难得很 ④ 难一点儿

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 外国学生宿舍，又有空调又有电视，我认为学校太照顾外国学生了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (对…来说)

2. A: 我想在吃晚饭以前洗个热水澡。不知道宿舍里有没有热水？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (…以后，才…)

3. A: 你现在能看中文杂志了吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (还…，更不用说…)

4. A: 你为什么不坐张先生的车到机场去？却坐出租车(chūzūchē, taxi)去呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (本来…，可是…；不得不)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Going abroad has one benefit, which is that one can learn to look at things from another perspective. There were many customs which I had originally thought were a certain way, but after going to China, I finally realized that some customs are completely different from what I had imagined.

2. I have class at 8:00 in the morning, but I like sleeping late, so waking up early is particularly difficult for me. I am often not completely awake by 8:00; it is not even worth talking about getting to class on time.

3. I have never liked showering in the evening. If I shower at night, I cannot sleep and will be incredibly tired the next day. After I take a shower in the morning, not only can I start the day's work cleanly, but my mind is also clear. I feel that when one takes a shower is related to whether his work goes smoothly or not.

**VI. Composition**

Chinese people believe that early to bed and early to rise is good for one's health. According to a Western saying, "The early bird catches the worm." Do you agree with these beliefs? Why? What is your daily schedule? Is it the best schedule for you? Are these beliefs still applicable in our modern society where everybody works at a different pace?

## 第四课 邮局在哪儿?

### (一) 在宿舍里

留学生：请问，附近有邮局吗？

服务员：有是有，可是离这儿比较(1)远。

留学生：走得到吗？得走多(2)长时间？

服务员：得走半个多(3)小时呢！你最好(4)坐 22 路公共汽  
车去，只有三站地。

留学生：下了车以后，怎么走呢？

---

邮局	yóujú	n.	post office
请问	qǐngwèn		“please-ask;” (polite) excuse me; may I ask you?
附近	fùjìn	p.w.	nearby; in the vicinity 住在学校附近/我家附近没有邮局。
服务员	fúwùyuán	n.	service personnel
比较	bǐjiào	adv./v.	comparatively, compare 比较贵/比较好
远	yuǎn	adj.	distant; far
最好	zuìhǎo	adv.	had better; it would be best
路	lù	AN	route
公共汽车	gōnggòng qìchē	n.	公共: public; communal 公共图书馆 汽车: automobile; motor vehicle; car
站	zhàn	n.	station; stop

服务员：下了车以后往南走<sup>(5)</sup>，过一条街，再<sup>(6)</sup>往东，  
有一个公园儿，邮局就<sup>(7)</sup>在公园儿对面。

## (二) 在邮局里

留学生：请问，我要寄几本书到美国去，得去哪个窗口啊？

服务员：要挂号吗？

留学生：我怕寄丢了，最好挂号。

往	wǎng	<i>prep.</i>	in the direction of; towards
南	nán	<i>n.</i>	south
			西: xī, west 北: běi, north
过	guò	<i>v.</i>	pass; cross 过街
条	tiáo	<i>AN</i>	measure word for things narrow and long
街	jiē	<i>n.</i>	street
东	dōng	<i>n.</i>	east
公园儿	gōngyuánr	<i>n.</i>	park
对面	duìmiàn		across from; in front of 在邮局对面/对面有个小商店。
寄	jì	<i>v.</i>	send; mail
窗口	chuāngkǒu	<i>n.</i>	service window; window
挂号	guà//hào	<i>v.-o.</i>	register; send by registered mail 一封挂号信/这封信要挂号。
怕	pà	<i>v.</i>	fear; be afraid of
丢	diū	<i>v.</i>	lose (something) 我的书丢了。/他昨天丢了100块钱。

服务员：三号窗口办国际挂号。

留学生：谢谢！

### (三) 在三号窗口

留学生：这个小包寄到美国，要挂号。

服务员：里面是什么？

留学生：小包里是几本书。要多少钱？

服务员：一百三十六块五毛。请您先填这张表，把地址和姓名都写清楚。

留学生：我还想买些信封、信纸、邮票和几张风景

---

号	hào	n.	number
办	bàn	v.	do; manage; handle
小包	xiǎobāo	n.	small parcel
块	kuài	n.	dollar; buck
毛	máo	n.	dime
填	tián	v.	fill in (a form)
表	biǎo	n.	form; table
地址	dìzhǐ	n.	address
姓名	xìngmíng	n.	full name 姓: surname 名: first name
信封	xìnfēng	n.	envelope
信纸	xìnzhi	n.	letter paper
邮票	yóupiào	n.	stamp
风景	fēngjǐng	n.	scenery; landscape

明信片。

服务员：您要的东西旁边儿的柜台都有。

留学生：谢谢！

明信片	míngxìnpiàn	n.	postcard
旁边儿	pángbiānr	n.	side; by the side of; nearby
柜台	guǐtái	n.	counter

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén, Text in Traditional Characters)

### (一) 在宿舍裏

留學生：請問，附近有郵局嗎？

服務員：有是有，可是離這兒比較(1)遠。

留學生：走得到嗎？得走多(2)長時間？

服務員：得走半個多(3)小時呢！你最好(4)坐 22 路公共汽車去，只有三站地。

留學生：下了車以後，怎麼走呢？

服務員：下了車以後往南走(5)，過一條街，再(6)往東，有一個公園兒，郵局就(7)在公園兒對面。

### (二) 在郵局裏

留學生：请问，我要寄幾本書到美國去，得去哪個窗口啊？

服務員：要掛號嗎？

留學生：我怕寄丢了，最好掛號。

服務員：三號窗口辦國際掛號。

留學生：謝謝！

### (三) 在三號窗口

留學生：這個小包寄到美國，要掛號。

服務員：裏面是什麼？

留學生：小包裏是幾本書。要多少錢？

服務員：一百三十六塊五毛。請您先填這張表，把地址和姓名都寫清楚。

留學生：我還想買些信封、信紙、郵票和幾張風景明信片。

服務員：您要的東西旁邊兒的櫃檯都有。

留學生：謝謝！

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn, Grammar Notes)

### (1) 邮局离这儿比较远。

The post office is relatively far from here.

When 比较 is used as an adverb, it indicates a comparatively small degree. An adjective or verb without 比较 expresses a larger degree than if it is preceded by 比较.

1. 我觉得寄国际挂号比较好，因为比较安全。

I think that it is better to send it by international registered mail because it is a bit safer.

2. 饭馆的菜当然比较好吃，可是也贵一点儿。

Of course the food in a restaurant is better, but it's a bit expensive, too.

(2) 得走多长时间?

How long will it take?

多 indicates an inquiry of degree in an interrogative sentence. To measure a particular height, length, weight, etc., use (有)多(么)+adj. in making an inquiry, and (有)+No.+measure word+adj. in making a reply. Sometimes the adjective in the reply is dropped.

1. 邮局离这儿(有)多远?

How far is it from here to the post office?

2. 你今年(有)多大了?

How old are you this year?

3. 你来了(有)多久了?

How long have you been here?

4. A: 你(有)多(么)重?

A: How heavy are you?

B: 我(有)六十公斤(重)。

B: I am sixty kilograms.

(3) 得走半个多小时呢!

You have to walk more than half an hour.

半个多小时 means “more than half an hour” (but less than one hour). For numbers up to 10, the pattern is No. + AN + 多 + n.:

三个多月 (more than 3 months)

八个多星期 (more than 8 weeks)

四年多 (more than 4 years)

十块多钱 (more than 10 dollars but less than 11 dollars)

With higher numbers, the pattern is No. + 多 + AN + n.:

三百多个人 (more than 300 people but less than 400 people)

十多天 (more than 10 but less than 20 days)

四十多分钟 (more than 40 but less than 50 minutes)

十多块钱 (more than 10 but less than 20 dollars)

(4) 你最好坐22路公共汽车去.

You had better take the bus line 22.

最好 means “had better” or “it would be best if.” It is used primarily in imperative sentences and can modify negative forms.

1. 你最好给你母亲打个电话，让她放心。

You had better call your mother so that she won't worry about you.

2. 我们最好在留学生食堂吃饭，又便宜又方便。

We had better eat at the foreign students' dining hall; it is both cheap and convenient.

3. 你最好别带这类杂志到中国去。

You had better not bring this kind of magazine to China.

(5) 下了车以后往南走。

After you get off the bus, head south.

往南走 means “to go south.” 往 takes a word or phrase denoting location or position or certain verbs denoting direction as its object. It may be used to modify a verb; e.g. 往外看, 往下念, 往前走, 往东飞, 往图书馆那边儿走.

(6) 下了车以后往南走，过一条街，再往东。

After you get off the bus, go south, cross one street, and then turn east.

再 indicates the latter part of a sequence of actions. It is often used in conjunction with 先.

1. 你往前走，过一条街，再走两分钟就到了。

Go straight ahead, cross one street, walk two more minutes and you'll be there.

2. 我想先做完功课再吃饭。

I want to finish my homework first before eating.

(7) 邮局就在公园儿对面。

The post office is directly across from the park.

就 is used to stress nearness either in time or space.

1. 他家就在学校旁边，非常近。

His house is right next to the school. It's very close.

2. 就在两天前，他找到了工作。

He found a job just two days ago.

## 练习 (liànxí, Exercise)

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 学校的图书馆 (túshūguǎn, library) 在什么地方? (对面)
2. 校园里的商店东西贵, 还是校园外的商店东西贵? (比较 adj.)
3. 你在中国, 吃一顿 (dùn, AN for meal) 晚饭大概要多少钱?  
(…块…毛)
4. 那封信为什么要挂号呢? (我怕…)
5. 你到北京多长时间了? (more than one week)
6. 到中国去, 可以带《花花公子》杂志吗? (最好, 因为)
7. 你想先到图书馆还是先到邮局去? (先…再…)
8. 从这儿开车到机场, 得怎么走? (往)

### II. Find and correct the errors.

1. 最近的邮局 在 对面校园, 校园里面没有邮局。  
① ② ③ ④
2. 在你的屋子里 一些风景明信片, 请你拿来给我。  
① ② ③
3. 你走东 就能 看见 卖明信片的地方。  
① ② ③ ④
4. 我已经寄了 一个半多星期了, 不知道是不是寄丢了。  
① ② ③

### III. Fill in the blank with an appropriate word from the list.

地址	站	离	窗口	到	公共汽车
邮票	往	办	窗户	丢	小包

1. 我住得 \_\_\_\_\_ 学校比较远, 有十 \_\_\_\_\_ 地, 走路是走不 \_\_\_\_\_ 的, 得坐 \_\_\_\_\_。
2. 现在邮局的服务好得很, 你不用怕信会寄 \_\_\_\_\_。
3. 要 \_\_\_\_\_ 国际挂号请到十号 \_\_\_\_\_ 去。
4. 寄 \_\_\_\_\_ 的时候, 别忘了把 \_\_\_\_\_ 写清楚。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你那么喜欢中文, 为什么不到中国去学中文呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (先...再...)

2. A: 听说你要到中国去留学, 你办签证 (qiānzhèng, visa) 了没有?

B: 我已经\_\_\_\_\_。 (把 construction and resultative complement)

3. A: 你认为我住在校园里好还是住在校园外头好?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (最好, 因为)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. I was afraid that these postcards that I wrote might get lost in the mail, so I asked the attendant at the window to send them by international registered post. It was expensive all right, but I felt safer.

2. There is no post office near campus. The nearest one is a little more than half an hour by foot. You had better take a bus there.

3. There is a store across from the bus stop for the number 22 line where you can buy envelopes and letter paper. You only have to walk outside the campus, head east, cross two streets, and then go north. You don't need to take the bus. It is only one stop away.

4. If you cannot get along with your roommate and want to have a single room, please go to the next counter to fill out the form. Write your name and address clearly, and in about a week we will mail you the new room number.

**VI. Composition**

Dealing with clerks in the post office can be frustrating, especially when you are in a foreign country speaking a foreign language. Write about your experiences at a restaurant, in the post office, or in a shop here in China. How do the people treat you? How do you let them understand your intentions? Share some of the interesting or frustrating experiences you have.

## 第五课 拉肚子、睡不好

学生：王老师，今天我觉得很不舒服，想请半天假，在宿舍里休息休息。

老师：怎么了(1)? 是不是病了?

学生：昨天晚上我吃了一碗牛肉面，一块西瓜。睡觉以前，肚子很疼，拉了好几次，后来还吐了。

肚子	dù.zi	n.	stomach; abdomen
拉肚子	lā dù.zi	v.-o.	suffer from diarrhea; have loose bowels
请假	qǐng//jià	v.-o.	ask for leave 请了三天假
休息	xiū.xi	v.	rest; have a rest
病	bìng	v.	be sick; be ill 他病得很厉害，不能来上课。 (To say “a little sick,” use 有点不舒服. Don’t put any modifiers before the word 病.)
碗	wǎn	AN/n.	bowl
牛肉	niúròu	n.	beef 肉: meat
面	miàn	n.	noodle
块	kuài	AN	piece; lump; chunk 一块鸡肉
西瓜	xīguā	n.	watermelon
疼	téng	v./adj.	ache, sore; painful
吐	tù	v.	vomit

老师：也许你吃的东西不大(2)干净。发烧了没有？

学生：烧倒(3)是(4)没烧，可是没睡好觉。这几个星期我  
天天都睡不好，累极了。

老师：为什么总睡不好呢？

学生：宿舍里太热了。

老师：不是有空调吗(5)？

学生：我同屋不喜欢开空调，喜欢开窗。结果(6)屋子里  
蚊子多得要命。昨天晚上我被叮了好几次。你看，脸上、胳膊上都是包(7)。

老师：我不知道你们有这样的问题。我看，你们得好  
好儿谈谈。

---

也许	yěxǔ	adv.	maybe; perhaps
发烧	fā//shāo	v.-o.	have a fever 发了两天烧/烧得很厉害
倒	dào	adv.	on the contrary
总	zǒng	adv.	总是; always
结果	jiéguǒ	adv./n.	as a result, result
蚊子	wén.zi	n.	mosquito
叮	dīng	v.	sting; bite
脸	liǎn	n.	(said of people or animals) face
胳膊	gē.bo	n.	arm
包	bāo	n.	swelling; lump
问题	wèntí	n.	trouble; problem; question

学生：谈过好几次了。但是他总是把窗子开开，把空调关掉<sup>(8)</sup>。我们的关系越来越<sup>(9)</sup>紧张了。

老师：这件事，我真不知道<sup>(10)</sup>该怎么帮你的忙。你先到学校的医院去，让大夫看看吧！

好几…	hǎo jǐ…		quite a few 好几个人/好几天/好几杯咖啡
开开	kāi//.kāi	v.-c.	“open-open”; 打开; open; turn on 把窗户开开/把电视打开
关掉	guān//diào	v.-c.	turn off      把电视关掉
越来越…	yuè lái yuè…		more and more…
紧张	jǐnzhāng	adj.	tense; intense; strained
该	gāi	aux.	should; ought to; 应该
帮忙	bāng//máng	v.-o.	help 帮朋友的忙/帮我把那本书拿过来
医院	yīyuàn	n.	hospital
大夫	dài.fu	n.	physician; doctor

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén, Text in Traditional Characters)

學生：王老師，今天我覺得很不舒服，想請半天假，在宿舍裏休息休息。

老師：怎麼了<sup>(1)</sup>? 是不是病了?

學生：昨天晚上我吃了一碗牛肉麵，一塊西瓜。睡覺以前，肚子很疼，拉了好幾次，後來還吐了。

老師：也許你吃的東西不大<sup>(2)</sup>乾淨。發燒了沒有?

學生：燒倒<sup>(3)</sup>是<sup>(4)</sup>沒燒，可是沒睡好覺。這幾個星期我天天都睡不好，累極了。

老師：為什麼總睡不好呢？

學生：宿舍裏太熱了。

老師：不是有空調嗎(5)？

學生：我同屋不喜歡開空調，喜歡開窗。結果(6)屋子裏蚊子多得要命。昨天晚上我被叮了好幾次。你看，臉上、胳膊上都是包(7)。

老師：我不知道你們有這樣的問題。我看，你們得好兒談談。

學生：談過好幾次了。但是他總是把窗子開開，把空調關掉(8)。我們的關係越來越(9)緊張了。

老師：這件事，我真不知道(10)該怎麼幫你的忙。你先到學校的醫院去，讓大夫看看吧！

### 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn, Grammar Notes)

(1) 怎么了 means “what happened?” or “what’s the matter?.”

(2) 也许你吃的东西不大干净。

It could be that the things you ate were not very clean.

不大 means “not often,” “seldom,” “not too” or “not very.” It can be followed by an adjective, as in the above example, or it can be followed by a verb, such as 不大喜欢, 不大高兴, 不大明白。In this way, it has a similar meaning to 不太. However, 不大 also indicates that the subject does not meet a certain expectation. 太 can serve independently as “too” (太早, 太紧张, 太贵), whereas 大 cannot function independently without 不.

1. 我不大清楚邮局在哪儿，你最好去问问别人。

I don’t know exactly where the post office is. You’d better ask someone else.

2. 坐公共汽车不大方便，还是坐出租车吧！

It is not very convenient to get there by bus. Let’s take a taxi.

3. 他不大看电影。

He seldom watches movies.

4. 我不大想到那儿去。

I am not very keen on going there.

(3) 烧倒是没烧，可是没睡好觉。

I don't actually have fever, but I didn't sleep well.

倒是 is an adverb used to indicate that the outcome of something is exactly opposite to what it should be or what one has expected.

1. 到了北京以后，人人都很兴奋，我倒担心起来。

After arriving in Beijing, everybody got excited, but I started to worry.

2. 在北京，什么都很便宜，可是国际长途电话倒比美国贵得多。

Everything is very inexpensive in Beijing, but international calls are much more expensive than those in America.

(4) 烧倒是没烧，可是没睡好觉。

This pattern is the same as “...是...，可是...” in Lesson 2, Note (2).

倒是 is optional, 是 is also optional. Therefore, it is correct to say both “...是...，可是...” and “...倒...，可是....”

(5) 不是有空调吗？

Isn't there air conditioning in your dorm?

不是…吗 is a rhetorical question.

1. 你对海关的印象不是很好吗？

Don't you have a good impression of Chinese customs?

2. 校园里不是很安全吗？你为什么要住在学校外头呢？

Isn't the campus safe? Why do you want to live outside of the school?

(6) 他喜欢开窗。结果屋子里蚊子多得要命。

He likes to have the windows opened. As a result, there are an awful lot of mosquitoes in the room.

结果 is used as an adverb here, meaning “as a result” or “consequently.” Very often it introduces an undesirable result.

1. 他吃了不干净的东西，结果拉了好几天肚子。

He ate unclean food, and as a result, had diarrhea for several days.

2. 他请假请得太多，结果考试考得很差。

He asked for too many days leave, and as a result, he tested poorly on his examination.

(7) 我脸上、胳膊上都是包。

I have these (lumps) over my face and arms (and everywhere).

The pattern is: place word + 都是 + n.. The noun can be dropped if it is understood. This pattern implies exaggeration.

1. 她的书太多，桌子上、椅子上、床上都是。

She has too many books. They are on her desk, her chairs, her bed and everywhere.

2. 外头都是中国学生，怎么会没有机会说中国话呢？

There are a lot of Chinese students out there. How could there be no chance to speak Chinese?

(8) 他总是把窗子开开，把空调关掉。

He always opened the window, and turned off the air conditioning.

关掉 means “to turn off.” 掉 means “to fall off” or “to lose.” When used as a resultative complement, it indicates that the object does not exist any longer after the verb is completed; e.g. 把这块西瓜吃掉, 把电视关掉, 用掉了多少钱. Review these resultative complements from previous lessons: 打开, 睡着, 惯坏, 学好, 寄丢, 睡好, 开开.

(9) 我们的关系越来越紧张了。

Our relationship is becoming more and more strained.

越来越 functions as an adverbial indicating the increasing intensity in degree of the adjective following it.

1. 他努力学习，成绩越来越好。

He studies hard, and his grades are getting better and better.

2. 到中国来学中文的外国人越来越多了。

There are more and more foreigners coming to China to study Chinese.

越...越... is also used with words, phrases, or clauses to indicate that the second state of affairs advances in step with its preceding state.

3. 天气越热，用空调的人就越多。

The hotter it gets, the more people there are who use air conditioning.

4. 你练习得越多，就写得越好看。

The more you practice, the better you'll write.

(10) 我真不知道该怎么帮你的忙。

I really don't know how to help you.

What follows 知道 could be 1) a noun or a sentence; e.g. 他知道你的名字; 我不知道宿舍里没有空调; 2) a clause asking how, who, why, when, where, etc.; e.g. 你知道不知道老师什么时候来? 我真不知道该怎么帮你的忙; 3) (after the negative verb “不知道” only) a clause with “if” in English; e.g. I don't know if they sell scenery postcards. “我不知道他们卖不卖风景明信片。” Please note that you should use v. 不 v., v. 了没有, or 是 A 还是 B instead of using 要是 in a “S. do/does not know if ...” sentence.

1. 你知道不知道他们的关系为什么这么紧张?

Do you know why their relationship is so strained?

2. 我不知道她是中国还是美国人。

I don't know if she is Chinese or American.

3. 我不知道附近有没有邮局。你问问服务员吧!

I don't know if there is a post office nearby. Go ask the receptionist.

4. 我不知道飞机降落了没有。

I don't know if the airplane has landed or not.

## ✍ 练习 (liànxí, Exercise)

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures provided.

1. 你昨天不是还很好吗? 怎么今天病了呢? (…, 结果…)
2. 北京的生活怎么样? 你喜欢吗? (…得要命)
3. 你到北京来以后, 跟朋友说过英文吗? (…倒是…, 可是…)
4. 你常在校园外的小饭馆吃饭吗? (不大…, 因为)
5. 寄国际挂号比较快吗? (我不知道…)
6. 你跟你同屋的关系好不好? (越来越…)
7. 这间屋子怎么这么热? 空调不是已经开了吗? (以为, 把…)

8. 听说你昨天发烧了？（后来）

**II. Correct the underlined errors.**

1. 他越来越病了，得去看大夫。
2. 我昨天晚上拉了两个肚子，一夜都没睡好。
3. 请你把窗户关，屋子里的蚊子太多了。
4. 我们的关系是紧张，总是谈不来。
5. 明天我想请一天假，休一天息。

**III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你的同屋是不是把空调开得太冷 (lěng, cold) 了?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (倒是, 可是)
2. A: 你要明信片还是邮票?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (A, B 都…)
3. A: 我觉得有点儿冷。空调还开着吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (把 … v. 掉)
4. A: 你去过他的屋子吗? 他经常整理吗?  
B: 他的屋子太乱了! \_\_\_\_\_。 (place word + 都是 n.)

**IV. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Because of his fever, he took the morning off yesterday to see the campus doctor. However, he vomited and had diarrhea several times last night. As a result, he did not test (考试 [v.-o.], kǎoshì) well in class today.
2. There are an awful lot of mosquitoes in this dormitory, so I told the foreign affairs office that it would be better if we could turn on the air conditioning at night.
3. I know you cannot sleep well at night because your roommate goes to bed late. Over the past few days, I have been thinking about how to help you. As I see it, we have to talk over the matter with him thoroughly.

**V. Composition**

As an international student, would you prefer living with someone from your country, having a home stay with a Chinese family, or living with Chinese students in the dormitory? Can you point out the advantages and disadvantages of these three options?

## 第六课 睡午觉、喝热水

中国人多半儿在中饭以后睡个午觉。刚到北京的时候，我很不习惯。怎么<sup>(1)</sup>白天睡觉呢？不是太浪费时间了吗？但是两个星期以后，我自己<sup>(2)</sup>也睡起午觉来<sup>(3)</sup>了。

我们早上七点半就开始上课，中饭以后已经<sup>(4)</sup>很累了。休息半个小时，让我下午和晚上都比较有精神。怪不得<sup>(6)</sup>中国人大多有睡午觉的习惯。

一般说来，中国人喜欢喝热茶，很少喝冰水。夏天

---

午觉	wǔjiào	n.	afternoon nap
白天	báitān	n.	daytime; day
浪费	làngfèi	v./adj.	waste; squander, extravagant 浪费时间/浪费钱/太浪费了
自己	zìjǐ	pron.	oneself 你自己/我自己/他自己
精神	jīng.shen	n.	vigor; vitality; spirit
有精神	yǒu jīng.shen	adj.	vigorous 很有精神/没有什么精神
怪不得	guài.bu.de	conj.	no wonder; so that's why
大多	dàduō	adv.	for the most part; mostly
茶	chá	n.	tea
很少	hěnshǎo	adv.	seldom
冰水	bīngshuǐ	n.	ice water      冰: ice

喝热水，对我来说，简直是受罪！但是因为中国的自来水不能直接喝，要喝到凉开水并<sup>(7)</sup>不容易。每天买矿泉水不但贵也不方便，所以最近我学着<sup>(8)</sup>喝热水瓶里的热水，有时也泡茶。没想到<sup>(9)</sup>喝了几天以后，我也习惯了，而且觉得热水并不难喝呢！

---

受罪	shòu//zuì	v.-o.	endure hardships, tortures, rough condition, etc.; have a hard time 受: receive; suffer 罪: sin; hardship
自来水	zìlái shuǐ	n.	tap water
直接	zhíjíē	adv.	directly
凉	liáng	adj.	cold; cool
开水	kāishuǐ	n.	boiled water
容易	róngyì	adj.	easy
矿泉水	kuàngquánshuǐ	n.	mineral water 矿泉: mineral spring
贵	guì	adj.	expensive
最近	zuijìn	adv.	recently
学	xué	v.	imitate; mimic
热水瓶	rèshuǐpíng	n.	thermos bottle 瓶: bottle
有时	yǒushí	adv.	有时候; sometimes; at times; now and then 我常常喝冰水，有时也喝热茶。
泡茶	pào//chá	v.-o.	make tea 泡: brew
没想到	méi xiǎngdào	adv.	unexpectedly

---

各地有各地的习惯，这都是有原因的。我们到一个新地方，不应该再坚持自己原来的生活方式，得向<sup>(10)</sup>当地人学习才行。

各 n.	gè	adj.	each; every 各人有各人的想法。
原因	yuányīn	n.	reason; cause
坚持	jiānchí	v.	insist on; persist in
原来	yuánlái	adj.	original, former
生活	shēnghuó	n.	life
方式	fāngshì	n.	pattern; fashion; way
向	xiàng	prep.	from
当地	dāngdì	p.w.	local; in the locality

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

中國人多半儿在中飯以後睡個午覺。剛到北京的時候，我很不習慣。怎麼<sup>(1)</sup>白天睡覺呢？不是太浪費時間了嗎？但是兩個星期以後，我自己<sup>(2)</sup>也睡起午覺來<sup>(3)</sup>了。

我們早上七點半就開始上課，中飯以後已經<sup>(4)</sup>很累了。休息半個小時，讓<sup>(5)</sup>我下午和晚上都比較有精神。怪不得<sup>(6)</sup>中國人大多有睡午覺的習慣。

一般說來，中國人喜歡喝熱茶，很少喝冰水。夏天喝熱水，對我來說，簡直是受罪！但是因為中國的自來水不能直接喝，要喝到涼開水並<sup>(7)</sup>不容易。每天買礦泉水不但貴也不方便，所以最近我學著<sup>(8)</sup>喝熱水

瓶裏的熱水，有時也泡茶。沒想到(9)喝了幾天以後，我也習慣了，而且覺得熱水並不難喝呢！

各地有各地的習慣，這都是有原因的。我們到一個新地方，不應該再堅持自己原來的生活方式，得向(10)當地人學習才行。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

### (1) 怎么白天睡觉呢？

How come they sleep during the day?

怎么 here indicates puzzlement.

1. 你怎么不在屋子里看书？怎么到这儿来了？

How come you are not studying in your room? Why did you come here?

2. 怎么？他到现在还没有中文名字吗？

What? He still doesn't have a Chinese name?

### (2) 两个星期以后，我自己也睡起午觉来了。

After two weeks, I too began taking afternoon naps.

自己 is a reflexive pronoun. It often follows a pronoun and is used for emphasis.

1. 你不信我的话？那你自己去看看！

You don't believe me? Then go and see for yourself!

2. 这是你自己的事，我怎么能帮你的忙？

This is your own business. How can I help?

### (3) 两个星期以后，我自己也睡起午觉来了。

起来, following a verb or adjective used as the predicate in a sentence, means “to start to” or “to become.” When there is an object following the verb, the pattern is *v. 起 o. 来*.

1. 她小时候不怎么样，长大了却漂亮起来了。

She was nothing special when she was little, but she is a lot prettier now that she's older.

2. 不知道为什么，他生起气来了。

I don't know why he got angry.

(4) 中饭以后已经很累了。

After lunch I was already exhausted.

Usually 已经 indicates that an action has been completed. Here it indicates that the topic has already reached a certain degree, or implies that one can not do better or more. It can modify negative phrases.

1. 他已经快累死了，最好别叫他整理屋子了。

He is already exhausted. You'd best not ask him to tidy up his room.

2. 我已经很忙了，没时间做别的事了。

I am already quite busy. I don't have time for anything else.

3. 写得对已经不容易了，要写得好就更难了。

It is already hard to write correctly. It is even harder to write so that it looks good.

(5) 休息半个小时，让我下午和晚上都比较有精神。

Resting for half an hour makes me more energetic in the afternoon and evening.

In this context 让 means "to make (a situation happen)."

1. 那么多学生迟到，让老师很生气。

The fact that so many students were late made the teacher very angry.

2. 他又吐又拉肚子，让他父母非常担心。

He was vomiting and has diarrhea, making his parents very worried.

(6) 怪不得中国人大多有睡午觉的习惯。

No wonder most Chinese people are used to taking afternoon naps.

怪不得 most often modifies subject-predicate constructions or verbal phrases. The explanation may either precede or follow 怪不得.

1. 怪不得他天天到图书馆去，下星期就要考试了。

No wonder he goes to the library everyday. The exam is next week.

2. 早上七点半就开始上课了，怪不得学生都累得要命。

The class starts at 7:30 in the morning; no wonder the students are all extremely tired.

(7) 要喝到凉开水不容易。

It is not that easy to get cold water.

并 is used before a negative form to indicate that a fact is not as one may think or expect. It can also be used to emphasize negative verbal phrases.

1. 打国际长途电话并没有想像中那么贵。

It is not as expensive as you might imagine to make an international call.

2. 邮局并不远，可以走路去。

The post office is not far. You can walk there.

(8) 最近我学着喝热水瓶里的热水。

I am learning to drink hot water from a thermos.

着 is used after a verb to indicate that an action is in progress; it is often used in conjunction with 正, 在, or similar adverbs.

1. 我到的时候，他正跟同屋谈着呢！

He was talking with his roommate when I arrived.

2. 我一进去，所有的人就都看着我。

As soon as I entered, everyone was looking at me.

(9) 没想到喝了几天以后，我也习惯了。

Surprisingly, after drinking it for a few days, I got used to it too.

When 没想到 is preceded with a person or a personal pronoun as subject, e.g. 我没想到, 张先生没想到, it means “didn't expect.” 我没想到 he tomorrow 要来 means “I didn't expect that he would come tomorrow.” It can also be used as an adverbial meaning “surprisingly” or “unexpectedly.” In this case, 没想到 usually modifies a fulfilled event and comes before the subject.

1. 没想到北京是一个这么现代化的城市。

I never thought that Beijing would be such a modern city.

2. 没想到我们的宿舍非常大。

Unexpectedly, our dorm was very big.

(10) 我们不应该再坚持自己原来的生活方式，得向当地人学习才行。

We shouldn't insist on maintaining our original way of living; instead, we ought to learn from the locals.

向 means “(to try to get something) from.” It can be replaced by 跟.

1. 他向父母要了很多钱，打算买一辆车。

He asked for a lot of money from his parents to buy a car.

2. 中国每年都向外国买很多飞机、汽车。

China buys many airplanes and cars from foreign countries every year.

## 练习 (liànxí)

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 在中国生活，除了喝热水以外，你有没有别的困难？（让）
2. 你现在有睡午觉的习惯吗？你认为睡午觉有什么好处？
3. 在中国的时候，你经常喝热茶吗？（大多，很少）
4. 你在中国和在美国的生活方式完全一样吗？（v. 起 o. 来）
5. 你觉得晚上睡觉的时候非开空调不可吗？（并不坚持）

### II. Make a sentence using the underlined expression.

1. 夏天喝热水，对我来说，简直是受罪！
2. 我最近学着喝热水瓶里的热水，有时也泡茶。
3. 我们到了一个新地方，得向当地人学习才行。
4. 休息半个小时，让我下午和晚上都比较有精神。

### III. Choose the correct answer.

1. 我到了中国以后，也学中国人\_\_\_\_\_了。

- ① 喝热茶起来 ② 喝起来热茶
- ③ 喝起热茶来 ④ 喝了起来热茶

2. 对我来说，喝冰水\_\_\_\_\_。

- ① 比较喝热水舒服 ② 比较舒服
- ③ 比喝热水不舒服 ④ 一点儿舒服

3. 要是你一天拉了好几次，那得去看大夫\_\_\_\_\_行。

- ① 才 ② 就 ③ 只 ④ 倒

4. 他坚持自己\_\_\_\_\_的做法，不想向别人学习。

- ① 原来 ② 大多 ③ 多半儿 ④ 好好儿

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你为什么不让外事处的人带你到邮局去?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (已经…了, 照顾)

2. A: 我昨天晚上两点才睡觉。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (怪不得)

3. A: 每天到饭馆儿吃饭不是很方便吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (并)

4. A: 你现在有个中国朋友了, 可以经常跟他说中文了!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (以为, 没想到)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Since coming to China, the thing that bothers me most is that I can't drink cold boiled water (喝不到). At first I bought mineral water every day, but it was very expensive. Now I cannot do anything but switch to drinking hot water in a thermos.

2. Yesterday the air conditioner in our classroom broke (坏了, huàile). Not having air conditioning during the summer is simply torture for me. About 10 minutes after the class started, the students began to fall asleep. Unexpectedly, the teacher thought that we didn't like her class and started to lose her temper (生起气来).

3. A: How come you make tea so well?

B: There is a good reason. I lived in China for ten years and learned their method of making tea from one of my Chinese friends.

A: No wonder you know how to make tea.

**VI. Composition**

Chinese people don't drink ice water, but Americans do. When one gets sick, Americans recommend drinking huge amounts of orange juice, while Chinese mothers keep their children from eating any oranges. Chinese people cook vegetables before they eat them, and Americans love eating raw vegetable salads. Can you find any other similar examples? Why do people in different places have such different philosophies about life? Can you say that one is right and the other is wrong?

## 第七课 洗衣服

住在中国大学宿舍里，最不方便的一件事就是(1)洗衣服。许多宿舍到现在(2)还没有洗衣机，衣服得用手洗。洗好了，还得用衣架晾在房间里或者阳台上。在美国我从来没用手洗过衣服。留学生宿舍虽然有洗衣机，但是很小。洗衣服的人很多，得排队等，非常浪费时间。烘干机在中国还不太普遍，洗好的衣服都得晾在屋子里。我不习惯把自己的内衣、内裤晾出来让大家

---

衣服	yī.fú	<i>n.</i>	clothes; clothing 一件(jiàn)衣服
洗衣机	xǐyījī	<i>n.</i>	washing machine 机: 机器(jīqì); machine
衣架	yījià	<i>n.</i>	clothes hanger; coat hanger
晾	liàng	<i>v.</i>	air dry; dry in the sun
阳台	yángtái	<i>n.</i>	balcony; patio
排队	pái//duì	<i>v.-o.</i>	line up; form a line
等	děng	<i>v.</i>	wait
烘干机	hōnggān jī	<i>n.</i>	dryer (for drying wet clothes)
普遍	pǔbiàn	<i>adj.</i>	widespread; general; common
内衣	nèiyī	<i>n.</i>	underwear; undergarments
内裤	nèikù	<i>n.</i>	underpants; undershorts
大家	dàjiā	<i>n.</i>	everyone

看见，这让我觉得很不好意思。

洗碗机在中国就更不普遍了。到现在，我还没看见过中国人家里用洗碗机。盘子、杯子、筷子、勺儿、刀子、叉子、锅都得用手洗，所以吃完饭以后，洗碗是一件很麻烦的事儿。我宁可买菜、做饭，也不<sup>(3)</sup>愿意洗碗。

中国的家用电器没有美国的那么多，也没有美国的那么普遍，在日常生活上<sup>(4)</sup>当然也就没有美国那么方

---

不好意思	bùhǎoyì.si	<i>adj.</i>	embarrassed
洗碗机	xǐwǎnjī	<i>n.</i>	dishwasher
盘子	pán.zi	<i>n.</i>	plate; dish; tray
杯子	bēi.zi	<i>n.</i>	cup; glass
筷子	kuài.zi	<i>n.</i>	chopsticks 一双 (shuāng) 筷子
勺儿	sháor	<i>n.</i>	spoon; ladle
刀子	dāo.zi	<i>n.</i>	knife 一把刀子
叉子	chā.zi	<i>n.</i>	fork 一支叉子/一把叉子
锅	guō	<i>n.</i>	pot; pan; cauldron, etc.
洗碗	xǐ/wǎn	<i>v.-o.</i>	clean the dishes (after a meal)
麻烦	má.fan	<i>adj.</i>	troublesome; inconvenient
宁可	nìngkě	<i>conj.</i>	would rather
愿意	yuàn.yì	<i>aux.</i>	be willing to
家用电器	jiāyòng diànpì	<i>n.</i>	household appliances
日常生活	rìcháng shēnghuó	<i>adj.</i>	daily life

便。但是用手洗衣服、洗碗，节省了许多水和电，对(5)保护环境是很有好处的(6)。

节省	jiéshěng	v.	economize; save; use sparingly 节省时间
电	dìan	n.	electricity
保护	bǎohù	v.	protect
环境	huánjìng	n.	environment

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

住在中國大學宿舍裏，最不方便的一件事就是(1)洗衣服。許多宿舍到現在(2)還沒有洗衣機，衣服得用手洗。洗好了，還得用衣架晾在房間裏或者陽臺上。在美國我從來沒用手洗過衣服。留學生宿舍雖然有洗衣機，但是很小。洗衣服的人很多，得排隊等，非常浪費時間。烘乾機在中國還不太普遍，洗好的衣服都得晾在屋子裏。我不習慣把自己的內衣、內褲晾出來讓大家看見，這讓我覺得很不好意思。

洗碗機在中國就更不普遍了。到現在，我還沒看見過中國人家裏用洗碗機。盤子、杯子、筷子、勺兒、刀子、叉子、鍋都得用手洗，所以吃完飯以後，洗碗是一件很麻煩的事兒。我寧可買菜、做飯，也不(3)願意洗碗。

中國的家用電器沒有美國的那麼多，也沒有美國的那麼普遍，在日常生活上(4)當然也就沒有美國那麼方便。但是用手洗衣服、洗碗，節省了許多水和電，對(5)保護環境是很有好處的(6)。

## 语 法 点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

(1) 住在中国大学宿舍里，最不方便的一件事就是洗衣服。

When living in a student dormitory in China, the most inconvenient thing is washing clothes.

就 used before 是, 像, 在 indicates the affirmative attitude of the speaker. 就 is stressed when spoken.

1. 那就是他的家，没错。

That is where he lives; I am pretty sure.

2. 我就是不喜欢开空调！你要是睡不好，就到别的地方去睡！

I just don't like to use the air conditioning! If you can't sleep well without it, just go sleep somewhere else!

3. 住在留学生宿舍里，简直就像住在旅馆里一样，舒服极了。

Living in the foreign students' dorm is just like living in a hotel; it is very comfortable.

4. 邮局就在公园儿对面，我已经去过好几次了。

The post office is right across from the park. I've been there several times already.

(2) 许多宿舍到现在还没有洗衣机，衣服得用手洗。

Up to these days, many dormitories have no washing machine. You have to wash clothes by hand.

到现在 means “up to the present,” “until now,” or “so far.”

1. 我去年开始学中文，到现在已经学了一年半了。

I started studying Chinese last year. So far, I've already studied for a year and a half.

2. 到现在一切都很顺利，您不用担心。

Everything is great so far. You don't need to worry .

(3) 我宁可买菜、做饭，也不愿意洗碗。

I would rather shop for food and cook than clean the dishes.

宁可 generally occurs after the subject and indicates a preference which may not be totally satisfactory after weighing the pros and cons. The clause after 也不 explains what the speaker gives up.

1. 我宁可住小一点儿的屋子，也不愿意没有空调。  
I'd rather live in a smaller room than have no air conditioning.
2. 我宁可多花一点儿钱坐出租汽车，也不要迟到。  
I'd rather spend a little more money taking a taxi than be late.

(4) 中国的家用电器没有美国的那么多，也没有美国那么普遍，在日常生活上当然也就没有美国那么方便。

In China, appliances are not as numerous nor as widely used as in America; of course, in terms of daily life, it is not as convenient as in America.

在…上 is often used as an adverbial phrase meaning “in a certain aspect;” for example, 在生活上 “in life,” 在学习上 “in one's studies.”

1. 我在北京住了两个月，在日常生活上已经没什么问题了。

I have been in Beijing for two months. I already have no problem with daily life.

2. 在生活方式上，各地有各地的习惯，都是有原因的。

In terms of living style, everyplace has its own customs, and all with good reason.

(5) 用手洗衣服、洗碗，节省了许多水和电，对保护环境是很有好处的。

One saves a lot of water and electricity by washing clothes and dishes by hand. It is beneficial to the protection of the environment.

When the predicate of a sentence is a v.-o. phrase such as 有帮助, 有好处, 对 is used to prepose the recipient of the v.-o. phrase. See L. 1, Note (4).

1. 我不觉得早起早睡对身体健康有什么好处。

I don't think that getting up early and going to bed early are beneficial to one's health.

2. 听录音带对学习语言特别有帮助。

Listening to tapes is especially helpful in studying a foreign language.

(6) 用手洗衣服、洗碗，节省了许多水和电，对保护环境是很有好处的。

This 是…的 construction is different from the one indicates when, where, with whom and by what means in the past; e.g. “我是上个月来的。”“你是坐火车来的吗？” This 是…的 with a verb phrase inserted is used to indicate that the speaker is very affirmative about what is happening.

1. 自来水是不能直接喝的。

Tap water is not drinkable directly.

2. 你该把这件事告诉外事处的张先生，他是肯定会帮你的忙的。

You should tell this to Mr. Zhang of the Foreign Affairs Office. He will definitely help you.

## 练习 (liànxí)

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 你觉得住在外国最不方便的事儿是什么？（就是）

2. 洗衣机、电视、空调、电话、毛巾、自己的浴室，宿舍里应该有哪些？（更）

3. 把衣服晾在阳台上不是很好吗？（不好意思）

4. 你愿意排队等着用洗衣机还是用手洗衣服？为什么？  
（宁可…，也不…）

5. 你愿意买菜、做饭，还是饭后洗碗？为什么？

（宁可…，也不…）

6. 我们要节省水电、保护环境，所以就不应该用洗衣机、烘干机、空调这些东西，对不对？（虽然…，可是…）

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

晾 排 麻烦 愿意 不好意思 节省 保护 浪费 普遍

1. 队\_\_\_\_\_得这么长，我看，我们别坐公共汽车了！

2. 海关的检查很严，是因为要\_\_\_\_\_大家的安全。

3. 用手洗衣服，不但很\_\_\_\_\_，而且太\_\_\_\_\_时间了。
4. 本来中国人多半儿喝茶，可现在喝咖啡也越来越\_\_\_\_\_了。
5. 你出去的时候，请把空调关上，这样才可以\_\_\_\_\_电。
6. 我不是不\_\_\_\_\_帮你的忙，而是没时间帮你的忙。
7. 我\_\_\_\_\_让别人看见我的内衣内裤，所以总是\_\_\_\_\_在浴室里。

**III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 这个中国字的意思我不懂，能不能问问老师?  
B: 当然，\_\_\_\_\_。 (是…的)
2. A: 你怎么也有了睡午觉的习惯了?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (对…有好处)
3. A: 听说那个宿舍很差，又没有热水，又没有电话。  
B: 是啊! \_\_\_\_\_。 (宁可…，也不…)
4. A: 你到了北京多长时间了？有没有什么困难?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (到现在，在…上)

**IV. Translate into Chinese.**

1. I had dinner at my Chinese friend's house yesterday. There were only 4 of us, but I spent more than half an hour helping them clean the bowls, dishes, chopsticks, and spoons afterwards because they had no dishwasher.
2. I have never washed clothes by hand. Surprisingly, there was no washing machine in the hotel. I had to wash everything by hand and then air dry them on the balcony. I was really embarrassed when my friend came over and saw my underwear.
3. Please turn off the TV and air conditioning when you leave (离开 líkāi) your room. Everyone should learn how to save electricity and protect the environment, especially in this modern society.

**V. Composition**

What do you think of your dormitory? Are you satisfied with the facilities? While both serve as temporary dwelling places, a hotel and a dormitory are not the same. What are the differences? Should a good dormitory be like a hotel? Write about your impression of your dorm both in China and at your home institution.

## 第八课 理发

来北京三个多星期了，还没理过发，头发又长又乱。上个周末，我决定去附近的一家理发店理个<sup>(1)</sup>发。

学校附近的理发店很多，有的叫发廊，有的叫美发馆，就是<sup>(2)</sup>没有叫理发店的。据说理发店的名字太

---

理发	lǐ/fà	v.-o.	(of men) get a haircut; (of women) go to the hairdresser's 你的头发太长了，该理了。
头发	tóu.fā	n.	hair
乱	luàn	adj.	in disorder; in a mess 房间很乱/字写得很乱
周末	zhōumò	n.	weekend
决定	juédìng	v./n.	decide, decision
家	jīā	AN	measure word for business establishments 一家书店/两家饭馆儿
店	diàn	n.	shop; store 这家店/饭店/书店/鞋店/服装店
叫	jiào	v.	be called as, call 你叫什么名字? 我们都叫他“花花公子”。
发廊	fàláng	n.	barbershop; hairdresser's 廊: gallery; a room or building devoted to the exhibition of works of art
美发馆	měifàguǎn	n.	“beautify-hair store”- barbershop; hairdresser's 馆: shops 饭馆/咖啡馆/理发馆

“土”了，“发廊”或者“美发馆”就洋气得多。中国人在服装和容貌上似乎都喜欢带点儿“洋气”。

“洋”就是<sup>(3)</sup>外国，跟“土”相反<sup>(4)</sup>。中国服装店里的模特儿和理发店里的照片儿，都是外国人，我看了觉得很有趣。

上星期我去的那家理发店，叫做<sup>(5)</sup>发廊，设备很

---

土	tǔ	<i>adj.</i>	rustic; lacking in social graces or polish 他刚从农村来的时候土得很，现在可不一样了。
洋气	yáng.qì	<i>adj.</i>	in an ostentatious Western style; stylish 买这件吧！这件比较洋气。
服装	fúzhuāng	<i>n.</i>	dress; clothing
容貌	róngmào	<i>n.</i>	facial features; appearance; looks
似乎	sìhū	<i>adv.</i>	as if; seemingly
带	dài	<i>v.</i>	bear; have (certain air, appearance, or unique feature) 带着不太高兴的样子/带一点儿土气
相反	xiāngfǎn	<i>adj.</i>	opposite
模特儿	mótèr	<i>n.</i>	human figure used to display clothes or other merchandise; model
照片儿	zhàopiānr	<i>n.</i>	photo; picture
有趣	yǒuqù	<i>adj.</i>	interesting
设备	shèbèi	<i>n.</i>	equipment; facility

现代化，服务也很周到。除了理发、洗头和刮胡子以外，他们还问我要不要按摩、剪手指甲，我没想到理发店里还有按摩的服务。理发的师傅很和气，也很愿意和我聊天儿。可惜(6)我的中文不够好，只能聊些简单的事儿。

和美国比起来(7)，在北京理发便宜得多，而且不必(8)给小费。

服务	fúwù	n./v.	service, serve; give service to 为学生服务
周到	zhōu.dào	adj.	attentive and satisfactory; thoughtful
洗头	xǐ//tóu	v.-o.	wash one's hair; shampoo one's hair
胡子	hú.zi	n.	beard
刮胡子	guā//hú.zi	v.-o.	shave one's beard
按摩	ànmó	v.	massage
剪	jiǎn	v.	cut (with scissors); clip; trim
手指甲	shǒuzhī.jia	n.	fingernail
师傅	shī.fu	n.	a term used to address a skilled craftsman such as a taxi driver, shoemaker, chef, etc.
和气	hé.qì	adj.	friendly; polite; amiable
聊天儿	liáo//tiānr	v.-o.	chat 跟/和老朋友聊天
可惜	kěxī	adv.	it's a pity; it's too bad
不必	búbì	adv.	need not; not have to
小费	xiǎofèi	n.	tip; gratuity

## ★繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

來北京三個多星期了，還沒理過髮，頭髮又長又亂。上個週末，我決定去附近的一家理髮店理個<sup>(1)</sup>髮。學校附近的理髮店很多，有的叫髮廊，有的叫美髮館，就是<sup>(2)</sup>沒有叫理髮店的。據說理髮店的名字太“土”了，“髮廊”或者“美髮館”就洋氣得多。中國人在服裝和容貌上似乎都喜歡帶點兒“洋氣”。

“洋”就是<sup>(3)</sup>外國，跟“土”相反<sup>(4)</sup>。中國服裝店裏的模特兒和理髮店裏的照片兒，都是外國人，我看了覺得很有趣。

上星期我去的那家理髮店，叫做<sup>(5)</sup>髮廊，設備很現代化，服務也很周到。除了理髮、洗頭和刮鬍子以外，他們還問我要不要按摩、剪手指甲，我沒想到理髮店裏還有按摩的服務。理髮的師傅很和氣，也很願意和我聊天兒。可惜<sup>(6)</sup>我的中文不夠好，只能聊些簡單的事。

和美國比起來<sup>(7)</sup>，在北京理髮便宜得多，而且不必<sup>(8)</sup>給小費。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

(1) 上个周末，我决定去附近的一家理发店理个发。

Last weekend, I decided to get a haircut in a barbershop nearby.

This 个, used between a *v.-o.* construction, is still a measure word; for example: 洗个澡, 睡个好觉. It can be used to modify something uncountable to give it a colloquial tone.

1. 我太累了, 只想洗个澡, 睡个好觉。

I am so tired that the only thing I want is to take a bath and have a sound sleep.

2. 我实在太忙了, 连跟朋友说个话的时间都没有。

I am indeed too busy to even have time to talk with friends.

(2) 学校附近的理发店很多, 有的叫发廊, 有的叫美发馆, 就是没有叫理发店的。

There are many barbershops near the school. Some are called 发廊, some are called 美发馆, but none is called 理发店.

就是, meaning “just, only,” is used before a verb phrase here to give it a strong tone by confining the action. 就是 must be stressed when spoken. See L. 7, Note (1).

1. 我信封、信纸都买了, 就是忘了买邮票。

I've bought envelopes and letter paper, but I forgot the stamps.

2. 真奇怪, 这家饭馆儿里有汽水, 有热茶, 就是没有冰水。

It is weird that this restaurant has soda and hot tea but no ice water.

(3) “洋” 就是外国, 跟“土”相反。

“洋” means “foreign,” and is opposite to “rustic.”

This 就是, meaning “is exactly,” is used when the speaker wants to explain the subject.

1. “理发” 就是 “剪头发”。

“理发” means exactly the same as “剪头发.”

2. “家用电器”就是在家里常用的电器，像洗衣机、洗碗机、烘干机什么的。

“家用电器” means appliances that are often used at home, such as washing machine, dishwasher, and dryer, etc..

(4) “洋”就是外国，跟“土”相反。

“洋” means “foreign,” and is opposite to “rustic.”

相反 means “opposite.” Note that the pattern is always A 跟 B 相反. The opposite of 相反 is 相同. 相反 can also be used as an adverb to modify a clause.

1. 我的看法跟你的相反。

My opinion is contrary to yours.

2. “迟到”跟“晚到”的意思相同，跟“早到”相反。

迟到 means the same as 晚到, and is just opposite of 早到.

3. 他应该住在便宜的留学生宿舍里，相反的，他却住了一家很贵的旅馆里。

He should stay in a cheap foreign student dormitory, but contrarily, he stays in an expensive hotel.

(5) 我去的那家理发店，叫做发廊。

The barbershop that I went to is called 发廊.

叫做 is always used in passive voice, the pattern is “S. 叫做 ….” It is in active voice when it is used with 把 construction, e.g. S. 把 O. 叫做… . The difference between 叫 and 叫做 is that 叫 can be used in both active and passive voice.

1. 有时候卖画的地方也叫做画廊。

Sometimes a store where paintings are sold is also called “gallery.”

2. 美国人把男人去的理发店叫做 barbershop, 把女人去的叫做 hairdresser's。

Americans call the barbershop which men go to “barbershop” and which women go to “hairdressers.”

(6) 可惜我的中文不够好，只能聊些简单的事。

It's pity that my Chinese is not good enough. I can only talk about simple things.

可惜, when used as an adverb, appears at the beginning of a sentence and means “it's pity that...” or “it's too bad that....” It can be used as an adjective also.

1. 听说他唱得很好, 可惜我没听到。

It is said that he sings really well. It's pity that I didn't hear him sing.

2. 把这么好的衣服丢掉, 太可惜了。

It's pity to throw away these clothes that are still so nice.

3. 我觉得最可惜的事就是我们没去那家有名的饭馆吃饭。

I think that the worst part is that we didn't go to eat at that famous restaurant.

(7) 和美国比起来, 在北京理发便宜得多。

Compared to America, getting a haircut in Beijing is much cheaper.

和…比起来 is an adverbial phrase; it must be followed by a complete sentence. There is no negative form.

1. 和我的中学比起来, 这个大学大得多。

Compared to my high school, this university is much bigger.

2. 我觉得和那家发廊比起来, 这家的服务好得多。

I think that this barbershop's service is much better compared to the service of that one.

(8) 在北京理发便宜得多, 而且不必给小费。

It is much cheaper to get a haircut in Beijing, and one doesn't need to tip.

Note that the positive form of 不必 is 得, not 必.

1. A: 我得回家去了!

B: 你不必这么早回去, 再坐一会儿吧!

A: I have to go home now.

B: You don't need to go home so early. Please stay for a while longer.

2. A: 校园里安全不安全啊?

B: 安全得很, 您不必担心。

A: Is the campus safe?

B: It is very safe. You don't need to worry.

练习 (liànxí)

I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 你到了北京以后，去过邮局吗？坐过公共汽车吗？理过发吗？按摩过没有？（就是）
2. 校园里的学生食堂好不好？（和…比起来）
3. 你跟你同屋的关系很紧张，是怎么回事？  
（除了…以外，还…）
4. 你去了服装店，怎么没买衣服呢？（可惜）
5. 在饭馆吃了饭以后，一定给小费吗？（得，不必）

II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

个 跟 就 化

1. 我觉得把内衣晾在阳台上让我很不好意思，他却 \_\_\_\_\_ 我相反，觉得这没什么关系。
2. 中饭以后，要是能睡 \_\_\_\_\_ 午觉，那就太好了。
3. 我真没想到他们的设备这么现代 \_\_\_\_\_。
4. “土” \_\_\_\_\_ 是不够洋气，很多人不喜欢土的东西。

III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 你后天就要上飞机了，该带的东西都买好了吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。（什么都…，就是…）
2. A: 听说那家发廊的服务又好，师傅又很和气，我想明天去理发，你跟我一块儿去吧！  
B: 我很想去，\_\_\_\_\_。（可惜）
3. A: 附近的服装店里很少看到中国服装，这是怎么回事?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。（据说，在…上）
4. A: 在中国，很多人用洗碗机吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。（和…比起来）
5. A: 洗碗机只能洗碗吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。（把…叫做…；除了…以外，还…）

**IV. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Your hair is both too long and messy. I think that you'd better get a hair cut. You may go to the barbershop across from the school. Their service is wonderful (use 周到), and besides cutting your hair, they may also give you a message. The best thing is that you don't need to tip them.
2. I am not used to getting a shave in a barbershop, not to mention a nail trim. The barbershop is good, but I'd rather do such small things by myself.
3. The foreign students' dormitory is well facilitated and the foreign affairs office takes good care of the students. It seems that my life here as a foreign student is even better compared to my life in my college in the States.

**V. Composition**

Write about some new experiences in daily life you have had as a foreign student in China. For example: dining in little restaurant nearby, going to the post office, doing laundry, getting a haircut. Do you find everything is as convenient as in America? If not, why? What do you think about tipping? Do you think that Chinese people should also tip when they are well served?

## 第九课 去银行换钱

### (一) 在出租汽车上

司机：去哪儿啊？

学生：王府井中国银行。

司机：您要怎么走啊？二环还是城里？

学生：走城里近点儿。

司机：近是近点儿，可是路堵得厉害<sup>(1)</sup>。走二环快得多。

学生：那就走二环吧！我最怕堵车。在北京常常一堵

就是一个小时<sup>(2)</sup>。在车上什么事都<sup>(3)</sup>不能做，

---

银行	yínháng	n.	bank
出租汽车	chūzū qìchē	n.	taxi   租: rent
司机	sījī	n.	driver (use 师傅 shī.fu when directly addressing a driver)
王府井	Wángfǔjǐng	n.	Wangfujing, Beijing's most famous business area
二环	Èrhuán	n.	Second Ring Road
堵	dǔ	v.	stop up; block up
厉害	lì.hài	adv./adj.	terribly, terrible; severe
堵车	dǔ//chē	v.-o.	have a traffic jam

真急死人了。

司机：糟糕！今天连二环都(4)堵车。

学生：真没想到！也许坐车还不如(5)骑自行车快呢！

司机：最近几年，北京的汽车越来越多，许多人都买了私家车，可是北京道路的发展却赶不上汽车的增加，所以交通堵塞就一天比一天(6)严重了。

急	jí	v.	worry; make anxious; make impatient
…死人	…sǐrén	adv.	extremely; …to death 气死人/热死人
糟糕	zāogāo	interj.	how terrible; what bad luck; too bad 糟糕！我的钱丢了。
连…都…	lián…dōu …	conj.	even
不如	bùrú	v.	not equal to; not as good as
骑	qí	v.	ride (an animal or a bicycle)
自行车	zìxíngchē	n.	bicycle
私家车	sījiāchē	n.	private car
道路	dàolù	n.	road; way
发展	fāzhǎn	v./n	develop, development
赶不上	gǎn.bu shàng	v.-c.	cannot catch up with 我的中文赶不上他的。
增加	zēngjiā	v./n.	add; increase; raise
交通	jiāotōng	n.	traffic
堵塞	dǔsè	v.	block up; stop up
交通堵塞	jiāotōng dǔsè	n.	traffic jam
严重	yánzhòng	adj.	(said of illness, situation) serious

学生：像今天这样堵<sup>(7)</sup>，我宁可<sup>(8)</sup>走路。

司机：快到了！快到了！

学生：再过半个小时银行就要关门了！

司机：过了红绿灯就是中国银行了，我看你就在这儿下车吧！走过去快一点儿。

学生：好吧<sup>(9)</sup>好吧！多少钱？

司机：三十二块八毛。

学生：麻烦您<sup>(10)</sup>给张发票。

司机：好的。这是您的发票。您慢走<sup>(11)</sup>。

## (二) 在银行里

学生：请问，在哪儿能换人民币啊？

走路	zǒu//lù	v.-o.	walk; go on foot 走路到学校去/走路去学校
过	guò	v.	spend (time); pass (time duration) 他过两天就回来了。/时间过得很快。
关门	guān//mén	v.-o.	(said of stores, offices, etc.) close 这儿的商店六点钟关门。
红绿灯	hónglǜdēng	n.	traffic light
下车	xià//chē	v.-o.	get out of (a car) 上车: get in (a car); get on (a bus, train)
麻烦	má.fan	v.	bother; to trouble somebody
发票	fāpiào	n.	bill; receipt
人民币	rénmínbì	n.	RMB; <i>Renminbi</i> , Chinese monetary unit

职员：二楼，五号窗口。

.....

学生：您好，我要换五百块美元。

职员：先填单子。

学生：填好了。这样行吗？

职员：您要换现金还是旅行支票？

学生：旅行支票。

职员：请您在支票上签字。有护照吗？

学生：有。这是我的支票，字也签好了。

职员：这是您的钱。请您点清楚。

职员	zhíyuán	n.	office worker; staff member
楼	lóu	n.	story; floor; a multi-storied building 你住在几楼？我住在三楼。
美元	měiyuán	n.	U.S. dollar
单子	dān.zi	n.	form; list
现金	xiànjīn	n.	cash
旅行	lǚxíng	v.	travel
支票	zhīpiào	n.	check
旅行支票	lǚxíng zhīpiào	n.	traveler's check
签字	qiān//zì	v.-o.	sign
护照	hùzhào	n.	passport
点	diǎn	v.	check (the number) to see if correct 请你把钱点一点。

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

### (一) 在出租汽車上

司機：去哪兒啊？

學生：王府井中國銀行。

司機：您要怎麼走啊？二環還是城裏？

學生：走城裏近點兒。

司機：近是近點兒，可是路堵得厲害<sup>(1)</sup>。走二環快得多。

學生：那就走二環吧！我最怕堵車。在北京常常一堵就是一個小時<sup>(2)</sup>。在車上什麼事都<sup>(3)</sup>不能做，真急死人。

司機：糟糕！今天連二環都<sup>(4)</sup>堵車。

學生：真沒想到！也許坐車還不如<sup>(5)</sup>騎自行車快呢！

司機：最近幾年，北京的汽車越來越多，許多人都買了私家車，可是北京道路的發展卻趕不上汽車的增加，所以交通堵塞就一天比一天<sup>(6)</sup>嚴重了。

學生：像今天這樣堵<sup>(7)</sup>，我寧可<sup>(8)</sup>走路。

司機：快到了！快到了！

學生：再過半個小時銀行就要關門了！

司機：過了紅綠燈就是中國銀行了，我看你就在這兒下車吧！走過去快一點兒。

學生：好吧<sup>(9)</sup>好吧！多少錢？

司機：三十二塊八毛。

學生：麻煩您<sup>(10)</sup>給張發票。

司機：好的。這是您的發票。您慢走<sup>(11)</sup>。

### (二) 在銀行裏

學生：請問，在哪兒能換人民幣啊？

職員：二樓，五號窗口。

.....

學生： 您好， 我要換五百塊美元。

職員： 先填單子。

學生： 填好了。 這樣行嗎？

職員： 您要換現金還是旅行支票？

學生： 旅行支票。

職員： 請您在支票上簽字。 有護照嗎？

學生： 有。 這是我的支票， 字也簽好了。

職員： 這是您的錢。 請您點清楚。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

### (1) 近是近点儿， 可是路堵得厉害。

It is closer, yes, but the traffic is jammed terribly.

厉害 means “terrible” or “formidable.” When used as a predicative complement, it indicates the intensity of the verb. Intensifiers can be used to modify 厉害.

1. 这几天热得厉害。

It has been terribly hot these past few days.

2. 他病得很厉害， 我们去看看他吧！

He is seriously ill. Let's go to see him!

3. 这条路堵得厉害， 我们走另外一条路吧！

The road is extremely congested; let's take another road.

### (2) 一堵就是一个小时。

The second it stops, it stops for one hour.

The *一 V. 就 V. …* pattern indicates that once an action takes place, it reaches a certain degree of extremity. 就 is usually followed by a number-*AN* phrase. Sometimes the verb after 就 is omitted or replaced by 是.

1. 她喜欢看书， 一看就看（是）好几个钟头。

She enjoys reading. Once she starts she will read for hours.

2. 国际长途电话很贵，可是他一打就是几十分钟。

Although international long distance calls are very expensive, once he makes a call it will last for many minutes.

(3) 在车上什么事都不能做。

One cannot do anything in the car.

A question word followed by a 都 construction implies inclusiveness in the positive form and exclusiveness in the negative. 也 often substitutes for 都, especially when the verb is negative.

1. 这个时候哪条路都堵车。

At this time (of day), all of these roads are congested.

2. 谁都知道星期五要考试，你怎么会以为是星期四呢？

Everybody knows that the test is on Friday. How did you end up thinking it was Thursday?

3. 昨天我不舒服，什么都没吃。

I didn't feel well yesterday and ate nothing.

4. 我怎么说他也不信。

No matter how I put it, he wouldn't believe me.

5. 天气多么热他也不开空调，真要命！

No matter how hot the weather is, he won't turn on the air-conditioner.  
Absolutely ridiculous!

(4) 今天连二环都堵车。

There was traffic even on the Second Ring Road.

The 连...都...pattern is used as an intensifier serving to indicate an extreme, hypothetical, or unlikely case. What follows 连 is stressed. 也 often substitutes for 都 in negative sentences.

1. 连外国人都知道北京是中国的首都，你怎么不知道呢？

Even foreigners know that Beijing is China's capital. How come you don't know?

2. 她刚到中国来的时候，连一句中国话也不会说。

When she first came to China, she couldn't speak even one word of Chinese.

3. 你连老师的话都不信吗？

Don't you believe even what your teacher said?

(5) 也许坐车还不如骑自行车快呢！

Going by car is probably not as fast as riding a bicycle.

不如 means “not equal to,” or “not as good as.” An adjective indicating quality or degree can be used after the object. The word 那么 before the adjective is optional. 还 means “even more” or “still more.” When 比 is used in such a case, 还 should precede the adjective. When 没有 or 不如 is used, 还 should be placed before 没有 or 不如.

1. 我不如她。

I am not as good as she is.

2. 我的中文不如他的（那么）好。

My Chinese is not as good as his.

3. 他的字很难看，还不如一个小孩儿写的呢！

His handwriting is very poor, even worse than that of a child.

(6) 交通堵塞一天比一天严重。

The traffic jams get more serious by the day.

一天比一天+adj. is a comparative pattern, meaning “more adj. by the day.” The general pattern is Topic + 一AN 比 一AN + adj., which means “one AN is more adj. than the last.”

1. 北京的私人汽车一天比一天多。

In Beijing, the number of private cars is increasing every day.

2. 他们两个人的关系一天比一天紧张。

Relations between the two of them are getting strained by the day.

3. 这儿附近的饭馆儿一家比一家贵。

Each nearby restaurant is more expensive than the last.

4. 这个宿舍的学生睡得一个比一个晚。

Each student in this dormitory sleeps later than the last.

(7) 像今天这样堵，我宁可走路。

When it is congested like today, I would rather walk.

The pattern “像 n. 这样 adj.” means “(a situation/category) which is as adj. as n.,” e.g. 像你这样用功 “(a person) who works as hard as you;” 像中国这样大 “(a country) which is as big as China.” Use 这样 “like this” to refer to something in front of the speaker; use 那样 “like that” to refer to something not in front of the speaker. This kind of phrase is often used

to modify a noun, e.g. 像他那样用功的学生, 像北京这样大的地方, 像他那样常常迟到的人, and the resulting phrase may serve as either subject or object.

1. 我很喜欢跟像她那样的人交朋友。

I would like very much to make friends with people like her.

2. 像北京这样的大城市, 道路的发展特别重要。

In a metropolis like Beijing, the development of roads is especially important.

3. 像你这样常常迟到的人, 得住得离学校近一点儿。

A person like you who is always late has to live closer to school.

(8) 像今天这样堵, 我宁可走路。

See L.7, Note (3). Here 宁可 is used in the second clause to indicate what the speaker prefers. What is given up is not mentioned.

1. 虽然他要帮我的忙, 可是我宁可自己做。

Even though he wanted to help me, I'd rather do it myself.

2. 天气这么坏, 我宁可在家里看书。

The weather is so bad that I'd rather be home reading.

3. 公共汽车太慢了, 虽然出租车贵一点儿, 我倒宁可坐出租车。

The bus is too slow. Even though the taxi is expensive, I'd rather take a taxi.

(9) A: 你就在这儿下车吧!      B: 好吧好吧!

A: You'd better get off here!      B: All right, all right!

好吧 indicates agreement or approval with a reluctant tone.

(10) 麻烦您给张发票。

Could you give me a receipt, please?

When 麻烦 is used before 你/您 in an imperative sentence, it serves as a very polite form of 请. When used as an adjective, it means "troublesome." See L. 7

1. 麻烦你在这张支票上签个字。

Please sign your name on the check.

2. 护照丢了, 这可麻烦了。

What a nuisance. I've lost my passport.

3. 换钱一点儿也不麻烦，十分钟就能办完。

It is really easy to change money. You will be done in ten minutes.

- (11) **您慢走** is used when seeing someone off and is equivalent to “good-bye” or “take care.” Please note that this expression is only used when literally seeing someone off. For instance, you cannot use it in a letter to substitute for 再见; nor can it be used when someone is leaving to get on a flight. You also cannot use this expression if you are the one who is leaving.

## ✍ 练习 (liànxí)

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures provided.

- 听说你的同屋天天睡午觉，是吗？（—v. 就是…）
- 在美国，哪家银行可以换钱？（question word + 都…）
- 在中国，开车去工作的人多不多？（不如）
- 开空调得花很多钱，你愿意不愿意住在没有空调的屋子里呢？（宁可…也不要…）
- 我跟同屋的关系越来越坏了。（以为，真没想到）
- 北京的汽车增加得快不快？（赶不上）

### II. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

- 麻烦您 给开张发票。
- 再过半个钟头 银行就要关门了。
- 在北京常常一堵就是一个小时，真急死人。
- 像今天这样堵，我宁可走路。

### III. Choose the correct answer.

- 北京的私家车\_\_\_\_\_。  
①一天比一天多 ②一天比一天多很多 ③一天比一天很多
- 出租车有点儿贵，但是走路太慢了，我\_\_\_\_\_。  
①还是走路 ②也不如坐出租车 ③宁可坐出租车

3. 今天堵车堵得厉害, \_\_\_\_\_。  
① 连二环不能走 ② 还不如骑自行车 ③ 什么车慢得要命
4. 换人民币是在五号窗口 \_\_\_\_\_ 六号窗口?  
① 还是 ② 或者 ③ 要是

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 北京不是有很多公共汽车吗? 你为什么还要买自行车呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (像…这样的 N., 还不如)
2. A: 既然你没事, 为什么不到校园里走走呢!  
B: 天气太热了, \_\_\_\_\_。 (宁可)
3. A: 宿舍里有热水吗?  
B: 当然有, \_\_\_\_\_。 (而且, 什么…都…)
4. A: 听说你快要回国了?  
B: 是啊! \_\_\_\_\_。 (再过…就要…了)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. If the number of private automobiles continues to increase, I am afraid that traffic jams will grow more and more serious day by day. Several years from now, perhaps both urban roads and highways will not be able to keep up with the traffic development.
2. He likes to travel a lot. Once he goes (on a trip), he often stays away for 2 months. For a person like him who likes travel so much, giving him cash is not as good as giving him traveler's checks.
3. I worked 20 hours yesterday, and it was so tiring! I didn't even eat at all. Today I would rather stay home and do nothing than go out driving.

**VI. Composition**

There are some things in China which international students may feel helpless about, such as the traffic jams. Have you had any experiences that make you feel this way? Do similar things that make foreigners feel alienated or helpless happen in your country?

## 第十课 讲价

### (一) 在古董店里

学生：这幅山水画儿多少钱啊？

老板：这幅画儿是明代的，现在世界上只有这一幅了。

学生：明代的？怎么看起来这么新呢？

老板：噢！我们重新<sup>(1)</sup>整理过，比原来的好多了。

学生：这幅画儿多少钱呢？

老板：现在明代的画儿越来越少了，我们只有这一幅

了……

讲价	jiǎng//jià	v.-o.	bargain; haggle over the price 价：价钱；价格；price
古董	gǔdǒng	n.	antique
幅	fú	AN	measure word for painting
山水画儿	shānshuǐhuàr	n.	landscape painting
老板	lǎobǎn	n.	shopkeeper; boss
明代	Míngdài	n.	the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644)
世界	shìjiè	n.	world
噢	o	interj.	oh (indicating understanding)
重新	chóngxīn	adv.	again; anew; afresh

学生：我知道这是古画儿，到底<sup>(2)</sup>要多少钱呢？

老板：我们对<sup>(3)</sup>外国朋友总是特别客气……

学生：你到底要多少钱啊？

老板：这幅画儿要是<sup>(4)</sup>在别的店里，要三千块。我卖给你，只要一千块就行了。

学生：一千块？太贵了！

老板：一千块是我的成本，我连一块钱都不赚。

学生：五百块，行不行？

老板：开玩笑！要是五百块卖给你，那我就赔五百块！

学生：我是个穷学生，根本买不起<sup>(5)</sup>一千块钱的画儿。

再见再见！

---

古画儿	gǔhuàr	<i>n.</i>	ancient painting
到底	dàodǐ	<i>adv.</i>	after all; exactly
要是	yào shì	<i>conj.</i>	if
成本	chéngběn	<i>n.</i>	cost
赚钱	zhuàn//qíán	<i>v.-o.</i>	make money; make a profit 赚了一千块钱
开玩笑	kāi wánxiào	<i>v.-o.</i>	joke; make fun of 开别人玩笑/别开玩笑
赔钱	péi//qíán	<i>v.-o.</i>	lose money (in business transaction) 赔了不少钱
穷	qióng	<i>adj.</i>	poor; poverty-stricken
买不起	mǎi .bu .qǐ	<i>v.-c.</i>	cannot afford positive form: 买得起

老板：来来来来，别走别走！你觉得这幅太贵，我们有比较便宜的。你看这幅人物画儿……

学生：我不喜欢人物画儿。我就是<sup>(6)</sup>要这幅山水画儿。  
要是不便宜一点儿，我只好<sup>(7)</sup>不买了。

老板：别走别走！八百块卖给你了！

学生：太贵了！太贵了！我还有事儿，我得走了！

老板：七百块怎么样？

学生：我只有五百块钱，多一块都买不起！

老板：好吧好吧！五百块钱，卖给你了！

## (二) 在宿舍里

学生：我今天逛古董市场，买了一幅山水画儿，便宜极了。那个老板本来要一千块钱，后来五百块就卖给我了。

人物	rénwù	n.	figure; personage; character (in a novel, etc.)
便宜	pián.yi	adj.	inexpensive; cheap
只好	zhǐhǎo	adv.	have to; be forced to
逛	guàng	v.	stroll; go window-shopping
市场	shìchǎng	n.	market

同屋：真巧，我今天也在古董市场买了一幅画儿。

学生：给我看看！

同屋：我最喜欢山水画儿。你看这幅，真棒！

学生：哎呀！怎么跟我买的一模一样？你花了多少钱？

同屋：我才<sup>(8)</sup>花了一百块！

学生：糟糕！又<sup>(9)</sup>上当<sup>(10)</sup>了！

巧	qiǎo	<i>adj.</i>	coincidental; fortuitous
棒	bàng	<i>adj.</i>	(colloquial) good; excellent
哎呀	aīyā	<i>interj.</i>	Oh!; Ah! (It expresses anger, irritation, contempt or disappointment.)
一模一样	yìmú yíyàng	<i>adj.</i>	exactly alike 这个跟那个一模一样。
花钱	huā//qián	<i>v.-o.</i>	spend (money)
上当	shàng//dàng	<i>v.-o.</i>	be taken in; be fooled 上了那个老板的当 你别上他的当。

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

### (一) 在古董店里

學生：這幅山水畫兒多少錢啊？

老闆：這幅畫兒是明代的，現在世界上只有這一幅了。

學生：明代的？怎麼看起來這麼新呢？

老闆： 噢！我們重新(1)整理過，比原來的好多了。

學生： 這幅畫兒多少錢呢？

老闆： 現在明代的畫兒越來越少了，我們只有這一幅了……

學生： 我知道這是古畫兒，到底(2)要多少錢呢？

老闆： 我們對(3)外國朋友總是特別客氣……

學生： 你到底要多少錢啊？

老闆： 這幅畫兒要是(4)在別的店裏，要三千塊。我賣給你，只要一千塊就行了。

學生： 一千塊？太貴了！

老闆： 一千塊是我的成本，我連一塊錢都不賺。

學生： 五百塊，行不行？

老闆： 開玩笑！要是五百塊賣給你，那我就賠五百塊！

學生： 我是個窮學生，根本買不起(5)一千塊錢的畫兒。  
再見再見！

老闆： 來來來來來，別走別走！你覺得這幅太貴，我們有比較便宜的。你看這幅人物畫兒……

學生： 我不喜歡人物畫兒。我就是(6)要這幅山水畫兒。  
要是不便宜一點兒，我只好(7)不買了。

老闆： 別走別走！八百塊賣給你了！

學生： 太貴了！太貴了！我還有事儿，我得走了！

老闆： 七百塊怎麼樣？

學生： 我只有五百塊錢，多一塊都買不起！

老闆： 好吧好吧！五百塊錢，賣給你了！

## (二) 在宿舍裏

學生： 我今天逛古董市場，買了一幅山水畫兒，便宜極了。那個老闆本來要一千塊錢，後來五百塊就賣給我了。

同屋：真巧，我今天也在古董市場買了一幅畫兒。

學生：給我看一看！

同屋：我最喜歡山水畫兒。你看這幅，真棒！

學生：哎呀！怎麼跟我買的一模一樣？你花了多少錢？

同屋：我才<sup>(8)</sup>花了一百塊！

學生：糟糕！又<sup>(9)</sup>上當<sup>(10)</sup>了！

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

(1) 这幅画儿我们重新整理过。

We have tidied up this painting.

重新, meaning “again” or “once more,” usually modifies disyllabic or polysyllabic words or phrases. If it is used to modify a monosyllabic verb, the verb must be followed by a complement. 再 or 又 may precede it.

1. 请你再重新讲一次。

Please explain it again.

2. 他又重新写了一次，可是还是不太好。

He wrote it a second time, but it still didn't look good.

Sometimes 重新 doesn't indicate a simple identical repetition, but indicates doing something in a different way so as to do it more satisfactorily than the first time.

3. 原来的文章太长了，他又重新写了一篇，只有五百个字。

The article he wrote the first time was too long. He wrote a second one which had only 500 characters.

4. 这个办法不好，你最好再重新想个办法。

This solution is not good. You'd better think of some other way.

(2) 我知道这是古画儿，到底要多少钱呢？

I know that this is an ancient painting. How much does it really cost?

到底 is often used in an interrogative sentence to indicate an attempt to get a definitive answer. It may precede the subject. In English the

equivalent is usually expressed by intonation. Don't use 到底 when answering a question with 到底.

1. A: 你到底哪天去呢？还是快点儿决定吧！

A: When exactly will you go? You'd better decide as soon as possible.

B: 我已经决定下星期一去了。

B: I've decided to go there next Monday.

2. 这幅画到底是在附近的古董店买的还是在王府井买的？

Where exactly did you buy this painting? Was it at the antique store nearby or in Wangfujing?

(3) 我们对外国朋友总是特别客气。

We are especially polite to foreign friends.

对 in this context means “treat.” 对 modifies a descriptive word or phrase showing somebody's attitude towards the person or thing represented by the object of 对. 对 must occur after the subject. The word or phrase modified can be either positive or negative.

1. 学校对外国学生太好了！宿舍里不但有空调，还有电视和电话呢！

The school treats foreign students too well! The dorms not only have air conditioning, but also a color TV and a telephone.

2. 这家银行的职员对人不太客气。

The clerks in this bank are not very polite to people.

3. 他对你怎么样？

How does he treat you?

(4) 这幅画儿要是别的店里，要三千块。

This painting would cost three thousand dollars in another store.

要是 is mostly used in conjunction with 就 in the second clause. 就 can be omitted, especially when there is another adverb or auxiliary word such as 会, 可以, 只好, 简直, etc., or a question word in the second clause.

1. 你现在住在中国，要是还坚持原来的生活习惯，(就)会觉得很方便。

You are now living in China. If you still hold on to your old habits of living, you will find things very inconvenient.

2. 你要要是不习惯用筷子，可以用刀叉。

If you are not accustomed to using chopsticks, you may use a knife and fork.

3. 要是你觉得很不舒服，为什么不请一天假，休息休息呢？

If you are not feeling well, why don't you ask for one day off to rest?

(5) 我是个穷学生，根本买不起一千块钱的画儿。

I am a poor student; I simply cannot afford to buy a painting for one thousand dollars.

买不起 means “cannot afford to buy.” Other verbs can be used and mean “cannot afford *V-ing*,” e.g. 住不起那么贵的旅馆, 上不起大学, 坐不起飞机.

(6) 我就是要这幅山水画儿。

It is this landscape painting that I want.

This 就是 is the same as the one in L. 7, Note (1). It is used to express a determined attitude. Also see L. 8, Note (1).

1. 我说了半天，他就是不信。

I spent quite a while trying to convince him, but he simply wouldn't believe me.

2. 我说不行就是不行！你不要再问了！

When I say no, it means “no.” Don't ask again!

(7) 要是不便宜一点，我只好不买了。

If you can't make it cheaper, I'll have no choice but to not buy it.

只好 is an adverb and indicates that one has to do something because he/she can't avoid the situation.

1. 学校附近没有邮局，我只好到城里去。

There is no post office close to the school. I'll have to go downtown.

2. 她病了，只好请一天假，在宿舍里休息。

She was sick, so she had no choice but to take the day off and stay in the dormitory.

(8) 我才花了一百块！

I only spent a hundred dollars!

才 is used before a number -AN phrase to indicate that the number is small, with 才 pronounced in the neutral tone and the numeral stressed. It applies only to a completed event.

1. 这幅画儿才卖两百块钱，真便宜！

This painting costs only two hundred dollars; it's really cheap!

2. 我才用了半个钟头就把功课写完了。

I finished my homework in only half an hour.

(9) 糟糕！又上当了！

Oh no! I've been conned again!

又 indicates repetition of an action or state and only applies to past or inevitable events. 又 is different from 再 in that 再 indicates a repetition which has not yet been realized or is to be realized.

1. 昨天我又到银行去换了五百块美元。

I went to the bank again yesterday to exchange five hundred U.S. dollars.

2. 明天又是星期天了，你打算做什么呢？

It's going to be Sunday again tomorrow. What do you plan to do?

3. 你已经上了他两次当了。下次小心一点儿，别再上当了。

You have already been taken in by him twice. You'd better be careful not to be fooled again.

(10) 又上当了！

上当 is in the passive voice. 我上当了 means "I was conned." There is no active voice for this word. "I was cheated by him" is 我上了他的当.

✍ 练习 (liànxí)

I. Answer the following questions using the structures provided.

1. 你买东西的时候会不会讲价？为什么？（只要…就行了）
2. 你喜欢不喜欢坐出租汽车？为什么？（上当）
3. 中国人习惯晚上洗澡，你可以也改成晚上洗澡吗？（就是…）

4. 很多人喜欢逛古董市场，因为东西很便宜，你呢？你喜欢逛古董市场吗？（本来…，后来…，现在…）
5. 你到中国来很长时间了吗？中国话说得怎么样？（才）
6. 你觉得这两件衣服有没有什么不同？（A跟B一模一样）
7. 你觉得自己是个穷学生还是个有钱的学生？你上大学的时候要不要工作？为什么？（只好）

**II. Rearrange the phrases in the parentheses to make a logical sentence.**

1. 我是个穷学生，（这么，呢，贵，住，宿舍，怎么，得起，的）？
2. （山水画儿，整理，我们，把，重新，这幅，过），所以看起来跟新的一模一样。
3. （的玩笑，总是，这个老板，开，外国学生，喜欢），对我们不太客气。

**III. Fill in the blanks with only one character.**

要，本，来，起，幅，么  
就，新，到，少，多，对

A: 这\_\_\_\_\_山水画儿看起\_\_\_\_\_贵得很，我怕我根\_\_\_\_\_买不\_\_\_\_\_。

B: 一点儿都不贵，本来是九百块钱，现在只\_\_\_\_\_五百块钱，我们\_\_\_\_\_学生总是特别客气的。

A: 太贵了，你重\_\_\_\_\_说个价吧！

B: 五百块钱怎\_\_\_\_\_会太贵呢？好吧好吧，你说你\_\_\_\_\_底想出（to bid）多\_\_\_\_\_钱呢？

A: 一百块吧！

B: \_\_\_\_\_给五十块吧！一百五十块卖给你了！一块钱也不能少，再少我\_\_\_\_\_得赔钱了！

A: 行，就一百五十块吧！

**IV. Complete the dialogues or sentences using v. 得起 or V. 不起。**

1. 那家饭馆的饭菜太贵了，我根本\_\_\_\_\_。
2. 看电影 (diànyǐng, movie) 很便宜，只要5块钱，谁都\_\_\_\_\_。
3. 住在首都得花很多钱，我\_\_\_\_\_。
4. 虽然现在私家车比以前便宜了一些，开的人也多了，但是我是个穷学生，\_\_\_\_\_私家车。
5. 上大学是很贵的，所以有些穷人的孩子\_\_\_\_\_大学。

**V. Complete the dialogues or sentences with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你不是想买幅人物画儿吗？怎么买了幅山水画儿回来了?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (本来…，后来…，所以…)
2. 银行职员: 先生，您单子填错了，请\_\_\_\_\_。 (重新)  
学生: 好吧好吧！请你再给我一张单子。
3. A: 对不起，我们没有单人间了，双人间行不行?  
B: 不行，\_\_\_\_\_。 (就是[ simply])

**VI. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Have you actually seen a Ming landscape painting (use 到底)? This painting is not at all a restored ancient painting! It (它, tā) looks just the same as the one I saw in another antique store, and that painting was only 200 dollars. (use 才)
2. You faked your signature (签错) again. I don't want to be fooled by you anymore. If you won't rewrite a check for me, I would rather take cash.
3. I just don't believe that you sold this figure painting to me at a loss. Stop joking! You simply cannot afford to lose 500 dollars.

**VII. Composition**

Shopping in China can be a very interesting experience. Not only can one polish one's Chinese, one can also learn how to deal with street peddlers. Imagine you are writing a guide book for tourists. What are some good methods for haggling with or avoiding peddlers? What can you learn from your shopping experiences as a foreigner in China?

## 第十一课 同志、小姐、先生

1949 年以后，大约有 40 年的时间，到中国来的外国人只要<sup>(1)</sup>学会“同志”这两个字，就可以称呼所有的中国人。无论<sup>(2)</sup>是男的还是女的，老的还是年轻的，认识的还是陌生的，都可以叫他们“同志”。我很喜欢这个

同志	tóngzhì	n.	comrade
小姐	xiao.jie	n.	miss; Miss
大约	dàyuē	adv.	approximately; about 大约花了 300 块钱/大约二十岁
只要	zhǐyào	conj.	as long as
称呼	chēng.hu	v./n.	call; address, a form of address
所有	suǒyǒu	adj.	all (所有的 + n. is usually followed by 都.)
无论	wúlùn	conj.	no matter what, how, etc.; regardless of
年轻	niánqīng	adj.	young
认识	rèn.shi	v.	know (Chinese characters, a person or place); be familiar with 我不认识他。 我们是十年以前认识的。
陌生	mòshēng	adj.	strange; unfamiliar

称呼，因为不分男女老少，大家都平等。

但是改革开放以后，这个用了几十年的称呼渐渐没有人用了。以前的“男同志”成了<sup>(3)</sup>“先生”，“女同志”成了“小姐”或“女士”。据说这是受了台湾、香港和海外的影响<sup>(4)</sup>。当然，“先生”也有“丈夫”的意思。

---

分	fēn	v.	divide; separate; part
男女老少	nánnyù lǎoshào	n.	men and women, young and old
平等	píngděng	adj./n.	equal, equality
改革	gǎigé	v.	reform
开放	kāifàng	v.	open; liberalize
改革开放	gǎigé kāifàng	n.	the opening-up and reform policy of China starting in the late 1970's
渐渐	jiànjiàn	adv.	gradually
成了	chéng.le	v.	has become; became
女士	nǚshì	n.	(a polite term for a woman, married or unmarried) lady; madam
受	shòu	v.	receive (受 usually takes a verb as an object)
台湾	Táiwān	n.	Taiwan
香港	Xiānggǎng	n.	Hong Kong
海外	hǎiwài	p.w.	overseas; abroad
影响	yǐngxiǎng	n./v.	influence, effect
丈夫	zhàng.fu	n.	husband
意思	yì.si	n.	meaning

最近有些年轻人喜欢用“老公”、“老婆”来<sup>(5)</sup>代替“先生”和“太太”，这个说法不太正式，而且“老公”、“老婆”的前面不能加姓，我们可以说“张先生”、“张太太”，但是不能说“张老公”、“张老婆”。

在台湾，常称呼饭馆儿的女服务员和百货商场的女售货员“小姐”；在中国大陆，这个词儿却不怎么<sup>(6)</sup>常用。在大陆，人们用“师傅”来称呼出租车司机，

---

老公	lǎogōng	<i>n.</i>	(colloquial) husband
老婆	lǎo.po	<i>n.</i>	(colloquial) wife
代替	dài tì	<i>v.</i>	replace; substitute for
太太	tài.tai	<i>n.</i>	wife; Mrs.
正式	zhèngshì	<i>adj.</i>	formal; official; solemn
加	jiā	<i>v.</i>	add; put in 加一件衣服再出去/在咖啡里加糖
百货商场	bǎihuò shāngchǎng	<i>n.</i>	department store 货: goods 商场: market; shopping arcade
售货员	shòuhuòyuán	<i>n.</i>	salesclerk; shop assistant 售: sell
大陆	dàlù	<i>n.</i>	mainland
中国大陆	Zhōngguó dàlù	<i>n.</i>	mainland China
词儿	cír	<i>n.</i>	word; term

可是在台湾几乎<sup>(7)</sup>没有人这么说。另外<sup>(8)</sup>，我看到中年的女士，往往<sup>(9)</sup>不知道怎么称呼她们。看来<sup>(10)</sup>，要合适地称呼每一个人还真不容易。

其实<sup>(11)</sup>，“同志”是有中国特色的。用“小姐”和“先生”，表面上<sup>(12)</sup>是现代化了，但是却不能表现中国社会的特点了。我很怀念“同志”这个词儿。

---

几乎	jīhū	<i>adv.</i>	almost; nearly; practically
另外	lìngwài	<i>adv.</i>	in addition; moreover; besides
中年	zhōngnián	<i>adj.</i>	middle-aged
往往	wǎngwǎng	<i>adv.</i>	often; frequently
其实	qíshí	<i>adv.</i>	actually; in fact
合适	héshì	<i>adv./ adj.</i>	properly, proper; appropriate; suitable
特色	tèsè	<i>n.</i>	characteristic; distinguishing feature
表面上	biǎomiàn.shàng	<i>adv.</i>	on the surface 表面: surface; outside
表现	biǎoxiàn	<i>v.</i>	show; display
社会	shèhuì	<i>n.</i>	society
特点	tèdiǎn	<i>n.</i>	characteristic; trait
怀念	huái niàn	<i>v.</i>	cherish the memory of; think fondly of 怀念老朋友/怀念小时候

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

1949 年以後，大約有 40 年的時間，到中國來的外國人只要<sup>(1)</sup>學會“同志”這兩個字，就可以稱呼所有的中國人。無論<sup>(2)</sup>是男的還是女的，老的還是年輕的，認識的還是陌生的，都可以叫他們“同志”。我很喜歡這個稱呼，因為不分男女老少，大家都平等。

但是改革開放以後，這個用了幾十年的稱呼漸漸沒有人用了。以前的“男同志”成了<sup>(3)</sup>“先生”，“女同志”成了“小姐”或“女士”。據說這是受了臺灣、香港和海外的影響<sup>(4)</sup>。當然，“先生”也有“丈夫”的意思。

最近有些年輕人喜歡用“老公”、“老婆”來<sup>(5)</sup>代替“先生”和“太太”，這個說法不太正式，而且“老公”、“老婆”的前面不能加姓，我們可以說“張先生”、“張太太”，但是不能說“張老公”、“張老婆”。

在臺灣，常稱呼飯館兒的女服務員和百貨商場的女售貨員“小姐”，在中國大陸，這個詞兒卻不怎麼<sup>(6)</sup>常用。在大陸，人們用“師傅”來稱呼計程車司機，可是在臺灣幾乎<sup>(7)</sup>沒有人這麼說。另外<sup>(8)</sup>，我看到中年的女士，往往<sup>(9)</sup>不知道怎麼稱呼她們。看來<sup>(10)</sup>，要合適地稱呼每一個人還真不容易。

其實<sup>(11)</sup>，“同志”是有中國特色的。用“小姐”和“先生”，表面上<sup>(12)</sup>是現代化了，但是卻不能表現中國社會的特點了。我很懷念“同志”這個詞兒。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

(1) 只要学会“同志”这两个字，就可以称呼所有的中国人。

As long as you learn the word “*tongzhi*”, you can address any Chinese person.

只要 indicates a necessary condition or minimum requirement. It occurs either before or after the subject of the first clause and is often used in conjunction with 就 or 都 in a latter clause.

1. 这幅古画儿只要重新整理一下，就会非常好看。

As long as we tidy up this painting a bit, it will be very pretty.

2. 只要我不发烧，我就一定会去上课。

As long as I don't have a fever, I will definitely go to class.

(2) 无论是男的还是女的，老的还是年轻的，都可以叫他们“同志”。

Whether male or female, old or young, you may call all of them “*tongzhi*.”

Similar to 不管, 无论 indicates that no matter what the circumstances, the result remains unchanged. 无论 must be followed by an interrogative structure. It is used in conjunction with 都 or 也.

1. 无论什么时候城里都堵车。

It doesn't matter what time it is, there is always a traffic jam downtown.

2. 无论哪一个窗口都卖邮票。

They sell stamps at any window.

(3) “男同志”成了“先生”，“女同志”成了“小姐”

The term “*nan tongzhi*” has become “*xiansheng*,” and “*nu tongzhi*” has become “*xiaojie*.”

When 成 is used as a verb, it is always followed by 了 to indicate that the action has been completed. Both the subject and object of 成了 should be nouns. You can never say 她成了很漂亮； instead, say “她变得 (biànde, become) 很漂亮.”

1. 几年没见，他成了一个大人了。

I haven't seen him for a few years, and already he has become an adult.

2. 那个地方本来是一个小学，现在成了一个公园。

That place used to be an elementary school, but has now become a park.

(4) 据说这是受了台湾、香港和海外的影响。

It's said that this is influenced by usages in Taiwan, Hong Kong, and overseas.

受 means "to receive." A 受了 B 的影响 indicates a passive voice meaning A is influenced by B. When in the active voice, the pattern is B 对 A 有影响. Adjectives such as 好, 坏, 大 and 深 may be used to modify 影响.

1. 你住在北京，你的中文受到北京人的影响了没有？

Now that you are living in Beijing, has your Chinese been influenced by Beijing people?

2. 他的生活习惯并没有受到父母的影响。

His living habits have not been influenced by his parents.

3. 现代的中国语言受了不少外国语的影响。

Modern Chinese has been influenced not a little by foreign languages.

4. 老师对学生有很大的影响。

Teachers have great influence on students.

(5) 最近有些年轻人喜欢用“老公”、“老婆”来代替“先生”和“太太”。

Recently many young people like to use “laogong” and “laopo” to replace “xiansheng” and “taitai.”

“Subject 用…来…” means “Subject uses something to achieve...,” while “Subject + 用来…” means “subject is used to ....”

1. 用这样的方法来讲价，肯定可以买到又好又便宜的东西。

If you bargain in this way, you definitely can buy things of good quality at a good price.

2. 我们的老师从来不用英文来跟学生说话。

Our teachers never use English to talk to students.

3. 这部大巴是用来到机场去接学生的。  
This bus is used to pick up students from the airport.
4. 这个洗碗机不但可以用来洗碗，还可以洗盘子和筷子。  
This dishwasher can be used not only to wash bowls, but plates and chopsticks too.

(6) 在台湾，常称呼饭馆儿的女服务员和百货商场的女售货员“小姐”，这个词儿在大陆却不怎么常用。

In Taiwan, people often call the waitress in a restaurant and the saleslady in a department store “xiaojie”, but this term is not used so often in mainland China.

怎么 is used in the negative before a verb or adjective to indicate an understatement. Similarly, 什么 can be used in the negative before noun to indicate understatement.

1. 在学校附近的理发馆理个发并不怎么贵。  
It is not too expensive to get a hair cut in the barbershop near the school.
2. 这个说法太老了，现在不怎么说了。  
This expression is too old. It is not used often nowadays.
3. 我到了中国以后，在日常生活上没什么问题，就是不习惯早起。  
I don't have many problems in daily life after coming to China; the only thing is that I am not used to getting up early.
4. 我没买什么东西，只买了两个衣架。  
I didn't buy many things except for two clothes hangers.

(7) 在大陆人们用“师傅”来称呼出租车司机，可是在台湾几乎没有人这么说。

In China, people use “shifu” to address taxi drivers, but in Taiwan almost nobody addresses them that way.

几乎 means “almost, nearly;” while 差不多 means “around” or “about.”

1. 在宿舍里，几乎人都是他的朋友。  
In the dormitory, almost everybody is his friend.

2. 我几乎忘了明天要考试。

I almost forgot that there would be an examination tomorrow.

3. 昨天我到银行去，在路上几乎堵了两个小时。

I went to the bank yesterday, and I was stopped for almost two hours on the road.

4. 从这儿到银行去差不多要走 10 分钟。

It takes about 10 minutes to walk to the bank from here.

(8) 另外，我看到中年的女士，往往不知道怎么称呼她们。

Besides, when I see middle-aged ladies, I often don't know how to address them.

另外 means “in addition,” “moreover,” or “besides” when used as an adverb. It can modify a negative phrase. 又, 还, 也, or 再 is often used after 另外. Please see L. 3, Note (19) for another usage of 另外.

1. 除了邮票以外，另外我还想买几张风景明信片。

In addition to stamps, I also want to buy some scenery postcards.

2. 你别忘了带护照，另外也得带几张照片。

Don't forget to bring your passport, and you should bring a few photographs, too.

3. 我只有这两个箱子，另外没什么别的东西。

I have only these two trunks and nothing else.

另外, meaning “other,” can also indicate that something will not do and something else must be done.

1. 今天我没空，我们另外找个时间再谈吧！

I am busy today. Let's talk about it some other time.

2. 这个菜太难吃了，我看我们得另外点一个菜。

This dish tastes terrible; I think we should order something else.

(9) 我看到中年的女士，往往不知道怎么称呼她们。

往往 indicates such is the situation in most cases. It can never be modified by a negative word. It indicates the frequency of an action or situation during the past.

1. 中国人和美国人对“节省”往往有不同的看法。

Chinese and American people often have different views of “economizing.”

2. 城里的道路在学校上下课的时间往往堵车堵得厉害。

The roads downtown are usually congested seriously during rush hours.

3. 这里的夏天往往热得要命。

The summer here is often terribly hot.

(10) 看来，要合适地称呼每一个人还真不容易。

It appears that it is really difficult to address every one properly.

看来 is used as an adverb to modify the sentence follows. Note that you should never use any subject before 看来 such as 你看来, 我看来.

1. 看来，在古董市场买东西非讲价不可。

It seems that one has to bargain when buying things in the antique market.

2. 看来，午饭以后睡个午觉是有好处的。

It seems that taking a nap after lunch is helpful.

(11) 其实，“同志”是有中国特色的。

In fact, the word “comrade” has a uniquely Chinese character.

其实, meaning “actually” or “in fact,” very often occurs at the head of a sentence and can be followed by a pause. Sometimes it indicates what is introduced in the preceding sentence is not true, but what follows 其实 is; sometimes it does not deny the truth of the preceding clause but supplies some supplementary explanation.

1. 许多外国人以为北京是一个古老的城市；其实，北京是很现代化的。

Many foreigners think that Beijing is an old city; actually, it is very modern.

2. 我今天来，其实是想听听你对这件事情的看法。

Actually, the reason that I came here today is to learn your opinion on this matter.

(12) 用“小姐”和“先生”，表面上是现代化了，但是却不能表现中国社会的特点了。

Usage of the words “小姐” and “先生” on the surface appears to be a result of modernization, but these words do not convey any feature of Chinese society.

表面上 implies that a fact may not be as people usually think and literally means “on the surface.” It is always followed by a second clause starting with 但是 or 其实 that conveys what the speaker really thinks.

1. 表面上男女平等了，其实还是有很多问题。

On the surface, men and women have become equal, but actually there are still many problems.

2. 表面上，出租车增加以后，比以前方便多了，但是交通堵塞也更严重了。

Since the number of taxis has increased, things seem much more convenient than before; however, traffic jams have also become more serious.

## ✍ 练习 (liànxí)

### I. Answer the following questions.

1. “同志”这个词儿为什么有中国特色？“小姐”和“先生”为什么没有？
2. 什么是“中国特色”？有中国特色是不是就是不现代化？
3. 你喜欢“同志”这个词儿吗？为什么？
4. 为什么中国改革开放以后，渐渐没有人用“同志”这个词儿了？
5. 你觉得用“同志”就可以表现男女平等了吗？为什么？
6. 你到中国来以后，听过中国人用“同志”来称呼人吗？
7. 在称呼上，你发现中国人和美国人有些什么不同？
8. 在中国，你称呼人的时候有什么困难？

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

就 也 都 却 上 有

1. 无论你走二环还是城里，\_\_\_\_\_会有交通堵塞。
2. 我请他睡觉的时候把窗子关好，可是他\_\_\_\_\_总是把窗子开开。
3. 只要你骑自行车，\_\_\_\_\_可以准时上课，不会迟到。
4. 这个老板表面\_\_\_\_\_对你很客气，其实他是要你上他的当。
5. 改革开放以前，“同志”可以用来称呼男的，\_\_\_\_\_可以用来称呼女的。
6. 大约\_\_\_\_\_两个月的时间，我一句英文都没说。

**III. Rewrite the sentence using 只要…就…or 无论…都….**

1. 换现金、换旅行支票，都得有护照。
2. 山水画儿、人物画儿我都喜欢。
3. 要是你把窗户开开，蚊子就会飞进屋子里来。
4. 你把屋子整理整理，住起来就会很舒服。
5. 红茶、绿茶我都不喝，我喜欢喝咖啡。
6. 不分男女老少，人人都平等。
7. 你卖得便宜一点儿，我就买。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 从这儿到邮局怎么走？远不远?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (只要…就…)
2. A: 在北京找出租汽车容易不容易?  
B: 容易得很，\_\_\_\_\_。 (无论…都…)
3. A: 从这儿到王府井得多长时间?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (要是，大约)
4. A: 你以前总是起得很晚，怎么现在这么早就起来了?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (受了…的影响)
5. A: 在古董市场买画，到底能不能讲价?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (表面上，其实)
6. A: 为什么你要把美元换成人民币呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (用…来…，一定得)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. Chinese society is gradually liberalizing, and it seems that it has been greatly influenced by overseas countries. In the past when addressing people everyone used the term “comrade”, which has a Chinese flavor to it. Now, everyone has changed to using titles like “Mr.” or “Ms.”. The term “comrade” is not used as often. (use 不怎么 v.)
2. As long as you go to China, you will find that Chinese people are almost all accustomed to taking naps. They often (use 往往) rest for about an hour in the afternoon. After living in China for a month, I was also influenced by Chinese people and started taking naps.
3. Riding bicycles is a characteristic of Chinese society. Whether young or old, man or woman, people all ride bicycles. As long as you have learned to ride a bike, it is convenient---no matter where you go. In addition, it is beneficial to protecting the environment.

#### VI. Composition

Do you believe that using the address “comrade” is more Chinese-like, while using the addresses “Mr.” and “Ms.” is a manifestation of modernization? In Chinese there are no gender differences in forms of address, but there are gender-differentiated forms of address in English such as “he” and “she,” “chairman” and “chairwoman”, “host” and “hostess.” Is this differentiation more confusing, or is it a way of showing gender equality in language?

## 第十二课 厕所

来了中国以后，常常是生活上<sup>(1)</sup>的一些小事让我觉得特别不方便、不习惯，比方像早起、洗澡、上厕所这些事<sup>(2)</sup>。

中国的厕所很少有坐的马桶，大多是蹲的。我在美国从来没上过这样的厕所。蹲久了，两条腿真受不了。但是这样的厕所也有一个好处，就是很卫生，

---

厕所	cèsuǒ	n.	toilet; restroom
比方	bǐfāng		for instance
上厕所	shàng cèsuǒ	v.-o.	go to the bathroom
马桶	mǎtōng	n.	toilet
蹲	dūn	v.	squat on one's heels
久	jiǔ	adj.	long; for a long time
腿	tuǐ	n.	leg
受不了	shòu .bu liǎo	v.-c.	cannot stand (or endure) 北京交通堵塞这么严重，真让人受不了。 我实在受不了这间厕所的臭味儿。
卫生	wèishēng	adj.	hygienic; sanitary 不洗手就吃饭，很不卫生。

---

我不必担心得传染病。

北京街上有不少公共厕所，为<sup>(3)</sup>市民和行人提供了许多方便。有的公共厕所是免费的，这种厕所既<sup>(4)</sup>没有卫生纸也没有洗手台。我常常还没有看到厕所就先闻到了一股臭味儿，所以并不难找。上这种厕所，动作一定得快，大概不会有人在里头看报。这种厕所也常常没有门，让我觉得很不好意思。

---

得	dé	v.	contract (an illness)
传染病	chuánrǎnbìng	n.	infectious disease 传染: (v.) infect; be contagious
为	wèi	prep.	for
市民	shìmín	n.	citizen; urban dweller
行人	xíngrén	n.	pedestrian
免费	miǎnfèi	adj.	“exempt-charge”; free of charge; free 免费的中饭
既…也…	jì …yě…	conj.	both ...and; as well as
卫生纸	wèishēngzhǐ	n.	toilet paper
洗手台	xǐshǒutái	n.	sink (in a restroom)
闻	wén	v.	smell 你闻到那股臭味儿了吗?
股	gǔ	AN	measure word for strength, smell, etc.
臭味儿	chòuwèir	n.	bad smell; stench
找	zhǎo	v.	look for; try to find; seek
动作	dòngzuò	n.	movement; notion; action
大概	dàgài	adv.	generally; approximately; perhaps
报	bào	n.	报纸; newspaper

---

另一种公共厕所是收费的，一个人大概得花五毛到一块钱。这种厕所提供卫生纸，也有洗手台，而且比较干净。虽然要收费，我倒宁可上这种厕所。所以在中国，我出门的时候，一定随身带着<sup>(5)</sup>卫生纸和零钱。

最近几年，北京公共厕所的改变很大，又臭又脏的厕所越来越少了，而且大部分的厕所都不收费了，这真是一大<sup>(6)</sup>进步。

---

收费	shōufèi	v.	collect a fee; charge 这条高速公路收费吗?
到	dào	prep.	up to
出门	chū//mén	v.-o.	go out 他刚出门，一会儿就回来。
随身	suíshēn	adv.	“follow-person;” (carry) on one’s person; (take) with 随身带着许多东西
着	.zhe	comp.	adverbial particle
零钱	língqián	n.	small change
改变	gǎibiàn	n./v.	change; alter
臭	chòu	adj.	smelly; stinking
脏	zāng	adj.	dirty; filthy
大部分	dà bù.fen	adj.	most 大部分大学生都会说英语。 大部分时间我都在宿舍里。
进步	jìnbu	n./v.	advance; progress; improvement (cannot be followed by an object)

## ★ 繁体字课文 (fántǐzì kèwén)

來了中國以後，常常是生活上<sup>(1)</sup>的一些小事讓我覺得特別不方便、不習慣，比方像早起、洗澡、上廁所這些事<sup>(2)</sup>。

中國的廁所很少有坐的馬桶，大多是蹲的。我在美國從來沒上過這樣的廁所。蹲久了，兩條腿真受不了。但是這樣的廁所也有一個好處，就是很衛生，我不必擔心得傳染病。

北京街上有不少公共廁所，為<sup>(3)</sup>市民和行人提供了許多方便。有的公共廁所是免費的，這種廁所既<sup>(4)</sup>沒有衛生紙也沒有洗手台。我常常還沒有看到廁所就先聞到了一股臭味兒，所以並不難找。上這種廁所，動作一定得快，大概不會有人在裏頭看報。這種廁所也常常沒有門，讓我覺得很不好意思。

另一種公共廁所是收費的，一個人大概得花五毛到一塊錢。這種廁所提供衛生紙，也有洗手台，而且比較乾淨。雖然要收費，我倒寧可上這種廁所。所以在中國，我出門的時候，一定隨身帶著<sup>(5)</sup>衛生紙和零錢。

最近幾年，北京公共廁所的改變很大，又臭又髒的廁所越來越少了，而且大部分的廁所都不收費了，這真是一大<sup>(6)</sup>進步。

## 语法点 (yǔfǎdiǎn)

- (1) 来了中国以后，常常是生活上的一些小事让我觉得特别不方便。

After arriving in China, it has usually been the little things in daily life that make me feel most inconvenienced.

When used with an abstract noun, (在) … 上 means “in a certain aspect.” See L. 7, Note (4). “在” can sometimes be omitted.

1. 他无论生活上、学习上都有很多困难。

He has many problems both in life and in his studies.

2. 最近几年中国交通上的发展非常快。

In recent years, the development of transportation in China has been very fast.

- (2) 生活上的一些小事让我觉得特别不方便、不习惯。比方像早起、洗澡、上厕所这些事。

It is the little things in daily life that make me feel most inconvenienced, such as getting up early, taking a bath, or going to the bathroom, things like that.

When a number of nouns are mentioned in a series, they are specifically named and then followed by 这些事, 这些地方, 这些东西, etc.

1. 去年夏天我在中国旅行，去了南京、上海、北京这些地方。

When I traveled in China last summer, I went to several cities, including Nanjing, Shanghai and Beijing.

2. 像明信片、信封、信纸这些东西，在邮局都买得到。

You can buy things like postcards, envelopes and stationery at the post office.

- (3) 北京街上有不少公共厕所，为市民和行人提供了许多方便。

On Beijing's streets there are many public restrooms which provide many conveniences for Beijing's residents and pedestrians.

为 introduces the object of one's service or concern.

1. 你不但应该为自己想，也应该为别人想。

You should think not only of yourself but also of others.

2. 这所大学为留学生提供了很好的宿舍和学习条件。

This university provides very good dorms and good study conditions for foreign students.

(4) 这种厕所既没有卫生纸也没有洗手台。

There is neither toilet paper nor a sink in this kind of restroom.

既…也(又)… is usually used to join two adjectives or descriptive phrases to indicate coordination and always follows the subject. Words or phrases joined by 既…也(又)… are generally of the same type.

1. 那家古董店的东西，既便宜也(又)很好看。

Things in that antique store are both cheap and pretty.

2. 你既没有现金，也(又)没有旅行支票，怎么买东西呢？

You have neither cash nor traveler's checks. How can you buy anything?

(5) 我出门的时候，一定随身带着卫生纸和零钱。

I make sure to bring toilet paper and change with me when I go out.

着 in this context indicates the continuation of a state.

1. 宿舍的大门上写着几个大字：“新松公寓”。

There are a few large characters written on the gate of the dorm which say, “Xinsong Gongyu.”

2. 墙上挂着几幅古画儿。

There are a few old paintings hanging on the wall.

(6) 这真是一大进步。

This is really a big improvement.

一大 N. means “a big N.” A disyllable is needed after 一大, e.g. 一大改变, 一大发展, 一大困难, 一大发现, 一大问题, 一大特色。

## 练习 (liànxí)

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 出租汽车对大城市有什么好处? (为…提供…)
2. 在北京你上过公共厕所吗? 跟美国的有什么不同?  
(既…又…)
3. 中国人和美国人有很多的不同吧? (在…上)
4. 美国也像中国一样, 在街上有很多公共厕所吗? (倒)
5. 在中国, 收费的公共厕所和不收费的有什么不同?

### II. Make a sentence with the underlined structure(s).

1. 有些生活上的小事让我觉得特别不方便, 比方像早起、洗澡、上厕所这些事。
2. 这样的厕所有一个好处, 就是卫生。
3. 这种厕所既没有卫生纸也没有洗手台。
4. 虽然这种厕所要收费, 我倒宁可上这种厕所, 因为比较干净。
5. 大部分的厕所都不收费了, 这真是一大进步。

### III. Choose the correct answer.

1. 我 \_\_\_\_\_ 公共厕所的臭味儿, 所以我宁可不上厕所。  
① 不能受得了 ② 受得不了 ③ 不受得了 ④ 受不了
2. 改革开放 \_\_\_\_\_ 中国人带来了许多好处, 比方说, 中国人的生活水平都比以前高多了。  
① 为 ② 对 ③ 向 ④ 跟
3. 宿舍旁边就是学校的食堂。一到吃中饭的时候, 我就 \_\_\_\_\_ 一股饭菜味儿。  
① 闻 ② 闻到 ③ 闻了 ④ 闻得到了
4. “同志”这个词儿, \_\_\_\_\_ 可以称呼先生, \_\_\_\_\_ 可以称呼小姐。  
① 和…跟… ② 不但…还有…  
③ 从…到… ④ 既…又…

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 要是你早上头脑不清楚，你可以喝咖啡或茶。  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (既不…也不…)
2. A: 北京的公共厕所真不干净，我很不喜欢上那样的厕所！  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (倒)
3. A: 在中国，可以用支票或者信用卡 (credit card) 买东西吗？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (随身带着)
4. A: 旅馆的服务员能为我们做什么呢？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (比方像 A, B, C, …这些事情)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Although public bathrooms provide many conveniences for pedestrians, I would rather not to use this type of restroom. Because sometimes they have neither toilet paper nor wash basins (sinks), I worry that I might catch a contagious disease.
2. In the dorms, many people take showers in the morning. Each time there are always 3 to 5 people behind me waiting to shower, and I have to be quick (use 动作). I think that the school should add one or two more bathrooms for the students.
3. In America, I have never seen a public restroom where they collect a fee. Generally speaking, there are public bathrooms in stores, and they all have toilet paper and sinks, so you don't need to carry toilet paper with you. Often there are people who clean the bathrooms, so the bathrooms don't have a foul smell.

**VI. Composition**

You have been in China for a few weeks. Have you experienced any culture shock? What do you find inconvenient about living in China? What have you found that you might not like, but still find interesting, such as sharing a table with strangers in a restaurant, seeing people buying passes in scenic spots, etc.?

## 第十三课 坐火车

在美国生活了十几年，我从来没坐过长途火车。

到远处去旅行，不是坐飞机就是<sup>(1)</sup>开车。来了中国以后，不到<sup>(2)</sup>三个星期，居然已经坐了两次长途火车了。一次是到承德去参观避暑山庄，另一次是去山西大同看云岗石窟。去承德那一次坐的是硬座，去大同那次坐的是软卧。软卧比硬座舒服，但是也贵得多。

---

火车	huǒchē	<i>n.</i>	“fire-car”; train
生活	shēnghuó	<i>v.</i>	live
远处	yuǎnchù	<i>n.</i>	“far-place;” distant place
不到	búdào	<i>v.</i>	less than; not yet 不到二十岁/不到 20 块人民币
居然	jūrán	<i>adv.</i>	unexpectedly; to one’s surprise 他中文才学了半年，居然能看 中文书了。
承德	Chéngdé	<i>n.</i>	Chengde, in Hebei Province
参观	cānguān	<i>v.</i>	visit (a place); look around
避暑山庄	Bìshǔ Shānzhūāng	<i>n.</i>	“avoid-heat-mountain-villa”; (Imperial) Summer Residence
山西	Shānxī	<i>n.</i>	Shanxi Province
大同	Dàtóng	<i>n.</i>	Datong (in Shanxi)
云岗石窟	Yúngǎng Shíkū	<i>n.</i>	Yungang Caves
硬座	yìngzuò	<i>n.</i>	hard seat (on a train)
软卧	ruǎnwò	<i>n.</i>	soft bunk (on a train)

火车虽然没有飞机那么快，但是在火车上可以看到路上的风景，在火车站还可以买到当地的特产，尝到当地的风味儿小吃。坐火车最有趣的是可以在车上跟乘客交谈，不但可以练习中文，还可以交到新朋友。

到目前为止<sup>(3)</sup>，中国国内长途旅行的主要交通工具还是火车，在火车上有比较多的机会观察中国人的生活。

路上	lù.shàng	<i>adv.</i>	on the way 路上的行人很多。/我在回家的路上看到了一个老朋友。
特产	tèchǎn	<i>n.</i>	special local product
尝	cháng	<i>v.</i>	taste 这个菜很好吃，你尝尝。
风味儿	fēngwèir	<i>n.</i>	special flavor; local flavor
小吃	xiǎochī	<i>n.</i>	snack; refreshments
乘客	chéngkè	<i>n.</i>	passenger
交谈	jiāotán	<i>v.</i>	talk with each other; converse; chat
练习	liànxí	<i>v./n.</i>	practice; exercise
交	jiāo	<i>v.</i>	make (friends) 上大学以后，我交了不少新朋友。
到…为止	dào…wéizhǐ		up to…; until…
目前	mùqíán	<i>t.w.</i>	now; at present
国内	guónèi	<i>adj.</i>	internal; domestic 国内电话
主要	zhǔyào	<i>adj.</i>	main 主要原因/主要问题/主要人物
工具	gōngjù	<i>n.</i>	tool; instrument
机会	jī.huì	<i>n.</i>	opportunity; chance
观察	guānchá	<i>v.</i>	observe; watch; survey

## ★繁体字课文

在美國生活了十幾年，我從來沒坐過長途火車。到遠處去旅行，不是坐飛機就是(1)開車。來了中國以後，不到(2)三個星期，居然已經坐了兩次長途火車了。一次是到承德去參觀避暑山莊，另一次是去山西大同看雲崗石窟。去承德那一次坐的是硬座；去大同那次坐的是軟臥。軟臥比硬座舒服，但是也貴得多。

火車雖然沒有飛機那麼快，但是在火車上可以看到路上的風景，在火車站還可以買到當地的特產，嘗到當地的風味兒小吃。坐火車最有趣的是可以在車上跟乘客交談，不但可以練習中文，還可以交到新朋友。

到目前為止(3)，中國國內長途旅行的主要交通工具還是火車，在火車上有比較多的機會觀察中國人的生活。

### 语法点

(1) 到远处去旅行，不是坐飞机就是开车。

When I travel to distant places, I either ride a plane or drive a car.

With nouns, verbs, phrases or clauses, 不是…就是… means “either ...or ...(and nothing else).”

1. 他不是到邮局去，就是到银行去了。

If he is not going to the post office, he must be going to the bank.

2. 我不是喝矿泉水就是喝汽水，因为自来水是不能直接喝的。

I drink either mineral water or soda, because you can't drink tap water directly.

(2) 来了中国以后，不到三个星期，居然已经坐了两次长途火车了。

I have taken long-distance trains twice in the less than three weeks since I've come to China.

不到, meaning “less than” or “not yet,” is usually followed by an expression denoting quantity.

1. 要是你坐出租汽车，不到半个钟头就能到中国银行。

If you go by taxi, you will be at Bank of China in less than half an hour.

2. 我认识的中国字不到一千个。

I can recognize fewer than 1000 Chinese characters.

3. 不到十点钟，他就上床睡觉了。

It was not 10 o'clock yet, but he had already gone to bed.

(3) 到目前为止，中国国内长途旅行的主要交通工具还是火车。

Until today, the major means of domestic transportation in China has still been the train.

止 literally means “stop.” With a time expression or a phrase inserted, 到…为止 can serve either as an adverbial or a complement.

1. 到现在为止，我还没听到过中国人用“同志”来称呼人。

As of yet, I haven't heard Chinese people address others by using the word “comrade.”

2. 到昨天为止，我花了三百二十块人民币。

I had spent 320 RMB as of yesterday.

3. 他昨天晚上十点钟开始学习，一直学到把每个词儿都记住为止。

Last night he stared studying from 10 o'clock and continued until he had memorized each and every word.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你买那幅山水画儿，花了多少钱？（不到）
2. 你到了中国以后，参观过哪些有名的地方？（到目前为止）
3. 你喜欢不喜欢坐火车旅行？为什么？
4. 在美国，旅行的时候，坐火车方便还是开车方便？为什么？
5. 北京有什么特产和风味儿小吃？

### II. Use 不到 to rewrite the following sentences.

1. 我来中国才一个多星期。
2. 我每天早上5点45分就起来看书。
3. 从这儿坐出租车到王府井，只要40块人民币。
4. 我在中国每个月花的钱只有二百多块。
5. 我在这儿只住了三个多星期，就已经交了不少新朋友了。

### III. Use 不是…就是… to answer the following questions.

1. 美国人长途旅行的时候，都用什么交通工具？
2. 你在长途火车上都做些什么事？
3. 夏天不必上课，你都做什么？
4. 你星期六、星期天经常去哪儿？
5. 晚上你都在哪儿学习？

### IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 你逛过北京的古董市场吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（从来没 v. 过， 所以）

2. A: 你为什么骑自行车到王府井去？为什么不坐出租车呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（虽然， A 没有 B 那么 adj., 可是）

3. A: 你认为住在外国有什么好处？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（最有趣的是…， 而且）

4. A: 这儿就有一个公共厕所，你为什么不去呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（没想到， 居然， 宁可）

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. When taking long trips in China, taking a train is much more interesting and comfortable than taking a plane. On a plane you cannot see the view on the road, and it is not easy to get up and walk around. When riding a train, not only can you buy specialty items from every locale, but Chinese people on trains like to converse and make friends with foreigners.
2. Until now, I haven't had a chance to observe thoroughly Chinese people's lives. I have been very busy either going to class or studying in the library (图书馆). I sleep less than 4 hours a day. I don't even have time to sleep, let alone go out on a trip to see Chinese society.
3. The last time I went to Chengde to visit the Summer Palace, I bought a hard-seat ticket because someone told me soft-bunk tickets were extremely expensive. However, the hard seat was so uncomfortable that I simply could not stand it. This time, I am going to Datong in Shanxi, and no matter how expensive it is, I am buying a soft-bunk ticket.

**VI. Composition**

Write a journal entry describing your experiences of riding trains in China. Start from the train station. Write down what kind of people you meet on the road and the content of your conversation. After going on a long trip and coming back to your well-equipped dormitory, is your impression of China different from the one you had before going on the trip?

## 第十四课 北京的公园

到北京来的中外游客往往只去参观几个有名的景点，像故宫、颐和园、长城这些地方。其实到这些地方去，不但门票很贵，而且任何<sup>(1)</sup>时候都是人山人海，是看不到北京人的日常生活的。

北京城里有许多小公园儿，那儿没有有名的古代

---

中外	zhōngwài	<i>adj.</i>	China and foreign countries
游客	yóukè	<i>n.</i>	visitor (to a park, etc.); tourist
有名	yǒumíng	<i>adj.</i>	famous
景点	jǐngdiǎn	<i>n.</i>	scenic spot
故宫	Gùgōng	<i>n.</i>	the Palace Museum
颐和园	Yíhéyuán	<i>n.</i>	the Summer Palace
长城	Chángchéng	<i>n.</i>	the Great Wall
门票	ménpiào	<i>n.</i>	entrance ticket; admission ticket 这个博物馆不收门票。
任何	rènhé	<i>adj.</i>	any; whichever; whatever
人山人海	rénshān rénhǎi	<i>idm.</i>	huge crowds of people
古代	gǔdài	<i>n.</i>	ancient times

建筑，也没有华丽的装饰，可是却是北京市民休闲的好地方。早晨有许多人在那儿锻炼：有的(2)跑步，有的跳舞，有的打太极拳，有的打羽毛球，还有人遛鸟儿。到了傍晚，可以看到许多人在那儿下棋、乘凉和聊天儿。天黑以后，公园儿又成了恋人们谈恋爱的好地方。

建筑	jiànzhù	<i>n.</i>	building
华丽	huáli	<i>adj.</i>	magnificent; resplendent
装饰	zhuāngshì	<i>n.</i>	decoration
休闲	xiūxián	<i>adj</i>	recreational
锻炼	duànlìan	<i>v.</i>	exercise; engage in physical training
跑步	pǎo//bù	<i>v.-o.</i>	jog
跳舞	tiào//wǔ	<i>v.-o.</i>	dance
太极拳	tàijíquán	<i>n.</i>	taijiquan, a kind of traditional Chinese shadow boxing
打太极拳	dǎ tàijíquán	<i>v.-o.</i>	do taijiquan
打球	dǎ//qiú	<i>v.-o.</i>	play ball; play a ball game
羽毛球	yǔmáoqiú	<i>n.</i>	badminton
遛鸟儿	liù//niǎor	<i>v.-o.</i>	take a stroll with one's caged bird
傍晚	bàngwǎn	<i>t.w.</i>	evening; dusk
下棋	xià//qí	<i>v.-o.</i>	play chess 跟朋友下棋
乘凉	chéng//liáng	<i>v.-o.</i>	relax in a cool place
黑	hēi	<i>adj.</i>	dark
恋人	liànrén	<i>n.</i>	lovers (used only to describe people, not to address them) 他们两个人是恋人。
谈恋爱	tán liànr'ài	<i>v.-o.</i>	date (someone); be in love A 跟 B 谈恋爱

北京是一个有一千多万人口的大城市。平时我们看到的是忙碌的生活、紧张的工作、拥挤的交通，只有<sup>(3)</sup>在北京的公园儿里，才能看到北京人生活中悠闲的一面。

北京的夏天又闷热又潮湿，这些小公园儿为忙碌的北京人提供了休息的好去处。

---

…千万	qiānwàn		ten million 一千多万: more than ten million
人口	rénkǒu	n.	population
城市	chéngshì	n.	metropolis; city
平时	píngshí	adv.	ordinarily; normally
忙碌	mánglù	adj.	busy
拥挤	yōngjǐ	adj.	crowded
悠闲	yōuxián	adj.	leisurely and carefree
一面	yímiàn	n.	one side; one aspect 有紧张的一面，也有悠闲的一面 有好的一面，也有坏的一面
闷热	mēnrè	adj.	hot and suffocating; muggy
潮湿	cháoshī	adj.	humid
去处	qùchù	n.	place; resort; site

## ★繁体字课文

到北京來的中外遊客往往只去參觀幾個有名的景點，像故宮、頤和園、長城這些地方。其實到這些地方去，不但門票很貴，而且任何(1)時候都是人山人海，是看不到北京人的日常生活的。

北京城裏有許多小公園兒，那儿沒有有名的古代建築，也沒有華麗的裝飾，可是卻是北京市民休閒的好地方。早晨有許多人在那儿鍛煉：有的(2)跑步，有的跳舞，有的打太極拳，有的打羽毛球，還有人遛鳥兒。到了傍晚，可以看到許多人在那儿下棋、乘涼和聊天兒。天黑以後，公園兒又成了戀人們談戀愛的好地方。

北京是一個有一千多萬人口的大城市。平時我們看到的是忙碌的生活、緊張的工作、擁擠的交通，只有(3)在北京的公園兒裏，才能看到北京人生活中悠閒的一面。

北京的夏天又悶熱又潮濕，這些小公園兒為忙碌的北京人提供了休息的好去處。

### 语法点

(1) 任何时候都是人山人海。

It is a sea of people all the time.

任何 is an adjective used to modify nouns. Usually there is no 的 between 任何 and the noun it modifies. The noun that follows is usually disyllabic except for 人 and 事. When 任何 appears in the topic position indicating inclusiveness or exclusiveness the adverb 都 must be used.

1. 任何人都有做錯的時候。

Everyone makes mistakes.

2. 你任何时间都可以来跟我谈话。

You may come to talk to me any time.

(2) 有的跑步，有的打太极拳。

Some jog and some practice T'aichi.

The structure 有的…，有的… means “some..., and some....” You can add 还/也 before that last “有的…” phrase.

1. 这个图书馆里的书，有的是中文的，有的是英文的。

Some of the books in the library are Chinese and some are English.

2. 屋子里的人有的在看书，有的在谈话。

Some of the people in the room are reading, some are chatting.

(3) 只有在北京的公园儿里，才能看到北京人生活中悠闲的一面。

Only in Beijing's park can one see the leisurely side of Beijing residents' lives.

只有 indicates that what follows is the sole satisfactory condition. It is often used in conjunction with 才.

1. 只有在大城市住过的人才知道大城市的生活多么有趣。

Only people who have lived in a big city are aware of how interesting city life is.

2. 只有常常锻炼，身体才能健康。

Only by exercising often can one be healthy.

## 练习

I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 每年夏天，你都做些什么？（往往）
2. 中国有哪些很现代化的城市？（像 A, B, C 这些地方）
3. 你的宿舍只有晚上才提供热水吗？（任何…都…）

4. 傍晚的时候，公园儿里的人们都做什么？

(有的…，有的…)

5. 你认为住在像北京这样的大城市里好不好？

(有…的一面，也有…的一面，比方)

6. 你认为我们的宿舍怎么样？(为…提供…，所以)

**II. Form sentences using the underlined expressions.**

1. 这些小公园儿为忙碌的北京人提供了休息的好去处。

2. 那儿没有有名的建筑，也没有华丽的装饰，可是却是北京市民休闲的好地方。

3. 在北京的公园儿里，我们可以看到北京人生活中悠闲的一面。

4. 只有在北京的公园儿里，才能看到北京人生活中悠闲的一面。

5. 早晨有许多人在那儿锻炼，有的跑步，有的打太极拳。

6. 到北京来的中外游客往往只去参观几个有名的景点。

**III. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.**

讲价	乘凉	城市	成了	人山人海
平时	休闲	傍晚	公园	拥挤

1. 在美国的大\_\_\_\_\_里，一到了星期天，交通就不\_\_\_\_\_了。

2. 在北京，像王府井、颐和园这些地方，任何时候都是\_\_\_\_\_。

3. 想观察北京人的\_\_\_\_\_生活，只要到城里的小\_\_\_\_\_看看就行了。从早晨到\_\_\_\_\_，都有人在那儿锻炼、\_\_\_\_\_、聊天儿。

4. 我\_\_\_\_\_总在学校附近的小商店买东西，因为又方便又不用\_\_\_\_\_。

**IV. Use 只有…才 to rewrite the following sentences.**

1. 除了他以外，没有人知道银行在哪儿。

2. 现在除了二环以外，别的路都堵车。

3. 要是没打过太极拳，怎么知道太极拳对身体好不好呢？

4. 你没在这儿住过，肯定不知道这儿夏天有多闷热潮湿。
5. 现在堵车堵得厉害，除了骑自行车，你不可能准时到学校。

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. When tourists go to visit a historical (历史, lìshǐ) scenic site, they want to see ancient architecture. However, often what they see is nothing more than modern decoration.
2. Who would ever want to have a date (use 谈恋爱) somewhere like the Summer Palace? Not only would lovers have to spend money for their passes, but these places, always packed with throngs of people, are not good locations for talking.
3. At dusk Beijing is not as muggy and humid as in the daytime. The traffic is still very heavy, but people on the roads are not as anxious as they are in the early morning. After work (下班以后), some people go home by riding a bike, some by walking, and some by taking a bus.

#### VI. Composition

There is a Chinese saying which translates something like this: “Distant relatives are not as good as nearby neighbors.” (远亲不如近邻, yuǎnqīn bùrú jìnlín) As one might surmise from this statement, public places, such as community parks, sidewalks, and even roads can become extensions of the household. People chat, cook, play chess, exercise, and even take naps outside their homes. Does doing these activities outdoors provide for stronger social bonds in the community? If you were provided with a chance to lead such a life, would you like to give it a try? Would you say “yes” because you would enjoy more interaction with others, or would you say “no” because such activities would be an invasion of your privacy?

## 第十五课 北京的夜市

北京的大街小巷里常有夜市。我最喜欢去逛这些夜市，在夜市里，可以看到北京人的日常生活。有名的夜市，像后海的酒吧，是观光客常去的地方。到了晚上八、九点钟以后，那儿热闹极了。成千上万的游客到了后海，有的来喝酒，有的来唱歌，有的来谈恋爱，也有的来散步。本来<sup>(1)</sup>我不太懂“热闹”这个词儿

---

夜市	yèshì	<i>n.</i>	night market; night fair
大街小巷	dàjiē xiǎoxiàng	<i>idm.</i>	big streets and small alleys-almost everywhere/anywhere
后海	Hòuhǎi	<i>n.</i>	Houhai; a famous lake in Beijing 海: sea
酒吧	jiǔbā	<i>n.</i>	bar; barroom
观光	guānguāng	<i>v.</i>	go sightseeing 到外国去观光/到有名的景点观光
观光客	guānguāngkè	<i>n.</i>	tourist; sightseer
热闹	rè.nao	<i>adj.</i>	(of a place) lively; bustling with noise and excitement
成千上万	chéngqiān shàngwàn	<i>idm.</i>	thousands upon thousands
喝酒	hē//jiǔ	<i>v.-o.</i>	drink alcoholic liquor 酒: wine; liquor
唱歌	chàng//gē	<i>v.-o.</i>	sing 歌: song
散步	sàn//bù	<i>v.-o.</i>	take a walk; go for a walk

的意思，来了后海以后，我才知道什么是“热闹”。

后海是一个湖，原来<sup>(2)</sup>是皇帝的花园。1912年中华民国成立以后，北京的皇家花园都一个一个地<sup>(3)</sup>开放了，老百姓也能进去了。晚上的后海特别漂亮，岸上的酒吧和湖里的游船都亮起了霓虹灯，还有人在船上唱歌。

我最常去的是离学校不远的一个小夜市，在那儿有各式各样的小吃。因为天气太热，许多男人都不穿

---

湖	hú	<i>n.</i>	lake
皇帝	huángdì	<i>n.</i>	emperor
花园	huāyuán	<i>n.</i>	garden
中华民国	Zhōnghuá Mínguó	<i>n.</i>	the Republic of China (1912 – present, the government moved to Taiwan in 1949)
成立	chénglì	<i>v.</i>	found; establish
皇家	huángjiā	<i>adj.</i>	imperial
开放	kāifàng	<i>v.</i>	open to the public
老百姓	lǎobǎixìng	<i>n.</i>	the common people
岸上	ànr.shàng	<i>p.w.</i>	on the bank; on the shore 岸: bank; shore; coast
游船	yóuchuán	<i>n.</i>	pleasure-boat
亮	liàng	<i>v.</i>	light; brighten; shine 天亮了/亮起了红灯
霓虹灯	níméngdēng	<i>n.</i>	neon light; neon tube
各式各样	gèshì gèyàng	<i>adj.</i>	every kind of; all sorts of; all kinds of 各式各样的服装/各式各样的鞋子

---

上衣，大声地说话，喝啤酒。虽然我听不懂他们在谈什么，但是我看得出来，这是北京老百姓生活里很轻松的一面。

我也在夜市的小摊儿上吃过几次羊肉串儿，好吃极了。我给妈妈打电话，告诉她我在夜市的小摊儿上吃了东西。她很担心，要我注意卫生。我说：“别担心！不干不净，吃了没病<sup>(4)</sup>！”

---

上衣	shàngyī	<i>n.</i>	upper outer garment
大声	dàshēng	<i>adv.</i>	loudly; in a loud voice 大声说话/大声唱歌
啤酒	píjiǔ	<i>n.</i>	beer
轻松	qīngsōng	<i>adj.</i>	light; relaxed 轻松的工作/觉得很轻松
小摊儿	xiǎotān	<i>n.</i>	vendor's stand; stall
羊肉串儿	yángròuchuàn	<i>n.</i>	mutton cubes roasted on a skewer; kebab
告诉	gào.su	<i>v.</i>	tell; inform
不干不净	bùgān bùjìng	<i>adj.</i>	unclean; filthy

## ★繁体字课文

北京的大街小巷裏常有夜市。我最喜歡去逛這些夜市，在夜市裏，可以看到北京人的日常生活。有名的夜市，像後海的酒吧，是觀光客常去的地方。到了晚上八、九點鐘以後，那儿熱鬧極了。成千上萬的遊客到了後海，有的來喝酒，有的來唱歌，有的來談戀愛，也有的來散步。本來<sup>(1)</sup>我不太懂“熱鬧”這個詞兒的意思，來了後海以後，我才知道什麼是“熱鬧”。

後海是一個湖，原來<sup>(2)</sup>是皇帝的花園。1912年中華民國成立以後，北京的皇家花園都一個一個地<sup>(3)</sup>開放了，老百姓也能進去了。晚上的後海特別漂亮，岸上的酒吧和湖裏的遊船都亮起了霓虹燈，還有人在船上唱歌。

我最常去的是離學校不遠的一個小夜市，在那儿有各式各樣的小吃。因為天氣太熱，許多男人都不穿上衣，大聲地說話，喝啤酒。雖然我聽不懂他們在談什麼，但是我看得出來，這是北京老百姓生活裏很輕鬆的一面。

我也在夜市的小攤兒上吃過幾次羊肉串兒，好吃極了。我給媽媽打電話，告訴她我在夜市的小攤兒上吃了東西。她很擔心，要我注意衛生。我說：“別擔心！不乾不淨，吃了沒病<sup>(4)</sup>！”

## 语 法 点

(1) 本来我不太懂“热闹”这个词的意思，来了后海以后，我才知道什么是“热闹”。

I originally didn't understand what “热闹” meant; only after I came to 后海 did I understand what “热闹” was.

本来 means “originally,” see L.3, Note (14). The 才 here means “only then” or “not until” and is the same as the one in L. 3, Note (12).

1. 本来我只听说过几个有名的景点，到了北京以后才知道这儿也有许多小公园。

Originally I only knew some famous scenic spots; I didn't realize that there were many small parks in Beijing until I came here.

2. 我本来不觉得坐火车旅行很有趣，后来我坐了一次长途火车，才发现这真是观察中国人生活的好机会。

I didn't feel that it was interesting to travel by train, and only after taking a long-distant train did I realize that it was indeed a good opportunity to observe Chinese people's life.

(2) 后海是一个湖，原来是皇帝的花园。

Houhai is a lake. It originally was an emperor's garden.

原来 can be used as adjective to modify a noun. (See L. 6, page 56) It is used here as an adverb and means the same as 本来.

(3) 1912年中华民国成立以后，北京的皇家花园都一个一个地开放了。

After the establishment of the Republic of China in 1912, the imperial gardens in Beijing were open to the public one after another.

The pattern —AN—AN, meaning “one after another” or “one by one,” is adverbial and always precedes a verb. 地 is often added after the phrase, e.g. 一块一块地吃, 一个一个地写, 一件一件地做, 一天一天地增加。

(4) 不干不净，吃了没病。

Eat filthy things, and you will stay healthy.

This is a common saying advising one not to pay too much attention to hygiene, and which sometimes does make sense. The 不 *adj.* 不 *adj.* structure indicates an emphatic negation when used with two monosyllabic words split from a disyllable, e.g. 不清不楚, 不干不净. Please learn this structure case by case because not all adjectives can be split this way. When it is used with two adjectives opposite in meaning, it means “neither ... nor...,” indicating an in-between state, e.g. 不大不小, 不快不慢.

1. 这幅画的价钱不多不少，正好 500 块。

The price of this painting is neither too much nor too little, it is exactly 500 dollars.

2. 他说得不快不慢，人人都听得很清楚。

He said it neither too fast nor too slow. Everybody heard clearly.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你喜欢逛夜市吗？你觉得学校附近的夜市怎么样？（印象）
2. 你认为观光客到了中国，一定得去参观哪些地方？到了美国呢？（另外）
3. 你去过后海没有？后海给你的印象好不好？为什么？（可惜）
4. 中国人常说：“不干不净，吃了没病。”你认为这句话说得对不对？（表面上）
5. 你觉得“好吃”要紧(yào jǐn: important)，还是“卫生”要紧？（宁可…，也不…）
6. 在小摊儿上吃东西和在饭馆儿里吃东西有什么不同？（A 和 B 比起来）

II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

成千上万 开放 亮 成立 各式各样 轻松 大声

1. 现在已经十二点多了，你别在宿舍里 \_\_\_\_\_ 唱歌。
2. 我认为图书馆、公园都应该免费地 \_\_\_\_\_ 给所有的人。
3. 每年都有 \_\_\_\_\_ 的观光客到故宫来参观。
4. 平时我们的工作非常紧张，到了周末才 \_\_\_\_\_ 一点儿。
5. 中国银行 \_\_\_\_\_ 以后，不但为中国人，也为在中国的外国人提供了很好的服务。
6. 这家百货商场里有 \_\_\_\_\_ 的服装，价钱也很便宜。
7. 你看，船上的霓虹灯都 \_\_\_\_\_ 了，真好看。

III. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

1. 本来我不太懂“热闹”这个词儿的意思，来了后海以后，我才知道什么是“热闹”。
2. 1912年中华民国成立以后，北京的皇家花园都一个一个地开放了。
3. 虽然我听不懂他们在谈什么，但是我看得出来，这是北京老百姓生活里很轻松的一面。
4. 我给妈妈打电话，告诉她我在夜市的小摊上吃了东西。她很担心，要我注意卫生。

IV. Answer the following questions using 才 and the words provided.

1. A: 飞机票那么贵，为什么你一定要到中国去呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。(才，观察)
2. A: 你怎么带了《花花公子》到中国来呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。(才，本来，海关，查)
3. A: 在设备那么好的发廊理发，肯定不便宜吧?  
B: 不对，\_\_\_\_\_。(才，而且，不必)
4. A: 故宫原来是皇帝住的地方。那么，老百姓不能进去吧?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (才, 到了 time, 成立, 开放)

5. A: 什么? 你没讲价? 那你一定上当了!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (才, 幅, 并没 v.)

6. A: 我能不能用“女士”这个词儿来称呼百货商场的服务员?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (才, 不怎么 v., 正式)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. Although Houhai is called a sea, it is actually a lake. There are many bars on the bank. In the evening, Houhai is crowded with young Chinese and foreign tourists. The bars provide American beers, and the price is almost as expensive as it is in America.
2. I had some beer and some mutton cubes from a stall last night. This morning my stomach was upset, and I vomited. I don't know if this has anything to do with the food that I had last night. Can I ask for a day's leave to see a doctor?
3. In the evening, all the food stalls turn on their neon lights and begin to sell every kind of snack. I often go with my friends to those stalls for dinner. This is my most relaxed time of day (use 一天里).

#### VI. Composition

In a Chinese restaurant people talk loudly when enjoying the food, while in a good Western restaurant people usually talk in low voices. What kind of restaurant do you like? Why? Do the 热闹的 Chinese restaurants bother you? You may have already been to some of the 人山人海的 scenery spots and the crowded night markets. Tell us your experience.

## 第十六课 北京动物园

上个周末，学校没有安排活动，我和同屋就趁<sup>(1)</sup>这个机会去了北京动物园。我从前只在电视上看过中国的大熊猫，从来没有见过真的熊猫。这次去动物园，主要就是为了<sup>(2)</sup>看这个有名的动物。

北京动物园离学校不远，我们坐了不到半小时的公交车就到了。因为是周末，参观的人真是<sup>(3)</sup>人山人

---

动物	dòngwù	<i>n.</i>	animal
动物园	dòngwùyuán	<i>n.</i>	zoo
安排	ānpái	<i>v./ n.</i>	arrange, arrangement
活动	huódòng	<i>n.</i>	activity
趁	chèn	<i>prep.</i>	take advantage of (time, opportunity, etc.) 趁这个机会/趁天气好的时候
从前	cóngqián	<i>t.w.</i>	once upon a time; sometime ago; in past days
大熊猫	dà xiōngmāo	<i>n.</i>	panda; giant panda
主要	zhǔyào	<i>adv.</i>	mainly
为了	wèi.le	<i>prep.</i>	for; for the sake of; in order to
公交车	gōngjiāochē	<i>n.</i>	same as 公共汽车; bus

海。买票的人很多，有些人不排队，这让我很生气。

我们花了半小时才买到票。

熊猫馆就在离大门入口不远的地方。熊猫比我想象的更大，也更可爱。白色的身体，黑色的耳朵和眼睛。有的坐在地上吃竹子，有的躺着睡觉，还有一只

票	piaò	n.	ticket
生气	shēng//qì	v.-o.	get angry; be offended by; be angry at 他生气了。/他生谁的气呢? 你对他生这么大的气有什么用?
花	huā	v.	spend (time or money) 花了很多时间/花了 100 块钱
熊猫馆	xióngmāoguǎn	n.	panda habitat; panda exhibit
入口	rùkǒu	n.	entrance 出口: exit
可爱	kěài	adj.	lovable; lovely; cute
白色	báisè	n./adj.	white
黑色	hēisè	n./adj.	black
耳朵	ěr.duo	n.	ear
眼睛	yǎnjīng	n.	eye
地	dì	n.	ground; floor 把书放在桌子上，别放在地上。
竹子	zhú.zi	n.	bamboo
躺	tǎng	v.	lie; recline
只	zhī	AN	measure word for animals

走来走去，好像在跟大家打招呼似的<sup>(4)</sup>。我赶紧<sup>(5)</sup>拿出照相机来，拍了好几张照片儿。

北京动物园很大，我们看到了老虎、狮子、大象、长颈鹿、猩猩等来自世界各地的动物。给我印象最深的是金丝猴。金丝猴的毛是金黄色的，母猴总是

---

好像 … 似	hǎoxiàng…shì.de	adv.	seem; as if 好像没听懂似的/好像病了似的
打 招 呼	dǎ zhāo.hu	v.-o.	say hello A 跟 B 打招呼
赶 紧	gǎnjǐn	adv.	without loosing time; hastily; quickly
照 相 机	zhàoxiàngjī	n.	camera
拍	pāi	v.	take (photos, movies, etc.); shoot
张	zhāng	AN	measure for paper or picture
老 虎	lǎohǔ	n.	tiger
狮 子	shī.zi	n.	lion
大 象	dàxiàng	n.	elephant
长 颈 鹿	chángjǐnglù	n.	giraffe
猩 猩	xīng.xīng	n.	gorilla
… 等 n.	…děng		and so on; etc.
来 自	láizì	v.	come from 来自中国/来自纽约
深	shēn	adj.	deep; penetrating; profound
金 丝 猴	jīnsīhóu	n.	golden monkey
毛	máo	n.	hair (of animals); fur
金 黄 色	jīnhuángsè	n./adj.	golden yellow
母 猴	mǔhóu	n.	she-monkey 母: female (used for animal)

---

抱着小猴儿，有时也背着小猴儿。我想连猴子的母爱都这么伟大，更不用说<sup>(6)</sup>人的母爱了。

动物园里，有许多父母带着孩子来参观。由于<sup>(7)</sup>一家一个孩子<sup>(8)</sup>的政策，我常常看到父母和祖父母四个人一起照顾一个孩子。我真担心那个孩子会被惯坏。

动物园里还有一条河，我们坐了船，在河上玩了半个多小时。回到宿舍的时候已经 6 点多了。

---

抱	bào	v.	carry in one's arms; embrace; cradle
小猴儿	xiǎohóur	n.	baby monkey
背	bēi	v.	carry on the back
猴子	hóu.zi	n.	monkey
母爱	mǔài	n.	motherly love
伟大	wěidà	adj.	great; mighty
由于	yóuyú	prep.	owing to; due to; thanks to
孩子	hái.zi	n.	child; children; kid
政策	zhèngcè	n.	policy
祖父母	zǔfùmǔ	n.	祖父 and 祖母; grandparents (use 爷爷 (yé.ye) and 奶奶 (nǎi.nai) in spoken language or when directly addressing them)
河	hé	n.	river
船	chuán	n.	boat; ship; vessel

## ★繁体字课文

上個週末，學校沒有安排活動，我和同屋就趁(1)這個機會去了北京動物園。我從前只在電視上看過中國的大熊貓，從來沒有見過真的熊貓。這次去動物園，主要就是為了(2)看這個有名的動物。

北京動物園離學校不遠，我們坐了不到半小時的公交車就到了。因為是週末，參觀的人真是(3)人山人海。買票的人很多，有些人不排隊，這讓我很生氣。我們花了半小時才買到票。

熊貓館就在離大門入口不遠的地方。熊貓比我想像的更大，也更可愛。白色的身體，黑色的耳朵和眼睛。有的坐在地上吃竹子，有的躺著睡覺，還有一隻走來走去，好像在跟大家打招呼似的(4)。我趕緊(5)拿出照相機來，拍了好幾張照片兒。

北京動物園很大，我們看到了老虎、獅子、大象、長頸鹿、猩猩等來自世界各地的動物。給我印象最深的是金絲猴。金絲猴的毛是金黃色的，母猴總是抱著小猴兒，有時也背著小猴兒。我想連猴子的母愛都這麼偉大，更不用說(6)人的母愛了。

動物園裏，有許多父母帶著孩子來參觀。由於(7)一家一個孩子(8)的政策，我常常看到父母和祖父母四個人一起照顧一個孩子。我真擔心那個孩子會被慣壞。

動物園裏還有一條河，我們坐了船，在河上玩了半個多小時。回到宿舍的時候已經6點多了。

## 语法点

- (1) 上个周末，学校没有安排活动，我和同屋就趁这个机会去了北京动物园。

Last weekend our school didn't arrange any activity. My roommate and I took this opportunity to go to the Beijing Zoo.

In English, 趁…机会/的时候 best translates to take advantage of a certain opportunity or time. However, in Chinese, 趁 is used as a preposition, not a verb. 趁…机会/的时候 is used as an adverbial phrase to modify the verb that follows.

1. 我还没参观过故宫呢！很想趁这个周末去看看这个古老的皇家建筑。

I haven't yet visited the Imperial Palace. I'd like very much to use this weekend to see this old imperial building.

2. 你既然已经在中国了，为什么不趁这个机会尝尝各地的风味儿小吃呢？

Since you are in China already, why don't you take this opportunity to taste some snacks with local flavor?

- (2) 这次去动物园，主要就是为了看这个有名的动物。

This time I mainly went to the zoo to see this famous animal.

为了 introduces the purpose or the cause of an action. When used as a predicate, 是为了 or 就是为了 is used to introduce the purpose or reason. 为了 always occurs at the beginning of a sentence when used without 是 or 就是.

1. 学校里有个外事处，是为了帮外国学生的忙。

The reason that there is a foreign affairs office in the school is to help the foreign students.

2. 我不用洗碗机就是为了节省水电，并不是买不起。

The reason that I don't use the dishwasher is to save water and electricity; it is not because I can't afford it.

3. 为了学中文，我在北京住了半年。

I lived in Beijing for half a year in order to study Chinese.

- (3) 因为是周末，参观的人真是人山人海。

Because it was a weekend, there was a huge crowd of people.

真是 means the same as 真. See L.2, Note (9). 真是 may replace 真 without affecting its meaning when the modified element is polysyllabic.

1. 晚上的后海真是热闹极了。  
Houhai is bustling with noise and excitement in the evening.
2. 这个工作真是不简单。  
This work is really not easy.

真是 is also used before the set phrase composed of four characters in a exclamatory sentence; e.g. 动物园里真是人山人海; 来参观的人真是成千上万。

(4) 有一只走来走去，好像在跟大家打招呼似的。

One was walking back and forth as if it were greeting people.

好像, often used in connection with 似的 or 一样, means “seem,” “like,” or “as if.” 似的 and 一样 can be dropped except when the structure is used as an adverbial phrase.

1. 他整天都躺在床上，好像病了似的/一样。  
He was lying on his bed as if he were sick.
2. 他听说了这件事，好像很生气似的半天没说话。  
When he heard this matter, he was silent for quite a while as if he were very angry.

Without 似的 or 一样, 好像 sometimes indicates that the speaker is not sure of something.

3. 这个小摊儿上的东西好像不太干净， 我们到饭馆儿去吃饭吧！  
This stall's food seems not very clean. Let's go to a restaurant to eat.
4. 学校附近的公共厕所好像都不收费。  
I think that the public restrooms near the school are all free.

(5) 我赶紧拿出照相机来，拍了好几张照片儿。

I took out my camera at once and took quite a few pictures.

赶紧 is an adverb meaning “hastily” or “without loosing time.” It can be used both in an imperative or descriptive sentence.

1. 快上课了，你赶紧走吧！  
It's almost time for class. You'd better hurry up.
2. 他赶紧吃了饭，就到学校去了。

He had a hurried meal and made for the school.

3. 你已经工作了 10 多个小时了，赶紧去休息休息吧！

You have already worked for more than 10 hours. Go to take a rest at once.

- (6) 我想连猴子的母爱都这么伟大，更不用说人的母爱了。

I thought that even the motherly love of monkeys was so great, let alone the motherly love of human beings.

This structure means the same as Note (3) “S. 还…，更不用说…了” in L. 3.

1. 连夜市小摊儿上的东西都很好吃，更不用说大饭馆儿里的了。

Even the food from the stalls in the night market is delicious, not to mention the food in big restaurants.

2. 我是个穷学生，连火车票都买不起，更不用说飞机票了。

I am a poor student. I can't even afford a train ticket, let alone a plane ticket.

3. 现在连二环都堵车，更不用说城里了。

There is traffic even on the Second Ring Road, let alone downtown.

- (7) 由于一家一个孩子的政策，我常常看到父母和祖父母 4 个人一起照顾一个孩子。

Due to the one child per family policy, I see quite often that parents and grandparents, 4 people together, take care of one child.

由于 meaning “due to” or “owing to,” is used in the first part of a sentence to introduce a cause. Its object can be a noun phrase, a subject-predicate, or verb-object construction. Sometimes 由于 is used in conjunction with 所以, 就, 才 or 而 to clarify the causal relationship. The difference between 由于 and 因为 is that 因为 indicating cause can be placed after the effect while 由于 is always used at the beginning of a sentence; 由于 bears a formal tone.

1. 由于私家车增加得太快，交通堵塞一天比一天严重。

Because private cars increase too fast, the traffic jams get more serious by the day.

2. 由于吃了不干净的东西，他又发烧又拉肚子。

Because he ate something unclean, he had a fever and also suffered from diarrhea.

- (8) 由于一家一个孩子的政策，我常常看到父母和祖父母四个人一起照顾一个孩子。

Note that “one child per family” is 一家一个孩子; “an apple a day” is 一天一个苹果 (píngguǒ).

1. 我一个星期给父母打两个电话。

I call my parents twice a week.

2. 我两个月才理一次发。

I go to the barbershop only once every two months.

3. 这种收费的公共厕所，一次五毛钱。

This kind of public convenience charges 50 cents every time.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你在中国除了学中文以外，还想做什么？(趁这个机会)

2. 你喜欢参观动物园吗？为什么？(而且)

3. 你看过哪些动物？你印象最深的是什么？

(印象最深的就是…)

4. 在北京，你去过的哪些地方得买票？有人不排队吗？

(无论…，都…)

5. 你喜欢不喜欢拍照片儿？为什么？(从前，现在)

6. 祖父母和父母四个人照顾一个孩子，这个孩子一定会被惯坏，是不是？

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. 每年参观长城的观光客 \_\_\_\_\_ 成千上万。

- ① 很 ② 是 ③ 真 ④ 真是

2. 我从前 \_\_\_\_ 听说过夜市，可是从来没看见过。

- ① 只 ② 就是 ③ 没 ④ 总是

3. 虽然我学过“人山人海”这个词儿，到了北京以后，

我 \_\_\_\_ 真的懂了这个词儿的意思。

- ① 已经 ② 才 ③ 就 ④ 有时

4. 你好像很不高兴似的，你 \_\_\_\_ 呢？

- ① 生气我 ② 生气对谁 ③ 生谁的气 ④ 生气谁

### III. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

1. 上个周末，学校没有安排活动，我和同屋就趁这个机会去了北京动物园。

2. 我从前只在电视上看过中国的大熊猫，从来没有见过真的熊猫。

3. 有一只走来走去，好像在跟大家打招呼似的。

4. 买票的人很多，有些人不排队，这让我很生气。

### IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 你的英文比中文好得多，为什么不说英文呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_，所以我不想说英文。（就是为了…）

2. A: 你为什么不买一部汽车呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（连…都…，更不用说…了）

3. A: 坐飞机比坐火车快得多，你为什么不坐飞机呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。（由于，趁）

4. A: 菜还没吃完呢！来来来，再喝一点儿茶，再吃一点儿菜！

B: 对不起，\_\_\_\_\_。（赶紧）

### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. He is 5 years old already. His grandparents still often carry him in their arms or on their backs. He is definitely spoiled by them.

2. In the zoo, we saw animals from various parts of the world, such as tigers, lions, and elephants. But due to the hot weather, most of them were just lying on the ground sleeping. It seems that in Beijing not only people, but even animals need to take a nap in the afternoon.

3. The school arranged for the foreign students to visit the Imperial Palace today. Before we got on the bus, the teacher gave one ticket to each one of us. Mr. Wang in the Foreign Affairs Office said that because today was a weekend, there would surely be a lot of tourists there, and the line in front of the ticket office would be very long, so he purchased the tickets for us two days ago.

## VI. Composition

Do you enjoy the zoo? Tell us what attracts you to the zoo. Many people go to the Beijing Zoo to see the giant panda which is on the brink of extinction. How can we save those animals from extinction? Is putting animals in a zoo the best way to protect them? What do you think a zoo is supposed to offer to us?

## 第十七课 万里长城

万里长城是中国的象征，就像自由女神像是美国的象征一样<sup>(1)</sup>。任何人看到万里长城的照片儿，都知道它代表中国。万里长城不但是中国最有名的历史建筑，也是人类建筑史上的奇迹。

上星期六，学校组织同学们去参观长城。我们坐

---

万里长城	Wànlǐ Chángchéng	<i>n.</i>	the Great Wall, covers a total length of over 8851 kilometers
象征	xiàngzhēng	<i>n./v.</i>	symbol, symbolize
自由女神像	Zìyóu Nǚshén xiàng	<i>n.</i>	Statue of Liberty 自由: free; liberty 神: god; deity; divinity 像: statue; portrait; picture
它	tā	<i>pron.</i>	it (for inanimate objects or animals)
代表	dàibiǎo	<i>v.</i>	represent
历史	lìshǐ	<i>n.</i>	history, historical
人类	rénlèi	<i>n.</i>	human being
——史	...shǐ	<i>n.</i>	(suffix) ... history 现代史/交通史/发展史
奇迹	qíjì	<i>n.</i>	miracle; wonder; wonderful achievement
组织	zǔzhī	<i>v./n.</i>	organize, organization

---

了四辆大巴从学校出发。出了热闹的北京市区以后，进入郊区，开了差不多两小时才到司马台长城。北京郊区显然比较落后，没有城里头那么繁荣、那么热闹，街上的人也少得多。

长城是建在山上的。据一位北京的老师说，长城是秦始皇时代开始建的，后来每个朝代都<sup>(2)</sup>做了些维护

---

辆	liàng	<i>AN</i>	measure word for cars
出发	chūfā	<i>v.</i>	set out; start off; leave
市区	shìqū	<i>n.</i>	downtown area; urban district
进入	jìnrù	<i>v.</i>	enter; get into
郊区	jiāoqū	<i>n.</i>	suburb
司马台	Símǎtái	<i>n.</i>	Simatai, place name, 120 km northeast of Beijing, where the Ming Changcheng is located
显然	xiǎnrán	<i>adv.</i>	obviously; clearly
落后	luòhòu	<i>adj.</i>	backward
繁荣	fánróng	<i>adj.</i>	prosperous; flourishing
建	jiàn	<i>v.</i>	build; construct
山	shān	<i>n.</i>	mountain
秦始皇	Qínshǐhuáng	<i>n.</i>	Qin Shi Huang; First Emperor of Qin (259-210 B.C.)
时代	shídài	<i>n.</i>	era; times
朝代	cháodài	<i>n.</i>	dynasty
维护	wéihù	<i>v.</i>	Maintain; upkeep

---

和修理的工作。到了明代（1368-1644），又有大规模的加建。我们现在看到的大多是明代的长城，并不是秦代（221-206 B.C.）原来的建筑。

我站在长城上想着古代的中国人，一方面非常佩服他们在建筑上的成就，需要多少人力、时间和材料才能建成这样伟大的万里长城啊<sup>(3)</sup>！可是，另一方面，在历史上，长城并没有真的在军事上防止北方敌人对中国的侵略<sup>(4)</sup>，但是却挡住<sup>(5)</sup>了中国人向<sup>(6)</sup>北方的发

---

修理	xiūlǐ	v.	repair; mend
规模	guīmó	n.	scale; scope; dimensions 这家工厂的规模很大。
大规模	dà guīmó	adj.	on a large scale 有了大规模的改变
加建	jiājiàn	v.	(of buildings) extend; expand; add extra building
秦代	Qīndài	n.	Qin Dynasty (221-206 B.C.)
站	zhàn	v.	stand; on one's feet
佩服	pèi.fú	v.	admire; have respect for
成就	chéngjiù	n.	achievement; accomplishment
人力	rénlì	n.	human labor
材料	cáiliào	n.	material
军事	jūnshì	n.	military affairs
防止	fángzhǐ	v.	prevent; guard against; avoid
敌人	dírén	n.	enemy
侵略	qīnlüè	v.	invade
挡住	dǎng//.zhù	v.-c.	stop; halt; hamper

展。长城到底有什么意义呢？

参观完长城回到学校，已经五点多了。虽然很累，但是非常高兴，因为我终于<sup>(7)</sup>登上了长城！

意义	yìyì	n.	meaning; significance
终于	zhōngyú	adv.	at last; finally
登	dēng	v.	ascend; mount

## ★ 繁体字课文

萬里長城是中國的象徵，就像自由女神像是美國的象徵一樣<sup>(1)</sup>。任何人看到萬里長城的照片兒，都知道它代表中國。萬里長城不但是中國最有名的歷史建築，也是人類建築史上的奇跡。

上星期六，學校組織同學們去參觀長城。我們坐了四輛大巴從學校出發。出了熱鬧的北京市區以後，進入郊區，開了差不多兩小時才到司馬台長城。北京郊區顯然比較落後，沒有城裏頭那麼繁榮、那麼熱鬧，街上的人也少得多。

長城是建在山上的。據一位北京的老師說，長城是秦始皇時代開始建的，後來每個朝代都<sup>(2)</sup>做了些維護和修理的工作。到了明代（1368-1644），又有大規模的加建。我們現在看到的大多是明代的長城，並不是秦代（221-206 B.C.）原來的建築。

我站在長城上想著古代的中國人，一方面非常佩服他們在建築上的成就，需要多少人力、時間和材料才能建成這樣偉大的萬里長城啊(3)！可是，另一方面，在歷史上，長城並沒有真的在軍事上防止北方敵人對中國的侵略(4)，但是卻擋住(5)了中國人向(6)北方的發展。長城到底有什麼意義呢？

參觀完長城回到學校，已經五點多了。雖然很累，但是非常高興，因為我終於(7)登上了長城！

### 6~ 语法点

- (1) 万里长城是中国的象征，就像自由女神像是美国的象征一样。

The Great Wall is the symbol of China, just like the Statue of Liberty is the symbol of America.

A 像 B 一样 means that A is the same as B. It can be used as predicate, or as an adverbial phrase to modify a verb, adjective, or sentence.

1. 老师们都很照顾学生，就像学生的朋友一样。

The teachers take care of the students so well that they are just like their friends.

2. 我在北京的时候，像中国人一样每天都睡个午觉。

When I was in Beijing, I took a nap everyday just like a Chinese.

- (2) 长城是秦始皇时代开始建的，后来每个朝代都做了些维护和修理的工作。

The Great Wall was built during the era of Qin Shihuang. Later on, every dynasty did maintenance and made repairs.

When 每 is used to denote that each and every shares the same situation or characteristics, 都 often follow the subject.

- 昨天晚上每个人都喝了不少啤酒，所以今天早上都起得比较晚。

Everybody drank a lot of beer last night, so they got up later than usual this morning.

- 这是个好学校，每个学生都很用功。

This is a good school; every student works hard.

- (3) 需要多少人力、时间和材料才能建成这样伟大的长城啊！

How much human labor, time, and material were needed to build such a great wall!

If the final particle is 呢, then this would be an interrogative sentence asking how much human labor, time, and material would be needed to build a long wall. With 啊 at the end of the sentence, it is an exclamatory sentence sighing at how great the expense was.

- (4) 长城并没有真的在军事上防止北方敌人对中国的侵略。

The Great Wall didn't really prevent the military invasion of China from their enemies to the north.

Many disyllable verbs can be used as nouns when they are preceded by a 的. For instance, 侵略中国 is a verb-object phrase, whereas 对中国的侵略 means “the invasion of China;” 向北方发展 is “to develop to the north,” and 向北方的发展 is “the development toward the north.” Others like 安排活动 “to arrange the activities,” 活动的安排 “the arrangement of the activities;” 称呼中年的女士 “to address middle-aged women,” 对中年女士的称呼 “the address for middle-aged women.”

- (5) 长城并没有真的在军事上防止北方敌人对中国的侵略，但是却挡住了中国人向北方的发展。

...but it has stopped the development of Chinese people toward the north.

This 住, used after a verb as a resultative complement, means “to a stop.” The potential form is 挡得住 and 挡不住。See L. 20, Note (3) for another usage of v. + 住。

1. 你这个问题，真把我问住了。

This question of yours has really got me there.

2. 不知道为什么，他们把这条路堵住了。

I don't know why, but they've blocked the way.

3. 站住！把你的护照给我看看！

Stop! Show me your passport!

(6) 长城并没有真的在军事上防止北方敌人对中国的侵略，但是却挡住了中国人向北方的发展。

This 向, meaning “to” or “toward,” indicates the direction of an action.

See L. 6, Note (10) for a different usage of 向。

1. 他向着大门很快地跑过去。

He ran quickly toward the gate.

2. 出了学校的大门，向右转，过一条街，就有一家书店。

If you go out from the school's gate, make a right turn and cross the street, then you will see a book store.

(7) 虽然很累，但是非常高兴，因为我终于登上了长城！

Although very tired, I was very happy because I had finally climbed the Great Wall.

终于, “finally” or “at last,” is used when the subject has finally achieved its goal. You can never say 我终于没登上了长城.

1. 我到银行去了三次，终于把美元换成人民币了。

I went to the bank three times and finally had my U.S. dollars changed into *Renminbi*.

2. 昨天我终于看到了可爱的熊猫了。

Yesterday I saw the lovely panda at last.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions provided.

1. 你到了北京以后，学校组织学生参观了哪些地方？  
(除了…，还…)
2. 你对长城有什么印象？(一方面…，另一方面…)
3. 北京的市区和郊区有很大的不同吗？(显然)
4. 你喜欢住在市区还是郊区？(虽然…，可是…)
5. 你觉得故宫能代表中国还是长城能代表中国？

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

佩服 军事 象征 代表 组织 伟大 热闹 成就

1. 龙(lóng, dragon)不是一种真的动物，却是中国的\_\_\_\_\_。
2. 我是老师，我不能\_\_\_\_\_学生。
3. 最近几年，中国无论在政治上还是在\_\_\_\_\_上都发展得很快。
4. 我真\_\_\_\_\_中国古代的人在建筑上的\_\_\_\_\_。
5. 我想\_\_\_\_\_同学趁周末到故宫参观。
6. 晚上的后海\_\_\_\_\_极了，又有人唱歌，又有人在那儿喝酒，还有人在那儿谈恋爱。
7. 我认为母爱是一种最\_\_\_\_\_的爱。

### III. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

1. 万里长城是中国的象征，就像自由女神像是美国的象征一样。
2. 任何人看到了长城的照片儿，都知道它代表中国。
3. 需要多少人力、时间和材料才能建成这样伟大的长城啊！
4. 我虽然很累，但是很高兴，因为我终于登上了长城。
5. 长城并没有防止北方敌人对中国的侵略，但是却挡住了中国人向北方的发展。

**IV. Choose the correct word from the provided ones.**

1. 她照顾那些没有父母的孩子（就， 可）像照顾自己的孩子一样。
2. 在比较好的饭馆点一个菜，（差不多， 任何）要花 80 块人民币。
3. 我们（在， 从）北京出发，坐了 6 个小时火车才到承德。
4. 我坐了 12 个小时的飞机，（以后， 终于）到了北京。
5. 建长城（并， 又）不是为了建一个建筑奇迹，而是要挡住北方敌人的侵略。
6. 我登（上， 到）了长城，兴奋极了。

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. The Chinese in ancient times spent a lot of human labor, time, and materials to build the Great Wall. However, it did not prevent invasion by the enemies from the north, but rather stopped the Chinese people from developing toward the north.
2. The Imperial Palace and the Great Wall are both wonderful achievements in architectural history. Every year there are thousands upon thousands of tourists that come from every part of the world to visit them.
3. Beijing has been the capital of China during many dynasties. It has always been a prosperous city. The imperial buildings are of grand scale, and the Beijing City Government has kept doing maintenance and making repairs for those buildings.

**VI. Composition**

While some portions of the Great Wall north of Beijing and near tourist centers have been preserved and even extensively renovated, in many locations the Wall is in disrepair. Parts have been destroyed because the Wall is in the way of construction. Should Chinese people preserve the Wall for the sake of tourism? Is it a pity that parts of it have disappeared? What is your impression of the Great Wall?

## 第十八课 到时候再说(1)吧！

在中国话里头有个词儿叫“面子”，英文里没有一个完全相应的词儿。和中国人打交道一定要注意给对方面子，尤其是<sup>(2)</sup>在拒绝别人的要求或者不同意别人意见的时候。

---

到时候	dào shí.hou		until then; until that time 别紧张，到时候你就知道该怎么办了。
再说	zài shuō	v.	put off until sometime later 这件事以后再说吧！
面子	miàn.zi	n.	face; dignity (面子 is not used for the physical face.)
相应	xiāngyìng	adj.	corresponding; relevant
打交道	dǎ jiāodào	v.-o.	come into contact with; have dealings with 我喜欢跟诚实的人打交道。
对方	duìfāng	n.	the other side; the other party
给面子	gěi miàn.zi	v.-o.	show due respect for somebody's feelings 他请你吃饭，你不去，不是太不给他面子了吗？
尤其	yóuqí	adv.	especially
拒绝	jùjué	v.	reject
要求	yāoqiú	n.	request; demand
或者	huòzhě	conj.	or
同意	tóngyì	v.	agree; approve (The object of 同意 is always an opinion/request, not a person.)
意见	yì.jiàn	n.	opinion; view

比方说，有个人想请你下星期和他一块儿吃饭，可是你并不想和他一块儿吃饭，你又<sup>(3)</sup>不想找个不诚实的借口。这时候，最好的回答是“到时候再说吧！”意思是：“我们现在不谈这件事。”

又比方说，有人请你帮忙，可是你没有把握，你可以说：“问题不大，可是有一定的困难。”你也可以说：“我们再研究研究。”要是那个人进一步<sup>(4)</sup>问你，你可以说：“我们一步一步地来<sup>(5)</sup>。”这些话的意思都是说：“我现在不能答应你的要求。”

比方说	bǐ.fangshuō		for instance; for example
一块儿	yíkuài	adv.	together
诚实	chéng.shí	adj.	honest
找借口	zhǎo jièkǒu	v.-o.	look for an excuse
回答	huídá	n./v.	answer
把握	bǎwò	n.	assurance; certainty 对这件事我很有把握/没有把握。
一定	yídìng	adj.	certain 有一定的困难/需要一定的时间
研究	yánjiū	v.	consider; discuss; study
进一步	jìnyíbù	adv.	go a step further; further
一步一步	yíbù yíbù	adv.	step by step
答应	dā.yìng	v.	agree; promise; answer

要是有人问你一些个人的私事，像“你一个月赚多少钱啊？”“你有没有女朋友啊？”“你多大了？”这类的问题，你可以说：“对不起，我不习惯在别人面前谈自己的私事，我们换个话题吧！”

教你们说这些话，并不是要你不诚实或不诚恳，而是<sup>(6)</sup>要你们知道怎么有礼貌地说“不”。

个人	gèrén	<i>adj.</i>	individual; personal
私事	sīshì	<i>n.</i>	private affairs
多大	duō dà		how old (used in a question)
面前	miànqián	<i>postp.</i>	in the face of; in front of
话题	huàtí	<i>n.</i>	topic of conversation
教	jiāo	<i>v.</i>	teach
诚恳	chéngkěn	<i>adj.</i>	sincere
礼貌	lǐmào	<i>n.</i>	courtesy; politeness
有礼貌	yǒu lǐmào	<i>adj.</i>	courteous; polite 他很有礼貌。

## ★繁体字课文

在中國話裏頭有個詞兒叫“面子”，英文裏沒有一個完全相應的詞兒。和中國人打交道一定要注意給對

方面子，尤其是<sup>(2)</sup>在拒絕別人的要求或者不同意別人意見的時候。

比方說，有個人想請你下星期和他一塊兒吃飯，可是你並不想和他一塊兒吃飯，你又<sup>(3)</sup>不想找個不誠實的藉口。這時候，最好的回答是：“到時候再說吧！”意思是：“我們現在不談這件事。”

又比方說，有人請你幫忙，可是你沒有把握，你可以說：“問題不大，可是有一定的困難。”你也可以說：“我們再研究研究。”要是那個人進一步<sup>(4)</sup>問你，你可以說：“我們一步一步地<sup>(5)</sup>來。”這些話的意思都是說：“我現在不能答應你的要求。”

要是有人問你一些個人的私事，像“你一個月賺多少錢啊？”“你有沒有女朋友啊？”“你多大了？”這類的問題，你可以說：“對不起，我不習慣在別人面前談自己的私事，我們換個話題吧！”

教你們說這些話，並不是要你不誠實或不誠懇，而是<sup>(6)</sup>要你們知道怎麼有禮貌地說“不”。

## 6~語法點

### (1) 到時候再说吧！

We will talk when the time comes.

再说 implies that the speaker wants to put the matter off until some later time. Other verbs can follow 再 meaning “not v. until then.”

1. 今天我忙極了，咱们明天再说吧！

I am terribly busy today. Let's talk tomorrow.

2. 我要把功课做完了再去吃饭。

I want to finish my homework and then go to eat.

(2) …尤其是在拒绝别人的要求或者不同意别人意见的时候。

... especially when denying other people's requests or disagreeing with other people's opinions.

尤其 is used to pick out a particular example from a general class. It can precede a subject, predicate, verb, or adverbial expression. 尤其 can sometimes be followed by 是.

1. 他很怕说话，尤其怕在许多人面前说话。

He is very afraid of talking and especially afraid of speaking in front of a large number of people.

2. 最近几年，大学毕业生的工作机会很多，尤其是今年。

Recently there have been a lot of job opportunities for college graduates, especially this year.

3. 中国人，尤其是中文老师，中国话应该能说得很好。

Chinese people, especially Chinese language teachers, should be able to speak Chinese well.

(3) 你不想和他一块儿吃饭，你又不想找个不诚实的借口。

You don't want to dine with him, but you don't want to come up with a dishonest excuse, either.

This 又 indicates a contradictory dilemma or situation in one's mind. Compare this usage with the one in L. 2, Note (14).

1. 我不愿意花那么多钱坐出租车，又不愿意迟到。

I was not willing to pay so much money to take a taxi, but I didn't want to be late either.

2. 他不想答应这个要求，可是又不好意思拒绝。

He didn't want to consent to the request, but it was rude for him to reject it as well.

(4) 要是那个人进一步问你，你可以说：“我们一步一步地来。”

If that person asks you further, you might say: "Let's take things one step at a time."

进一步 is often used to connect two clauses to indicate that a further step is taken as a result of a previously mentioned state.

1. 私家车增加以后，北京就进一步发展了道路。

After the number of private cars increased, Beijing further developed its roads.

2. 他要求我帮他的忙，后来又进一步要我帮他找工作。

He asked me to help him, and later on he went a step further in asking me to help him find a job.

(5) 我们一步一步地来。

来 here doesn't mean "come" but stands in for another verb. It sometimes accompanies the main verb instead of replacing it meaning someone is going to do something.

1. 要不要再来点儿啤酒？

How about some more beer?

2. 慢慢来，别紧张。

Take it easy. Don't be nervous.

3. 你休息休息，让我来吧！

You take a break and let me do it.

4. 我来回答这个问题吧！

Let me answer the question.

(6) 教你们说这些话，并不是要你不诚实，而是要你们知道怎么有礼貌地说“不”。

The reason that I am teaching you to speak this way is not that I want you to be dishonest, but rather that I want you to know how to say "no" politely.

不是…而是… means "not... but..." indicating the negation of the former phrase and the confirmation of the latter one. 并 often occurs before 不是.

1. 我并不是要问你的私事，而是想知道你有什么困难。

It's not that I want to ask you about your personal affairs, but I'd like to know if you are having any difficulties.

2. 现在他不再是穷学生了，而是个有钱的商店老板了。

Now he is no longer a poor student but rather a rich shop owner.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 在中国旅行，得注意什么？（尤其是）
2. 在美国社会里，面子重要不重要？找借口是一件坏事吗？
3. 你最不喜欢别人问你什么问题？你会用什么办法来拒绝回答这类的问题？
4. 你现在有没有把握可以完全用中文跟中国人打交道？
5. 谈恋爱有没有什么比较快的办法 (bànfa, method; means) ?  
（一步一步地 v.)
6. 你最喜欢的北京景点是哪里？是颐和园吗？  
（不是…而是…）
7. 你到中国来学中文，是受到父母的影响吗？（不是…而是…）
8. 你在中国住了一个月了，有没有什么困难？（在…上）

### II. Insert the words in parentheses into the correct positions in each sentence.

1. 虽然我①同意②帮你这个忙，③可是我④没有把握。（并）
2. 你现在①答应②她的要求，③时候不能去，可就④糟糕了。  
（到）
3. 我①很想拒绝他的要求，②可是③不知道④怎么有礼貌地说“不”。（又）
4. 他①最不喜欢②别人问他的私事，尤其③有没有④女朋友的事。（是）
5. 我看，填表的事还是我①吧！要②填的表③那么多，你认识④的中国字又太少。（来）

### III. Translate the following phrases into Chinese.

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. in regards to etiquette | 2. these kinds of issues, such as traffic jams |
| 3. a further demand        | 4. do not investigate until then               |
| 5. to develop step by step | 6. to spend a lot of money on antiques         |

### IV. Complete the following sentences.

1. 要是有人问你一些你不想回答的问题，你可以\_\_\_\_\_。
2. 和中国人打交道不容易，因为\_\_\_\_\_。
3. A: 听说你最近交了一个新女朋友，又买了一部汽车，还赚了不少钱，你是怎么做到的？我想向你学习学习。  
B: 对不起，\_\_\_\_\_。 (尤其是)
4. A: 他只是想借 (jiè, borrow) 你的车去机场接女朋友，你就答应他，帮帮他的忙吧！  
B: 这已经是第三次了，\_\_\_\_\_。 (并不是…，而是…)
5. A: 我真没想到你会答应跟那个花花公子吃饭！  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (…，又…，只好…)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. Don't look for a dishonest excuse! I would rather you reject my request directly. I am not afraid of losing face, but I don't like you making fun of me in front of others. I don't want to deal with an impolite person like you.
2. The modernization of Beijing is reflected (use 表现) in its traffic. In recent years, Beijing has added several Ring Roads (环城公路, huánchéng gōnglù), which are making life more and more convenient for people.
3. It is a very interesting thing to study how people change the subject when talking. For example, if people don't want to talk about personal matters, they often change the subject to the weather.

#### VI. Composition

Rejection can be an art. For example, street vendors in scenic spots sell souvenirs in such a sycophantic yet compelling manner that one can be frightened. Children come knocking at your door to sell candy bars for various causes, but are too sweet to be shooed away. Or your boss might ask you to run an errand unrelated to work. Perhaps your roommate asks if he/she can throw a party in your apartment, and you worry about the problems that might arise.

Write an essay about rejection, either about rejecting people or about being rejected. Where did it happen? Did you prove that you are a master of the art, an aficionado of aversion? Or did you do it so poorly that you wish you could go back for a second try? Did it, in either case, happen here in China?

## 第十九课 在饭桌上

“来，来，来，大家随便坐。”

“老张，今天晚上您坐上座。”

“不！不！我怎么能坐上座呢！老李坐上座，老李坐上座！”

“不行不行！无论是论<sup>(1)</sup>年纪还是论地位，都该您坐上座。”

“哪里！哪里<sup>(2)</sup>！您是主客，请，请！”

“您太客气了，真不敢当<sup>(3)</sup>！”

---

饭桌	fànzhōu	n.	dining table
随便	suíbiàn	adv.	do as one pleases; do at will 在教室里可以随便坐。 我们可以随便谈任何话题。
上座	shàngzuò	n.	seat of honor
论	lùn	v.	mention; regard; consider
年纪	niánjì	n.	age
地位	dìwei	n.	position; status; standing
哪里	nǎ.li		I am flattered; It is nothing. (used as a polite reply to a compliment)
主客	zhǔkè	n.	guest of honor
不敢当	bù gǎndāng		I really don't deserve this; you flatter me

在请客入座的时候，往往可以听到这样的一段对话。中国人很讲究饭桌上座位的安排，但是客人的座位并不是主人决定的，而是大家推让出来<sup>(4)</sup>的。要是你的年纪很轻，地位又不高，坐在上座是很不合适的。

为了<sup>(5)</sup>表示热情，中国主人常常劝菜、劝酒，也

请客	qǐng//kè	v.-o.	invite somebody to dinner; entertain guests
入座	rù//zuò	v.-o.	take one's seat at a banquet, ceremony, etc.
段	duàn	AN	paragraph; part; segment
对话	duìhuà	n.	dialogue; conversation
讲究	jiǎng.jiù	v.	be particular about; pay attention to; be fastidious about 讲究卫生/讲究吃穿
座位	zuò.wèi	n.	seat; place
客人	kè.rén	n.	guest
主人	zhǔ.rén	n.	host
推让	tuī ràng	v.	decline (a position, favor, etc. out of modesty)
轻	qīng	adj.	(said of age) young; small in number, degree, etc., (said of weight) light 年纪很轻/年轻人/病得不轻 这个箱子很轻。
表示	biǎoshì	v.	show; use words to express; indicate
热情	rèqíng	n./adj.	enthusiasm; warmth, warm; enthusiastic; warmhearted
劝菜	quàn//cài	v.-o.	“encourage-dish;” urge (the guest) to eat 劝: urge; advise; try to persuade 我常劝他别再喝酒了。
劝酒	quàn//jiǔ	v.-o.	“encourage-liquor;” urge (the guest) to drink

就是一再地(6)请客人多(7)吃菜多喝酒。

“来，来，来，再吃块肉，再来点儿菜！”

“我实在(8)吃不下了，谢谢，谢谢！”

“你根本没吃什么嘛！再来点儿，再来点儿！”

“这个菜很好吃，我已经吃了很多了！”

“吃不下菜，就多喝点儿酒吧！”

“不行！不行！我已经快喝醉了，实在不能再喝了！”

“没关系，不要紧！喝醉了，我送你回家。再喝！

再喝！我敬您，干杯！干杯！”

一再	yízài	adv.	again and again; repeatedly
实在	shízài	adv.	really; honestly; indeed
吃不下	chī.bù xià	v.-c.	be unable to eat anymore
喝醉	hē//zuì	v.-c.	be drunk
不要紧	búyào jǐn		it doesn't matter; don't worry, unimportant
送	sòng	v.	walk (somebody); accompany; escort 送他到飞机场去 把孩子送到学校去 把他送到医院去了
我敬您	wǒ jìng nín		To your health! 敬你一杯！ 敬: offer politely 敬茶/敬酒
干杯	gān//bēi		Cheers!; Bottoms up!

类似的对话可以在饭桌上重复好几次。美国人一般来说是不劝菜也不劝酒的，碰到这种场合，我觉得真不习惯。

“真抱歉，今天没什么好菜，不能好好儿招待大家。我爱人做菜的手艺不太好，只是些家常菜。”

“哪里！哪里！您太客气了！这桌菜比饭馆儿里的好多了，在外头是吃不到的。”

这往往是饭后主人和客人的一段对话。在饭馆儿

类似	lèisì	adj.	similar
重复	chóngfù	v.	repeat 你能不能重复一下刚才的那段话？
碰到	pèng//.dào	v.-c.	run into; meet 从来没碰到过这样的事儿 碰到一个很久不见的老朋友
场合	chǎnghé	n.	occasion; situation
抱歉	bàoqiàn	adj.	be sorry; feel apologetic
招待	zhāodài	v.	receive (guests); entertain
爱人	ài.ren	n.	one's husband or wife
做菜	zuò//cài	v.-o.	cook
手艺	shǒuyì	n.	skill; craftsmanship; workmanship
家常菜	jiāchángcài	n.	home cooking; simple meal
桌	zhuō	AN	an entire table of

里，还经常可以看到抢着付账的情形。这对美国人来说，是很新鲜也是很奇怪的。当然，美国人吃完了饭各付各的<sup>(9)</sup>，中国人也觉得挺不习惯的。

不同文化表现在饭桌上的客套和礼节都不相同。我们很难说一种方式比另一种方式好，重要的是“入乡随俗”。

---

抢着 v.	qiǎng.zhe	v.	vie for; scramble for 抢着说话/抢着上车/抢着跑出去
付	fù	v.	pay
付账	fù//zhàng	v.-o.	pay a bill
情形	qíng.xìng	n.	situation
新鲜	xīn.xiān	adj.	new; novel; fresh
奇怪	qíguài	adj.	strange; awkward; weird
各付各的	gè fù gè .de		go Dutch
挺	tǐng	adv.	very; quite
文化	wénhuà	n.	culture
客套	kètào	n.	polite remarks; civilities
礼节	lǐjié	n.	courtesy; etiquette
相同	xiāngtóng	adj.	alike; the same; identical
难说	nánshuō	adj.	it's hard to say; you never can tell 他什么时候回来还很难说。
种	zhǒng	n.	a kind; a sort; a type
重要	zhòngyào	adj.	important
入乡随俗	rùxiāng suísú	idm.	after entering a country, follow its customs; “When in Rome, do as the Romans do.”

---

## ★繁体字课文

“來，來，來，大家隨便坐。”

“老張，今天晚上您坐上座。”

“不！不！我怎麼能坐上座呢！老李坐上座，老李坐上座！”

“不行！不行！無論是論(1)年紀還是論地位，都該您坐上座。”

“哪裏！哪裏(2)！您是主客，請，請！”

“您太客氣了，真不敢當(3)！”

在請客入座的時候，往往可以聽到這樣的一段對話。中國人很講究飯桌上座位的安排，但是客人的座位並不是主人決定的，而是大家推讓出來(4)的。要是你的年紀很輕，地位又不高，坐在上座是很不合適的。

為了(5)表示熱情，中國主人常常勸菜、勸酒，也就是一再地(6)請客人多(7)吃菜多喝酒。

“來，來，來，再吃塊肉，再來點兒菜！”

“我實在(8)吃不下了，謝謝，謝謝！”

“你根本沒吃什麼嘛！再來點兒，再來點兒！”

“這個菜很好吃，我已經吃了很多了！”

“吃不下菜，就多喝點兒酒吧！”

“不行！不行！我已經快喝醉了，實在不能再喝了！”

“沒關係，不要緊！喝醉了，我送你回家。再喝！再喝！我敬您，乾杯！乾杯！”

類似的對話可以在飯桌上重複好幾次。美國人一般來說是不勸菜也不勸酒的，碰到這種場合，我覺得真不習慣。

“真抱歉，今天沒什麼好菜，不能好好儿招待大家。我愛人做菜的手藝不太好，只是些家常菜。”

“哪裏！哪裏！您太客氣了！這桌菜比飯館兒裏的好多了，在外頭是吃不到的。”

這往往是飯後主人和客人的一段對話。在飯館兒裏，還經常可以看到搶著付賬的情形。這對美國人來說，是很新鮮也是很奇怪的。當然，美國人吃完了飯各付各的<sup>(9)</sup>，中國人也覺得挺不習慣的。

不同文化表現在飯桌上的客套和禮節都不相同。我們很難說一種方式比另一種方式好，重要的是“入鄉隨俗”。

## 语法点

### (1) 无论是论年纪还是论地位，都该您坐上座。

No matter if we base seating on age or on status, you should be seated in the seat of honor.

论 means “as far as...is concerned.”

#### 1. 论风景，这个公园不如那个，可是这个公园大得多。

As far as scenery goes, this park is not as good as that one, but this one is much larger.

#### 2. 论安全，这个宿舍挺不错，不过要是论设备，这个宿舍还不行。

In terms of safety, this dormitory is not bad, but in terms of facilities, it is still no good.

### (2) 哪里！哪里！您是主客，请，请！

Thank you. However, you are the guest of honor. Please go ahead.

哪里 and 哪儿啊 are short forms for 哪儿的话 “Where did this talk come from? How can you say that?” These are polite terms used in response to a compliment or an expression of gratitude. The terms

function like the English phrases “Thank you,” “You are welcome,” “Don’t mention it,” “It is nothing,” or “I am flattered,” depending on context.

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. A: 你的新衣服真漂亮!                        | B: 哪里哪里!           |
| A: Your new clothes are really pretty. | B: Thank you.      |
| 2. A: 真谢谢你帮我的忙!                        | B: 哪里哪里!           |
| A: Thank you so much for helping me.   | B: You’re welcome. |

哪里 can also be used in rhetorical questions to express negation.

1. 我哪里（哪儿）知道他不吃牛肉。  
How was I to know he didn’t eat beef?
2. 这么多的词儿，我哪里（哪儿）记得住。  
How could I remember all those words?

(3) 您太客气了，真不敢当！

You are too kind. I really don’t deserve this.

不敢当 is a polite expression used in reply to a compliment. 不敢 means “dare not” and 当 means “to accept” or “to deserve.”

(4) 客人的座位并不是主人决定的，而是大家推让出来的。

The seating arrangement is not decided by the host, but a result of all the guests declining the best seats out of modesty.

出来 is a directional complement meaning “out from somewhere,” e.g. 从教室出来, 从房间里出来. It can also have an extended meaning. As a complement to the verb 表示, it means “to express outwardly,” and 看出来 means “make out from seeing,” or “find out.” 推让出来 means “to result from declining modestly,” and 把计划做出来了 means “to succeed in making the plan.” When there is an object, it can sometimes be inserted in between 出 and 来, and 来 can sometimes be omitted.

1. 我说外国语的时候，常常表示不出自己的意思来。

When I speak a foreign language, I often cannot express my own thoughts.

2. 你能不能把你的想法写出来？

Can you put your thoughts in writing?

3. 这个问题太难了，我回答不出来。

This question is too difficult for me to answer.

(5) 为了表示热情，中国主人常常劝菜、劝酒。

In order to display warmth, the host often makes suggestions for food and drink.

为了 introduces the purpose of or the reason for an action. It often occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and the verb may be negative. See L. 16, Note (2).

1. 为了买一幅好的山水画儿，我到琉璃厂去了好几次。

I went to Liulichang several times in order to buy a good landscape painting.

2. 为了不让他难过，我说得非常客气。

I said it in a polite way in order not to upset him.

3. 我这么做，完全是为了帮助你。

I only did this to help you.

(6) …也就是一再地请客人多吃菜多喝酒。

…that is, over and over, (the host) urges the guests to eat and drink some more.

一再 applies mostly to human actions which are completed. 地 is optional.

1. 我一再地劝他，他就是不听。

I spent a long time trying to get him to come around, but he just wouldn't listen.

2. 他一再推让，不肯坐上座。

He declined again and again, unwilling to sit in the seat of honor.

(7) …也就是一再地请客人多吃菜多喝酒。

The adjectives 多 and 少 may be put before verbs functioning as adverbs meaning “to do something more” or “to do something less.”

1. 学外国语，一定得多练习才能说得好。

When studying a foreign language, you must practice more in order to speak well.

2. 你得多运动，别一天到晚念书。

You should exercise more instead of studying all day.

3. 少吃一点儿吧！你越来越胖了！

You should eat less. You are getting fatter.

(8) 我实在吃不下了。

I really can't eat anymore.

实在 means “really,” “indeed,” or “honestly.” It emphasizes and modifies adjectives, adjectival phrases, auxiliary verbs or verbal phrases.

1. 对这件事，我实在没有把握，你还是请别人帮忙吧！

I really don't have a good grasp on this matter. You should ask somebody else to help you.

2. 我实在不能答应你的要求，不要再谈了。

I really can't comply with your request, and I don't want to talk about it anymore.

(9) 美国人吃完了饭各付各的。

Americans go Dutch when eating out.

The first 各 is an adverb indicates that each individual of an entire group does the same thing respectively or in the same state. The 各 after the verb is a pronoun meaning “one's own.”

1. 他们可以各走各的，爱上哪儿就上哪儿去。

They can each travel their own roads and go wherever they please.

2. 他们虽然是一家人，却各有各的想法。

Although they are one family, each has his own way of thinking.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 在北京，哪个景点游客比较多？（无论）
2. 纽约 (Niǔyuē, New York) 跟北京，哪个城市比较好？  
(论…, 论…)
3. 中国人在饭桌上劝菜劝酒，你觉得很奇怪吧？（为了）
4. 问一位女士的年纪多大，是不是很不合适的？（一般来说）
5. 中国人很讲究饭桌上座位的安排，美国人呢？客人的座位是怎么决定的？（不是…而是…）
6. 为什么你不喜欢坐公共汽车？（抢着 v.）
7. 住在大城市好还是住在小地方好？  
(难说，各有各的好处，比方说)
8. 什么是“入乡随俗”？你到了中国以后，在哪些方面“入乡随俗”了？

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

一再	实在	根本	怎么	再
抢着	快	对	挺	多

1. 先吃饭再喝汤 (tāng, soup) , \_\_\_\_\_ 美国人来说，是 \_\_\_\_\_ 新鲜的。
2. 你做菜的手艺 \_\_\_\_\_ 太好了！这样的菜在饭馆儿里是吃不到的。
3. 他 \_\_\_\_\_ 不会中文，怎么能用中文签字呢！
4. 我看他 \_\_\_\_\_ 喝醉了，别 \_\_\_\_\_ 敬他酒了！
5. 我 \_\_\_\_\_ 告诉他美国人都是各付各的，可是他还是 \_\_\_\_\_ 付了帐。
6. 再 \_\_\_\_\_ 喝一杯没关系！来！干杯！
7. 你 \_\_\_\_\_ 可以不排队？任何人都得排队！

**III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 我平时不喝酒，今天这个场合很特别，我要多喝几杯！  
B: 不行，大夫说\_\_\_\_\_。 (无论)
2. A: 我怎么能坐上座呢！还是你坐上座！  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (论…论…，合适)
3. A: 在饭桌上，中国人怎么表示他们的热情？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (为了…，一再…)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_！  
B: 哪里！哪里！我还得多学习。

**IV. Translate into Chinese.**

1. In general, my roommate and I cook separately. We are not picky (use 讲究) about eating, and our cooking skills are not too great, either. So today we can make only a simple meal for (to treat) our friends.
2. You have repeated such similar words again and again. Can't you put it another way? Your viewpoint is neither refreshing nor important to me.
3. Different societies have different cultural etiquettes. These differences sometimes make people uneasy (use 让). If such occasions occur, what is most important is to "follow the customs when you are in that country," and to not refuse to interact with others.

**V. Composition**

It does not take much time to find that some of the customs you see in the Chinese restaurants in America (or other countries) are not practiced here in China, or vice versa. For example, in China people don't have fortune cookies after their meal. Rice generally comes after all the other food is gone unless someone asks for it earlier. Everyone declines sitting in the seat of honor as if there were a bomb under the seat. Splitting the bill attracts attention. Have you ever wondered what makes the Chinese subculture in America not authentically Chinese? Make a cultural observation about the restaurants here, and give a character sketch of the Chinese way of eating in restaurants. Does your observation change your viewpoint of Chinese people or does it enhance your former impression?

## 第二十课 点菜

来北京以前，我以为中国菜都差不多。到了北京以后，才发现各省有不同的风味儿。比方说，川菜和湘菜比较辣，江浙菜比较甜。中国人的饮食习惯也并不完全一样。一般说来<sup>(1)</sup>，北方人比较喜欢面食。他们常

---

点菜	diǎn//cài	v.-o.	order dishes (in a restaurant) 点了三道菜
差不多	chà .bu duō	adj.	about the same; similar 中国人饭桌上的礼节其实跟美国人的差不多。
省	shěng	n.	province
川	Chuān	n.	Sichuan Province; 四川
湘	Xiāng	n.	Hunan Province; 湖南
辣	là	adj.	peppery; hot
江	Jiāng	n.	Jiangsu Province; 江苏
浙	Zhe	n.	Zhejiang Province; 浙江
江浙	Jiāng Zhè	n.	Jiangsu and Zhejiang Provinces; 江苏省 and 浙江省
甜	tián	adj.	sweet
饮食	yǐnshí	n.	drinking and eating
北方人	běifāngrén	n.	Northerner
面食	miànsī	n.	wheat-based food

吃的主食有馒头、包子、饺子、面条这些东西。南方人的主食大多是米饭。米饭我很喜欢，但是稀饭和粥我真是吃不惯。北京有中国各地的饭馆儿，选择饭馆儿对我来说很不容易，因为从招牌上我常常看不出来卖的到底是什么菜。他们把湖南菜叫做(2)湘菜，广东菜叫做粤菜，山东馆子是齐鲁风味儿。对一个外国人来说，

主食	zhǔshí	<i>n.</i>	staple food; principal food
馒头	mán.tou	<i>n.</i>	steamed bun
包子	bāo.zi	<i>n.</i>	steamed stuffed bun
饺子	jiǎo.zi	<i>n.</i>	dumpling
面条	miàntiáo	<i>n.</i>	noodle
南方人	nánfāng rén	<i>n.</i>	Southerner
米饭	mǐfàn	<i>n.</i>	(cooked) rice
稀饭	xīfàn	<i>n.</i>	rice or millet gruel; porridge
粥	zhōu	<i>n.</i>	gruel; congee (most of the time other ingredients are added in addition to rice)
吃不惯	chī .bu guàn	<i>v.-c.</i>	cannot get used to eating 在中国住了两年，我还是吃不惯稀饭。
选择	xuǎnzé	<i>v.</i>	select; choose
招牌	zhāo.pai	<i>n.</i>	shop sign
湖南	Húnán	<i>n.</i>	Hunan Province
广东	Guǎngdōng	<i>n.</i>	Guangdong Province
粤	Yuè	<i>n.</i>	another name for Guangdong Province
山东	Shāndōng	<i>n.</i>	Shandong Province
馆子	guǎn.zi	<i>n.</i>	(informal) restaurant
齐鲁	Qí Lǔ	<i>n.</i>	ancient names for Shandong

要记得中国省名已经很不容易了，为了选择合适的饭馆儿我还得记住<sup>(3)</sup>许多省名的简称，这就更难了。

在饭馆儿点菜，除了需要记住鸡、鸭、鱼、肉、青菜、豆腐这些东西以外，还得记住几个基本的做菜方法，像煎、煮、炒、炸、清蒸、红烧什么的<sup>(4)</sup>。

---

记得	jì.de	v.	remember 我不记得他是什么时候来的。 没想到他还记得我的名字。
省名	shěngmíng	n.	name of a province
记住	jì/.zhu	v.-c.	memorize 这个句子太长了，我记不住。
简称	jiǎnchēng	n.	the abbreviated form of a name
鸡	jī	n.	chicken
鸭	yā	n.	duck
鱼	yú	n.	fish
青菜	qīngcài	n.	vegetable
豆腐	dòu.fu	n.	bean curd; tofu
基本	jīběn	adj.	basic; fundamental
方法	fāngfǎ	n.	way; method
煎	jiān	v.	fry in shallow oil
煮	zhǔ	v.	boil; cook
炒	chǎo	v.	stir-fry
炸	zhá	v.	fry in deep fat or oil; deep-fry
清蒸	qīngzhēng	v.	steam in clear soup (usually without soy sauce)
红烧	hóngshāo	v.	braise in soy sauce
什么的	shén.me.de		and so on; and what not

---

一般说来，一道菜要是只用一样材料，往往是动词宾语的结构，像清蒸鱼、红烧茄子、烤鸭、清炒西兰花儿。一道菜如果用两样材料的话<sup>(5)</sup>，动词往往在两个名词中间，像冬笋炒肉丝、腰果炒虾仁儿、蛋炒饭。当然更常见的是把两个名词放在一起，像虾仁儿豆腐、

道	dào	<i>AN</i>	measure word for dishes
样	yàng	<i>n.</i>	kind; type 三样菜
材料	cáiliào	<i>n.</i>	ingredient
动词	dòngcí	<i>n.</i>	verb
宾语	bīnyǔ	<i>n.</i>	object
结构	jiégòu	<i>n.</i>	structure
茄子	qié.zi	<i>n.</i>	eggplant
烤鸭	kǎoyā	<i>n.</i>	roast duck
清炒	qīngchǎo	<i>v.</i>	stir-fry without soy sauce
西兰花儿	xīlánhuār	<i>n.</i>	broccoli
如果	rúguǒ	<i>conj.</i>	if; supposing that
名词	míngcí	<i>n.</i>	noun
冬笋	dōngsǔn	<i>n.</i>	bamboo shoot
肉丝	ròusī	<i>n.</i>	julienne meat; shredded meat (unless otherwise specified, this usually refers to pork on a menu) cashew
腰果	yāoguǒ	<i>n.</i>	shelled fresh shrimp
虾仁儿	xiārénr	<i>n.</i>	rice fried with eggs
蛋炒饭	dànchǎofàn	<i>n.</i>	often seen; common
常见	chángjiàn	<i>adj.</i>	

芥兰牛肉。其实，这些菜都还容易明白，最麻烦的是有些菜名和实际用的材料完全没有关系，像“八宝”、“三鲜”、“全家福”之类<sup>(6)</sup>。我总是避免点这类菜，因为我实在不知道这些菜里到底有些什么东西。

只有在北京生活过的人才知道：点中国菜真不是一件容易的事。

---

芥兰	jièlán	<i>n.</i>	Chinese leaf mustard
明白	míng.bai	<i>adj./v.</i>	clear; obvious, know; understand
实际	shíjì	<i>adv./adj.</i>	actually; in reality, actual; real
八宝	bābǎo	<i>n.</i>	eight treasures (choice ingredients of certain special dishes) 八宝饭/八宝鸭
三鲜	sānxiān	<i>n.</i>	three kinds of fresh delicacies 三鲜面
全家福	quánjiāfú	<i>n.</i>	“all house happiness;” a hodgepodge of ingredients cooked together in one pot
…之类	zhī lèi		and so on; and so forth; and the like
避免	bìmiǎn	<i>v.</i>	avoid; refrain from

## ★繁体字课文

來北京以前，我以為中國菜都差不多。到了北京以後，才發現各省有不同的風味兒。比方說，川菜和湘菜比較辣，江浙菜比較甜。中國人的飲食習慣也並不完全一樣。一般說來<sup>(1)</sup>，北方人比較喜歡麵食。他們常吃的主食有饅頭、包子、餃子、麵條這些東西。南方人的主食大多是米飯。米飯我很喜歡，但是稀飯和粥我真是吃不慣。北京有中國各地的飯館兒，選擇飯館兒對我來說很不容易，因為從招牌上我常常看不出來賣的到底是什麼菜。他們把湖南菜叫做<sup>(2)</sup>湘菜，廣東菜叫做粵菜，山東館子是齊魯風味兒。對一個外國人來說，要記得中國省名已經很不容易了，為了選擇合適的飯館兒我還得記住<sup>(3)</sup>許多省名的簡稱，這就更難了。

在飯館兒點菜，除了需要記住雞、鴨、魚、肉、青菜、豆腐這些東西以外，還得記住幾個基本的做菜方法，像煎、煮、炒、炸、清蒸、紅燒什麼的<sup>(4)</sup>。

一般說來，一道菜要是只用一樣材料，往往是動詞賓語的結構，像清蒸魚、紅燒茄子、烤鴨、清炒西蘭花兒。一道菜如果用兩樣材料的話<sup>(5)</sup>，動詞往往在兩個名詞中間，像冬筍炒肉絲、腰果炒蝦仁兒、蛋炒飯。當然更常見的是把兩個名詞放在一起，像蝦仁兒豆腐、芥蘭牛肉。其實，這些菜都還容易明白，最麻煩的是有些菜名和實際用的材料完全沒有關係，像“八寶”、“三鮮”、“全家福”之類<sup>(6)</sup>。我總是避免點這類菜，因為我實在不知道這些菜裏到底有些什麼東西。

只有在北京生活過的人才知道：點中國菜真不是一件容易的事。

## 语法点

(1) 一般说来，北方人比较喜欢面食。

Generally speaking, Northerners enjoy wheat-based food more.

“一般说来” is the same as “一般来说。” See L. 3, Note (13).

(2) 他们把湖南菜叫做湘菜。

They call Hunan dishes Xiang dishes.

“把 A 叫做 B” means “to refer to A as B.” See L. 8, Note (5).

Similarly, you can substitute the verb 叫 for other verbs, such as 把 A 看做 B “to view A as B,” 把 A 当做 B “to take A as B.”

1. 有些中国人把外国人叫做“老外”。

Some Chinese call foreigners “Laowai.”

2. 他把桌子当做椅子，坐在上头。

He used the table as a chair and sat on it.

3. 我把坐火车旅行看做观察中国人生活的好机会。

I regard traveling by train as a good opportunity to observe Chinese people's lives.

(3) 为了选择合适的饭馆我还得记住许多省名的简称。

I have to remember the abbreviation for many provinces' names in order to choose a proper restaurant.

When 住 is used as a compliment after a verb, it means “firmly,” “securely,” or “to a stop;” e.g. 挡住, 堵住, 站住. See L. 17, Note (5).

1. 拿住这个杯子，别掉了。

Hold the cup tight; don't drop it.

2. 我用筷子用得不好，菜常常夹不住。

I don't use chopsticks well; I often cannot hold the food securely.

(4) 像煎、煮、炒、炸、清蒸、红烧什么的。

... like frying, boiling, stir-frying, deep-frying, steaming, braising and so forth.

什么的 is used after one or several coordinate words or phrases to mean “and the like.”

1. 像信封、信纸什么的都可以在邮局买到。  
Envelopes, stationary, and such are all available at the post office.
2. 做红烧豆腐以前，你得先把豆腐、酱油、葱、姜什么的都准备好。  
Before making braised bean curd, you have to prepare the bean curd, soy sauce, scallions, ginger, etc.

(5) 一道菜如果用两样材料的话，动词往往在两个名词中间。

If two ingredients are used in one dish, the cooking verb is often placed between the names of the two ingredients.

如果 is the same as 要是, which means “if.” 如果 or 要是 may be followed by 的话 without affecting the meaning.

1. 如果你吃不惯四川菜的话，我们可以上别的饭馆儿去。  
If you are not used to Sichuan food, we can go to another restaurant.
2. 要是你不记得各省的简称的话，选饭馆的时候会有困难的。  
If you don't remember the short names of the provinces, you will have problems choosing a restaurant.

(6) …像“八宝”、“三鲜”、“全家福”之类。

…such as “Eight Treasures,” “Three Delicacies,” and “All House Happiness.”

…之类 means the same as 什么的. They differ in that 之类 can be used to modify a noun, whereas 什么的 cannot.

1. 米饭、馒头之类的东西叫做“主食”。  
Foods like rice and steamed buns are called “staple foods.”
2. 我对做饭、打扫屋子之类的事一点儿兴趣都没有。  
I am not at all interested in cooking, cleaning, and the like.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 一个人的饮食习惯跟什么最有关系?
2. 你以前到中国饭馆儿最常点些什么菜? 现在呢? 有什么菜是你不敢 (gǎn, dare) 吃或者吃不惯的?  
(像 A、B、C…之类的菜)
3. 你吃过川菜、粤菜或者是江浙菜吗? 你知道这些菜有什么不同吗? (吃得／不出来)
4. 你不知道菜里到底有什么东西, 那你怎么办? (如果…的话)
5. 选择合适的饭馆儿不容易, 在饮食上你还有别的困难吗?  
(除了…以外, 也/还…)

### II. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. 我以为湘菜比较甜, (真的, 其实) 湘菜 (比, 跟) 川菜一样, 是比较辣的。
2. (为了, 因为) 避免点到奇怪的菜, 我总是点那些我吃过的菜。
3. (只要, 只有) 吃过“全家福”, 你才明白菜里 (到底, 结果) 有什么。
4. 早上北京交通堵塞的情况非常严重, 除了城里的路以外, 二环 (也, 还) 很拥挤。
5. 我 (找到, 发现) 中国菜的做法比我想像的容易 (多了, 很多了)。

### III. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.

1. 要记得中国省名已经很不容易了, 为了选择合适的饭馆, 还得记住许多省名的简称, 这就更难了。
2. 从招牌上我常常看不出来卖的到底是什么菜。
3. 这些菜都还容易明白, 最麻烦的是有些菜名和实际用的材料完全没关系。
4. 我总是避免点这类菜, 因为我实在不知道这些菜里到底有些什么东西。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你吃过粤菜吗? 听说这是最好吃的中国菜。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...以后, 才...)

2. A: 中国人跟美国人的饮食习惯有什么不同?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (大多)

3. A: 中国人在饭桌上经常说些什么客套话呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (像…之类的 n.)

4. A: 他跟父母的关系很好吗?

B: 是啊! \_\_\_\_\_。 (把…看做…)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Chinese are very particular about etiquette at the table. In addition to urging others to have more food and drink, you may often hear such polite remarks as “I apologize that this is only a simple meal,” “you are too kind,” and “don’t mention it” when Chinese treat guests.
2. To speak Chinese well is not easy, and to read it well is even more difficult. What is most annoying is to memorizing verbs, nouns, and the like.
3. I really can’t tell you how I made this dish. I just put all the ingredients together and fried them.
4. He is about the same age as I am, but his health is not good. I thought it was because he didn’t like to exercise, but later on I realized that his bad health is closely related to his dietary habits.
5. It says clearly on the sign outside this restaurant that the dishes they serve belong to Hunan cuisine, not Cantonese cuisine. I don’t like to eat spicy food, so I always avoid going to that type of restaurant.

**VI. Composition**

Reading a Chinese menu is a task of deciphering riddles. Have you had any difficulties ordering food, perhaps a unique or embarrassing experience? Do you have any special tricks for getting just what you want, or any “old and reliable” dishes which you always order when you are worried about what might come up if you attempt something new?

## 第二十一课 过马路真危险

学校大门口儿最近建了一座过街天桥，过马路的时候安全多了。在天桥建成以前，过马路真危险，因为汽车是不让行人的，行人得在许多车子当中<sup>(1)</sup>很快地走过去，我真怕会被车子撞着<sup>(2)</sup>。在中国，开车的人好像不太照顾走路的人，所以在北京走路一定得时时记得“停”“听”“看”这三个字。

---

马路	mǎlù	<i>n.</i>	road; street; avenue
危险	wēixiǎn	<i>adj.</i>	dangerous
门口儿	ménkǒur	<i>n.</i>	gate; doorway; entrance
座	zuò	<i>AN</i>	measure word for bridges, buildings, mountains, etc.
过街天桥	guójie tiānqiáo	<i>n.</i>	overhead bridge that goes across a street; overpass
让	ràng	<i>v.</i>	give way to; yield
当中	dāngzhōng	<i>postp.</i>	in the middle 坐在两个人当中
撞	zhuàng	<i>v.</i>	collide; bump against; run into 他昨天被汽车撞了。
撞着	zhuàng//zháo	<i>v.-c.</i>	collide; bump against; run into
照顾	zhào.gù	<i>v.</i>	give consideration to; show consideration for; look after
时时	shíshí	<i>adv.</i>	often; all the time 时时注意老师说的话
停	tíng	<i>v.</i>	stop 所有的车都停了。

在美国汽车得让行人先走，而<sup>(3)</sup>在中国行人却得让汽车。这是我在日常生活中最不习惯的事。在北京虽然也有斑马线，也有红绿灯，可是好像起不了<sup>(4)</sup>什么作用。我真希望北京开车的人都能遵守交通规则，多为行人想想。

北京的天桥和地下通道很多。夏天的傍晚，天桥也是人们乘凉、下棋、打牌的地方，有时甚至<sup>(5)</sup>有小摊儿

---

斑马线	bānmǎxiàn	n.	pedestrian crossing; cross-walk (marked with stripes like those of a zebra) 斑马: zebra
起	qǐ	v.	rise; grow
作用	zuòyòng	n.	function; effect
起作用	qǐ zuòyòng	v.-o.	be effective; have effect
起不了	qǐ .bù liǎo	v.-c.	unable to rise
希望	xīwàng	v./n.	hope; wish
遵守	zūnshǒu	v.	abide by; observe
规则	guīzé	n.	regulation; rule 交通规则: traffic regulations
地下	dìxià	adj.	underground; subterranean
通道	tōngdào	n.	passageway
打牌	dǎ//pái	v.-o.	play cards 跟朋友打牌
甚至	shènzhì	adv.	even

卖东西。过街天桥和地下通道是北京一个特殊的街景。

北京的交通乱是乱，可是习惯以后，也能发现一种特有的秩序，中国人把这种情况叫做“乱中有序”。

特殊	tèshū	<i>adj.</i>	special 特殊问题/特殊情况
街景	jiējǐng	<i>n.</i>	street scene
特有	tèyǒu	<i>adj.</i>	specific; characteristic 特有的礼节/特有的习惯
秩序	zhìxù	<i>n.</i>	order
情况	qíngkuàng	<i>n.</i>	situation
乱中有序	luàn zhōng yǒu xù	<i>idm.</i>	finding order in chaos

## ★繁体字课文

學校大門口儿最近建了一座過街天橋，過馬路的時候安全多了。在天橋建成以前，過馬路真危險，因為汽車是不讓行人的，行人得在許多車子當中(1)很快地走過去，我真怕會被車子撞著(2)。在中國，開車的人好像不太照顧走路的人，所以在北京走路一定得時時記得“停”“聽”“看”這三個字。

在美國汽車得讓行人先走，而(3)在中國行人卻得讓汽車。這是我在日常生活中最不習慣的事。在北京雖然也有斑馬線，也有紅綠燈，可是好像起不了(4)什麼作用。我真希望北京開車的人都能遵守交通規則，多為行人想想。

北京的天橋和地下通道很多。夏天的傍晚，天橋也是人們乘涼、下棋、打牌的地方，有時甚至(5)有小攤兒賣東西。過街天橋和地下通道是北京一個特殊的街景。

北京的交通亂是亂，可是習慣以後，也能發現一種特有的秩序，中國人把這種情況叫做“亂中有序”。

## ◎ 语法点

(1) 行人得在许多车子当中很快地走过去。

The pedestrians have to cross the street in the middle of traffic (many cars).

当中 means “in the middle” or “in the center.” It also means “among.”

1. 坐在张先生和张太太当中的那位，是不是今天的主客？

Is the person who is sitting between Mr. Zhang and Mrs. Zhang the guest of honor today?

2. 在我吃过的中国菜当中，我最喜欢清蒸鱼。

Among all the Chinese food I have tried, I like steamed fish the most.

(2) 我真怕会被撞着。

I am really afraid of being hit.

着 is a resultative complement here. 被撞着 means “to be hit,” 找着 means “to look and find,” and 买着 means “to buy successfully.”

(3) 在美国汽车得让行人先走，而在在中国行人却得让汽车。

In America, cars must yield to pedestrians, while in China pedestrians have to yield to cars.

This 而 is used to connect clauses indicating that two things are contrary to each other in meaning.

1. 在美国，买东西多半儿用信用卡和支票，而在中国多半儿用现金。

In America, most people use credit cards and checks to buy things, while in China, most people use cash.

2. 私家车越来越多，而道路的发展却赶不上汽车的增加。

The number of private cars is increasing, yet the development of roads cannot keep up with this increase.

(4) 在北京虽然也有斑马线，也有红绿灯，可是有时好像起不了什么作用。

Although there are both crosswalks and traffic lights in Beijing, sometimes they don't seem to have any effect.

When 了 is used as potential resultative complement, it indicates that an action can or cannot be completed. 来得/不了 means “able/unable to come,” 避免得/不了 means “able/unable to avoid,” and 解决得/不了 means “able/unable to solve.”

(5) 天桥也是人们乘凉、下棋、打牌的地方，有时甚至有小摊儿卖东西。

Overpasses are also places for people to cool down, play chess, and play cards; sometimes there are even vendors selling things.

甚至 is used in two ways:

A: As an adverb, it means “even, go so far as to.” It introduces an example of an extreme nature to show that some circumstance is extraordinary. 于 can be added after 甚至 without changing its meaning.

1. 他母亲不但给他很多钱，甚至(于)帮他打扫房间。他真是被惯坏了。

His mother not only gives him a lot of money, but even cleans his room for him. He is really spoiled!

2. 他喜欢中国菜，甚至(于)还会做好几个菜呢！

He likes Chinese food. He can even cook a few dishes.

B: As a conjunction, **甚至** means “even.” It is used to connect all kinds of nouns or clauses. What follows **甚至** is the most extraordinary item.

3. 他会做清蒸鱼、红烧鸡，甚至(于)烤鸭。

He knows how to cook steamed fish, braised chicken, even roast duck.

4. 这所学校的图书馆、宿舍，甚至(于)厕所都比别的学校的好。

This school's library, dormitory, and even its restrooms are all better than those of other schools.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 北京有许多有名的特产，你知道不知道哪儿有？

(买着/吃着/找着)

2. 北京为什么需要过街天桥和地下通道？

(起…作用，比方说)

3. 你喜欢吃北京小摊儿上的小吃吗？你最喜欢哪一种？

(在…当中)

4. 在你看来，北京的交通比世界上别的大城市更乱吗？

(甚至)

5. 你看过北京人骑自行车吗？跟你在美国骑自行车有什么不同？

(…, 而…)

6. 我想在一天里参观北京所有的景点，你觉得可能不可能？

(v. 不了, 如果…的话)

7. 什么叫做“乱中有序”？你自己生活中有什么情况可以说是“乱中有序”？

8. 你来北京以后，在天桥或地下通道看过乘凉、下棋、打牌、卖东西这些街景吗？除了这些街景之外，你还看过人们在这些地方做哪些事情？

**II. Find and correct the error in each sentence.**

1. 以前没有过街天桥，过马路很危险；现在有了天桥，比以前  
①                                 ②                         ③  
很安全。  
④
2. 开车的时候儿 让行人走先，不只是 为了礼貌，也是为了安全。  
①                 ②                 ③                 ④
3. 开车的人要是不为行人想想多，那行人过马路的时候就有可  
①                 ②                 ③  
能被撞着。  
④

**III. Choose the correct answer.**

1. 我找了很长时间，最后在银行附近的商店买（成，着，起）  
了毛巾。
2. 小摊儿上卖的小吃非常好吃，有机会你应该（少，多，甚  
至）逛逛。
3. 有很好的交通规则，可是如果人们不遵守，那就起不（了，  
成，住）什么作用。
4. 中国人对茶很讲究，（和，也，而）法国人对咖啡很讲究。
5. 劝酒劝菜并不是中国人（时时，有时，特有）的习惯，在别  
的文化中也有这样的做法。

**IV. Make a sentence with the underlined expression.**

1. 在中国，开车的人好像不太照顾走路的人，所以在北京走路  
一定得时时小心注意。
2. 在美国汽车得让行人先走，而在中国行人却得让汽车。

3. 天桥也是人们乘凉、下棋、打牌的地方，有时甚至有小摊儿卖东西。
4. 行人得在许多车子当中很快地走过去，我真怕会被车子撞着。
5. 我真希望北京开车的人都能遵守交通规则，多为行人想想。

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. Although this road is mainly for pedestrians, it seems that many drivers never yield to the pedestrians. Also, the traffic lights do not have any practical function. Therefore, pedestrians are always afraid of being hit by cars.
2. There are many cars on this road, and they don't yield to the pedestrians, so it is quite dangerous to cross. I think you had better take the overpass or the underground walkway.
3. Although vendors selling things on the overpass or in the underground walkway are a unique street scene, these places become little markets which are unclean and crowded. Sometimes it is even more difficult to take these walkways than to cross the road.

#### VI. Composition

In this lesson, it says: “行人得在许多车当中很快地走过去,” or “希望北京开车的人都能遵守交通规则，多为行人想想。” However, according to a report, of all the fatal traffic accidents in China, 80% are due to the transgressions of pedestrians or bicyclists. During your stay in China, who do you think should be responsible for the traffic chaos? The automobile drivers or the pedestrians/bicyclists? Can you figure out why that is? Do you think you would be able to drive in Beijing? Is it different from driving in another big city like New York or Tokyo?

## 第二十二课 好好学习，天天向上

学校附近有一所小学，小学的大门口儿有一块很大的牌子，上面有毛主席写的八个大字：“好好学习，天天向上”，大概每个中国小学生都知道这句话。

在中国到处<sup>(1)</sup>都能看到各种各样的标语，有的教人怎么做人，有的教人怎么做事。最常见的是“请勿随地吐痰”、“高高兴兴出门去，平平安安回家来”

向上	xiàngshàng	v.	make progress; go upward
所	suǒ	AN	measure word for school and hospital 一所学校/这所医院
小学	xiǎoxué	n.	elementary school
牌子	pái.zi	n.	plate; sign
毛主席	Máo zhǔxí	n.	Chairman Mao
到处	dàochù	adv.	everywhere; at all places
各种各样	gèzhǒng gèyàng	adj.	all kinds of 各种各样的广告
标语	biāoyǔ	n.	slogan (usually written on a banner or poster)
做人	zuòrén	v.-o.	be an upright person
勿	wù	adv.	(written) do not
随地	suídì	adv.	anywhere; everywhere 不可以随地丢垃圾
吐痰	tǔ//tán	v.-o.	spit; expectorate
平安	píng'ān	adj.	safe and sound; without mishap

这类和日常生活有关的标语。

和二十世纪六、七十年代比<sup>(2)</sup>，现在政治性<sup>(3)</sup>的标语大大地减少了，而商业性的广告却增加了。标语和广告有个基本的不同：标语大多带着政治或道德的意义，像天安门前的“中华人民共和国万岁；世界人民

有关	yǒuguān	v.	have something to do with; relate to; concern 饭桌上的礼貌跟文化有关。 我买了一些跟中国历史有关的书。
世纪	shìjì	n.	century
年代	niándài	n.	a decade, age; era
政治	zhèngzhì	n.	politics
政治性	zhèngzhìxìng	n.	political nature
大大地	dàdà.de	adv.	greatly
减少	jiǎnshǎo	v.	decrease; reduce
商业	shāngyè	n.	commerce; trade; business
商业性	shāngyèxìng	n.	commercial nature
广告	guǎnggào	n.	advertisement
道德	dàodé	n.	morals; morality; ethics
天安门	Tiān'ānmén	n.	Tian An Men; Gate of Heavenly Peace
中华人民共和国	Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gōnghéguó	n.	People's Republic of China 共和国: republic
万岁	wànsuì	v.	long live
人民	rénmín	n.	people

“大团结万岁”，或者像经常看到的“为人民服务”、“学习雷锋”等等。每个标语都带着一定的教训，而广告只告诉你信息，并没有什么教训的意味。

前几年政府在全国提出的一个新标语是“讲文明，树新风”，意思是大家改掉生活中一些不好

团结	tuánjié	v.	unite; rally
雷锋	Léi Fēng	n.	Lei Feng (1940-1962), a soldier who died on duty and was hailed as a model for the youth of China and so on; etc.
等等	děngděng		
教训	jiào.xùn	n.	lesson; moral
信息	xìnxī	n.	information; message
意味	yìwèi	n.	meaning; implication
政府	zhèngfǔ	n.	government
全 n.	quán	adj.	whole; entire; total 全国/全校
提出	tí//chū	v-c.	put forward; advance; raise 提出了一个好办法/提出问题
讲	jiǎng	v.	stress; pay attention to; be particular about 讲卫生/讲礼貌
文明	wénmíng	n.	civilization; culture
讲文明	jiǎng wénmíng		stress on decorum
树	shù	v.	(in writing) set up; establish
新风	xīnfēng	n.	(in writing) new practice; new custom
树新风	shù xīnfēng		foster healthy tendencies
改掉	gǎi//diào	v.-c.	give up; drop 把坏习惯改掉

的习惯，像隨地吐痰、不排队、亂(4)倒垃圾、隨便停放自行車等等。

要想進一步了解中國人的生活和思想，我想標語是个非常有趣而且值得(5)研究的題目。

乱 v.	luàn	<i>adv.</i>	randomly; arbitrarily
倒	dào	<i>v.</i>	pour out; empty
垃圾	lājī	<i>n.</i>	garbage; rubbish
随便	suíbiàn	<i>adv.</i>	carelessly 上课的时候不可以随便说话。 你怎么随便丢垃圾？
停放	tíngfàng	<i>v.</i>	park; place (a car or a bicycle)
了解	liǎojiě	<i>v.</i>	understand
思想	sīxiǎng	<i>n.</i>	thinking; thought
值得	zhí.dé	<i>v.</i>	be worth; deserve
題目	tímù	<i>n.</i>	title; subject; topic

## ★繁体字课文

學校附近有一所小學，小學的大門口兒有一塊很大的牌子，上面有毛主席寫的八個大字：“好好學習，天天向上”，大概每個中國小學生都知道這句話。

在中國到處(1)都能看到各種各樣的標語，有的教人怎麼做人，有的教人怎麼做事。最常見的是“請勿隨地吐痰”、“高高興興出門去，平平安安回家來”這類和日常生活有關的標語。

和二十世纪六、七十年代比<sup>(2)</sup>，現在政治性<sup>(3)</sup>的標語大大地減少了，而商業性的廣告卻增加了。標語和廣告有個基本的不同：標語大多帶著政治或道德的意義，像天安門前的“中華人民共和國萬歲；世界人民大團結萬歲”，或者像經常看到的“為人民服务”、“學習雷鋒”等等。每個標語都帶著一定的教訓，而廣告只告訴你信息，並沒有什麼教訓的意味。

前幾年政府在全國提出的一個新標語是“講文明，樹新風”，意思是希望大家改掉生活中一些不好的習慣，像隨地吐痰、不排隊、亂<sup>(4)</sup>倒垃圾、隨便停放自行車等等。

要想進一步了解中國人的生活和思想，我想標語是個非常有趣而且值得<sup>(5)</sup>研究的題目。

## 语法点

(1) 在中国到处都能看到各种各样的标语。

One can see all kinds of slogans everywhere in China.

到处 is an adverb and not a place word. It indicates that the same thing or state exists everywhere. It can modify a negative form. 都 may come after 到处 and before the verb without changing the meaning.

1. 这类杂志到处都可以买到。

You can buy this kind of magazine anywhere.

2. 到处都有出租汽车，你不必担心。

There are taxis everywhere. You don't need to worry.

(2) 和二十世纪六、七十年代比，现在政治性的标语大大地減少了。

Compared to the sixties and seventies in the twentieth century, there are much fewer political slogans now.

A 和/跟 B 比 means “When A is compared with B.” A phrase implying comparison often follows. 起来 is sometimes used after 比 as a verbal complement. See L. 8, Note (7).

1. 和/跟从前比，中国人说的客套话大大地减少了。  
Compared to the past, Chinese people use far fewer polite phrases.
2. 今年夏天和/跟去年夏天比起来，闷热得多也潮湿得多。  
Compared to last year's summer, this year's is a lot hotter and more humid.

### (3) 政治性，商业性

性 used as a suffix is equivalent to the “-ness” suffix in English, expressing such abstract notions as quality, range, way, degree, etc. Adding 性 to the end of a word makes it a noun; e.g. 政治性 “political nature,” 商业性 “commercial nature,” 可能性 “possibility,” 重要性 “importance,” and 危险性 “danger.” Some of them can also be used to modify a noun; e.g. 政治性的活动；商业性的组织；全国性的问题.

### (4) 乱倒垃圾

to carelessly dump rubbish randomly; to litter.

乱 is used as an adverb to indicate the action is being done recklessly and in a disorderly manner. For instance, 乱跑 “to run wildly,” 乱花钱 “to spend money carelessly,” and 乱说 “to talk mindlessly.”

### (5) 标语是个非常有趣而且值得研究的题目。

Slogans are very interesting and are a topic worth studying.

值得 means “to be worth” or “to merit.” It can be used as a predicate, or it can take a verb or phrase as an object. It can be modified by intensifiers like 很, 太, 相当 or 不. Please note that 值得 is followed by a verb with a positive meaning; you cannot use 值得 to say “He deserves to be punished.”

1. 他为了省钱，不肯买字典，结果学得不好，实在很不值得。  
In order to save money, he refused to buy a dictionary. As a result, he didn't learn well. It was really not worth it.
2. 中国人的客套和礼节是一个值得讨论的题目。  
Chinese courtesy and etiquette is a topic worth discussing.

3. 雷锋为人民服务的精神值得我们学习。

Lei Feng's spirit of serving the people is worth emulating.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. “好好学习，天天向上”这句话是什么意思？
2. 你跟中国人聊天儿的时候，最喜欢谈哪一类的话题？  
(像…这类跟…有关)
3. 在哪儿可以找到卖北京风味儿小吃的小摊儿？(到处)
4. 美国的电视上有些什么样的广告呢？中国的电视呢？  
(各种各样，有的卖…有的卖…)
5. 现在一般中国人每个月赚的钱多不多？(和…比)
6. 你在北京的街上，看过哪些标语？
7. 你认为标语是不是一个值得研究的题目？为什么？
8. 你认为标语真的起得了作用吗？

### II. Insert the words in parentheses into the correct position in each sentence.

1. 我们经常可以看到①像“为②人民服务③”这种带④政治意味的标语。(着)
2. 在①有名的景点，②一到了星期天，到处③能看见卖④东西的小摊儿。(都)
3. 讲文明的人①应该改掉一些坏习惯②，像不排队③、随地吐痰④。(等等)
4. 天安门附近的标语①多半都有政治意味，②公共汽车站附近的广告③只是④告诉你一些信息。(而)

### III. Arrange the following phrases into grammatical sentences.

1. 写着    牌子上    门口的    标语    各种各样的  
    ①            ②            ③            ④            ⑤

2. 减少了    成本    大大地    因为    的关系    材料便宜  
    ①            ②            ③            ④            ⑤            ⑥
3. 起不了    思想    对    大作用    政治性的标语    什么    人们的  
    ①            ②            ③            ④            ⑤            ⑥            ⑦
4. 各种    写着    带着    标语    墙上    政治意味的  
    ①            ②            ③            ④            ⑤            ⑥

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 我刚上大学，你认为我以后研究什么比较好呢?  
B: 这很难说，我认为\_\_\_\_\_。 (等等，值得 v.)
2. A: 你为什么宁可住在这个小地方而不到大城市去找工作呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (和…比)
3. A: 你的同屋有什么坏习惯?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (乱 v., 除了…以外)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. If your commercials carry a moral tone, I bet the number of people watching them will decrease tremendously. You had better mention only information related to daily life in your advertisements.
2. Compared with the stores in *Wangfujing*, it is true that things sold in the roadside stands are cheaper, but they are not as good. You should know how to select what you need to buy, and not buy without careful thought.
3. One can see all kinds of slogans pertaining to daily life everywhere in Beijing (use 到处). This shows that the government wants people to correct some bad habits in their lives.
4. You can see bikes parked everywhere on campus. The students simply don't pay attention to what is written on the banners. The banners don't have any real function at all.

**VI. Composition**

At the end of his article, the author states that he believes China's slogans are worth studying. What do they tell us about the situation in China? Do you think that slogans are sometimes, usually, or always followed? What is the point of having slogans? Do you feel that there are more such slogans in China than in the United States? Why or why not?

## 第二十三课 普通话和规范字

出了学校东门往南走，不到十分钟就能看到一个很大的标语：“说话要说普通话，写字要写规范字”。这个标语比许多空洞的政治口号有意义多了。

但是，从这个标语也可以看出中国社会还存在着方言太多和写字不规范的问题。“南腔北调”这四个

---

普通	pǔtōng	<i>adj.</i>	common; ordinary
普通话	pǔtōnghuà	<i>n.</i>	Putonghua (common speech of the Chinese language)
规范	guīfàn	<i>adj./n.</i>	standard; normal, norm 你这个词儿的用法不规范。
规范字	guīfànzì	<i>n.</i>	standardized characters
空洞	kōngdòng	<i>adj.</i>	empty; hollow; devoid of content
口号	kǒuhào	<i>n.</i>	slogan; watchword
有意义	yǒu yìyì	<i>adj.</i>	meaningful; significant
存在	cúnzài	<i>v.</i>	exist 北京存在着交通堵塞的问题。
方言	fāngyán	<i>n.</i>	dialect
南腔北调	nánqiāng běidiào	<i>idm.</i>	some speak with southern accents and some with northern tunes

字最能说明中国是个多<sup>(1)</sup>方言的国家。不但北京人听不懂广东话，有时在一个省里，不同的县也有不同的方言。这个现象造成了人与人之间<sup>(2)</sup>沟通上的困难。中国政府和有远见的知识分子从二十世纪二十年代起<sup>(3)</sup>就提倡说“国语”，但是过去几十年来<sup>(4)</sup>，推行普通话的成绩并不很理想。

---

说明	shuōmíng	v.	explain; show
多——	duō	<i>pref.</i>	multi- 多语言/多文化/多方面
国家	guójiā	<i>n.</i>	country; state; nation
县	xiàn	<i>n.</i>	county
现象	xiànxìang	<i>n.</i>	phenomenon
造成	zàochéng	<i>v.</i>	cause; create; give rise to (usually a undesirable result) 造成困难/造成问题/造成混乱
与	yǔ	<i>conj.</i>	and; 跟
A与B之间	A yǔ B zhījiān		between A and B
沟通	gōutōng	<i>v.</i>	communicate
远见	yuǎnjiàn	<i>n.</i>	foresight; vision
有远见	yǒu yuǎnjiàn	<i>adj.</i>	foresighted
知识分子	zhīshi fènzi	<i>n.</i>	intellectual; the intelligentsia
提倡	tíchàng	<i>v.</i>	advocate; promote
国语	Guóyǔ	<i>n.</i>	Mandarin Chinese
过去	guòqù	<i>n./adv.</i>	past, in the past; formerly
推行	tuīxíng	<i>v.</i>	carry out; practice
成绩	chéngjì	<i>n.</i>	achievement; grade
理想	lǐxiǎng	<i>adj./n.</i>	ideal

---

我看电视新闻就注意到，许多人说话的时候，屏幕上打出了字幕。据<sup>(5)</sup>我的中国老师说，要是没有字幕，有时甚至连他们也听不懂。

中国自从<sup>(6)</sup>二十世纪五十年代起就推行简体字，可是有一些人一直坚持写繁体字，或是自己创造出一些不规范的字来。结果同一个字就有了许多种不同的写法。这不但为汉字的书写带来了混乱，也为汉字

新闻	xīnwen	n.	news
屏幕	píngmù	n.	TV screen
打	dǎ	v.	(in this context) add subtitles
字幕	zìmù	n.	captions (of motion pictures, etc.); subtitles
自从	zìcóng	prep.	since
简体字	jiǎntǐzì	n.	simplified Chinese characters
繁体字	fántǐzì	n.	traditional Chinese characters
创造	chuàngzào	v.	create from nothing; produce; bring about
汉字	Hànzì	n.	Chinese characters
同一…	tóngyī...		the same ... 同一家饭馆/同一个学校/同一辆车
写法	xiěfǎ	n.	way of writing
书写	shūxiě	v.	write
带来	dài//lái	v.	bring about; bring along; produce 带来了方便/带来了许多麻烦
混乱	hùnluàn	n./adj.	chaos; confusion, in chaos 交通非常混乱/混乱的现象

的辨识带来了困难。因此<sup>(7)</sup>，为了要大家都听得懂、看得懂，我们都应该说普通话，写规范字。

那么，什么是推行普通话和规范字最有效的办法呢？我认为光<sup>(8)</sup>靠政府的宣传是不够的，最有效的办法是发展广播和电视。等到<sup>(9)</sup>中国农村家家都能收看北京电视和收听北京广播的时候，普通话和规范字自然就深入中国各地了。

辨识	biànsī	v.	distinguish and recognize
因此	yīncǐ	conj.	therefore; hence
那么	nà.me	adv.	then; so
有效	yǒuxiào	adj.	effective
办法	bànfa	n.	way; means; measure
光	guāng	adv.	only; alone; merely
靠	kào	v.	depend on; rely on
宣传	xuānchuán	n./v.	propaganda, propagandize
不够	búgòu	v./adv.	not enough 足够 (zúgòu): adj. enough 足够的钱/足够的时间/足够的了解 够 v./adv.: enough adj./enough to v. 夠了/够吃/够用/够多/够干净
广播	guǎngbō	n./v.	radio broadcast, broadcast
农村	nóngcūn	n.	countryside; rural area
收看	shōukàn	v.	watch (television)
收听	shōutīng	v.	listen to (radio broadcast)
自然	zìrán	adv./adj.	naturally, natural
深入	shēnrù	v.	go deep into

## ★繁体字课文

出了學校東門往南走，不到十分鐘就能看到一個很大的標語：“說話要說普通話，寫字要寫規範字”。這個標語比許多空洞的政治口號有意義多了。

但是，從這個標語也可以看出中國社會還存在著方言太多和寫字不規範的問題。“南腔北調”這四個字最能說明中國是個多<sup>(1)</sup>方言的國家。不但北京人聽不懂廣東話，有時在一個省裏，不同的縣也有不同的方言。這個現象造成了人與人之間<sup>(2)</sup>溝通上的困難。中國政府和有遠見的知識分子從二十世紀二十年代起<sup>(3)</sup>就提倡說“國語”，但是幾十年來<sup>(4)</sup>，推行普通話的成績並不很理想。

我看電視新聞就注意到，許多人說話的時候，屏幕上打出了字幕。據<sup>(5)</sup>我的中國老師說，要是沒有字幕，有時甚至連他們也聽不懂。

中國自從<sup>(6)</sup>二十世紀五十年代起就推行簡體字，可是有一些人一直堅持寫繁體字，或是自己創造出一些不規範的字來。結果同一個字就有了許多種不同的寫法。這不但為漢字的書寫帶來了混亂，也為漢字的辨識帶來了困難。因此<sup>(7)</sup>，為了要大家都聽得懂、看得懂，我們都應該說普通話，寫規範字。

那麼，什麼是推行普通話和規範字最有效的辦法呢？我認為光<sup>(8)</sup>靠政府的宣傳是不夠的，最有效的辦法是發展廣播和電視。等到<sup>(9)</sup>中國農村家家都能收看北京電視和收聽北京廣播的時候，普通話和規範字自然就深入中國各地了。

## 语法点

(1) 中国是个多方言的国家。

China is a multi-dialect country.

多 in this context is used as a prefix. It can be followed by certain nouns to form adjective phrases. For example, 多方面 “many-sided; multi-lateral,” 多民族国家 “multinational state.”

(2) 这个现象造成了人与人之间沟通上的困难。

This situation has caused problems in communication among people.

A 与/跟/和 B 之间 means “between A and B” or “among....”

1. 学生之间的关系都非常好。

The students get along very well with each other.

2. 上海在北京和广州之间。

Shanghai is located between Beijing and Guangzhou.

3. 我发现繁体字和简体字之间的不同并没有想象的那么大。

I realized that the difference between traditional and simplified characters is not as big as one imagines.

(3) 中国政府从二十世纪二十年代起就提倡说“国语”。

Since the 20's in the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the Chinese government has advocated “speaking the national language (Mandarin).”

When used with a time expression or event, 从…起 indicates a starting point. It is often followed by a pause when spoken.

1. 从 1949 年起，中国成了一个共产主义国家。

Beginning in 1949, China became a communist country.

2. 从上大学起，我就离开了家。

I left home as soon as I entered college.

(4) 过去几十年来，推行普通话的成绩并不很理想。

During the past few decades, the results of promoting Putonghua have not been very satisfactory.

When 来 is preceded by a time expression, it means “during....”

1. 这几十年来，中美之间的不同减少了很多。

The differences between China and America have decreased considerably during the past few decades.

2. 过去十年来，他一直住在国外。

He has lived abroad for the past ten years.

(5) 据我的中国老师说，…

According to what my Chinese teacher said, …

据, followed by a substantive, disyllabic verb, or subject-predicate construction, means “according to” or “on the grounds of.” Also see L. 1, Note (3).

1. 据我了解，城市的住房问题比农村的严重得多。

As I understand them, the housing problems in the city are far more serious than those in the country.

2. 据我看，你还是坐软卧吧！虽然贵一点儿，可是舒服得多。

In my opinion, you'd better take the soft bunk train. It is a little bit more expensive, but it is much more comfortable.

(6) 中国自从二十世纪五十年代起就推行简体字，可是有一些人一直坚持写繁体字。

China has promoted simplified characters since the 50's in the 20<sup>th</sup> century; however, there have been people who always insist on writing traditional characters.

自从, followed by a time expression or event, means “since a point of time in the past” and can be accompanied by 起, 以后 or 以来. 自从…以来 means “from sometime in the past up to the time of speaking.” It is often used in conjunction with 就.

1. 自从改革开放以来，中国社会有了很大的改变。

Since the reform and opening (of China), Chinese society has undergone great changes.

2. 自从上大学以后，他就只在放假的时候回家。

Ever since he went to college, he has only come home during vacations.

3. 自从我到了北京，我就发现并不是每一个中国人都说标准的中国话。

Ever since I arrived in Beijing, I've found out that not every Chinese person speaks standard Chinese.

(7) 因此，我们都应该说普通话，写规范字。

Therefore, we should all speak Putonghua, and write standardized characters.

因此, “therefore,” is a conjunction used at the head of a clause, a sentence, or a paragraph. It may be followed by a pause when speaking. Please note 因此 literally means 因为这个, therefore 因为 should not be used accompanying 因此.

1. 我们说不同的方言，因此沟通上有些困难。

We speak different dialects; therefore, we have problems communicating.

2. 我实在不明白“三鲜”“八宝”是什么东西。因此，我总是避免点这些菜。

I really don't know what "Three Delicacies" and "Eight Treasures" are; therefore, I always try to avoid ordering these dishes.

(8) 我认为光靠政府的宣传是不够的。

I think that it is not enough to depend solely on the government's propaganda.

光 means “only,” or “just.” It can restrict range but not quantity.

1. 光紧张有什么用呢？你得想想办法才行。

It is useless to just be nervous. You have to think of some solution.

2. 光会繁体字是不行的。为了在中国学习，你一定得学简体字。

It is not good to be able to use traditional characters only. You need to learn simplified characters in order to study in China.

3. 这个学期，我光买书就花了三百多块钱。

This semester, I have spent over three hundred dollars just on buying books.

(9) 等到中国农村家家都能收看北京电视和收听北京广播的时候，普通话和规范字自然就深入中国各地了。

When every family in the rural areas can watch TV programs and listen to the broadcast from Beijing, Putonghua and standardized characters will naturally penetrate every region of China.

等到 introduces the time at which something happens or the condition needed for it to happen and is generally followed by a phrase or clause. Phrases such as “…的时候” or “…以后” are often added at the end of these clauses.

1. 等到过街天桥建好了，过街就不再是一件危险的事了。

When the overpass is built, crossing the street will no longer be a dangerous thing.

2. 等到第二天要考试了才开始学习，不是太迟了吗？

Isn't it too late to start studying when your exam is the next day?

3. 这件事儿你先别说，等到他问的时候再告诉他。

Don't say anything about this. Only tell him after he asks.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你听得懂听不懂电视上的新闻？需要不需要字幕？（光）

2. 中国人的生活是什么时候开始有了很大的不同？

（从…起，年代，比方说）

3. 中国政府推行普通话和规范字，对学中文的外国学生来说有好处吗？（A 跟 B 之间，沟通上，让）

4. “南腔北调”这个词，可以说明什么问题？（多—，甚至）

5. 你是什么时候开始注意中国的政治的？（自从…以后，就）

6. 发展广播和电视是推行普通话、规范字最有效的办法吗？为什么？

7. 美国有没有方言？南方人和北方人在沟通上有没有困难？

### II. Complete the following sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, 这些话比空洞的政治口号有意义多了。

2. 从 \_\_\_\_\_ 我们可以看出，中国社会还存在着 \_\_\_\_\_ 的现象。
3. 点菜实在太难了，不但 \_\_\_\_\_，有时连 \_\_\_\_\_ 都 \_\_\_\_\_。
4. 有远见的知识分子 \_\_\_\_\_，但是 \_\_\_\_\_。
5. \_\_\_\_\_ 为中国人带来了 \_\_\_\_\_，可是也带来了 \_\_\_\_\_。

**III. Insert the words in parentheses into the correct position in each sentence.**

1. 电视屏幕上打①了字幕，我才了解电视上的人说了②什么。据我的中国朋友说，要是没有字幕③，甚至他们也有时听④不懂。（出）
2. 中国人①在请客的时候，②常常劝菜、劝酒，这③能表示主人对客人的④热情。（最）
3. 中国政府从八十年代起①开始改革开放，不但要发展交通和经济（jīngjì, economy），②还要③“讲文明，树新风”，④改掉一些中国人的坏习惯。（就）
4. ①我的中文老师②说，③公共汽车上做商业广告是最近几年的事，④从前是没有的。（据）
5. ①我坐长途火车旅行②以后，③我对中国人一般人的生活④有了进一步的了解。（自从）

**IV. Answer the following questions using 光.**

1. 推行普通话，政府努力地宣传就行了，是不是？
2. 你早上是不是吃了不干净的东西？怎么吐了呢？
3. 有了斑马线和红绿灯，行人过马路应该很安全了吧？
4. 多看电视就能了解中国人的生活，不是吗？

**V. Answer the following questions using 因此.**

1. 你为什么要研究标语和口号？
2. 美国的电视上为什么不打字幕？
3. 美国人一般来说不劝酒劝菜，你怎么劝起酒劝起菜来了？
4. 他为什么要天天收听中文的广播？

**VI. Answer the following questions using 等到.**

1. 你今年要不要在北京工作?
2. 你决定什么时候到承德去旅行?
3. 他已经请了两天假了, 他到底什么时候才回来上课?
4. 我到现在还得靠字幕才能了解电视新闻, 怎么办呢?

**VII. Translate into Chinese.**

1. The meaning of “southern accents and northern tones” is that the language in one place is somewhat different from other places. This phenomenon will bring forth difficulty in communication among people. For example, when I am conversing with Chinese friends from different places, most of the time I cannot understand what they say. By the time I figure out what they are saying, they have already switched to another topic.
2. Ever since the Chinese government began the promotion (use 提倡) of speaking Mandarin Chinese, relevant slogans can be seen everywhere. However, their result (achievement) is still not very satisfying. For example, in big cities such as Shanghai (上海) and Guangzhou (广州), people still insist on speaking in the local dialect.
3. Is it beneficial for foreign students to learn Chinese by reading TV subtitles? Some people believe that not having subtitles would create big problems for students’ understanding. But some people think that students only pay attention to subtitles, which is not a good thing for their listening ability (听力).

**VIII. Composition**

Does promoting the speaking of Mandarin mean to some extent jeopardizing the status of dialects? Some people argue that a dialect is one of the most important aspects in preserving a culture, and that people should have the right to speak their mother tongue. Others argue that the unity of a country will be seriously affected if many languages are spoken in the country. Which opinion do you agree with? Why?

## 第二十四课 中国制造

我从美国买了几件小礼物来<sup>(1)</sup>送给中国朋友。到了中国以后，才发现这几件礼物都是在中国做的。这让我觉得有些尴尬——从美国买了中国东西来送给中国朋友！

人们常说中国是世界上最大的市场，其实中国也是世界上最大的工厂。现在美国许多衣服、鞋子、箱子、家具和家用电器都是在中国制造的，价钱便宜，

---

制造	zhìzào	v.	manufacture; make 制造汽车/制造电视机
礼物	lǐwù	n.	present; gift
送	sòng	v.	give (a present) 我想送给他一个礼物。
			他送给你的是什么东西？
尴尬	gān'gà	adj.	awkward; embarrassed
工厂	gōngchǎng	n.	factory
鞋子	xié.zi	n.	shoe 一双鞋子
箱子	xiāng.zi	n.	luggage; box; case; trunk; suitcase
家具	jiājù	n.	furniture

质量也很好。这主要是因为中国既有丰富的资源，又有比较廉价的劳动力和安定的社会，所以许多美国大公司都把工厂设在中国。有些美国人担心这个情况会造成美国工人失业。

欧洲和美国的公司把工厂设在发展中国家，一方面可能减少了欧美工人的就业机会，但是另一方面却

质量	zhìlìàng	<i>n.</i>	quality
丰富	fēngfù	<i>adj.</i>	rich; abundant
资源	zīyuán	<i>n.</i>	natural resources; resources
廉价	liánjià	<i>adj.</i>	low-priced; cheap 廉: low-priced; inexpensive; cheap
劳动力	láo dòng lì	<i>n.</i>	labor force
安定	āndìng	<i>adj.</i>	stable; quiet; settled (modify abstract nouns only) 生活很安定
公司	gōngsī	<i>n.</i>	company; corporation
设	shè	<i>v.</i>	set up; establish 设了一家银行/把公司设在国外
工人	gōngrén	<i>n.</i>	manual worker; workman
失业	shíyè	<i>v.</i>	lose one's job
欧洲	Ōuzhōu	<i>n.</i>	Europe
发展中国家	fāzhǎnzhōng guójia	<i>n.</i>	developing country
可能	kěnénɡ	<i>adv./n.</i>	probably; maybe, possibility
就业	jiù//yè	<i>v.-o.</i>	obtain employment

降低了商品的成本，使<sup>(2)</sup>全世界的人都能享受到物美价廉的东西。

中国的改革开放不但提高了中国人的生活水平，对全世界的经济发展也做出了一定的贡献<sup>(3)</sup>。

---

降低	jiàngdī	v.	reduce; drop; lower 降低价钱
商品	shāngpǐn	n.	commodity; merchandise
使	shǐ	v.	enable; make
享受	xiǎngshòu	v.	enjoy 享受悠闲的生活
物美价廉	wùměi jiàlián	idm.	excellent quality at low prices – a bargain buy
提高	tígāo	v.	raise; heighten; increase 提高价格
水平	shuǐpíng	v.	standard; level 中文水平/他的文化水平不高。
经济	jīngjì	n.	economy
贡献	gòngxiàn	n./v.	contribution, contribute 对世界做出了很大的贡献 把一切贡献给国家

## ★ 繁体字课文

我從美國買了幾件小禮物來<sup>(1)</sup>送給中國朋友。到了中國以後，才發現這幾件禮物都是在中國做的。這讓我覺得有些尷尬——從美國買了中國東西來送給中國朋友！

人們常說中國是世界上最大的市場，其實中國也是世界上最大的工廠。現在美國許多衣服、鞋子、箱子、傢俱和家用電器都是在中國製造的，價錢便宜，質量也很好。這主要是因為中國既有豐富的資源，又有比較廉價的勞動力和安定的社會，所以許多美國大公司都把工廠設在中國。有些美國人擔心這個情況會造成美國工人失業。

歐洲和美國的公司把工廠設在發展中國家，一方面當然減少了歐美工人的就業機會，但是另一方面卻降低了商品的成本，使<sup>(2)</sup>全世界的人都能享受到價廉物美的東西。

中國的改革開放不但提高了中國人的生活水平，對全世界的經濟發展也做出了一定的貢獻<sup>(3)</sup>。

## ❖ 语法点

(1) 我从美国买了几件小礼物来送给中国朋友。

I bought a few presents from the States to give to my Chinese friends.

来 is used between verbal phrases or a verbal phrase and a verb. What precedes 来 is the means of completing the action and what after 来 is the action to be completed.

1. 你要用什么办法来帮助他呢？

What are you going to use/do to help him?

2. 许多美国公司把工厂设在发展中国家来降低成本。

Many American companies set up factories in developing countries in order to lower their costs.

(2) …使全世界的人都能享受到价廉物美的东西。

...to enable people throughout the world to enjoy inexpensive, high-quality products.

使, meaning “to make,” “to cause,” or “to enable (a situation to happen),” is used more frequently in written than in spoken language. It can be replaced by 让. However, 使 cannot replace 让 when 让 means “to allow,” “to let,” or “to make someone do something.” For instance, one can never say \*老师不使我上课的时候喝汽水. See L.1, Note (7) and L.6, Note (5).

- 这儿的汽车一般都不让行人，使我过街的时候非常紧张。

Cars here don't generally yield to pedestrians, which makes me very nervous when I cross the street.

- 他拒绝了我的要求，使我觉得很没面子。

He rejected my request and made me feel that I had lost face.

(3) 中国的改革开放对全世界的经济发展做出了一定的贡献。

China's reforms and opening-up have made some contributions to the economic development of the whole world.

做出贡献 is always used in a positive situation. You may say in English that “His laziness contributes to his failure,” but you can never use 贡献 in this way. The object following 对 is always a large/formal entity such as 全世界, 国家, 社会, and 经济发展.

- 这些知识分子提倡说普通话，对国家的团结做出了很大的贡献。

These intellectuals' promotion of speaking Mandarin Chinese has made great contributions to the unity of the country.

- 交通发展对经济进步有很大的贡献。

The development of transportation contributes greatly to economic progress.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 哪些事情会让你觉得很尴尬?
2. 什么情况会造成工人失业?
3. 你有哪些东西是中国制造的? 这些东西都价廉物美吗?
4. 要是你是大公司的老板, 你要不要把工厂设在中国? 为什么?
5. 把工厂设在中国, 真的对美国的经济有不好的影响吗?
6. 你同意不同意中国是世界上最大的市场, 也是最大的工厂?  
为什么? (因此, 既…又…)
7. 改革开放对中国人的生活到底有什么影响? (使)
8. 哪些事情可以说明中国人的生活水平提高了?

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. 为了降低成本, 我们决定 \_\_\_\_。  

①把工厂在中国设      ②把工厂设在中国  
③设工厂在中国      ④设工厂在中国里
2. 不安定的社会也许会使人民的生活水平 \_\_\_\_。  

①增加    ②降低    ③减少    ④提高
3. 我的母亲 \_\_\_\_ 我去买一些礼物送给在中国的朋友。  

①使    ②让    ③问    ④请
4. 这种情况 \_\_\_\_。  

①把工人失业造成了    ②使工人失业造成了  
③造成了工人失业    ④造了成工人失业
5. 留学生那么多, 外事处很难照顾 \_\_\_\_ 每一个人。  

①出来    ②到    ③了    ④过

### III. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. 你来看我, 还带了礼物, 我真 (尴尬, 不好意思)。
2. 据说在发展中国家 (树, 设) 工厂, 成本会低一点儿。
3. 他在家用电器公司 (就业, 工作), 所以知道电器的好坏。

4. 欧美国家制造的家具都不（便宜，价廉）。
5. 这家商店的东西价廉物美，来买东西的人（很多，许多）。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你发现了没有？美国市场上中国制造的商品越来越多了！  
B: 我认为这主要是因为 \_\_\_\_\_。 (既…又…)
2. A: 政府应该提倡美国人只买美国制造的东西，那美国的工厂就不会赔钱了。  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一方面…，另一方面…)
3. A: 改革开放最大的好处是什么？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (对…做出了…的贡献)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Societal stability has contributed greatly to the economic development of our country. We don't have problems with unemployment, and the phenomenon of big companies refusing to set up factories here no longer exists.
2. Factories set up in developing countries are mainly those that require cheap labor. Companies employ this method to reduce the cost of manufacturing their products. On the one hand, this increases employment opportunities, but on the other hand it cannot truly upgrade the technological (科技, kējì) level of these countries.
3. How can it embarrass you to buy cheap but high-quality presents to give to your friends? As long as you don't buy randomly from that small market, your friends will not know.

**VI. Composition**

Many people predict that in the relatively near future China will become a bigger power than Japan or even the United States. What aspects of Chinese society have you observed which indicate that China is moving in this direction? Does “bigger” mean “better” for Chinese people? Why or Why not?

## 第二十五课 怕老婆

中国历史上一向<sup>(1)</sup>有重男轻女的传统，所以父母大多喜欢生男孩儿，而不喜欢生女孩儿。这种重男轻女的现象在中国农村还相当<sup>(2)</sup>普遍。所以外国人收养的中国孩子几乎<sup>(3)</sup>都是女孩儿，没有男孩儿。

中国人一方面有重男轻女的传统，另一方面又有怕老婆的传统。中国有许多怕老婆的笑话。我最喜欢的是这个笑话：

---

一向	yíxiàng	<i>adv.</i>	always; all along
重男轻女	zhòngnán qīngnǚ	<i>idm.</i>	prefer sons to daughters; look up to men and down on women
传统	chuántǒng	<i>n.</i>	tradition
生	shēng	<i>v.</i>	give birth to; bear
男孩儿	nánhái	<i>n.</i>	boy
女孩儿	nǚhái	<i>n.</i>	girl
相当	xiāngdāng	<i>adv.</i>	quite; considerably 相当好/相当贵
收养	shōuyǎng	<i>v.</i>	adopt; take in and bring up
笑话	xìao.hua	<i>n.</i>	joke

有家公司的老板很有钱也很能干，可是非常怕老婆，他的同事常常开他的玩笑。有一天，他想看看他的同事当中，有没有不怕老婆的。他就开了一个会，他说：“很多人笑我怕老婆，我想知道你们到底怕不怕老婆。现在，怕老婆的站到左边儿，不怕老婆的站到右边儿。”结果，除了一个人以外，所有的人都站到了左边儿，老板非常佩服站在右边儿的这个人，就问他：“你真的不怕老婆吗？你怎么站在右边儿？”那个人回答说：“老婆告诉我，人多的地方不要去。”

像这样的笑话很多。这虽然只是个笑话，但也反映了中国人的家庭生活。一般来说，在家庭生活里，

---

有钱	yǒuqián	<i>adj.</i>	rich
能干	nénggàn	<i>adj.</i>	able; capable; competent
同事	tóngshì	<i>n.</i>	colleague; fellow worker
开会	kāi//huì	<i>v.-o.</i>	hold a meeting; have a meeting
笑	xiào	<i>v.</i>	ridicule; laugh at
左边儿	zuǒbiānr	<i>n.</i>	left side; left
右边儿	yòubiānr	<i>n.</i>	right side; right
反映	fǎnyìng	<i>v.</i>	reflect; reflex; mirror
家庭	jiātíng	<i>n.</i>	family; household; home

女人往往占主导的地位。先生每月的工资，大多交给太太，由<sup>(4)</sup>太太来处理。外国人常常看不到这一点<sup>(5)</sup>，以为中国女人总是受男人压迫，其实，女人也有厉害的一面。

占	zhàn	v.	hold; constitute; make up 女生占全校学生的一半。
主导	zhǔdǎo	adj./ v.	leading; dominant; guiding, lead; guide
工资	gōngzī	n.	wages; salary
交	jiāo	v.	hand over; deliver
由	yóu	prep.	(done) by (somebody)
处理	chǔlǐ	v.	handle; deal with; manage
——点	diǎn	n.	aspect; feature
女人	nǚrén	n.	woman
男人	nánrén	n.	man
压迫	yāpò	v.	oppress; repress
厉害	lì.hài	adj.	sharp; fierce, capable 他的老婆很厉害，所以他很怕她。 他真厉害，工作做得又快又好。

## ★ 繁体字课文

中國歷史上一向<sup>(1)</sup>有重男輕女的傳統，所以父母大多喜歡生男孩兒，而不喜歡生女孩兒。這種重男輕女的現象在中國農村還相當<sup>(2)</sup>普遍。所以外國人收養的中國孩子幾乎<sup>(3)</sup>都是女孩兒，沒有男孩兒。

中國人一方面有重男輕女的傳統，另一方面又有怕老婆的傳統。中國有許多怕老婆的笑話。我最喜歡的是這個笑話：

有家公司的老闆很有錢也很能幹，可是非常怕老婆，他的同事常常開他的玩笑。有一天，他想看看他的同事當中，有沒有不怕老婆的。他就開了一個會，他說：“很多人笑我怕老婆，我想知道你們到底怕不怕老婆。現在，怕老婆的站到左邊兒，不怕老婆的站到右邊兒。”結果，除了一個人以外，所有的人都站到了左邊兒，老闆非常佩服站在右邊兒的這個人，就問他：“你真的不怕老婆嗎？你怎麼站在右邊兒？”那個人回答說：“老婆告訴我，人多的地方不要去。”

像這樣的笑話很多。這雖然只是個笑話，但也反映了中國人的家庭生活。一般來說，在家庭生活裏，女人往往占主導的地位。先生每月的工資，大多交給太太，由<sup>(4)</sup>太太來處理。外國人常常看不到這一點<sup>(5)</sup>，以為中國女人總是受男人壓迫，其實，女人也有厲害的一面。

### ❖ 语法点

(1) 中国历史上一向有重男轻女的传统。

In Chinese history, there has always been a tradition of regarding men as superior to women.

一向 indicates that an act or situation has remained the same from a certain time in the past up to the time when speaking. It can modify either a positive or a negative sentence.

1. 他们两个人一向很谈得来。

They have always gotten along well.

2. 这些小公园一向是北京市民休闲的好去处。

These small parks have always been good places for Beijing's citizens to go in their leisure time.

3. 城市的生活水平一向比农村的高一些。

The living standard in cities has always been higher than that of the rural areas.

一直 is different from 一向 in that 一直 indicates that within a certain period of time, an action continues without interruption or that a state of affairs remains unchanged.

4. 这两天一直下雨。

It has been raining for two days straight.

5. 过去两年来，我一直在观察中国社会的改变。

I have been observing the changes in Chinese society for the past two years.

- (2) 这种重男轻女的现象在中国农村还相当普遍。

The phenomenon of preferring boys to girls is still very common in the rural area of China.

相当 can be used as an adverb meaning “quite,” “fairly,” or “considerably.” It indicates a certain degree not as extreme as that expressed by a stressed 很, but more extreme than that expressed by an unstressed 很. It modifies adjectives, certain verbs, auxiliary verbs, and phrases.

1. 到了北京以后我才发现北京是一个相当现代化的城市。

Only after I arrived in Beijing did I realize that Beijing is a quite modern city.

2. 要改变一个人的坏习惯相当不容易。

It is not at all easy to change one's bad habits.

3. 这个商店不大，卖的东西却相当多。

This store is not very big, but it carries everything.

- (3) 外国人收养的中国孩子几乎都是女孩儿，没有男孩儿。

The children that foreigners adopt are almost all girls, not boys.

几乎 means “almost, nearly;” while 差不多 means “around” or “almost.” See L. 11, Note (7).

1. 几乎每条街上都有饭馆儿。

Nearly every street has a few restaurants.

2. 毕业的学生几乎都找到了工作。

Nearly every graduate has found a job.

Sometimes **几乎** indicates something undesirable nearly took place but in fact did not, and the speaker finds it a narrow escape.

3. 到了下午三点钟，我还没吃午饭呢！我几乎饿死了！

By three o'clock in the afternoon, I still hadn't had lunch. I was about to die of starvation.

4. 我从很多车当中很快地跑过去，几乎被撞着。

I quickly ran across the street through many cars and nearly got run over.

5. 我不懂饭桌上的礼节，几乎闹了大笑话。

I didn't know any table manners and nearly made a fool of myself.

**几乎** can also indicate that something very desirable which initially seemed unrealizable was realized in the end, implying that the speaker thinks it was good luck. The verb is in the negative.

6. 他把话清清楚楚地说完了，几乎没有注意到他的外国口音。

He spoke very clearly. Almost no one noticed his foreign accent.

7. 他几乎没花什么钱就得到了一个明代的古董。

He obtained a Ming dynasty antique without spending very much money.

Also, sometimes **几乎** indicates something very desirable which initially seemed realizable was not in fact realized, implying a feeling of regret. The verb must be in the positive.

8. 他几乎得到了那个工作，可是因为他什么外国语都不会说，所以最后还是没得到。

He nearly got that job; however, because he couldn't speak any foreign language, ultimately he didn't get it.

9. 昨天我跟他下棋，我几乎赢了他。

I was playing chess with him yesterday; I nearly beat him.

(4) 先生每月的工资，大多交给太太，由太太来处理。

Mostly the monthly pay of the husband would be handed over to the wife and be handled by the wife.

由 means “by,” but it is different from 被 used in a passive voice. In the “something 由 somebody + v.” pattern, the identity of the doer is the information to be revealed and should be stressed when pronounced. The doer is usually someone who should be responsible for or in charge of the business. 被 is used to indicate that something has been done and usually has a negative connotation in spoken Chinese. The doer cannot be omitted after 由, but the doer after 被 can be omitted. See L. 2, Note (10) for the usage of 被.

1. 留学生的问题应该由外事处处理。

The problems of foreign students should be addressed by the foreign affairs office.

2. 考试的时间已经由老师安排好了，就在星期五下午。

The examination time has been arranged by the teacher; it is Friday afternoon.

3. 我认为一个国家的人民说什么语言、写什么文字不应该由政府决定。

I think that the language that a country's people speak and the character they write should not be decided by the government.

(5) 外国人常常看不到这一点。

Foreigners can not see this most of the time.

点 originally means “point” or “dot,” here it means “aspect” or “feature.” It cannot be used alone and is often used with 这一 or 那一.

1. 他认为要学好外语只要多看书就行，这一点我完全不同意。

He thinks that all one has to do to acquire a foreign language is to do a lot of reading; I don't agree with that at all.

2. 他所说的那一点，我认为特别重要。

I think that the feature that he talked about is extremely important.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 美国社会中有没有重男轻女的现象?
2. 为什么城市里重男轻女的问题没有农村的那么严重?  
(一方面…，另一方面…)
3. 美国社会里有没有怕老婆的笑话? 为什么? (相当)
4. 你认为“人多的地方不要去”这句话怎么样?  
(有…的一面)
5. 你觉得哪些事儿可以反映美国人的家庭生活?
6. “女人也有厉害的一面”这句话说得对不对? 为什么?
7. “怕老婆”是不是表示“尊重老婆”?

### II. Fill in the blank using the appropriate word from the list.

普遍 收养 能干 占 开会 佩服 回答 反映 处理

1. 伟大的长城\_\_\_\_\_了中国古代的建筑水平。
2. 改革开放以后，一个家庭有一辆汽车已经是很\_\_\_\_\_的现象了。
3. 他对\_\_\_\_\_的孩子很好，就像对自己的孩子一样。
4. 他总是能很快地\_\_\_\_\_老师的问题，我真\_\_\_\_\_他。
5. 外事处的张先生很\_\_\_\_\_, 我看，你就把这件事交给  
他\_\_\_\_\_吧!
6. 我们昨天下午\_\_\_\_\_了一个\_\_\_\_\_, 决定对学生宿舍做一些维护和修理的工作。
7. 中国在世界经济上\_\_\_\_\_很重要的地位。

### III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 你真的不会用手洗衣服吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一向)

2. A: 你最喜欢哪种动物?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (在…当中)

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_ 呢? (到底)

B: 中国又有丰富的资源又有廉价的劳动力，当然他们愿意把工厂设在中国。

4. A: 在美国家庭里，钱怎么用是谁决定的?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一般来说，由)

#### IV. Choose the correct word.

1. 你别 (开玩笑, 说笑话) 了! 这件衣服怎么能 300 块钱卖给你? 它的成本就有 500 块!
2. “说话要说普通话, 写字要写规范字”这个口号是 (被, 由) 政府提出的。
3. 我带了一个礼物, 要 (给, 交给) 我的中国朋友。
4. 我一点儿也不 (怕, 恐怕) 我老婆! 你不信, 可以到我家来看!
5. 许多美国工厂都设在外国, 这一 (面, 点) 我觉得是个严重的问题。

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. In traditional Chinese society, it is very common to value boys and look down upon girls. Females got fewer opportunities in every field. People even considered women being capable a bad thing.
2. He always hands his salary to his wife and has his wife deal with it. However it is not necessarily because he is afraid of his wife; maybe it is only because he is too lazy to handle it himself.
3. After the opening up of China, man and woman have become equal on the surface, but actually there are still many problems. Women are still oppressed in many fields (use 方面). Many people just can't see this.

#### VI. Composition

There are indeed many jokes in China about a man who is afraid of his wife, and there are men who readily admit that they are afraid of their wives. Why would a husband be afraid of his wife? When you are afraid of someone, does it mean that you respect him/her? What is the ideal relationship between husband and wife?

## 第二十六课 脱了裤子放屁

中国话里有许多非常有趣而且生动的俗语、成语和歇后语，这些话用很少的字表示出很深的意思来。有些成语已经有三千多年的历史了，但还是现在的日常用语。从成语的发展和使用<sup>(1)</sup>，最能看出中国语言古今并存的有趣现象。

中国的俗语和成语成千上万，我最喜欢的是“脱

---

脱	tuō	v.	take off; cast off
裤子	kù.zi	n.	trousers 一条裤子
放屁	fàng//pì	v.-o.	pass gas; fart
生动	shēngdòng	adj.	lively; vivid
俗语	súhuà	n.	common saying; proverb
成语	chéngyǔ	n.	a set phrase; idiom
歇后语	xiēhòuyǔ	n.	a two-part metaphorical or allegorical saying
用语	yòngyǔ	n.	wording; choice of words
使用	shǐyòng	v.	use; make use of; apply
语言	yǔyán	n.	language
并存	bìngcún	v.	exist simultaneously 中外并存
古今并存	gǔ jīn bìngcún		the ancient and the current exist simultaneously

了裤子放屁”，没有一句话<sup>(2)</sup>比它更能生动有趣地表示做了一件多余的事儿了。当然，这不是一句很高雅的话，在正式的晚饭桌上说这句话是不太合适的。这时，你可以用“画蛇添足”，这就高雅多了，可也就不那么有趣了。

歇后语的意思是只说上半句，下半句让听的人自己去理解。这种话有点儿像谜语，对外国人来说，非常难懂。但是只要听懂了，就不容易忘记。譬如“狗拿耗子”就是一句常用的歇后语，意思是“多管闲事”。

---

多余	duōyú	<i>adj.</i>	unnecessary; surplus
高雅	gāoyǎ	<i>adj.</i>	refined; elegant
画蛇添足	huà shé tiān zú	<i>idm.</i>	draw a snake and add feet to it — ruin the effect by adding something superfluous
理解	lǐjiě	<i>v.</i>	understand; comprehend
谜语	míyǔ	<i>n.</i>	riddle; conundrum
忘记	wàngjì	<i>v.</i>	forget
譬如	pìrú		for example; such as
拿	ná	<i>v.</i>	seize; capture
耗子	hào.zi	<i>n.</i>	mouse; rat
多管闲事	duō guǎn xiánshì	<i>v.</i>	poke one's nose into others' business

---

捉耗子是猫的责任，而狗去做猫该做的事情，这不是多管闲事吗？当然，这句话也不太客气，除非<sup>(3)</sup>是对非常熟的朋友，要不然不能用的。

用成语和俗语，要是用得不合适就会闹笑话，得特别小心。

---

捉	zhuō	v.	catch; capture
猫	māo	n.	cat
责任	zérèn	n.	responsibility
除非	chúfēi	conj.	only if; only when; unless
熟	shú	adj.	familiar
要不然	yào.burán	conj.	otherwise; or else
闹笑话	nào xiào.hua	v.-o.	make a fool of oneself 我因为不会拿筷子，吃饭的时候闹了不少笑话。 要是你用的称呼不合适，是会闹笑话的。

## ★繁体字课文

中國話裏有許多非常有趣而且生動的俗話、成語和歇後語，這些話用很少的字表示出很深的意思來。有些成語已經有三千多年的歷史了，但還是現在的日

常用語。從成語的發展和使用<sup>(1)</sup>，最能看出中國語言古今並存的有趣現象。

中國的俗話和成語成千上萬，我最喜歡的是“脫了褲子放屁”，沒有一句話<sup>(2)</sup>比它更能生動有趣地表示做了一件多餘的事兒了。當然，這不是一句很高雅的話，在正式的晚飯桌上說這句話是不太合適的。這時，你可以用“畫蛇添足”，這就高雅多了，可也就不那麼有趣了。

歇後語的意思是只說上半句，下半句讓聽的人自己去理解。這種話有點兒像謎語，對外國人來說，非常難懂。但是只要聽懂了，就不容易忘記。譬如“狗拿耗子”就是一句常用的歇後語，意思是“多管閒事”。捉耗子是貓的責任，而狗去做貓該做的事情，這不是多管閒事嗎？當然，這句話也不太客氣，除非<sup>(3)</sup>是對非常熟的朋友，要不然不能用的。

用成語和俗話，要是用得不合適就會鬧笑話，得特別小心。

## ◎ 语法点

- (1) 从成语的发展和使用，最能看出中国语言古今并存的有趣现象。

You can be best aware of the interesting phenomenon of the coexistence of classical and modern Chinese languages through the development and usage of idioms.

Some verbs and adjectives can be used as nouns when they are preceded by a 的. See L. 17, Note (4).

1. 中国政府非常注意社会的安定。

The Chinese government pays a lot of attention to the stability of society.

2. 从学生的进步看得出来这个教法很有效。

From students' improvement you may see that this teaching method is very effective.

3. 农村的落后并不是现在的事，是有很长的历史的。

The backwardness of rural areas is not something new, rather it has a long history.

4. 汉字的书写和辨识对外国人来说都是比较困难的。

The writing and reading of Chinese characters is relatively difficult for foreigners.

(2) 没有一句话比它更能生动有趣地表示做了一件多余的事儿了。

There is no other sentence that can express more vividly or interestingly than this one that one has done something unnecessary.

没有一 *AN + n.* is often used in a 比 sentence to indicate emphasis. A double negative sentence with 没有一 *AN + n.* 不/没有… has the same function.

1. 没有一个百货商场比这个大。

There is no other department store bigger than this one.

2. 没有一件事比这件更重要。

Nothing is more important than this.

3. 这个牌子有名极了，没有一个人不知道。

This brand is very famous. There is no one who doesn't know it.

4. 洗衣机是最普通的家用电器，没有一个家庭没有。

The washing machine is the most common household appliance. Every family has one.

(3) 除非是对非常熟的朋友，要不然不能用的。

You don't use it unless you are speaking to a close friend.

除非 introduces the only necessary precondition and is often used in conjunction with 才. 除非 means "only if" or "only then," and indicates that only in a certain way can the result be achieved.

1. 除非有病，他才请假。

He asks for a day off only when he is sick.

2. 除非去很大的百货商场，才能买到外国货。

You can get foreign goods only at large department stores.

要不然, meaning “otherwise” or “or else,” is inserted between two clauses or sentences indicating that things have to go as indicated in the first clause, otherwise the result will be as indicated in the second clause.

3. 你最好坐出租车去，要不然会迟到的。

You'd better go by taxi, otherwise you'll be late.

4. 他的中文好极了，要不然怎么能当中文老师呢？

His Chinese is excellent, or else how could he be a Chinese teacher?

In the construction 除非…才…，要不然… 不/没有…, the double negative construction is used to reinforce the statement mentioned above. Sometimes only the reinforcing statement is kept and the “才…” part is deleted.

5. 除非你到中国去住，才能理解中国人的生活和思想，要不然就不可能真正理解的。

You can understand Chinese people's lives and thoughts only if you go to live in China; otherwise, it is impossible to truly understand.

6. 除非找到特别廉价的劳动力，要不然没办法降低成本。

Unless we find particularly cheap labor, we will have no way to reduce costs.

7. 除非你帮我的忙，要不然我肯定做不完。

I definitely cannot finish this unless you help me.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你跟朋友谈话的时候，常用成语、俗语或是歇后语吗？

2. 你说外国语的时候，有什么困难？ (v. 不出…来)

3. 你认为从哪些事可以看出中国文化的特点？

4. 劝酒劝菜最能表现中国的饮食文化，你同意吗?  
(没有一 *AN + n.* 比…更…)
5. 要是不去中国，能不能理解中国人的生活习惯?  
(除非…，要不然…)
6. 英语里有什么有趣的俗语？对学英文的人来说，英语的俗语容易不容易学？

**II. Make a sentence with the underlined structures.**

1. 中国的成语成千上万，我最喜欢的是“脱了裤子放屁”。
2. 中国话里有许多有趣而且生动的俗语。。
3. 从成语的发展和使用，最能看出中国语言古今并存的现象。
4. 没有一句话比它更能生动有趣地表示做了一件多余的事了。
5. 用成语和俗语，要是用得不合适就会闹笑话。

**III. Choose the appropriate word from the list to fill in the blanks.**

成语	多管闲事	俗语	画蛇添足
笑话	歇后语	谜语	古今并存

1. “入乡随俗”是一个常用的中国\_\_\_\_\_。
2. 墙上有一幅山水画就够了，你不必\_\_\_\_\_，又挂 (guà, hang) 一幅。
3. 我的事我自己管，你不必狗拿耗子，\_\_\_\_\_。
4. 你最好把话说清楚，别让人像猜 (cāi, guess) \_\_\_\_\_一样猜半天。
5. \_\_\_\_\_太难了，连中国人听了上半句也不一定知道下半句。
6. 他在正式的晚饭桌上说了一个不太高雅的\_\_\_\_\_, 结果没有一个人笑，让他有些尴尬。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 为什么你要研究中国的标语呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (从…最能看出…)

2. A: 过马路真危险，这个月已经有三个人被车撞着了。  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (除非…，要不然…)
3. A: 你常常开车到学校上课吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (除非…，才…)
4. A: 广播和电视深入中国各地有什么好处?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (等到…的时候，就没有一个人不…)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. I really don't know much about Chinese idioms and proverbs, so I cannot use an appropriate and interesting idiom to express what I mean. Unless you tell me which one to use, it is impossible for me to figure it out.
2. You can tell by their ways of cooking that Chinese people are very particular about eating. In the Chinese language, there are thousands upon thousands of words related to ways of cooking.
3. Every time I traveled to Datong, Shanxi to visit the Yungang Caves, I always went by train (use 没有一…不). To my surprise, you bought airplane tickets for me this time. You are poking your nose into my business!
4. The meaning of some proverbs cannot be gleaned from their surface meaning. I urge you not to use them carelessly; otherwise you will make a fool of yourself.

#### VI. Composition

Unfortunately for foreign language students, part of understanding any language is being able to guess implied meanings or to understand references to commonly known stories or events. For example, the English expression, ‘These two things are like apples and oranges’ makes no sense literally; but English speakers understand that the person is talking about comparing two things which are completely unrelated. Can you think of some other English phrases that would be incomprehensible to the uninitiated ear? What are the real meanings of these phrases, and how would you explain them to a Chinese friend studying English? Do you have any experiences of such misunderstandings in Chinese?

## 第二十七课 “铁饭碗”打破了

在北京设立办事处的外国公司越来越多了。从飞机到<sup>(1)</sup>计算机，从电话到快餐，美国的大公司在北京几乎都有办公室。这些公司为北京人也为在北京的外国人提供了许多工作机会。这次我来北京，一方面是为了提高我的汉语水平，同时也想找个工作。外国人在北京找工作，几年前还很困难，现在已经是很平常的事儿了。我有几个朋友都在北京找到了理想的工作。

---

铁饭碗	tiěfànwǎn	n.	“iron rice bowl” – a secure job
打破	dǎ/pò	v.-c.	break; smash 他把我的杯子打破了。
设立	shèlì	v.	set up; establish 设立一所学校
办事处	bànshìchù	n.	office; agency
计算机	jìsuànjī	n.	computer 计算: calculate
快餐	kuàicān	n.	fast food
办公室	bàngōngshì	n.	office
汉语	Hànyǔ	n.	Chinese language
同时	tóngshí	adv.	at the same time; in the meantime
平常	píngcháng	adj.	common; ordinary

从前，中国的大学毕业生都是靠学校为他们分配工作，现在他们也得自己找工作了。改革开放的政策不但促进了中国的经济发展，也渐渐打破了“铁饭碗”的观念。

“铁饭碗”的制度虽然为大家提供了稳定的工作，但是却减少了各行各业<sup>(2)</sup>的竞争。现在中国的年轻人都已经认识到只有努力工作才能为自己带来成功。

---

毕业	bì/yè	v.-o.	graduate 他去年大学毕业。
毕业生	bìyèshēng	n.	college graduate
分配	fēnpèi	v.	distribute; allot 他分配到一个很好的工作。 我不喜欢学校分配给我的工作，想另找一个。
促进	cùjìn	v.	promote; accelerate 促进交通发展/促进两国之间的了解
观念	guānniàn	n.	concept; notion; idea
制度	zhì dù	n.	system 政治制度/经济制度
稳定	wěndìng	adj.	stable (only modify abstract nouns) 稳定的社会 情况很稳定
各行各业	gèháng gèyè	n.	all trades and professions 行业: trade; profession
竞争	jìngzhēng	n./v.	competition, compete
认识到	rèn.shi dào	v.	realize; understand; comprehend; recognize
成功	chénggōng	n./v./ adj.	success, succeed, successful

“铁饭碗”、“大锅饭”已经不再<sup>(3)</sup>是中国的特色了。

---

大锅饭	dàguōfàn	n.	food prepared in a large pot 吃大锅饭: “eat out of the same pot” – reap the same benefits regardless of who works more
不再	búzài	adv.	no longer

## ★繁体字课文

在北京設立辦事處的外國公司越來越多了。從飛機到<sup>(1)</sup>計算機，從電話到快餐，美國的大公司在北京幾乎都有辦公室。這些公司為北京人也為在北京的外國人提供了許多工作機會。這次我來北京，一方面是為了提高我的漢語水平，同時也想找個工作。外國人在北京找工作，幾年前還很困難，現在已經是很平常的事兒了。我有幾個朋友都在北京找到了理想的工作。

從前，中國的大學畢業生都是靠學校為他們分配工作，現在他們也得自己找工作了。改革開放的政策不但促進了中國的經濟發展，也漸漸打破了“鐵飯碗”的觀念。

“鐵飯碗”的制度雖然為大家提供了穩定的工作，但是卻減少了各行各業<sup>(2)</sup>的競爭。現在中國的年輕人都已經認識到只有努力工作才能為自己帶來成功。

“鐵飯碗”、“大鍋飯”已經不再<sup>(3)</sup>是中國的特色了。

## 语法点

- (1) 从飞机到计算机，从电话到快餐，美国的大公司在北京几乎都有办公室。

From airplanes to computers, from telephones to fast-food, nearly every large American company has an office in Beijing.

从…到… indicates scope and stress on the inclusiveness. It is often used in conjunction with 都.

1. 从老师到学生，人人都认为他讲得既生动又有趣。

From teachers to students, everybody thought that his speech was both lively and interesting.

2. 从空调到电话，宿舍里什么都有。

From air conditioning to water telephone, the dormitory has everything.

- (2) “铁饭碗”的制度虽然为大家提供了稳定的工作，但是却减少了各行各业的竞争。

Although the “Iron Rice Bowl” system brought everybody steady jobs, it reduced the competition among trades and professions.

各 *n.* 各 *n.* means “each and every *n.*” or “all *n.*” The two nouns that follow 各 are near-synonyms; e.g. 各式各样 (式 and 样: pattern; style; type), 各种各类 (种 and 类: kind; type), 各种各样. See L. 15 and L. 22. You are advised to learn this structure case by case.

- (3) “铁饭碗”已经不再是中国的特色了。

The “Iron Rice Bowl” is no longer characteristic of China.

再 indicates a future or assumed repetition or continuation of an action. 不再 is the negative form. 了 is often used at the end of the sentence indicating the change of status.

1. 外国人在北京找工作不再是特别的事儿了。

It is no longer a rare thing for the foreigners to be looking for jobs in Beijing.

2. 现在的中国人不再像以前那么讲客套了。

Chinese people nowadays don't pay attention to courtesy as much as before.

再也不 v. 了 is the emphatic form of 不再.

3. 他喝醉了以后生了一场大病，后来就再也不喝酒了。

He became deathly ill after being drunk. Since then he no longer drinks.

4. 什么？他说我是“狗拿耗子”？以后我再也不帮他忙了！

What? He said I was “a dog catching a mouse?” I'll never help him again!

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 请你说说有哪些外国大公司在中国设立了办事处？
2. 听说他跟他父亲非常像，是真的吗？（几乎）
3. 铁饭碗制度和竞争的制度各有什么好处和坏处？
4. 你想不想在北京找工作？为什么？
5. 在现代社会里，有哪些旧 (jiù, old) 的观念渐渐被打破了？
6. 大学毕业生靠学校为他们分配工作，这个做法好不好？现在还这样做吗？（一方面…另一方面…，不再…了）
7. 大学毕业以后，你想不想先工作几年再念书？
8. 你希望在一个什么样的行业工作？什么样的工作是比较理想的？

### II. Make a sentence with the underlined expression(s).

1. 改革开放的政策渐渐打破了“铁饭碗”的观念。
2. 中国的年轻人都认识到只有努力工作才能为自己带来成功。
3. 在北京找工作，几年前还很困难，现在已经是很平常的事了。
4. 从飞机到计算机，从电话到快餐，美国的大公司在北京几乎都有办公室。

5. 这次我来北京，一方面是为了提高我的汉语水平，同时也想找个工。作。

**III. Choose the correct word from the list to fill in the blank.**

还 靠 为 也 到 才

1. 从前外国货的质量好，现在中国货的质量\_\_\_\_\_提高了。
2. 半年前他\_\_\_\_\_说得不好，现在居然连成语都会用了。
3. 外事处\_\_\_\_\_留学生提供了许多参观景点的好机会。
4. 我已经大学毕业了，不想再\_\_\_\_\_父母生活了。
5. 只有竞争\_\_\_\_\_能促进经济的发展。
6. 在中国住了几个月，我渐渐认识\_\_\_\_\_新的经济政策不但提高了生活水平，对中国人的思想也有很大的影响。

**IV. Use the following words to complete the advertisement.**

丰富 理想 办事处 设立 竞争  
地址 提供 劳动力 质量 使用

**工作广告**

美国公司需要会说普通话的美国大学毕业生

我们是一家制造电视的美国公司，最近在北京\_\_\_\_\_工厂，要为中国市场\_\_\_\_\_价廉物美的商品。我们这家公司的特色是\_\_\_\_\_当地\_\_\_\_\_的资源和廉价的\_\_\_\_\_，制造有国际水平的商品，无论在价钱还是\_\_\_\_\_方面都可以和有名的日本Sony\_\_\_\_\_. 对会说普通话的美国大学毕业生来说，这是最\_\_\_\_\_的工作机会。请写信给我们的\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_是北京市新街口外大街100号。

**V. Complete the sentences with the expressions provided.**

1. 铁饭碗制度打破以后, \_\_\_\_\_。 (不再…了)
2. 从大城市到农村, \_\_\_\_\_。 (几乎, 到处)
3. 找工作是他自己的事, 你来帮他找, \_\_\_\_\_?  
(不是…吗?)
4. 改革开放的政策 \_\_\_\_\_。 (不但…, 也渐渐…)
5. 外国人在北京找工作虽然不难, 但是 \_\_\_\_\_。 (却)

**VI. Translate into Chinese.**

1. People from almost every country work in China: from America to Japan (日本), and from Britain (英国) to Brazil (巴西, Bāxī). These people work in all kinds of businesses. Some of them think that they will get a better job when they go back to their own country. However, some of them are worried that the longer they stay in China, the harder it will be for them to learn about the developments in their own country.
2. His notion is that only competition will accelerate reform and bring success. He has offered many bonuses (奖金, jiǎngjīn) to increase competition. Therefore, gradually people have begun to work from seven in the morning to eleven at night, and they don't wear smiles on their faces any longer.
3. It is a good ideal to try to succeed on one's own efforts without using connections (靠关系). However, a lot of young people no longer think so. On one hand, it is because the competition in every line of work is extremely fierce (厉害), and on the other hand, they realize that they can succeed more quickly if they use their connections.

**VII. Composition**

In China, the “iron rice bowl” has been broken under the impact of the policies of opening and reform, and the “silver platter”— working for a foreign company – has assumed the position of the iron rice bowl. What is the influence of this phenomenon on the local companies in China? Is it possible that most talented people prefer to work for foreign companies? Will this situation change the work ethics of young Chinese people?

## 第二十八课 乒乓外交

在校园里经常可以看到几个孩子围着一张水泥的乒乓球桌子打乒乓球。虽然设备非常简陋，但是他们的球技却很好。这使我想起<sup>(1)</sup>了 1972 年中国第一次派出乒乓球队到美国去访问的事，这就是有名的“乒乓外交”。 “乒乓外交” 打破了中美之间二十几年敌对的局面。从此以后<sup>(2)</sup>，两国开始了多方面的交流。

---

乒乓	pīngpāng	n.	table tennis; ping-pong; 乒乓球
外交	wàijiāo	n.	diplomacy; foreign affairs
围	wéi	v.	surround; enclose 围在他旁边/围着桌子坐着
水泥	shuǐní	n.	cement
简陋	jiǎnlòu	adj.	simple and crude
球技	qiújì	n.	ball-playing skills
球队	qiúduì	n.	ball team
访问	fǎngwèn	v.	visit (formally)
敌对	díduì	adj.	hostile; antagonistic
局面	júmiàn	n.	aspect; situation
从此以后	cóngcǐ yǐhòu		from then on; from now on
多方面	duōfāngmiàn	adj.	many-sided; in many ways 多方面的改革/多方面的好处
交流	jiāoliú	n./v.	interaction, exchange; interchange

---

在过去这三十几年里<sup>(3)</sup>，中美两国的人民和政府从体育、学术到经济、政治都进行了大规模的交流。然而<sup>(4)</sup>，由于两国隔离的时间太久，社会制度和语言、文化又有很大的差异，在交流的过程中<sup>(5)</sup>常常出现一些困难和障碍，尤其在“人权”这个问题上，双方都比较坚持自己的看法，到今天还没法达成协议。

体育	tǐyù	n.	physical education; sports
学术	xuéshù	n.	learning; academic
进行	jínxíng	v.	carry on; carry out; conduct 进行研究/进行讨论/进行改革/正在进行
然而	rán'ér	conj.	yet; but; however
隔离	gé lí	v.	keep apart; isolate; segregate 应该把得了传染病的人跟健康的人隔离。
差异	chāiyì	n.	difference; divergence
过程	guòchéng	n.	course; process
出现	chūxiàn	v.	appear; arise; emerge 市场上出现了很多外国货。 在改革的过程中，出现了不少问题。
障碍	zhàng'ài	n.	obstacle; barrier
人权	rénquán	n.	human rights 权: 权利 quánlì rights
双方	shuāngfāng	n.	both sides; the two parties
看法	kànfa	n.	view; a way of looking at a thing
达成	dáchéng	v.	reach (an agreement)
协议	xiéyì	n.	agreement

两国进行交流的时候，由于历史和文化背景的不同，矛盾和冲突是不能完全避免的。这时最需要的是相互<sup>(6)</sup>的尊重和理解，而不是<sup>(7)</sup>一国强迫另一国接受自己的标准。

我相信随着<sup>(8)</sup>中美两国政府和人民交流的增加，双方都会更进一步地了解对方。

---

背景	bèijǐng	n.	background 家庭背景/历史背景
矛盾	máodùn	n.	contradiction; conflict
冲突	chōngtū	n.	conflict; clash
相互	xiānghù	adj.	mutual; each other
尊重	zūnzhòng	v./n.	respect; value; esteem 尊重别人的权利/尊重他的看法 (Use 尊敬 zūnjìng for a person because of his age, status, or deeds) 尊敬老师/尊敬老人
强迫	qiǎngpò	v.	force; compel; coerce 强迫孩子吃青菜/强迫他早起
接受	jiēshòu	v.	accept 接受他的帮助
标准	biāozhǔn	n./adj.	standard; criterion, standard 标准很高/说标准的中国话
随着	suí.zhe	conj.	along with; in the wake of

## ★繁体字课文

在校園裏經常可以看到幾個孩子圍著一張水泥的乒乓球桌子打乒乓球。雖然設備非常簡陋，但是他們的球技卻很好。這使我想起(1)了 1972 年中國第一次派出乒乓球隊到美國去訪問的事，這就是有名的“乒乓外交”。 “乒乓外交” 打破了中美之間二十幾年敵對的局面。從此以後(2)，兩國開始了多方面的交流。

在過去這三十幾年裏(3)，中美兩國的人民和政府從體育、學術到經濟、政治都進行了大規模的交流。然而(4)，由於兩國隔離的時間太久，社會制度和語言、文化又有很大的差異，在交流的過程中(5)常常出現一些困難和障礙，尤其在“人權”這個問題上，雙方都比較堅持自己的看法，到今天還沒法達成協議。

兩國進行交流的時候，由於歷史和文化背景的不同，矛盾和衝突是不能完全避免的。這時最需要的是相互(6)的尊重和理解，而不是(7)一國強迫另一國接受自己的標準。

我相信隨著(8)中美兩國政府和人民交流的增加，雙方都會更進一步地了解對方。

## 语法点

- (1) 这使我想起了 1972 年中国第一次派出乒乓球队到美国去访问的事。

This reminds me of the first time China sent a ping-pong team to visit America in 1972.

想起来 means “remember” or “recall.” The potential resultative form is 想得起来, 想不起来. When there is an object, it must be inserted in between 起 and 来. 来 is sometimes omitted.

1. 看见这些刚来的学生，使我想起我自己刚到中国来的时候。

Seeing these newly-arrived students reminds me of the time when I had just come to China.

2. 真糟糕！我怎么也想不起他的名字来。

This is horrible! No matter how hard I try, I can't seem to remember his name.

- (2) 从此以后，两国开始了多方面的交流。

From then on, the two countries began interacting multi-laterally.

1. 七十年代末期，中国开始了改革开放。从此以后，中国人民的生活水平有了很大的提高。

China began to open up in the late seventies. From then on, the standard of living of the Chinese has risen significantly.

2. 中国政府在五十年代推行了简体字。从此以后，简体字成了标准字体。

The Chinese government promoted simplified characters in the 50's. From that point forward, simplified characters became the standard form of the written language.

- (3) 在过去这三十几年里，中美两国进行了大规模的交流。

During the past thirty years, China and America have carried out large scale exchanges.

在…里 with a time expression indicates the time duration when something takes place or exists, usually longer periods of time. It may be placed at the beginning of a sentence or before the verb as an adverbial phrase.

1. 在这几天里，我跟他谈了好几次。

I have talked to him several times in the past few days.

2. 在最近三十年里，从政府组织到老百姓的生活都有很大的变化。

From government organization down to the lives of the common people, everything has undergone big changes over the past thirty years.

(4) 然而，由于两国隔离的时间太久，在交流的过程中常常出现一些困难和障碍。

However, since the two countries had been separated for so long, many difficulties and obstacles have emerged during the course of their interaction.

然而 is same as 但是 meaning “however,” but sounds more literary. There may be a pause after it.

1. 这些孩子的球技不错，然而，他们的设备太简陋，因此成绩不够好。

These children have great ball-playing skills; however, because their equipment is so crude, their results aren't too good.

2. 能用成语、俗语当然很好，然而要是用得不合适，还不如不用。

Of course it is good to be able to use idioms and proverbs, but if you cannot use them correctly, it would be better not to use them at all.

(5) 在交流的过程中常常出现一些困难和障碍。

During the course of their interaction, many difficulties and obstacles emerged.

在...中 with a noun, verbal phrase, subject-predicate or verb-object construction, means “in the range,” “in the process of” or “in the course of.” With a noun, the expression sometimes means “among.” See L. 21, Note (1).

1. 在改革开放中，中国一方面提高本国工厂的生产能力，一方面欢迎外国公司投资。

In opening up, on the one hand, China increased domestic factory production ability; while on the other hand, it welcomed foreign company investment.

2. 在经济发展中，开放市场是非常重要的。

In the course of economic development, the opening of markets is especially important.

3. 在我看过的标语中，“学习雷锋”给我的印象最深。

Among the slogans that I have read, “Emulate Lei Feng” made the deepest impression on me.

4. 在我学过的俗语中，我最喜欢“脱了裤子放屁”这句话。

Among the proverbs that I have learned, I like “taking off your pants to fart” the best.

(6) 这时最需要的是相互的尊重和理解。

At this time, mutual respect and understanding are most necessary.

相互 is the same as 互相, except that 相互 can be used as an adjective. 互相, which means “mutually,” or “each other,” is usually used to modify polysyllable verbs or verbal phrases.

1. 我们是好朋友，应该互相帮助。

We are good friends; we should help each other out.

2. 两国的相互交流对双方都有好处。

Mutual interaction between the two countries helps both sides.

3. 由于双方的来往增加，相互的理解也大大增加了。

Due to increasing bilateral interaction, mutual understanding greatly increased as well.

(7) 这时最需要的是相互的尊重和理解，而不是一国强迫另一国接受自己的标准。

At this time, what's most necessary is mutual respect and understanding, not one country forcing another to accept its standards.

是... 而不是... is used to indicate the confirmation of the former noun or phrase and the negation of the latter one. Compare with L. 18, Note (6).

1. 两国之间交流最大的障碍是政治、社会制度的不同，而不是历史文化的差异。

The biggest obstacle between the two countries interacting is the difference in their political and social systems, not their historical and cultural discrepancies.

2. 在经济发展中，起了最大作用的是竞争的精神，而不是政府的政策。

What's most effective during the economic development is a spirit of competition, not the government's policies.

- (8) 随着中美两国政府和人民交流的增加，双方都会更进一步地了解对方。

Along with increased interaction between China and the US, both sides will be able to deepen their mutual understanding.

随着, “along with,” indicates that a certain thing changes in tandem with something else. What follows 随着 must be a verb denoting change. Verbs can be preceded by 的 to make them into nouns.

1. 随着中美交流的增加，在中国设立办事处的美国公司也越来越多了。

Along with increased interaction between China and the US, the American companies which set up offices in China are increasing also.

2. 随着汉语水平的提高，我的中国朋友一天比一天多。

Along with the rising of my Chinese language level, the number of my Chinese friends is increasing each day.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

- 中美之间的交流，最大的问题是什么？
- 除了人权问题以外，中美之间还有没有别的矛盾？
- 你认为父母和孩子之间，出现问题的原因有哪些？（由于）
- 体育跟外交是两件不同的事，但是用体育来进行外交好像很成功，你认为是为什么？
- 1972年以前，中美关系好不好？1972年以后，两国的外交关系有了什么改变？（从此以后）
- 铁饭碗观念的打破，对中国的年轻人有什么影响？（随着）
- 看到中国的故宫、颐和园、长城这些景点，使你想起了什么？

### II. Rewrite each sentence using the expressions provided.

- 这次乒乓球队不能到美国访问，是因为时间上的问题。  
（由于）
- 这两个好朋友由于对政治的看法不同，现在有了很深的矛盾。  
（在…上）
- 我们很希望两国之间能多交流，不再隔离。  
（进行，打破…的局面）
- 这两所大学在体育、学术各方面都有很多的交流。  
（从…到…，进行，大规模）
- 成本降低了，享受到价廉物美的商品的人们也多了。  
（随着）
- 我学习中国语言，同时也对中国文化有了更深的了解。  
（在…的过程中，进一步）
- 双方的差异不小，可是并没有造成沟通上的障碍。  
（然而）
- 这两家公司同意一起制造汽车。  
（达成…的协议）

### III. Correct the errors.

- 两国政府达成了多方面的协议从经济到外交。
- 随着理解，他们之间的关系渐渐好起来。

3. 孩子到了十六七岁，冲突父母是不可避免的。
4. 男女朋友之间，相互懂最重要。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你们的球队设备这么简陋，怎么能跟对方比赛呢！  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (然而)
2. A: 你跟中国人进行交流的时候，有没有什么障碍？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (尤其)
3. A: 你跟你父亲今天这种敌对的关系，到底是怎么造成的？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (由于)
4. A: 你的中文进步了，对中国的理解也有些不同了吧？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (随着)
5. A: 在中国的学校里所使用的语言是不是当地的方言？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (是…，而不是…)
6. A: 你不是很喜欢中文的成语吗？怎么现在都不用了呢？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (从此以后)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. In the past few months, there have been a lot of fights (use 冲突) between us because we stick to our own opinions. He felt that I no longer respected or understood his ideas. However, I felt that it was he who was trying to force me to accept his standards.
2. With the increase of my visits to foreign countries, I have a deeper understanding of why countries with differences in historical backgrounds can have so many conflicts during the course of their interaction.
3. Her cooking often reminds me of my mother's homemade dishes. The way she cooks is very similar to my mother's in many aspects; nevertheless, she has not achieved my mother's level yet.

**VI. Composition**

Some people claim that the United States is currently practicing “Cultural Imperialism” with its export of American culture (e.g. McDonald's, Coca-Cola, Hollywood movies) to other countries. Do you agree or disagree with this claim? If you disagree, why do you think these U.S. actions are justified? If you agree, what do you think America should do to achieve a better interaction with other cultures?

## 第二十九课 高考

每年六月，中国各地同时举行大学的入学考试，中国人把这个考试叫做高考。这是全国高中生最重要的一个考试。这个考试不但决定他们进入哪所大学，同时也决定了他们以后四年的专业是什么。

我和几位北京的老师聊天儿，发现中国整个儿高中教育几乎都是在为高考做准备，学生很少有机会发展

---

高考	gāokǎo	<i>n.</i>	the entrance examination for colleges and universities
举行	jǔxíng	<i>v.</i>	hold (a meeting, ceremony, etc.)
入学	rùxué	<i>v.-o.</i>	start school; enter school 今年的新生都在九月入学。
考试	kǎoshì	<i>n./v.</i>	test; examination, take a test
决定	juédìng	<i>v.</i>	determine
专业	zhuānyè	<i>n.</i>	special field of study; major
整个儿	zhěnggèr	<i>adj.</i>	whole; entire (整个儿 is often used in conjunction with 都) 我整个儿晚上都没睡着。
教育	jiàoyù	<i>n.</i>	education
准备	zhǔnbèi	<i>n./v.</i>	preparation, prepare

自己的兴趣。高考这个制度固然<sup>(1)</sup>有些负面的影响，使许多高中学生只知道死记硬背，而<sup>(2)</sup>缺乏分析和理解的训练，但是这个考试制度却体现了公平竞争的精神。一个在农村长大的年轻人，只要通过考试，就可以跟别人一样<sup>(3)</sup>进入北京大学。我认为这种公平竞争的精神是非常有意义的。不靠关系，不走后门儿，完全靠自己

兴趣	xìngqù	<i>n.</i>	interest 他对历史很有兴趣。
固然	gùrán	<i>conj.</i>	it is true that; no doubt
负面	fùmian	<i>adj.</i>	negative 起了负面作用 正面: positive
死记硬背	sǐjì yìngbèi	<i>v.</i>	rote memorizing
缺乏	quēfá	<i>v.</i>	lack; be short of 缺乏资源/缺乏远见
分析	fēnxi	<i>v./n.</i>	analyze, analysis
训练	xùnliàn	<i>n./v.</i>	training, train 受到很好的训练
体现	tǐxiàn	<i>v.</i>	embody; reflect; give expression to 这个做法体现了学校对学生的照顾。
公平	gōngpíng	<i>adj.</i>	fair; just
长大	zhǎngdà	<i>v.</i>	grow up; be brought up 她在大城市长大，没去过农村。
通过	tōngguò	<i>v.</i>	pass; be successful (in a test)
北京大学	Běijīng Dàxué	<i>n.</i>	Peking University
关系	guān.xi	<i>n.</i>	connections; relationships
后门儿	hòuménr	<i>n.</i>	back door
走后门儿	zǒu hòuménr	<i>v.-o.</i>	get in by the back door; secure advantages through pull or influence

的能力，通过考试，进入大学。在我看来<sup>(4)</sup>，这个考试的优点比缺点多得多。

有些人批评中国的教育制度过分强调记忆而不重视分析，这也许有些道理；但是在美的中国留学生，一般来说，表现都很好。显然中国教育给他们的训练是很不错的。

---

能力	nénglì	<i>n.</i>	ability; capability
在…看来	zài...kànle		in one's opinion
优点	yōudiǎn	<i>n.</i>	good point; merit; strength
缺点	quēdiǎn	<i>n.</i>	shortcoming; defect; weakness
批评	pīpíng	<i>v.</i>	criticize
过分	guòfèn	<i>adv.</i>	excessively; over- 过分照顾孩子/过分重视考试的成绩
强调	qiángdiào	<i>v.</i>	emphasize; stress
记忆	jìyì	<i>n.</i>	memory
重视	zhòngshì	<i>v.</i>	think highly of; value; take something seriously
道理	dào.lí	<i>n.</i>	reason; sense
有道理	yǒu dào.lí	<i>adj.</i>	reasonable
表现	biǎoxiàn	<i>n.</i>	performance (in school, work, behavior)

## ★繁体字课文

每年六月，中國各地同時舉行大學的入學考試，中國人把這個考試叫做高考。這是全國高中生最重要的一個考試。這個考試不但決定他們進入哪所大學，同時也決定了他們以後四年的專業是什麼。

我和幾位北京的老師聊天兒，發現中國整個兒高中教育幾乎都是在為高考做準備，學生很少有機會發展自己的興趣。高考這個制度固然(1)有些負面的影響，使許多高中學生只知道死記硬背，而(2)缺乏分析和理解的訓練，但是這個考試制度卻體現了公平競爭的精神。一個在農村長大的年輕人，只要通過考試，就可以跟別人一樣(3)進入北京大學。我認為這種公平競爭的精神是非常有意義的。不靠關係，不走後門兒，完全靠自己的能力，通過考試，進入大學。在我看來(4)，這個考試的優點比缺點多得多。

有些人批評中國的教育制度過分強調記憶而不重視分析，這也許有些道理；但是在美國的中國留學生，一般來說，表現都很好。顯然中國教育給他們的訓練是很不錯的。

### ❖ 语法点

- (1) 高考这个制度固然有些负面的影响，但是却体现了公平竞争的精神。

While college entrance examinations undoubtedly have some negative effects, they do embody the spirit of fair competition.

固然 is a conjunction. It is often followed by 然而, 但是, 可是, 而 or 却 to express the speaker's actual viewpoint or to introduce another aspect of the matter concerned.

1. 两国之间的交流固然促进了相互的关系, 然而双方的差异却也在交流的过程中表现出来。

Even though interactions between the two countries have certainly advanced mutual relations, differences have also surfaced during the process.

2. 你不批评他, 固然给了他面子, 但是他没办法知道自己的缺点了。

It is true that you helped him save face by not criticizing him, but now he has no way of knowing his shortcomings.

3. “脱了裤子放屁”固然不太高雅, 但是你还能找到更生动有趣的表达方法吗?

It is true that “taking off your pants to fart” is not terribly elegant, but can you think of any other expression that is more vivid and interesting?

- (2) 许多高中生只知道死记硬背, 而缺乏分析和理解的训练。

Many high school students only know rote memorization and cold recitation while lacking training in analysis and understanding.

而 in L. 21, Note (3) indicates that two things are contrary to each other. However, 而 in this context is used to connect elements which are complementary to each other, indicating an addition. It may connect adjectives or descriptive phrases, or join verbal phrases. One cannot use 跟 in such cases despite this 而 having a very similar meaning to “and” in English.

1. 他坚持自己的看法, 而不听别人的意见。

He insists on his own point of view and won't listen to the opinions of others.

2. 中国话里有许多生动而有趣的俗语。

There are many vivid and interesting proverbs in the Chinese language.

3. 两国隔离的时间太长, 而在各方面都出现了很大的差异。

The two countries have been separated for too long, so significant differences in all areas have emerged.

- (3) 一个生长在农村的年轻人，只要通过考试，就可以跟别人一样进入北京大学。

As long as he passes the examination, a young man from the countryside can enter Peking University like anyone else.

When 跟 is used to indicate a comparison between two things, it must be in conjunction with a word or phrase such as 一样, 相同, 差不多 or 不同. See similar usage in L. 17, Note (1).

1. 两年没见，你跟从前不一样了。

I haven't seen you in two years. You look different from before.

2. 在现代社会里，女人可以跟男人一样进大学，找工作。

In modern society, women can enter universities and look for jobs just as men do.

3. 现在北京的年轻人跟美国的年轻人一样，毕业以后得自己找工作。

Young people in Beijing are just like young people in America. They have to look for jobs for themselves after graduation.

- (4) 在我看来，这个考试的优点比缺点多得多。

In my opinion, the merits of this examination outweigh the shortcomings.

在...看来 is used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a person's opinion.

1. 在老师看来，考试是了解学生进步的一个好方法。

From a teacher's perspective, testing is a good method for understanding students' progress.

2. 在我看来，中国的高考体现了公平竞争的精神。

In my opinion, the college entrance examination in China embodies the spirit of fair competition.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 在你的国家，有没有跟高考差不多的考试制度？
2. 在你的大学，换专业难不难？
3. 你认为中国的高考怎么样？优点和缺点都是什么？(整个儿)
4. 你认为大学教育的目的 (mùdì, purpose) 是什么？  
(为…做准备)
5. 一个人聪明不聪明，是不是学习好坏的主要原因？(固然)
6. 学习语言，需要不需要死记硬背？  
(在…看来)
7. 靠关系、走后门儿，是不是一件丢面子的事？  
(在…看来)

### II. Make sentences using the underlined expressions.

1. 我认为这种公平竞争的精神是非常有意义的。
2. 在美国的中国留学生表现都很好，显然中国教育给他们的训练是很不错的。
3. 整个儿的高中教育几乎都是在为高考做准备。
4. 他不靠关系，完全靠自己的本事进了大学。
5. 高考这个制度，固然有些负面的影响，但是却体现了公平竞争的精神。

### III. Complete the dialogue using the words provided.

负面	本事	重视	分析	批评	而
兴趣	记忆	训练	优点	死记硬背	

A: 书上的句子，老师都要我们 \_\_\_\_\_，真是没有道理。

B: 是吗？在我看来，这个方法的 \_\_\_\_\_ 很多，可以让你的中文听起来跟中国人的一模一样。

A: 这个方法过分强调 \_\_\_\_\_，从来不让学生自由对话！

B: 你的 \_\_\_\_\_ 也许有道理，可是对刚学中文的学生来说，要靠自己的 \_\_\_\_\_ 说出标准的句子来，恐怕不容易吧？

A: 我们并不是没有\_\_\_\_\_能力 (ability) 的小孩子。让我们自由谈话, 可以\_\_\_\_\_我们各方面的能力。你担心的发音 (fāyīn, pronunciation) 问题也许有道理。不过在强调发音的同时, 也不能使学生学习的\_\_\_\_\_降低。

**IV. Complete the sentences/dialogues.**

1. 我父母常常批评现在的年轻人一天到晚只想走后门儿, 而\_\_\_\_\_。
2. 这个国家的资源丰富, 在我看来, \_\_\_\_\_。
3. 在整个大学生活中, \_\_\_\_\_。
4. A: 宿舍的条件这么差, 我真担心学生的学习成绩。  
B: 别担心, 宿舍的条件固然\_\_\_\_\_。
5. A: 专业跟以后找工作很有关系。你决定专业以前, 一定得想清楚。  
B: 固然\_\_\_\_\_, 但是\_\_\_\_\_。
6. A: 美国的教育方法有什么优点?  
B: 在我看来, \_\_\_\_\_。

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. From a parent's viewpoint, passing the entrance examination and entering a famous university is perhaps the most important thing for one's child. Without a doubt (use 固然) this makes sense. However, in my view, this kind of examination system will only train students in rote memorization skills; it is meaningless in regards to a child's development.
2. Our educational system does not over-emphasize memorization and neglect the importance of analytical ability (能力). When preparing for the college entrance examination, we also offer opportunities for students to develop their own interests. I think our system has more strengths than weaknesses.
3. In the past, his speech lacked uniqueness/characteristics, but now his performance is quite different from when he was living in the village. Apparently, our training has given him a positive (正面) influence.

**VI. Composition**

In this lesson, the author argues that the college entrance examination system embodies the spirit of impartiality. For example, any young person, no

matter whether s/he is born in the city or in the village, can get into Peking University if s/he passes the examination. Do you support this argument? Do you think that a child in the countryside receives the same preparatory education as his counterpart in the city? If not, is the examination system truly fair? Or what could be done to remedy this problem?

## 第三十课 北京的书店

北京是中国的政治中心，也是文化中心。北京的书店、出版社、博物馆和文化活动都比中国其他城市多得多。到了北京以后，我去看过几次话剧和电影，虽然不能全懂，但是对于(1)北京老百姓的日常文化活动还是有了一定的了解。

到了周末，我常去逛北京的书店，尤其喜欢逛

---

书店	shūdiàn	<i>n.</i>	bookstore 鞋店: shoe store
中心	zhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	center
出版	chūbǎn	<i>v.</i>	publish; come out
出版社	chūbǎnshè	<i>n.</i>	publishing house
博物馆	bówùguǎn	<i>n.</i>	museum
其他	qítā	<i>adj.</i>	other; else
话剧	huàjù	<i>n.</i>	modern drama; stage play
电影	diànyǐng	<i>n.</i>	movie
全	quán	<i>adv.</i>	完全; completely; entirely 全知道/全懂/所有的学生全去了。
对于	duìyú	<i>prep.</i>	on; for; about; to

琉璃厂。琉璃厂可以说是(2)北京的文化街，除了书店以外，还有许多卖字画儿、古董的铺子，那儿的建筑和街道也保持着几十年前的老样子。清末民初的许多大学者都到琉璃厂来找他们的研究材料。据说那时琉璃厂

琉璃厂	Liúlíchǎng	<i>n.</i>	<i>Liulichang</i>
字画儿	zìhuàr	<i>n.</i>	calligraphy and painting
铺子	pù.zi	<i>n.</i>	(archaic) store; shop
街道	jiēdào	<i>n.</i>	street
保持	bǎochí	<i>v.</i>	keep; maintain; preserve (prevent from changing) 保持外语水平/保持很好的关系
样子	yàng.zi	<i>n.</i>	appearance; shape
老样子	lǎoyàng.zi	<i>n.</i>	the way a thing or person used to look
清	Qīng	<i>n.</i>	清代; the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911)
末	mò	<i>n.</i>	end; last stage 九十年代末
民	Mín	<i>n.</i>	中华民国; the Republic of China (1912 – present, the government moved to Taiwan in 1949)
初	chū		初期; initial stage; early part
清末民初	Qīngmò Mínchū		the end years of the Qing Dynasty and the beginning years of the Republic of China
学者	xuézhě	<i>n.</i>	scholar; learned man
材料	cáiliào	<i>n.</i>	data; material

书店里的职员都精通中国文学、历史的书目和版本，  
他们都是最有经验的图书馆员。

最近几年北京的出版事业非常发达。从一般的小说到严肃的学术著作，从古典的诗歌到电子计算机的教材，几乎每天都有新书出版。有许多重要的中国古代经典，也都在整理以后出了简体字的版本。我在美

---

精通	jīngtōng	v.	be highly proficient in; possess mastery of 精通英语/精通欧洲历史
文学	wénxué	n.	literature
书目	shūmù	n.	catalogue of titles; booklist
版本	bǎn běn	n.	edition
经验	jīngyàn	n.	experience
有经验	yǒu jīngyàn	adj.	experienced
图书馆	túshūguǎn	n.	library
图书馆员	túshūguǎnyuán	n.	librarian
事业	shìyè	n.	enterprise; undertaking; career
发达	fādá	adj.	developed; flourishing
小说	xiǎoshuō	n.	fiction; novel
严肃	yánsù	adj.	serious; solemn
著作	zhùzuò	n.	work; book; writing
古典	gǔdiǎn	adj.	classical
诗歌	shīgē	n.	poems (诗) and songs (歌); poetry
电子计算机	díànzǐ jìsuànjī	n.	computer 电子: electronic
教材	jiào cài	n.	teaching material
经典	jīngdiǎn	n.	classics
出	chū	v.	come out; publish

---

国的时候，老师常说：只学简体字是看不懂中国古书的。其实，只要常去北京的书店看看，就知道用简体字印的古书真不少。看得懂看不懂古书和会不会繁体字实在没有什么关系。

许多解放（1949）以后被禁的著作，最近几年又重新出版了，这是一个非常可喜<sup>(3)</sup>的现象。这说明了思想的解放和言论自由的放宽。虽然现在还有一些问题是不能随便批评的，但是和二十世纪七十年代比较，中国在这方面的进步是应该受到<sup>(4)</sup>肯定的。

---

印	yìn	v.	print
解放	jiěfàng	n./v.	the liberation of China in 1949, liberate; emancipate
禁	jìn	v.	prohibit; ban; forbid
可喜	kěxǐ	adj.	gratifying; heartening
言论	yánlùn	n.	opinion on public affairs; speech
放宽	fàngkuān	v.	relax (restrictions)
受到	shòudào	v.	receive (usually take a verb as object) 受到影响/受到重视
肯定	kěndìng	v.	affirm; confirm; approve; regard as positive 肯定他的成绩 肯定他们对社会的贡献 他们的贡献受到了肯定。

## ★繁体字课文

北京是中國的政治中心，也是文化中心。北京的書店、出版社、博物館和文化活動都比中國其他城市多得多。到了北京以後，我看過幾次話劇和電影，雖然不能全懂，但是對於(1)北京老百姓日常的文化活動還是有了一定的了解。

到了週末，我常去逛北京的書店，尤其喜歡逛琉璃廠。琉璃廠可以說是(2)北京的文化街，除了書店以外，還有許多賣字畫兒、古董的鋪子，那儿的建築和街道也保持著幾十年前的老樣子。清末民初的許多大學者都到琉璃廠來找他們的研究材料。據說那時琉璃廠書店裏的職員都精通中國文學、歷史的書目和版本，他們都是最有經驗的圖書館員。

最近幾年北京的出版事業非常發達。從一般的小說到嚴肅的學術著作，從古典的詩歌到電子計算機的教材，幾乎每天都有新書出版。有許多重要的中國古代經典，也都在整理以後出了簡體字的版本。我在美國的時候，老師常說：只學簡體字是看不懂中國古書的。其實，只要常去北京的書店看看，就知道用簡體字印的古書真不少。看得懂看不懂古書和會不會繁體字實在沒有什麼關係。

許多解放（1949）以後被禁的著作，最近幾年又重新出版了，這是一個非常可喜(3)的現象。這說明了思想的解放和言論自由的放寬。雖然現在還有一些問題是不能隨便批評的，但是和二十世紀七十年代比較，中國在這方面的進步是應該受到(4)肯定的。

## 语法点

(1) 对于北京老百姓日常的文化活动还是有了一定的了解。

... (I) still have a certain understanding of Beijing denizens' daily cultural activities.

This 对于 is the same as the 对 in L. 1, Note (4). Please note that when the object that follows is a person, 对 must be used for showing one's attitude towards the person. See L. 10, Note (3).

1. 政府对于交通发展非常重视。

The government pays much attention to the development of transportation.

2. 对于你提出的意见，我实在不能同意。

I just cannot agree with the opinion you raised.

(2) 琉璃厂可以说是北京的文化街。

*Liulichang* may be called the cultural street of Beijing.

可以说是 means “(something) may be called ...” or “You may call it ....” You may say 你/我们可以说琉璃厂是北京的文化街 or 琉璃厂可以说是北京的文化街.

1. 他们可以说是最有经验的图书馆员。

They can be considered as the most experienced librarians.

2. 纽约可以说是美国的经济中心。

It can be said that New York is the economic center of America.

(3) 这是一个非常可喜的现象。

This is an extremely gratifying phenomenon.

可 combines with monosyllabic verbs describing psychological states to make adjectives. 可喜 means “gratifying,” 可笑 “laughable,” 可爱 “lovable,” and 可怕 “dreadful.” 可 means “to be worth” when followed by other verbs, e.g. 可讨论的题目 “topic worth discussing,” 可参观的地方 “place worth visiting,” 可买的东西 “thing worth buying,” and 可看的书 “book worth reading.”

(4) 中国在这方面的进步是应该受到肯定的。

The progress which China has made in this regard ought to be recognized.

受到 means “to receive” or “to suffer,” and often takes an object formed by a nominalized disyllabic verb, such as 教育, 批评, 影响, and 照顾, etc. A modifier can come between 受到 and the nominalized verb. See L. 11, Note (4).

1. 做父母的都希望孩子受到很好的教育。

All parents want their children to receive a good education.

2. 他们受到的训练很好。

They have received quite good training.

3. 他的看法受到很多人的注意。

His point of view has received a lot of attention.

4. 年轻人很容易受到朋友的影响。

Young people easily succumb to peer pressure.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 华盛顿 (Huáshèngdūn, Washington D. C.) 对美国来说, 有什么重要性? (可以说是, 中心, 比)
2. 你没去过欧洲, 你怎么那么了解欧洲人的生活方式呢?  
(虽然…, 可是…, 对于)
3. 到了周末, 你常去逛什么地方? (尤其)
4. 一个城市保持着几十年前的老样子, 是一件好事吗?
5. 一个好的图书馆员应该是什么样的? (既…又…, 而且)
6. 你逛过北京的书店吗? 北京的出版事业发达不发达? 从哪些事情可以看出来?
7. 中国言论自由的放宽和思想的解放都表现在哪些事情上?  
(比方说, 说明)

### II. Make a sentence using the underlined expression(s).

1. 我不能全懂, 但是还是有一定的了解。

2. 那儿的建筑和街道也保持着几十年前的老样子。
3. 看得懂看不懂古书和会不会繁体字实在没有什么关系。  
(A not A)                           (B not B)
4. 琉璃厂可以说是北京的文化街。
5. 据说琉璃厂书店里的职员都精通文学、历史的书目和版本。
6. 最近几年北京的出版事业非常发达。从一般的小说到严肃的学术著作，几乎每天都有新书出版。
7. 许多解放以后被禁的著作，最近又重新出版了，这是一个非常可喜的现象。
8. 固然改革开放造成了一些问题，但是中国的进步是应该受到肯定的。

**III. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.**

1. 中国的乒乓球队赢(yíng, win)了比赛，(全，整个儿)国人  
民都很兴奋。
2. 虽然我不能(全，所有)同意，但是我理解他的意思。
3. 最近劳动力缺乏的情况很(严肃，严重)，我们得想个办法  
才行。
4. 我只想逛一逛卖字画、古董的铺子，不想去(其他，别的)  
地方。
5. 整理古代经典是一个很(重视，重要)的工作。
6. 这道菜真好吃，给我(再，又，重新)来一个。
7. 这家百货商场的售货员(对于，有关)自己卖的商品并不了  
解，真是糟糕。
8. 他(精通，学会)八国语言，是个有名的学者。
9. 他的学术著作(受到，接受)各国学者的重视，许多大学请  
他去访问。
10. 我们不讲究座位的安排，大家(乱，随便)坐！

**IV. Complete the following dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你不是不喜欢简体字吗？怎么最近用起简体字来了?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。(受到)

2. A: 我们一起去看话剧吧? 有没有兴趣?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (对于)

3. A: 你为什么选择这本教材呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (可以说是)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. The movie enterprise in Hong Kong is flourishing. In recent years, its movies have received international attention. However, people have different opinions regarding the quality of these movies. Some think that they are ridiculous (use 可笑) and too similar to American movies. Some think that they present (use 表现) modern Chinese people's thoughts and are worth studying.
2. This city is the nation's publishing center. You can find all kinds of books and research materials here, from ancient classics to forbidden books, from novels to serious academic works. If you cannot find the books you want, you can ask for help from experienced clerks in the bookstores.
3. He is an expert (use 精通) in Chinese calligraphy and paintings. He has restored (use 整理) quite a few ancient paintings. It can be said that he is very experienced in this field (use 方面).

#### VI. Composition

Although many old books used simplified characters even before the literary reforms of the 1950s, one of the problems at that time was that the system for simplified characters was not unified, and that one had to know not only the standard traditional characters, but also different sets of simplified or alternate traditional variations. The literary reforms helped by unifying the writing system; however, some argue that they also make old books inaccessible to people who only recognize simplified characters and that the old problem of illiteracy was not so much one of character difficulty as much as availability of education. In your own Chinese studies, have you chosen to study traditional characters, simplified characters, or both? What are your reasons for your choice?

## 第三十一课 爱人、先生、太太

自从二十世纪八十年代末期，中国大陆和台湾有了来往以后，海峡两岸语言上的不同就成了大家讨论的话题。但是我觉得在讨论这个问题的时候，大家过分强调两岸语言的不同，而忽略了它们只是在大同之中<sup>(1)</sup>有一点儿小异。

谈两岸语言问题的人大多是因为觉得两岸的不同

先生	xiān.sheng	n.	husband
末期	mòqī	n.	last phase; final phase
来往	láiwǎng	n.	communication; relations,
海峡	háixiá	n.	strait
海峡两岸	háixiá liǎng'àn	n.	(here) the two coasts of the Taiwan Strait; mainland China and Taiwan
讨论	tǎolùn	v.	discuss
忽略	hūlüè	v.	neglect
大同小异	dàtóng xiǎoyì	idm.	largely identical but with minor differences 他的看法跟我的大同小异。

相当有趣，很少是因为这个不同造成了相互的不了解。譬如在台湾和海外的中国人用“先生、太太”来表示“husband and wife”，1949年以后到改革开放以前，大陆人只说“爱人”。“爱人”可以是先生，也可以是太太。台湾人刚听见“爱人”，可能不太习惯，可是只要多听几次就能懂它的意思。大陆人听见“先生、太太”也毫无<sup>(2)</sup>问题，不会产生任何误会。其实，从男女平等的角度来看<sup>(3)</sup>，“爱人”这个词儿是很好的。为什么王小姐跟张先生结了婚就一定得变成张太太，而张先生不能变成王先生呢？另外还有些词儿也是

---

毫无	háo wú		not in the least 毫: in the least 无: (written) there is no
产生	chǎnshēng	v.	produce (for abstract nouns)
误会	wùhuì	n./v.	misunderstanding, misunderstand
结婚	jié//hūn	v.-o.	marry; get married 他跟女朋友下个月要结婚了。
变成	biànchéng	v.	become; turn into 变: change; become different 本来这是个医院，现在变成一个百货商场了。

这样，虽然不同，但是一听立刻就懂，像“计程车”就是“出租汽车”，“冷气”就是“空调”，“电脑”就是“电子计算机”等等。

台湾在 1949 年以后和大陆隔离了几十年，因此有些用语往往是过去的说法，“国语”这个词儿就是个很好的例子。现在大陆标准的说法是“普通话”。在“繁体字”和“简体字”、“注音符号”和“汉语拼音”

立刻	lìkè	<i>adv.</i>	immediately; at once; right away
计程车	jìchēngchē	<i>n.</i>	taxi
冷气	lěngqì	<i>n.</i>	air conditioner; air conditioning
电脑	diànnǎo	<i>n.</i>	computer
说法	shuō.fá	<i>n.</i>	wording; way of saying a thing
国语	guóyǔ	<i>n.</i>	the national language; (here) the National Language of China
例子	lì.zi	<i>n.</i>	example 你能不能举一个例子？
注音符号	zhùyīn fúhào	<i>n.</i>	the national phonetic alphabet (in use before the Chinese phonetic alphabet was implemented) 符号: sign; symbol; notation
汉语拼音	Hànyǔ pīnyīn	<i>n.</i>	the Chinese phonetic alphabet 拼音: phonetic transcription

这两方面<sup>(4)</sup>，台湾也都是保留了 1949 年以前的形式。

学中文的外国人经常接触到两岸和海外的中国人，也常看到各地的中文报纸，对各地的用语都应该有些了解。两岸用语的不同，对中国人来说相当有趣，但是对外国人来说，却造成了学习上的困难。不过，我相信，这些不同一定会随着两岸人民交往的增加而<sup>(5)</sup>渐渐减少的。

---

保留	bǎoliú	v.	retain; continue to have; keep
形式	xíngshì	n.	form
接触	jiēchù	v.	come into contact with
报纸	bàozhǐ	n.	newspaper
相信	xiāngxìn	v.	believe
交往	jiaowǎng	n./v.	contact; association, associate with 你不应该跟那些坏朋友交往。

## ★繁体字课文

自從二十世紀八十年代末期，中國大陸和臺灣有了來往以後，海峽兩岸語言上的不同就成了大家討論的話題。但是我覺得在討論這個問題的時候，大家過分強調兩岸語言的不同，而忽略了它們只是在大同之中<sup>(1)</sup>有一點兒小異。

談兩岸語言問題的人大多是因為覺得兩岸的不同相當有趣，很少是因為這個不同造成了相互的不了解。譬如在臺灣和海外的中國人用“先生、太太”來表示“husband and wife”，1949年以後到改革開放以前，大陸人只說“愛人”。“愛人”可以是先生，也可以是太太。臺灣人剛聽見“愛人”，可能不太習慣，可是只要多聽幾次就能懂它的意思。大陸人聽見“先生、太太”也毫無<sup>(2)</sup>問題，不會產生任何誤會。其實，從男女平等的角度來看<sup>(3)</sup>，“愛人”這個詞兒是很好的。為什麼王小姐跟張先生結了婚就一定得變成張太太，而張先生不能變成王先生呢？另外還有些詞兒也是這樣，雖然不同，但是一聽立刻就懂，像“計程車”就是“出租汽車”，“冷氣”就是“空調”，“電腦”就是“電子計算機”等等。

臺灣在1949年以後和大陸隔離了幾十年，因此有些用語往往是過去的說法，“國語”這個詞兒就是個很好的例子。現在大陸標準的說法是“普通話”。在“繁體字”和“簡體字”、“注音符號”和“漢語拼音”這兩方面<sup>(4)</sup>，臺灣也都是保留了1949年以前的形式。

學中文的外國人經常接觸到兩岸和海外的中國人，也常看到各地的中文報紙，對各地的用語都應該

有些了解。兩岸用語的不同，對中國人來說相當有趣，但是對外國人來說，卻造成了學習上的困難。不過，我相信，這些不同一定會隨著兩岸人民交往的增加而(5)漸漸減少的。

## 6~ 语法点

(1) 它们只是在大同之中有一点儿小异。

In the midst of “great similarities,” they only have “small differences”.

在…之中 is the same as 在…中. See Lesson 28, Note (5).

1. 在我看过的电影之中，这是最严肃的一部。

Of all the movies I have watched, this is the most serious.

2. 琉璃厂的街道在北京的老街道之中是最有特色的。

Among all the old streets in Beijing, the streets in *Liulichang* are the most unique.

(2) 大陆人听见“先生、太太”也毫无问题，不会产生任何误会。

Mainlanders have absolutely no problem understanding “*xiansheng*” and “*taitai*.” These words do not create any misunderstanding.

毫 “in the least, at all,” is used together with 不 or 无 to indicate strong negation. 毫不, meaning “not the least bit,” “without the slightest,” or “not at all,” is only used adverbially to modify a polysyllabic phrase. 毫无 means “have not the least” or “there is not a bit of” when used as a verb. Its object is a disyllabic word or phrase.

1. 我对这类事情毫无经验。

I have no experience whatsoever with this kind of thing.

2. 他毫不客气地叫我们出去。

He quite rudely told us to get out.

(3) 从男女平等的角度来看，“爱人”这个词儿是很好的。

As far as equality between the sexes is concerned, the word “*airen*” is very good.

When used with a noun or nominal phrase, 从…来看 often occurs at the beginning of a sentence to indicate the basis of a judgment.

1. 从这些书目来看，这儿的出版事业是很发达的。

Judging from these bibliographies, the publishing industry here is very developed.

2. 从北京的文化活动来看，北京人对西方艺术有很大的兴趣。

Judging from Beijing's cultural activities, Beijing residents are very interested in Western art.

(4) 在这两方面，台湾也都是保留了 1949 年以前的形式。

In these two aspects, Taiwan has retained its pre-1949 formalities.

在…方面 means “in the aspect of....”

1. 在语言方面，海峡两岸没有什么大不同，但是政治制度的差别很大。

In regard to language, there is no big difference between the two coasts of the Taiwan Strait, but there is a big difference in their political systems.

2. 在北京住了两个星期，我在各方面都已经习惯了。

After living in Beijing for two weeks, I have already gotten accustomed to every aspect (of Beijing life).

(5) 我相信，这些不同一定会随着两岸人民交往的增加而渐渐减少的。

I believe that these differences will gradually decrease along with the increased interaction between the two coasts.

In Lesson 28, Note (8), 随着… is used before the subject as an adverbial phrase. In this context, 随着 follows the subject and is used in conjunction with 而. What follows 而 is the main verb denoting the change in tandem with what follows 随着.

1. 语言随着社会的发展而发展。

Language develops with the development of society.

2. 普通话随着广播和电视的发展而很快地深入中国各地。

Putonghua is penetrating every region of China rapidly along with the development of radio broadcast and television.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 海峡两岸的不同表现在哪些方面?
2. 台湾和大陆在哪些方面大同小异?
3. 美国东岸和西岸在哪些方面是不同的? 在哪些方面大同小异?
4. 除了课文中提到的词儿以外, 还有什么词儿在大陆和台湾有不同的说法?
5. 为什么有人喜欢研究两岸语言的不同? (因此)
6. 两岸文字的不同, 造成了什么问题?  
(对中国人来说, 对外国学生来说)
7. 你认为美国社会过分强调什么? 中国社会过分强调什么?
8. 你用繁体字还是简体字? 是怎么决定的?
9. 在你看来, 两岸的不同会不会渐渐减少? 请你举几个例子。  
(随着…而…, 譬如)
10. 在你的国家, 你经常接触到中国人吗? 你接触到的中国人都是从哪儿来的?

### II. Rewrite each sentence with the words in parentheses.

1. 对于外交工作, 他一点儿经验都没有。 (毫无…)
2. 北京的出版事业比中国其他城市都发达得多。 (在…之中)
3. 在语言上, 两岸的不同其实是大同小异。 (从…的角度来看)
4. 美国大学生的兴趣和中国大学生的差不多。 (大同小异)
5. 他真奇怪, 居然对自己的成绩一点儿都不关心。 (毫不)
6. 除了“出租汽车”和“计程车”以外, 还有许多东西两岸的说法不同。 (另外)

### III. Identify and correct the error in each sentence.

1. 大陆在五十年代 变繁体字成简体字。  
①                   ②
2. 这十五瓶矿泉水, 你拿五瓶, 别的十瓶 留在我这儿。  
①                   ②                   ③                   ④

3. 由于他毫无理解我的想法，我们之间 产生了很大的误会。

①      ②      ③      ④

4. 要是你有时间，应该往往逛逛北京的书店。

①      ②      ③

5. 要是你们讨论更多这个问题，肯定会 找到解决的办法。

①      ②      ③      ④

**IV. Insert the word in the parentheses into the correct position in each sentence.**

1. 这个人①不能帮我们的忙②， 我们得③找个了解这个问题的人④。 (另外)

2. 清末民初的许多学者①都到琉璃厂②找研究材料， ③琉璃厂书店的职员④也都精通文学、历史的书目。 (而)

3. 我们最近①出版的书②是比较严肃的学术著作③和语言教材④。 (大多)

4. 用简体字①重新出版的古代经典②多， 不会繁体字并不是③看不懂古书的④主要原因。 (相当)

5. 中美①双方都②应该学着从对方③的角度看事情， 所以文化上的④交流是非常有意义的。 (相互)

6. 用一个高考①决定一个学生②进哪个大学和以后四年③的专业， 其实是不太公平的④。 (来)

**V. Complete the dialogue using the expression(s) provided.**

1. A: 五十年代中美之间几乎完全没有来往， 是什么时候又开始接触的？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (自从)

2. A: 中国跟日本 (Japan) 很像， 对不对？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (其实，在…方面， 差异)

3. A: 对不起， 我对中美政治这个话题完全没兴趣。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (既然， 另外)

4. A: 什么样的人才是一个好的图书馆员？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (另外…还…)

5. A: 美国公司把工厂设在中国，是一件好事吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。(固然，从…的角度来看)
6. A: 两国之间的冲突和误会会渐渐减少吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。(相互，随着…而…)

#### VI. Translate into Chinese.

1. Although everyone thinks that the language differences between the two sides of the strait lie only in differences of terminology (use 用语), I don't think we should overlook the fact that after so many years of separation such differences in language are produced mainly by differences in life styles and social systems.
2. From the perspective of academic research, there is simply not enough usable material in our library. As scholars' needs increase, we have to raise the standard in terms of booklists and research material. In addition, we need to increase our interaction with other libraries.
3. From the time he started to come into contact with Chinese calligraphy and paintings, he gradually changed from a young man with no interest in ancient culture to a business owner (boss) in the antique market.

#### VII. Composition

In his opening paragraph, the author states his belief that the differences in language between Taiwan and the mainland are exaggerated, and that what small differences do exist can be easily reconciled. Do you believe that linguistic differences comprise the bulk of the conflict between them?

## 第三十二课 离婚

甲：电视上的新闻报道说中国离婚的人越来越多了。

这是不是表示中国人的道德水平正在下降呢？

乙：离婚人数的增加的确造成了一些社会问题。但是与其说这是道德水平的下降，不如说<sup>(1)</sup>是妇女地位的提高。

甲：离婚和妇女地位的提高有什么关系呢？

乙：以前女人在经济上完全依靠男人。如果离了婚，

离婚	lí/hūn	v.-o.	divorce
甲	jiǎ	n.	the first of the ten Heavenly Stems; used as a pronoun here meaning “the first person”
报道	bàodào	n./v.	report, broadcast
下降	xiàjàng	v.	descend; drop
乙	yǐ	n.	the second of ten Heavenly Stems; the second person
人数	rénshù	n.	the number of people
的确	díquè	adv.	indeed; really
与其说 A,	yǔqí shuō...,	conj.	A is not so much...as B
不如说 B	bùrú shuō...		
妇女	fùnǚ	n.	women (as a collective noun)
依靠	yīkào	v.	depend on

她们就失去了生活的保障；所以即使<sup>(2)</sup>没有爱情，婚姻还是得维持下去<sup>(3)</sup>。现在可不是这样了。有的家庭里，妻子的收入比丈夫还高。要是夫妻之间没有爱情，他们不必再忍受下去。再说<sup>(4)</sup>，现在男女的交往越来越公开，越来越平等，发生婚外关系的可能也就大大地增加了。因此，在我看来，离婚人

---

失去	shīqù	v.	lose
保障	bǎozhàng	n./v.	safety net, guarantee; safeguard
即使	jíshǐ	conj.	even though; even if
爱情	àiqíng	n.	romantic love
婚姻	hūnyīn	n.	marriage
维持	wéichí	v.	sustain; keep; maintain
妻子	qī.zi	n.	wife
收入	shōurù	n.	income
夫妻	fūqī	n.	married couple
忍受	rěnshòu	v.	endure; bear
再说	zàishuō	adv.	moreover
公开	gōngkāi	adj.	public; open (places, information, etc.)
发生	fāshēng	v.	occur; take place happen; take place (The object of <b>发生</b> is most likely something undesirable.) 发生了什么事? 他跟同屋昨天又发生了冲突。
婚外关系	hūnwài guān.xì	n.	extra-marital affair

数的增多正<sup>(5)</sup>说明中国妇女有了更多的婚姻自由。

甲：我很同意你的看法。离婚是个法律和经济的问题，而不是道德问题。但是离婚的人太多，还是会<sup>造成社会问题，对不对？</sup>

乙：没错儿。离婚人数的增加造成很多单亲家庭，而在单亲家庭长大的孩子产生问题的可能也比较大。

甲：其实，离婚的时候，孩子所<sup>(6)</sup>受到的伤害往往比夫妻受到的伤害更大。

乙：是啊！有些夫妇要不是<sup>(7)</sup>为了孩子，早就<sup>(8)</sup>离婚了。孩子小的时候他们勉强生活在一起；孩子长大了，不必依靠父母了，他们的婚姻也就不必再维持下去了。

增多	zēngduō	v.	grow in number or quantity; pile up; increase
正	zhèng	adv.	exactly; precisely 正是/正说明/正体现
法律	fǎlǜ	n.	law
单亲家庭	dānqīn jiātíng	n.	single-parent family
伤害	shāngài	v.	injure; harm (in an abstract sense)
夫妇	fūfù	n.	married couple; (lit.) husband and wife
勉强	miǎnqiǎng	adv.	reluctantly; grudgingly

## ★ 繁体字课文

- 甲：電視上的新聞報導說中國離婚的人越來越多了。這是不是表示中國人的道德水平正在下降呢？
- 乙：離婚人數的增加的確造成了一些社會問題。但是與其說這是道德水平的下降，不如說<sup>(1)</sup>是婦女地位的提高。
- 甲：離婚和婦女地位的提高有什麼關係呢？
- 乙：以前女人在經濟上完全依靠男人。如果離了婚，她們就失去了生活的保障；所以即使<sup>(2)</sup>沒有愛情，婚姻還是得維持下去<sup>(3)</sup>。現在可不是這樣了。有的家庭裏，妻子的收入比丈夫還高。要是夫妻之間沒有愛情，他們不必再忍受下去。再說<sup>(4)</sup>，現在男女的交往越來越公開，越來越平等，發生婚外關係的可能也就大大地增加了。因此，在我看來，離婚人數的增多正<sup>(5)</sup>說明中國婦女有了更多的婚姻自由。
- 甲：我很同意你的看法。離婚是個法律和經濟的問題，而不是道德問題。但是離婚的人太多，還是會造成社會問題，對不對？
- 乙：沒錯兒。離婚人數的增加造成很多單親家庭，而在單親家庭長大的孩子產生問題的可能也比較大。
- 甲：其實，離婚的時候，孩子所<sup>(6)</sup>受到的傷害往往比夫妻受到的傷害更大。
- 乙：是啊！有些夫婦要不是<sup>(7)</sup>為了孩子，早就<sup>(8)</sup>離婚了。孩子小的時候他們勉強生活在一起；孩子長大了，不必依靠父母了，他們的婚姻也就不必再維持下去了。

## 语法点

(1) 与其说这是道德水平的下降，不如说是妇女地位的提高。

I prefer to call this the elevation of women's status, rather than call it the decline of moral values.

The construction 与其说 A, 不如说 B indicates that the speaker thinks that what is introduced by 不如说 tallies more with the facts than that which follows 与其说。

1. 与其说他是个聪明的学生，不如说他是个用功的学生。

Instead of saying that he is a smart student, it is better to say that he is a hard-working student.

2. 与其说离婚可以解决问题，不如说离婚可以减少伤害。

Instead of saying that a divorce could solve problems, it is better to say that it could reduce the harm done.

与其 A, 不如 B is different from 与其说 A, 不如说 B. 与其 occurs at the beginning of the first clause to indicate one's rejection or abandonment of something after balancing the pros and cons. 宁可 or 不如 is often used in the second clause to indicate one's preference.

1. 我认为与其强调记忆，不如多做一些分析的训练。

I think that instead of emphasizing memorization, we should do more analytical exercises.

2. 我要靠自己的本事找工作。与其走后门儿、靠关系，我宁可留在家里。

I want to rely on my own abilities in looking for a job. I would rather stay home than use the back door or rely on connections.

(2) 即使没有爱情，婚姻还是得维持下去。

Even without love, they still have to maintain their marriage.

即使, meaning “even if” or “even though,” indicates a supposition or concession and is often used in conjunction with 也 or 还. It may occur after the subject.

1. 你的话没有什么道理。即使有一点儿道理，也是很难做到的。

What you said doesn't make much sense. Even if it is partly correct, it is hard to accomplish.

2. 即使会看繁体字，如果没有文言文的训练，还是看不懂古书。

Even though you can read traditional characters, if you don't have training in classical Chinese, you still won't be able to understand the classics.

(3) 即使没有爱情，婚姻还是得维持下去。

下去 is often used after a verb as a directional complement, as in 跳下去 "jump down" and 放下去 "put down." It can also indicate the continuation of an action. Note that in this sense, the verb is never followed by an object, but it is possible to have an object in front of the verb.

1. 就这么决定了，不必再讨论下去了。

Then it is decided. There is no need for further discussion.

2. 这个题目很有意义，值得讨论下去。

This topic is quite meaningful. It is worth further discussion.

3. 我很希望两国之间很好的关系能维持下去。

I really hope that we can continue to maintain a positive relationship between the two countries.

(4) …再说，现在男女的交往越来越公开，越来越平等。

...Moreover, interactions between men and women have become more open and more equal.

再说, meaning "what's more" or "moreover," is used to connect a second clause which introduces an additional reason. It may come in a separate sentence. See L. 18, Note (1) for a different usage of this phrase.

1. 他们之间已经完全没有爱情。再说孩子也大了，实在不必再忍受下去，所以就离婚了。

There was no longer any love between them. Moreover, their children were older. There was no need to put up with it any longer, so they divorced.

2. 我喜欢住在大城市里，因为工作的机会比较多，再说，文化活动也多些。

I like living in a big city, because there are more job opportunities; what's more, there are also more cultural activities.

(5) 离婚人数的增多正说明中国妇女有了更多的婚姻自由。

It is the increase in the number of divorced people which demonstrates that Chinese women have greater marital freedom.

In this context, 正 is used as an adverb meaning “[that] and nothing else.”

1. 你所说的正是我想谈的。

What you are saying is exactly what I wanted to discuss.

2. 在我看来，言论自由的放宽正是促进社会进步的主要原因。

In my opinion, the relaxation of restrictions on freedom of speech is a major cause of social improvement.

3. 冲突的发生正表现了两国在相互了解上的努力。

It is the eruption of conflict which shows how hard the two countries are working on mutual understanding.

(6) 离婚的时候，孩子所受到的伤害往往比夫妻受到的伤害更大。

When (a couple is) getting a divorce, the harm that the children suffer is often more serious than that which the couple does.

The function of 所 is similar to “that,” “which,” or “what” in a relative clause in English. When one wants to say “the book which I read,” use 我看的书 or 我所看的书; or “the opinion which they put forward,” use 他们提的意见 or 他们所提的意见. 所 comes from classical Chinese and adds a literary tone to the sentence.

1. 我所买的礼物都是在中国制造的。

The gifts which I bought were all made in China.

2. 我对他所提出来的题目很有兴趣。

I am very interested in the topic that he proposed.

(7) 有些夫妇要不是为了孩子，早就离婚了。

There are some couples who, if it were not for their children, would have divorced a long time ago.

要不是 is used in the first clause to indicate a supposition; what is mentioned in the second clause is the result or outcome which would have been bound to happen, but actually did not.

1. 要不是你告诉我这件事，我还完全不知道呢！

If you hadn't told me this, I wouldn't have known at all!

2. 他要不是走了后门儿，哪儿找得到这么好的工作！

If he hadn't used the back door, how would he have found such a good job?

(8) 有些夫妇要不是为了孩子，早就离婚了。

早就 means “long ago.” It can modify negative phrases. 早就 is often used for emphasis. 就 can be omitted without changing the meaning.

1. 我早就跟你说过，勉强生活在一起对夫妇两个人都是一种伤害。

From the start, I told you that it would hurt both of you as a couple if you lived together reluctantly.

2. 这个婚姻我早就不想维持下去了。

Early on I stopped wanting to maintain this marriage.

3. 她早结婚了，你不知道吗？

She got married early on. Didn't you know that?

## ✍ 练习

### I. Make a sentence using the underlined expression.

1. 以前女人在经济上完全依靠男人。

2. 现在男女的交往越来越公开，发生婚外关系的可能也就大大地增加了。

3. 要是夫妻之间没有爱情，他们不必再忍受下去。

4. 离婚的时候，孩子所受到的伤害往往比夫妻受到的伤害更大。

5. 与其说这是道德水平的下降，不如说是妇女地位的提高。

II. Fill in each blank with only one character.

离婚人数的增\_\_\_\_，不一定表示妇女的地位提\_\_\_\_了。在现代社会\_\_\_\_，还有许多情形可以说\_\_\_\_妇女并没有受\_\_\_\_应该有的尊重。比方说，离婚后的妇女，既要照顾孩子，又要维\_\_\_\_生活，在事业\_\_\_\_的发展可能就没有男人那么顺利。\_\_\_\_说，要是他的孩子在学习\_\_\_\_发生了问题，大家会认为错的不是孩子的父亲，\_\_\_\_是孩子的母亲。即\_\_\_\_现在的社会强调男女\_\_\_\_等，我想上面的想法\_\_\_\_是很常见的。\_\_\_\_此，我认为与\_\_\_\_用离婚的人数来看妇女的地位，还不\_\_\_\_用离婚后妇女的生活来讨论这个问题。

III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 能到美国留学的中国学生肯定都很聪明(cōng.míng, smart)，他们在学校的表现才能那么好。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (与其说…，不如说…)

2. A: 你既然不想跟他交往，为什么不找个借口拒绝他呢？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (再说)

3. A: 听说有一部法国电影不错，我们去看吧。

B: 我对法国电影实在不感兴趣，\_\_\_\_\_。  
(即使…，也…)

4. A: 我跟我先生结婚以后，每天都吵架，我真不知道该怎么办。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (v. 下去)

5. A: 虽然校园里到处都有“请勿随便停放自行车”的标语，但是自行车随便停放的现象还是存在。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (正说明了…)

6. A: 我们的学习已经够忙的了，为什么还要有那么多的考试？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (是…，而不是…)

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_。 (要不是…)

B: 别客气，要是你的电脑再出现问题，就再来找我帮忙。

8. A: 你来北京一个多月了，去过琉璃厂、颐和园没有?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (像…之类，早就…了)

#### IV. Translate into Chinese.

1. If you have marriage problems, you will surely lose your safety net (i.e. life guarantee) immediately. Therefore, it is better for you to find a job now rather than have total economic dependence on your husband.
2. The standard of living is on the rise. If the situation remains like this, it is possible that our family income won't be enough to live on. Even though your company has said that they would raise your income a little, I bet it won't be much.
3. Marriage itself is a learning process. Couples learn how to respect and understand each other. However, couples may feel hurt due to the conflicts and fights in their marriage.

#### V. Composition

Many people see a rise in the accessibility of legal divorce as a move toward gender equality. Do you think that a rise in divorce rates alone expresses greater freedom in marriage, or are there other factors involved? In particular, can you think of any changes in morals or interpersonal skills which might affect divorce rates as much or more than legal gender equality?

## 第三十三课 从“发福”到“减肥”

从前，两个中国人要是一段时间没见面，再见面的时候常说对方“发福了”，意思是“你胖了点儿<sup>(1)</sup>，近来一定过得不错，真有福气。”说“发福了”是恭维别人的客套话。现在可不行了。打开北京的报纸和电视，减肥的广告到处都是，在街上胖子也一天比一天多，尤其是小孩儿；不到十岁却有五、六十公斤重<sup>(2)</sup>的孩子到处可以看到。

---

发福	fā//fú	v.-o.	gain weight
减肥	jiǎn//fēi	v.-o.	go on a diet to lose weight
见面	jiàn//miàn	v.-o.	meet (somebody) A 跟 B 见面
胖	pàng	v./adj.	become fat; fat
近来	jìn lái	adv.	recently
福气	fú.qi	n.	good fortune
恭维	gōng.wei	v.	compliment
客套话	kètāohuà	n.	polite expressions; civilities; social decorum
胖子	pàng.zi	n.	fat person; plump person
小孩儿	xiǎoháir	n.	kid; child
岁	suì	n.	(age unit) ...years old
公斤	gōngjīn	n.	kilogram

二十世纪五、六十年代，许多中国人都有营养不良的问题，可是现在肥胖成了城市居民的烦恼，大家都想方设法要减肥。有的不吃肉，有的不吃饭，有的练气功，有的去爬山；可是好像无论做什么都没有用，胖子还是一天比一天多。所以，现在中国人见了面不但不说“发福了”，反而<sup>(3)</sup>说“最近你好像瘦了点儿，看起来健康多了！”

中国的小胖子越来越多，可能是因为父母过分

---

营养	yíngyǎng	n.	nutrition
不良	bùláng	adj.	mal-; bad (The opposite form is 良好) 沟通不良/不良习惯
肥胖	fēipàng	n./adj.	obesity; obese
居民	jūmín	n.	resident
烦恼	fānnǎo	n./adj.	worries; vexation, be vexed; be worried
想方设法	xiǎngfāng shèfǎ	v.	conjure up all kinds of methods 方法: 办法; method
气功	qìgōng	n.	<i>qigong</i> , a system of deep breathing exercises
练气功	liàn qìgōng	v.-o.	practice <i>qigong</i>
爬山	pá//shān	v.-o.	climb mountains
反而	fǎn'ér	conj.	on the contrary; instead
瘦	shòu	v./adj.	thin

爱护他们的独生子女的缘故<sup>(4)</sup>，总给他们吃最好的；但是美国的一些吃的东西也得负点儿责任。汉堡包、炸薯条、巧克力糖、冰激凌、可口可乐，哪一个<sup>(5)</sup>不是又甜又腻又有害健康的食物？可是这些都是小孩子最爱吃的东西。美国商人，尤其是卖快餐的商人，在赚

---

爱护	ài hù	v.	cherish; treasure
独生子女	dúshēng zǐnǚ	n.	“single-born-son-daughter”; only child 子女: children; sons and daughters
缘故	yuángrù	n.	cause; reason
负	fù	v.	carry on the back; bear
负责任	fù zérèn	v.-o.	be responsible for; be accountable for 对孩子的教育负责任 负起家庭的责任
汉堡包	hànburgāo	n.	hamburger
炸薯条	zhá shǔtiáo	n.	French fries
巧克力	qiǎokělì	n.	chocolate
糖	táng	n.	candy; sugar
冰激凌	bīngjīlíng	n.	ice cream
可口可乐	Kěkǒukělè	n.	Coca Cola
腻	nì	adj.	satiating; greasy
有害	yǒuhài	v./adj.	harm, harmful 有害健康/对健康有害
食物	shíwù	n.	food
爱	ài	v.	love to 爱看书/不爱运动
商人	shāngrén	n.	businessman; merchant

---

中国人钱的时候，也应该为中国人的健康想想。

最近中国因为改革开放，不但大家的生活水平提高了，人和人之间的关系，以及<sup>(6)</sup>人们对许多事情的看法也和过去不同了。因此，我相信经济的改变是所有改变的基础。

---

以及	yǐjí	<i>conj.</i>	and (used in writing)
基础	jīchǔ	<i>n.</i>	foundation

## ★繁体字课文

從前，兩個中國人要是一段時間沒見面，再見面的時候常說對方“發福了”，意思是“你胖了點兒<sup>(1)</sup>，近來一定過得不錯，真有福氣。”說“發福了”是恭維別人的客套話。現在可不行了。打開北京的報紙和電視，減肥的廣告到處都是，在街上胖子也一天比一天多，尤其是小孩兒；不到十歲卻有五、六十公斤重<sup>(2)</sup>的孩子到處可以看到。

二十世紀五、六十年代，許多中國人都有營養不良的問題，可是現在肥胖成了城市居民的煩惱，大家都想方設法要減肥。有的不吃肉，有的不吃飯，有的練氣功，有的去爬山；可是好像無論做什麼都沒有用，胖子還是一天比一天多。所以，現在中國人見了面不但不說“發福了”，反而<sup>(3)</sup>說“最近你好像瘦了點兒，看起來健康多了！”

中國的小胖子越來越多，可能是因為父母過分愛護他們的獨生子女的緣故<sup>(4)</sup>，總給他們吃最好的；但是美國的一些吃的東西也許也得負點兒責任。漢堡包、炸薯條、巧克力糖、冰激凌、可口可樂，哪一個<sup>(5)</sup>不是又甜又膩又有害健康的食品？可是這些都是小孩子們最愛吃的東西。美國商人，尤其是賣快餐的商人，在賺中國人錢的時候，也應該為中國人的健康想想。

最近中國因為改革開放，不但大家的生活水平提高了，人和人之間的關係，以及<sup>(6)</sup>人們對許多事情的看法也和過去不同了。因此，我相信經濟的改變是所有改變的基礎。

## 语法点

(1) 你胖了点儿。

You gained a little weight.

*Adj. 点儿* is an implied comparison meaning “a little bit *adj.* (compared to the past or to the situation that should be.)”

1. 才两个月没见，他又长高了点儿。

It has only been two months since I've seen him, and he has grown taller yet again.

2. 这次的考试长了点儿。

This test was a bit long.

3. 这间屋子的装饰华丽了点儿。

The decor in this house is a little gaudy.

(2) 不到十岁却有五、六十公斤重的孩子到处可以看到。

There are kids everywhere who weigh 50 or 60 kilograms and are not even 10 years old.

The question form for asking about degree is described in L. 4, Note (2). To measure a particular height, length, weigh etc., use 有多 (么) + *adj.* when making an inquiry, and 有 + No. + measure word + *adj.* when making a reply. Sometimes the adjective in the reply is dropped.

1. 你有多 (么) 重？我有六十公斤重。

How heavy are you? I am sixty kilograms.

2. 他有多 (么) 高？他有一百七十公分高。

How tall is he? He is 170 cm. tall.

3. 纽约离华盛顿有多 (么) 远？有两百三十多英里。

How far is it from New York to Washington, D. C.? It is more than 230 miles.

(3) 现在中国人见了面，不但不说“发福了”，反而说“最近你好像瘦了点儿，看起来健康多了。”

Nowadays, when Chinese people meet, not only do they not greet each other saying “You've gained some weight,” but, on the contrary, they say, “You've recently become thinner and you look much healthier!”

反而 indicates that a situation has brought about a result opposite to expectations or a normal situation; the unrealized result is often introduced by 不但不 or 不但没有.

1. 他昨天来看我，不但没有解决我的问题，反而带来了新的麻烦。

He came to see me yesterday. He not only didn't solve my problem, on the contrary, he brought some new troubles.

2. 我天天运动，可是我的体重不但不减少，反而增加了。

I exercise everyday, but not only have I not lost weight, on the contrary, I've gained some weight.

- (4) 中国的小胖子越来越多，可能是因为父母过分爱护他们的独生子女的缘故。

China's overweight children are growing in numbers, probably because their parents overly care for their only children.

因为…的缘故 is the same as 因为…, meaning “because....” It can be used either in the first or second clause of a sentence. When used in the second clause, it is always preceded by 是. When making a statement, use 因为…的缘故; when answering a why question, use “…, 是因为…”

1. 因为要减肥的缘故，他吃得很少。

他吃得很少，是因为要减肥的缘故。

He eats very little because he is on a diet.

2. 因为不运动的缘故，他的身体越来越差。

他的身体越来越差，是因为不运动的缘故

His health is getting poorer because he doesn't exercise.

- (5) 哪一个不是又甜又腻的食物?

Which food isn't both sweet and greasy?

A question using a question word can be rhetorical sentence. When the verb is negative, the meaning is positive, and vice versa.

1. 谁有空做这些没有用的事?

Who has time to do such useless things?

2. 哪一个社会没有社会问题?

Which society has no social problems?

3. 这件事，我什么时候告诉他了？

When did I tell him this?

4. 他怎么不知道？你不用去跟他说。

How could he not know? You don't need to go tell him.

(6) 人和人之间的关系，以及人们对许多事情的看法都和过去不同了。

Human relationships and the way people look at things are different from those in the past.

以及 is the same as 和 or 跟 in that it can connect coordinate subjects or objects, but not clauses. It is mostly used in written language; when spoken, a pause may precede it.

1. 报纸上、杂志上，以及电视上，都能看到减肥的广告。

You can see weight-loss advertisements in newspapers, in magazines, and on TV.

2. 我已经参观过长城、故宫，以及颐和园。

I have already visited the Great Wall, the Palace Museum, and the Summer Palace.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 为什么现代人总是要减肥? (因为...的缘故)
2. 现代人减肥真的是为了健康吗?
3. 肥胖是生活水平提高所造成的吗
4. 要减肥有些什么好方法? (...，以及...)
5. 你觉得这儿的百货商场里的商品怎么样? (adj. 了点儿)
6. 人口多对一个国家是不是一件好事情? (不但不...反而...)
7. 你的桌子有多宽? 有多长? (有...adj.)
8. 你在学校会为了什么问题而烦恼?
9. 你认为中国人的健康是美国商人的责任吗?
10. 上大学以后, 你对什么事的看法改变了?
11. 事业的基础是什么? 是不是家庭?

### II. Insert 都 into the appropriate position in each sentence.

1. 并不是所有的美国食品又甜又腻。
2. 无论跑步还是不吃饭起不了作用, 他还是瘦不下来。
3. 你好像吃什么不会胖, 真奇怪。
4. 到处有这样的冰激凌, 你怎么会买不到呢? 。

### III. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. 我们(对, 向)食品的看法不同, 他觉得南方菜好吃多了。
2. 他(向来, 近来)吃得一定比以前少, 要不然现在怎么这么瘦?
3. 因为是独生子女的(缘故, 借口), 很多小孩不懂得负责任的重要性。
4. 这几个城市的生活水平一年(比较, 比)一年高。

### IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 为什么政府这么重视教育?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。(A是B的基础)

2. A: 改革开放以后，中国人的哪些观念有了改变？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...， 以及...)

3. A: 他不是在中国住过吗？怎么连一句中文都不会说？

B: 因为 \_\_\_\_\_， \_\_\_\_\_. (不到...)

4. A: 你的饮食习惯跟过去不同了，到底是怎么回事？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (因为...的缘故)

5. A: 他最近那么忙，大概瘦了吧？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (不但不/没...反而...)

6. A: 他结婚后完全变了，我们的婚姻快维持不下去了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (哪一...? 负责任)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. He wakes up before 5 o'clock every day (不到...) to exercise in order to lose weight. In addition, he has changed his dietary habits, and does not eat sweet and greasy foods. As a result, he has lost 10 kilograms in less than one month. He is about 175 cm. (公分) tall and weights 65 kilograms. Obesity is no longer something he is worried about.
2. Tell me: which one of the “wholesome foods” in these weight-loss commercials helps you become thinner? They are just trying all kinds of methods to earn your money! Their food is ineffective; on the contrary, it is harmful to your body.
3. He and I did not see each other for a period of time because we were preparing for the college entrance examination. When we met again, I discovered that the relationship between us, as well as our viewpoints about many things, was different than the past. Communication problems (不良) occurred (产生) between us.

#### VI. Composition

You are the spokesman for the PRC branch of an American company dealing in foodstuffs. Recently, the local government has come to you with a complaint that your products are endangering the physical health of the Chinese people, and asks you to cut back on your advertising. Defend your right to advertise.

## 第三十四课 从“温饱”到“小康”

“温饱”就是“吃得饱、穿得暖”的意思；“小康”是一种在温饱以上<sup>(1)</sup>的生活水平；比“小康”更好的生活叫做“富裕”。

中国过去三十年来，人民生活的改变可以说是从“温饱”到“小康”的一个过程。在这个改变的过程中，最明显的是老百姓消费结构的改变。

在二十世纪七十年代，人们的花费主要是用在吃的东西上；但现在，对城市居民来说，食物上的花费

温饱	wēnbǎo	<i>adj.</i>	adequately fed and clothed 温: warm; 饱: full (from eating)
小康	xiǎokāng	<i>adj.</i>	(said of a family or society) comparatively well-off
饱	bǎo	<i>adj.</i>	full (from eating)
暖	nuǎn	<i>adj.</i>	warm
…以上	...yǐshàng	<i>postp.</i>	above (a given point or line)
富裕	fùyù	<i>adj.</i>	rich; wealthy; prosperous
明显	míngxiǎn	<i>adj.</i>	evident; obvious
消费	xiāofèi	<i>n.</i>	consumption
花费	huāfèi	<i>n./v.</i>	expenses, spend; cost

已经不再是生活费用当中最主要的部分了。人们对食物质量的要求也一天一天地提高。三十年前，只要吃饱就行，现在人人都讲究营养、味道和方便。在食物的消耗上，主食的分量减少，鱼、肉和蔬菜的分量增加。

三十年以前，一般的中国家庭都希望有“四大件儿”。所谓<sup>(2)</sup>四大件儿，就是自行车、缝纫机、手表和收音机。那个时候拥有这四件日用品被认为是生活

费用	fèi.yòng	n.	expenses; costs; fees
部分	bù.fen	n.	a portion; a part 分成五个部分
			有部分学生选择到中国去工作。
味道	wèi.dao	n.	taste; flavor
消耗	xiāohào	v.	consume; expend; exhaust
分量	fèn.liàng	n.	amount
蔬菜	shūcài	n.	vegetable
一般	yíbān	adj.	general; common
四大件儿	sìdàjiàn	n.	the four big things
所谓	suǒwèi	adj.	so-called
缝纫机	féngrèn jī	n.	sewing machine
手表	shǒubiǎo	n.	watch
收音机	shōuyīnjī	n.	radio
拥有	yōngyǒu	v.	own; possess
日用品	rìyòngpǐn	n.	daily necessities

达到一定水平的表现，而现在这四大件儿已经被电视、洗衣机、冰箱、音响等家用电器取代了。电话、空调、电脑和汽车也早已进入了许多家庭。

住房的紧张一直是城市居民最大的烦恼。最近几年，政府也采取了新的措施。商品房上市，房子有了买卖的可能，这确实是中国老百姓生活中的一大改变。

达到	dádào	v.	achieve (a goal) 达到要求/达到标准
冰箱	bīngxiāng	n.	refrigerator
音响	yīnxiǎng	n.	stereo
取代	qǔdài	v.	replace
早已	zǎoyǐ	adv.	早就已经; already v.-ed long ago 他早已大学毕业了。
住房	zhùfáng	n.	housing
紧张	jǐnzhāng	adj.	(said of a financial market) tight; tense; high demand
采取	cǎiqǔ	v.	adopt (something abstract)
措施	cuòshī	n.	(political, financial, etc.) measure; step
商品房	shāngpǐnfáng	n.	commercialized housing
上市	shàng//shì	v.-o.	(said of seasonal goods or new products) go on the market
买卖	mǎimài	v./n.	buy and sell, trade
确实	quèshí	adv.	really; indeed

从中国人民生活水平提高的历史过程来看，可以说二十世纪八十年代主要是解决温饱问题；到了九十年代，温饱问题基本上得到了解决，开始由<sup>(3)</sup>温饱过渡到小康。现在许多城市居民已经过上<sup>(4)</sup>富裕的生活了。

---

解决	jiějué	v.	solve
得到	dédào	v.	succeed in obtaining
由	yóu	prep.	from; from
过渡	guòdù	v./n.	transit, transition
过上	guò//.shàng	v.-c.	be able to have (a high standard of living)

## ★ 繁体字课文

“溫飽”就是“吃得飽、穿得暖”的意思；“小康”是一種在溫飽以上<sup>(1)</sup>的生活水平；比“小康”更好的生活叫做“富裕”。

中國過去三十年來，人民生活的改變可以說是從“溫飽”到“小康”的一個過程。在這個改變的過程中，最明顯的是老百姓消費結構的改變。

在二十世紀七十年代，人們的花費主要是用在吃的東西上；但現在，對城市居民來說，食物上的花費已經不再是生活費用當中最主要的部分了。人們對食物質量的要求也一天一天地提高。三十年前，只要吃飽就行，現在人人都講究營養、味道和方便。在食物的消耗上，主食的分量減少，魚、肉和蔬菜的分量增加。

三十年以前，一般的中國家庭都希望有“四大件兒”。所謂<sup>(2)</sup>四大件兒，就是自行車、縫紉機、手錶和收音機。那個時候擁有這四件日用品被認為是生活達到一定水平的表現，而現在這四大件兒已經被電視、洗衣機、冰箱、音響等家用電器取代了。電話、空調、電腦和汽車也早已進入了許多家庭。

住房的緊張一直是城市居民最大的煩惱。最近幾年，政府也採取了新的措施。商品房上市，房子有了買賣的可能，這確實是中國老百姓生活中的一大改變。

從中國人民生活水平提高的歷史過程來看，可以說二十世紀八十年代主要是解決溫飽問題；到了九十年代，溫飽問題基本上得到了解決，開始由<sup>(3)</sup>溫飽過渡到小康。現在許多城市居民已經過上<sup>(4)</sup>富裕的生活了。

## 语法点

(1) “小康”是一种在温饱以上的生活水平。

“Comparatively well-off” is a standard of living beyond being “adequately fed and clothed.”

以上 means “over,” “above (a certain level),” or “more than (a certain number).” When …以上 is used as a predicate, the verb 在 is often used before it.

1. 按照法律，二十一岁以上的人才能买酒。

According to the law, only people who are over 21 can buy liquor.

2. 一个外国学生必须学了两年以上的中文，才能参加这个考试。

A foreign student must have studied the Chinese language for over two years to be able to participate in this examination.

3. 我必须得到 B 以上的成绩才能申请这个奖学金。

I have to get a grade better than a B to apply for this scholarship.

4. 这个补习班的人数在两百以上。

There are more than 200 people in this cram school.

(2) 所谓四大件儿，就是自行车、缝纫机、手表和收音机。

The so-called “four big things” are the bicycle, sewing machine, watch and radio.

所谓, meaning “what is called,” is used to introduce a term which is then explained in the following phrase or clause. 所谓 means “so-called” when it is used to quote someone else and usually implies disagreement.

1. 所谓简体字，就是中国政府五十年代开始推行的简单化了的文字。

So-called “simplified characters” are the Chinese characters simplified and promoted by the Chinese government in the 50's.

2. 所谓爱人，可以是先生，也可以是太太。

What we call “airen” can be “husband,” and it can also be “wife.”

3. 离婚增加，单亲家庭增多，这就是你所谓的“进步”？

Divorces increasing, single-parent families multiplying; is this your so-called “progress?”

4. 所谓“发福”，其实并不是“越来越有福气”，而是越来越胖。

What we call "*fafu*" actually is not "becoming more and more fortunate," but is rather "becoming fatter and fatter."

- (3) 到了九十年代，开始由“温饱”过渡到“小康”。

Entering the 90's has brought the beginning of the transition from "adequately fed and clothed" to "comparatively well-off."

由 in this context is equivalent to 从, and indicated a starting point in time or space or the starting point of a change. It usually takes a noun or adjective as its object. See another usage of 由 in L. 25, Note (4).

1. 由农业社会进入工业社会，人民的生活会有很大的改变。

People's lives go through tremendous changes when an agricultural society becomes an industrial society.

2. 由互相冲突到互相尊重，这是一个很可喜的现象。

It was a gratifying phenomenon to go from mutual conflict to mutual respect.

- (4) 现在许多城市居民已经过上了富裕的生活了。

Nowadays many city residents are able to live a rich life.

When 上 is used as a directional complement, it means "up" or "upward," e.g. 跑上楼, 跳上桌子. Here it indicates the attainment of an objective.

1. 他去年夏天考上了大学。

He was admitted to a university by passing the entrance examination last summer.

2. 真没想到，他居然住上那么大的房子了。

Surprisingly, he is able to live in such a big house.

3. 我忙死了，还没吃上饭呢！

I am so terribly busy that I haven't eaten yet.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions with the expressions provided.

1. “温饱”、“小康”以及“富裕”这三个词儿各代表什么意思? (所谓, 过上)
2. 一般说来, 中国人的生活怎么样? 他们的生活花费跟从前的差异在哪里? (讲究, 由…过渡到…)
3. 所谓“小康”的生活水平, 在过去的中国社会和现在的社会中, 有什么不同? (一大改变)
4. 食物、日用品越来越贵, 对老百姓的生活会造成什么影响? (n. 的紧张)
5. 电脑的使用对现代人的生活习惯有很大的影响吗? (最明显的就是…)

### II. Choose the correct answer.

1. 现代人吃饭的时候, \_\_\_\_\_不讲究大鱼大肉了, 现在讲究吃健康、新鲜的蔬菜水果。  
①早已 ②一再 ③一天比一天 ④一直
2. \_\_\_\_\_你学中文的过程看来, 你只会死记硬背, 而不知道怎么变化。  
①向 ②从 ③对 ④自从
3. 只要有新的电脑产品\_\_\_\_\_, 他就一定会买来用用看。  
①上市 ②买 ③买卖 ④卖在商店里
4. 虽然现在人民的经济水平已经提高了, 可是住房的问题还没有\_\_\_\_\_解决。  
①受到 ②拿到 ③得到 ④发现
5. 要到北京工作, 你的中文得\_\_\_\_\_一定的水平才行。  
①达到 ②进步 ③找到 ④改变

### III. Answer the following questions using “…以上.”

1. 你每个月在食物上的花费是多少?

2. 在美国，一般来说，多大的人可以开车？
3. 从纽约坐飞机到北京要多长时间？
4. 每年到北京的游客人数有多少？

#### IV. Translate into Chinese.

1. In the past ten years, it can be said that Chinese people's lives have gradually changed from a state of "comparatively well-off" to a state of "richness." You can tell from the change in people's leisure activities that people's expectations about life are getting higher and higher. For example, in the past people seldom traveled far, but now traveling abroad is no longer a rare thing.
2. Generally speaking, companies do not provide housing anymore. Very often, commercialized housing is very expensive. Many married couples are not sure at all (use 把握) when they will be able to own their own housing. I think the government should adopt an effective procedure to solve the high-demand housing situation.
3. In the past, if one wanted to enjoy a good life (achieve a good standard of living), he had to own the so-called "four big things." Now these four big things have become history. People want to possess luxurious items such as computers, stereos, and even cars.

#### V. Composition

While living standards are higher than before, some social problems have become worse. It is said that when a society is highly commercialized, it is possible that the people's moral values are worse than before, and society is not as safe as before. Do you want to live in a society where the material life is only okay but society is safe, or do you want to live in a rich but unsafe society?

## 第三十五课 老年人的生活

甲：在中国流行着一句话，说美国是“儿童的天堂，中年人的战场，老年人的坟场。”这句话能不能大致反映这三种年龄的人在美国的生活？

乙：美国是“儿童的天堂，中年人的战场”，这句话大致是对的。美国的教育制度，一般来说，比较注重个人发展，孩子们也没有什么升学或考试的

老年人	lǎoniánrén	<i>n.</i>	the elderly; senior citizens
流行	liúxíng	<i>v.</i>	be prevalent; be popular
儿童	ér tóng	<i>n.</i>	children (儿童 is a general term for young children. For someone's child or children, use 孩子) 他有两个孩子。
天堂	tiāntáng	<i>n.</i>	heaven; paradise
战场	zhàncǎng	<i>n.</i>	battlefield; battleground
坟场	fénchǎng	<i>n.</i>	graveyard; cemetery
大致	dàzhì	<i>adv.</i>	roughly; more or less
年龄	níánlíng	<i>n.</i>	age
注重	zhùzhòng	<i>v.</i>	lay stress on; pay attention to
升学	shēng//xué	<i>v.-o.</i>	enter a higher level of school 升学的人数/升学的机会
或	huò	<i>conj.</i>	或者; or

压力。至于(1)中年人，在那个竞争激烈的社会里，必须尽最大的努力去工作，才能不被淘汰。可是我反对美国是“老年人的坟场”这个说法。

甲：听说美国的老年人都得住敬老院，孩子也不常去看他们。这样的生活不是和等死差不多吗？

乙：这倒不见得(2)。我的祖父母都住在敬老院里，而且他们是自愿去住敬老院的，他们对那儿的生活也相

压力	yālì	<i>n.</i>	pressure 造成压力/产生压力/减少压力
至于	zhìyú	<i>prep.</i>	as for; as to
激烈	jīliè	<i>adj.</i>	intense; sharp; fierce 这场乒乓球赛打得非常激烈。
必须	bìxū	<i>v.</i>	must
尽	jìn	<i>v.</i>	exert; exhaust 尽力/尽可能/尽父母的责任
淘汰	táotài	<i>v.</i>	eliminate through selection or competition; render obsolete; die out; fall into disuse 淘汰不合适的职员
反对	fǎnduì	<i>v.</i>	oppose; be opposed to; object to
敬老院	jìnglǎoyuàn	<i>n.</i>	nursing home
不见得	bújiàn.dé	<i>v./adv.</i>	not necessarily; not likely
自愿	zìyuàn	<i>adv.</i>	of one's own free will

当满意。他们觉得和子女住在一起，不但失去了独立和尊严，还加重了子女的负担，对孩子是不公平的。

甲：我的祖父母就和我们住在一起。中国人把这样的生活叫做“三代同堂”，老人一般都觉得这是比较理想的晚年生活。我父母也不愿意让祖父母住进敬老院，他们觉得孝顺的孩子应该照顾父母。

满意	mǎnyì	<i>adj.</i>	satisfied; pleased 我们希望能让顾客满意。
独立	dúlì	<i>n./adj.</i>	independence, independent
尊严	zūnyán	<i>n.</i>	dignity; honor
加重	jiāzhòng	<i>v.</i>	make or become heavier; increase the weight of
负担	fùdān	<i>n.</i>	burden; load
三代同堂	sāndài tóngtáng	<i>idiom</i>	three generations living under the same roof (part of the “big family” system in old China)
晚年	wǎnnián	<i>n.</i>	one's later years
孝顺	xiàoshùn	<i>v.</i>	show filial piety 孝顺父母/对父母很孝顺

乙：美国的孩子并不是不孝顺，我们也很爱我们的父母，也愿意照顾他们，但是我们觉得住在一起并不是孝顺最好的办法。我的祖父母一再表示他们不愿意把他们的晚年变成孩子的负担，所以他们宁可住敬老院。

甲：当然三代同堂也有三代同堂的问题。在中国的城市里，住房一向比较紧张。三代人挤在一个小单元里，更增加了产生矛盾和摩擦的可能。随着工业化和现代化的快速发展，我相信，以夫妻为(3)中心的小家庭一定会渐渐取代三代同堂的大家庭。

---

挤	jǐ	v./adj.	crowd; pack; cram, crowded 为什么你们都挤在门口？怎么不进去呢？ 公共汽车太挤了，我们坐出租车吧！
单元	dānyuán	n.	unit
摩擦	mócā	n.	clash (between two parties); friction
工业化	gōngyèhuà	n.	industrialization
快速	kuàisù	adj.	fast; high-speed
以 A 为 B	yǐ...wéi...		take A as B; regard A as B

## ★繁体字课文

甲：在中國流行著一句話，說美國是“兒童的天堂，中年人的戰場，老年人的墳場。”這句話能不能大致反映這三種年齡的人在美國的生活？

乙：美國是“兒童的天堂，中年人的戰場”，這句話大致是對的。美國的教育制度，一般來說，比較注重個人發展，孩子們也沒有什麼升學或考試的壓力。至於(1)中年人，在那個競爭激烈的社會裏，必須盡最大的努力去工作，才能不被淘汰。可是我反對美國是“老年人的墳場”這個說法。

甲：聽說美國的老年人都得住敬老院，孩子也不常去看他們。這樣的生活不是和等死差不多嗎？

乙：這倒不見得(2)。我的祖父母都住在敬老院裏，而且他們是自願去住敬老院的，他們對那儿的生活也相當滿意。他們覺得和子女住在一起，不但失去了獨立和尊嚴，還加重了子女的負擔，對孩子是不公平的。

甲：我的祖父母就和我們住在一起。中國人把這樣的生活叫做“三代同堂”，老年人一般都覺得這是比較理想的晚年生活。我父母也不願意讓祖父母住進敬老院，他們覺得孝順的孩子應該照顧父母。

乙：美國的孩子並不是不孝順，我們也很愛我們的父母，也願意照顧他們，但是我們覺得住在一起並不是孝順最好的辦法。我的祖父母一再表示他們不願意把他們的晚年變成孩子的負擔，所以他們寧可住敬老院。

甲：當然三代同堂也有三代同堂的問題。在中國的城市裏，住房一向比較緊張。三代人擠在一個小單

元裏，更增加了產生矛盾和摩擦的可能。隨著工業化和現代化的快速發展，我相信，以夫妻為(3)中心的小家庭一定會漸漸取代三代同堂的大家庭。

## 语法点

- (1) 孩子们…没什么压力，至于中年人，必须尽最大的努力去工作。

Children do not have much stress; as for the middle-aged, they must exert their greatest efforts at work.

至于, meaning “as for,” is used in the beginning of a second sentence or paragraph to introduce another topic with new comments or views.

1. 我得尽最大的努力把这个工作做好。至于其他的事情，以后再说吧！

I have to put forth my best effort to do this work well. As for other matters, they can wait.

2. 他减肥很成功，两个月就瘦了十公斤。至于他用了什么方法，那我就知道了。

His diet was successful. He lost 10 kilograms in two months. As for what method he used, that I do not know.

- (2) 这倒不见得。

This is not necessarily so.

不见得, meaning “not necessarily” or “not likely,” indicates the speaker's subjective estimation expressed in a rather mild tone. It can be used as a predicate or an adverb to modify a verb or adjective.

1. 单亲家庭的孩子一定会变坏？我看不见得。

Will children from single-parent families definitely go astray? I don't think it is necessarily so.

2. 你别紧张。他这么做，不见得是件坏事。

Don't be nervous. His doing so was not necessarily a bad thing.

3. 我的年龄虽然比你大，身体不见得不如你。

Even though I am older than you, my health is not necessarily poorer than yours.

(3) 以夫妻为中心的小家庭一定会渐渐取代三代同堂的家庭。

Small families centered on husband and wife will gradually replace big families with three generations under one roof.

以 A 为 B means “take A as B” or “regard A as B.” 以 and 为 usually take substantives as their objects. Such phrases mostly function as predicates or modifiers.

1. 中国的现代化以经济建设为基础。

The modernization of China is based on economic infrastructure.

2. 普通话以北京话为基础。

Putonghua uses Beijing dialect as its foundation.

3. 中国社会以家庭为基本单位。

The family is the basic unit of Chinese society.

## ✍ 练习

I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 到外国学习在你的大学中流行不流行? (随着…)

2. 电脑专业的学生在找工作的时侯, 有没有困难? (大致)

3. 你买东西的时候, 注重价钱还是注重质量? (...。至于...)

4. 你喜欢竞争激烈的工作还是稳定而没有压力的工作?

(一直/一向)

5. 要怎么做, 才能避免婚外关系? (必须…才能…)

6. 你同意“婚姻是爱情的坟场”这个说法吗?

(大致反映了...)

7. 有人说, 美国没有什么升学压力, 你同意吗? (不见得)

8. 从经济的角度来看，三代同堂是不是一种好制度？
9. 中国的南方人以什么为主食？ (一向)
10. 一般的美国老年人主要的休闲活动是什么？ (以…为…)

**II. Make a sentence with each underlined expression.**

1. 我的祖父母一再表示他们不愿意变成孩子的负担。
2. 三代人挤在一个小单元里，更增加了产生摩擦的可能。
3. 中年人在那个竞争激烈的社会里，必须尽最大的努力工作。
4. 这句话大致反映了这三种年龄的人在美国的生活。

**III. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence..**

1. 他现在（就，只）住在校园里，你什么时候去找他都可以。
2. 你以为美国的老年人都喜欢自己住吗？我（居然，倒）认为不见得。
3. 我把自行车给（丢，失去）了，现在每天都得走路上课。
4. 我在美国（上，升）完大学以后，就会立刻回中国。
5. 他现在有钱得很，没有经济负担。（由于，至于，无论）他的婚姻情况好不好，我就知道了。
6. 他从上个月开始就（一直，一向）背生字，到现在已经记住了三千个字了。
7. 我母亲的生活都是（用，以，当）孩子为中心。
8. 现在已经十二点了，他（大致，大概）不会来了。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 在你看来，大学生最理想的专业选择是什么?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (以…为…)
2. A: 你毕业以后想找什么样的工作？希望在什么地方工作?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...。至于…)
3. A: 你们与其每天吵架，还不如离婚。  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (不见得)
4. A: 到了晚年，你愿意让孩子照顾你，还是自己照顾自己?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (宁可…也不要…)

5. A: 在古代社会中，女人依靠谁来生活？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一向)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. From the individual's perspective, a big household of three generations is not necessarily the ideal form of the modern family. Owing to different living habits, the possibility of recurring friction is greater than that in a small family centered on a husband and wife.
2. Letting aged parents live in a retirement home can cause problems, too. The expense of living in a retirement home is high, and thus it saddles children with a financial burden. In addition, most of the times the elderly are not satisfied with the care retirement homes provide.
3. I (myself) am willing to work in a small city because I don't want to have a life of fierce competition and great work pressure. In terms of salary, as long as I can have enough to eat and keep myself warm, making a little less doesn't matter.

**VI. Composition**

It is common knowledge that being left in a retirement home far away from friends and family often has an adverse psychological impact on the elderly. However, living together with younger family members has its own problems, too. In many instances, the elderly often require special and convenient facilities which may be impractical or expensive for younger families. Write about your ideal plan for your life as a senior. Or imagine that you are a social planner: how would you solve the conflict mentioned above?

## 第三十六课 中国的交通建设

最近几年，中国政府在交通建设上做了很大的努力，投资的数量也相当大。铁路方面，京九线和青藏铁路的完成是一件大事。京九线把首都和南方的九龙连接起来<sup>(1)</sup>，南北客运和货运都有了很大的改进。青藏铁路对西藏在文化上和经济上的发展都有很大的

---

建设	jiànshè	v./n.	construct, construction
投资	tóuzī	v./n.	invest, investment
数量	shùliàng	n.	number; quantity
铁路	tiělù	n.	railroad
京九线	Jīngjiǔxiàn	n.	Beijing-Kowloon (Railway) Line
青藏铁路	Qīngzàng Tiělù	n.	Qinghai-Tibet (Railway) Line 青: 青海 Qinghǎi; Qinghai Province 藏: 西藏; Tibet
完成	wánchéng	n./v.	completion, complete
南方	nánfāng	n.	the south
九龙	Jiǔlóng	n.	Jiulong (Kowloon)
连接	liánjiē	v.	connect
客运	kèyùn	n.	passenger transportation
货运	huòyùn	n.	cargo transportation
改进	gǎijìn	v./n.	improve, improvement
西藏	Xīzàng	n.	Tibet

---

帮助<sup>(2)</sup>，加快了西藏的现代化。公路方面，许多高速公路缩短了城市之间的距离。航空方面，新建了许多机场，使偏远地区的人们，在一天之内<sup>(3)</sup>就能到达北京、上海等大城市。同时，中国也向欧美各国购买了许多新飞机。中国是美国波音公司最大的客户之一<sup>(4)</sup>。

---

帮助	bāngzhù	n./v.	help
有帮助	yǒu bāngzhù	adj.	helpful
加快	jiākuài	v.	speed up; accelerate
缩短	suōduǎn	v.	shorten
距离	jùlí	n.	distance; disparity
航空	hángkōng	n.	aviation
新 v.	xīn...	adv.	newly... 新做的衣服/新买的汽车/新认识的朋友
偏远	piānyuǎn	adj.	remote; faraway
地区	dìqū	n.	area; district
…之内	...zhīnèi		in; within...
到达	dàodá	v.	arrive
上海	Shànghǎi	n.	Shanghai
购买	gòumǎi	v.	purchase
波音	Bōyīn	n.	Boeing
客户	kèhù	n.	client; customer
…之一	...zhīyī		one of...

中国的土地面积和美国的差不多一样大，要把东南西北各个地区联系起来，非有现代化的交通不可<sup>(5)</sup>。城乡的差距一直是中国经济和文化发展上的一个大问题，而缩小城乡差距最有效的方法，就是加强交通建设。

有了快速的现代交通，再加上<sup>(6)</sup>电话、电视、广播深入农村，不但城乡的差距可以缩小，对推行普通话也有很大的帮助。我真希望中国每一个地方的人都能说标准的普通话。这样<sup>(7)</sup>，我离开北京到别的地方的时候，就不必担心听不懂当地的话了。

---

土地	tǔdì	n.	land
面积	miànjī	n.	area (the product of the length times the width)
东南西北	dōng nán xī běi		the east, the south, the west, and the north; every direction
联系	liánxì	v.	integrate; link
城乡	chéng xiāng	n.	town and country; city and countryside
差距	chājù	n.	gap; disparity
缩小	suōxiǎo	v.	narrow; reduce; lessen
加强	jiāqíáng	v.	strengthen; enhance
再加上	zài jiā.shàng	conj.	on top of that; in addition
离开	líkāi	v.	leave

## ★繁体字课文

最近幾年，中國政府在交通建設上做了很大的努力，投資的數量也相當大。鐵路方面，京九線和青藏鐵路的完成是一件大事。京九線把首都和南方的九龍連接起來<sup>(1)</sup>，對南北客運和貨運都是重大的改進。青藏鐵路對西藏在文化上和經濟上的發展都有很大的幫助<sup>(2)</sup>，加快了西藏的現代化。公路方面，許多高速公路縮短了城市之間的距離。航空方面，新建了許多機場，使偏遠地區的人們，在一天之內<sup>(3)</sup>就能到達北京、上海等大城市。同時，中國也向歐美各國購買了許多新飛機。中國是美國波音公司最大的客戶之一<sup>(4)</sup>。

中國的土地面積和美國的差不多一樣大，要把東南西北各個地區聯繫起來，非有現代化的交通不可<sup>(5)</sup>。城鄉的差距一直是中國經濟和文化發展上的一個大問題，而縮短城鄉差距最有效的方法，就是加強交通建設。

有了快速的現代交通，再加上<sup>(6)</sup>電話、電視、廣播深入農村，不但城鄉的差距可以縮小，對推行普通話也有很大的幫助。我真希望中國每一個地方的人都能說標準的普通話。這樣<sup>(7)</sup>，我離開北京到別的地方的時候，就不必擔心聽不懂當地的話了。

### 语法点

(1) 京九线把首都和南方的九龙连接起来。

The Beijing-Kowloon Railway connects the capital with the southern [city of] Kowloon.

This 起来 is a resultative complement used after a verb to indicate that two or more things have been linked, combined, or integrated. See L. 2, Note (7) for a different usage of 起来.

1. 中国的面积很大，只有现代化的交通才能把东西南北各个地区联系起来。

China's area is very large. Only modern transportation can connect all its regions.

2. 知识分子必须与工人、农民结合起来。

Intellectuals must integrate with workers and peasants.

- (2) 青藏铁路对西藏在文化上和经济上的发展都有很大的帮助。

The Qinghai-Tibet Rail Line is very helpful to Tibet in terms of cultural and economic development.

帮助, 帮忙, 帮 these three words all mean “help,” but have slightly different usages. 帮 is a verb and cannot be used as a noun. The pattern is “A 帮 B + verb +....”

1. 张老师帮我找到了一个工作。

Teacher Zhang helped me find a job.

帮忙 is a v.-o. compound, which means you can insert modifiers or particles between 帮 and 忙, such as 帮了很大的忙 “helped greatly,” 帮留学生的忙 “to help the foreign student,” and 帮不了忙 “not able to help.” The pattern is “A 帮忙 + verb.” When the recipient of the help occurs in the sentence, either use “A 帮 B 的忙” in a relatively simple sentence, or just use “A 帮 B + verb +...” in a more complicated sentence.

2. 我的同屋从来不帮忙打扫房间。／我的同屋从来不帮我的忙。／我的同屋从来不帮我打扫房间。

My roommate never helped clean the room./ My roommate never helped me./ My roommate never helped me clean the room.

帮助, unlike 帮忙, is a pure verb, which means you cannot insert any other words between 帮 and 助. The pattern is either “A 帮助 B” or “A 帮助 B + verb....” 帮助 can be used as a noun, while 帮忙 cannot. Thus, you can say 有帮助, 有很大的帮助, 对西藏的帮助不大, etc.

3. 多运动对健康很有帮助。

Exercise is beneficial to one's health.

4. 这条铁路对南北货运有没有帮助?

Does this railroad facilitate cargo transportation from the North to the South?

5. 你帮他做练习，对他中文的进步一点儿帮助都没有。

Your helping him do his exercises is not helping his Chinese one bit.

6. 这本书帮助我找到了自己的兴趣。

This book helped me find my own interest.

(3) 使偏远地区的人们，在一天之内，就能到达北京、上海等大城市。

It enables people in remote areas to arrive in the big cities such as Beijing and Shanghai within one day.

When used together with a word or phrase denoting time or place, 在…之内 forms a preposition-object construction. It is placed at the beginning of a sentence or before the verb of the sentence as an adverb. It means “within” or “less than.”

1. 你必须在两个小时之内把这个考试做完。

You must finish the test within two hours.

2. 这个投资不在原来的计划之内，我们得好好考虑。

This investment was not included in the original plan. We should think hard [about it].

(4) 中国是美国波音公司最大的客户之一。

China is one of Boeing's biggest clients.

A 是 B 之一 means “A is one of B.”

1. 交通建设是现代化过程中最重要的建设之一。

Developing transportation is one of the most important projects in the process of modernization.

2. 北京是中国最古老的城市之一。

Beijing is one of the most ancient cities in China.

(5) 要把东南西北各个地区联系起来，非有现代化的交通不可。

We must have modern transportation in order to connect north, south, east and west.

非…不可, meaning “must” or “have to,” is often used as a predicate.

1. 要维持一个很好的婚姻，非要有爱情不可。

You must have love in order to maintain a happy marriage.

2. 这个练习我非今天做完不可。

I have to finish this exercise today.

(6) 有了快速的现代交通，再加上电话、电视、广播深入农村，…

Once they have high speed modern transportation, along with telephones, television, and radio penetrating the country side...

再加上, meaning “besides” or “on top of that,” is used between two clauses to indicate two causes of the effect that follows in the third clause. Thus, “A, 再加上 B, C” is equivalent to “Causes A and B both contribute to result C.” 再加上 must be preceded and followed by clauses, not nouns.

1. 他学习太努力，再加上天气太热，不久就病了。

He studies too hard; in addition, the weather was terribly hot. He soon became sick.

2. 他们两个人谈不来，再加上房间很小，常常发生摩擦。

The two of them cannot get along. Besides, their room is very small, so there is often friction between them.

(7) 这样，我就不必担心听不懂当地的话了。

Thus, I won't have to worry about not understanding local dialects.

这样, meaning “thus” or “in so doing,” is used at the beginning of a sentence as a conjunction.

1. 你先给他打电话，告诉他我要去。这样，我到的时候他才不会不在家。

You call him first to tell him I'm going. This way he won't be away from home when I get there.

2. 要看这个电影的人可能很多，我要先去买票，这样才不会买不到票。

There might be a lot of people who want to watch this movie. I'll go to buy the tickets first. That way they won't be sold out.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions with the expressions when provided.

1. 政府为什么想在交通建设上投资? (对…有帮助)
2. 如果有机会, 你想不想在中国工作? 为什么? (再加上)
3. 我想从北京去西藏旅游, 最好怎么去?  
(最好, 这样, 在…之内)
4. 中国人最常去的是哪家美国快餐店? (最…之一)
5. 在现代社会, 哪些东西是办公室里不可缺乏的设备?  
(像…之类的 N., 非…不可)

### II. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. 等南北铁路建好了以后, 我们就能直接 (向, 对) 南方的工厂购买材料, 可以降低许多成本。
2. 买了空调使我们的住房条件 (改进, 进步) 不少。
3. 这几个减肥方法 (之内, 之中), 只有跑步对我最有效。
4. 跟当地的人谈谈, 对了解老百姓的日常生活很有 (帮助, 帮忙)。
5. 我对海外投资毫无了解, 实在帮不了什么 (忙, 助)。
6. 你做的红烧鱼味道好极了, 我前几天吃了以后, 就 (一直, 一向) 想再吃一次。
7. 我们家星期一到星期五晚上 (一直, 一向) 不看电视, 只有周末父母才让我们看电视。
8. 你买的礼物价钱最好在一百块 (之内, 之间)。

### III. Rearrange the phrases in the parentheses to finish each sentence.

1. 现在中国人口问题这么严重, \_\_\_\_\_。  
(不可, 一家一个孩子, 推行, 非, 的政策)
2. 为了与其他国家有更多的商业交流, \_\_\_\_\_。  
(最有效, 航空方面, 加强, 是, 的方法, 的建设, 之一)
3. 农村落后的国家进步的障碍, 我们\_\_\_\_\_。  
(不可, 把, 的差距, 非, 缩小, 城乡)

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 为什么公园儿是北京人主要的休闲的地方?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...， 再加上...)

2. A: 改革开放对中国有什么贡献?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...之一)

3. A: 坐飞机到上海实在太贵了，我们不能坐火车吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (非…不可)

4. A: 我一用成语就闹笑话，真糟糕！你能教教我吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...， 这样...)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. The lack of natural resources, along with the inconvenience of transportation, has created many difficulties in the development of this remote district. If we want to raise people's living standards, the government absolutely must increase the amount of their investment in the region.
2. The markets in big cities such as Beijing and Shanghai are very stable now. Perhaps we should go deep into the west and the south to develop these areas. It will help us connect the cargo transportation to our markets everywhere [in all directions] within five years.
3. One of the problems with our air service is that our airplanes are very old for the most part. We have not made significant improvements in our cargo and passenger transportation along the way (use 一直). [Therefore,] we recently bought new airplanes, and hope that this will change people's impression of us.

**VI. Composition**

Development of transportation (basic infrastructure) is an important first step in promoting long-term economic growth. However, there are other factors involved. For example, the United States transportation network reaches the most remote regions of the country, but some locations have been traditionally less-developed than others (e.g. some parts of the Midwest and Southeast). Many of these phenomena can be ascribed to historical and educational factors. Do you think that the PRC will be able to avoid such problems? If you were a policy maker, what steps would you take to avoid economic inequality while preserving necessary regional diversity?

## 第三十七课 手机和电子邮件

北京人真爱打电话！

无论在哪儿，无论在什么时候，都可以看到北京人在打电话！开车的时候，走路的时候，吃饭的时候，甚至于在公园儿里跟女朋友谈恋爱的时候，都有人拿着手机忙着<sup>(1)</sup>和别人说话。

有一次，我请几个朋友去饭馆儿吃饭，在饭桌上不是他们给朋友打电话，就是朋友给他们打电话，结果我简直没有什么机会跟他们谈话。他们这么忙，我真同情他们。

---

手机	shǒujī	n.	cellular phone
电子邮件	diànzǐ yóujìn	n.	e-mail
忙	máng	adj./v.	busy, be fully occupied 他很忙。/你去忙你的事吧！
忙着	máng.zhe	v.	be busy with 明天就要上飞机了，我忙着整理行李呢！
同情	tóngqíng	v./n.	sympathize, sympathy

手机一方面固然提供了通信上的便利，但另一方面，也为日常生活带来了一定的麻烦。有一次，我在电影院看电影，坐在我旁边儿的人居然用手机和别人谈起话来，这让我很生气。类似的情况在日常生活中经常发生。

一个好的手机不但可以用来打电话，还可以照相、上网，难怪<sup>(2)</sup>这么受欢迎。另外，许多人也用手机

---

通信	tōngxìn	n./v.	communication, communicate by letter 我经常跟这几个老朋友通信。
便利	biànlì	n./adj.	convenience, convenient (The negative form is 不便.) 这儿的交通非常便利。
电影院	diànyǐngyuàn	n.	movie theater
照相	zhào//xiàng	v.-o.	take a picture; take photographs 我在天安门前头照了很多相。 我帮你照几张相。
上网	shàng//wǎng	v.-o.	get on or log on to the Internet 网: (here) 互联网; the Internet
难怪	nánguài	adv.	no wonder
欢迎	huānyíng	v.	welcome; be received favorably 欢迎你们来参观。 这些中国制造的商品很受欢迎。

发短信和朋友联系。“短信”就是“text message”。来中国以前，我以为用中文打字非常不方便。来了以后，我才发现中国人打汉字并不比<sup>(3)</sup>美国人打英文慢。许多人都在公共汽车上给朋友发短信，显然打中文是很容易的。不但汉字电脑化<sup>(4)</sup>了，电脑也汉字化了。

随着中国和国际上联系的增加，我的许多北京朋友也早就开始使用电子邮件了。这种最新的通信方法，已经把全世界联系在一起，使全世界成了一个“地球村”。不但中国走进了世界，世界也走进了中国。

---

发	fā	v.	send; send out; give out 把作业发给学生/发电子邮件给朋友
短信	duǎnxìn	n.	“short-letter”, text message
打字	dǎ//zì	v.-o.	type; typewrite 他打字打得很快，一分钟能打 60 个字。
——化	huà	suffix	-ize; -ization 现代化/工业化
地球	dìqiú	n.	the earth
地球村	dìqiúcūn	n.	the global village

## ★ 繁体字课文

北京人真愛打電話！

無論在哪儿，無論在什麼時候，都可以看到北京人在打電話！開車的時候，走路的時候，吃飯的時候，甚至於在公園兒裏跟女朋友談戀愛的時候，都有人拿著手機忙著<sup>(1)</sup>和別人說話。

有一次，我請幾個朋友去飯館兒吃飯，在飯桌上不是他們給朋友打電話，就是朋友給他們打電話，結果我簡直沒有什麼機會跟他們談話。他們這麼忙，我真同情他們。

手機一方面固然提供了通信上的便利，但另一方面，也為日常生活帶來了一定的麻煩。有一次，我在電影院看電影，坐在我旁邊兒的人居然用手機和別人談起話來，這讓我很生氣。類似的情況在日常生活中經常發生。

一個好的手機不但可以用來打電話，還可以照相、上網，難怪<sup>(2)</sup>這麼受歡迎。另外，許多人也用手機發短信和朋友聯繫。“短信”就是“text message”。來中國以前，我以為用中文打字非常不方便。來了以後，我才發現中國人打漢字並不比<sup>(3)</sup>美國人打英文慢。許多人都在公共汽車上給朋友發短信，顯然打中文是很容易的。不但漢字電腦化<sup>(4)</sup>了，電腦也漢字化了。

隨著中國和國際上聯繫的增加，我的許多北京朋友也早就開始使用電子郵件了。這種最新的通信方法，已經把全世界聯繫在一起，使全世界成了一個“地球村”。不但中國走進了世界，世界也走進了中國。

## 语法点

- (1) 无论在哪儿，无论在什么时候，都有人拿着手机忙着和别人说话。

No matter where or when, there are people holding their cell phones, busy talking to others.

忙着 means “be busy doing something.” It usually takes a verb as its object. There is no negative form of 忙着。

1. 每年六月，所有的高中学生都忙着为高考做准备。

Every year in June, all the high school students are busy preparing for the college entrance examination.

2. 他正忙着做菜呢，你等会儿再打吧！

He is busy cooking. Why don't you call later?

- (2) 一个好的手机不但可以用来打电话，还可以照相、上网，难怪这么受欢迎。

A good cell phone not only can be used to make phone calls, it also can be used to take photos and get on to the Internet. No wonder cell phones are so well received.

难怪 indicates that since the speaker has learned the cause of the matter, he is not surprised at what has happened. The clause or sentence denoting the cause may occur either at the head or at the end of the entire sentence.

1. 他跟女朋友在公园里谈恋爱的时候还用手机给人打电话，难怪他的女朋友很生气。

He made calls by cell phone even when he was with his girlfriend in the park. It is hard to blame his girlfriend for being mad.

2. 他总是吃汉堡包、炸薯条这类有害健康的食物，难怪有肥胖的问题。

He often eats foods that are harmful to his health such as hamburgers, French fries, etc. No wonder he has an obesity problem.

3. 难怪找不到人，他们都上课去了。

No wonder I can't find anybody here; they're all away for class.

- (3) 中国人打汉字并不比美国人打英文慢。

Chinese people don't type Chinese characters any slower than American people type English.

When making a comparison, A 比 B adj. and A 没有 B (那么) adj. are the patterns used most often. The A 不比 B adj. pattern is only used when the speaker wants to negate what was just heard or to add emphasis.

1. 这里的中国菜不比北京的差。

The Chinese food here is no worse than (the Chinese food) in Beijing.  
=The Chinese food here is just as good as in Beijing.

2. 他虽然已经 60 岁了，跑起步来不比年轻人慢。

Although he is 60 years old, he runs no slower than a young person.  
=He can run just as fast as a young person.

3. 我们这个地区小是小，但是交通建设可不比大城市落后。

Our district is small alright, but our traffic infrastructure is no more backward than that of the big cities.

=Our traffic infrastructure is just as updated as that of the big cities.

(4) 不但汉字电脑化了，电脑也汉字化了。

Not only have Chinese characters undergone computerization, computers have also undergone “Chinese character-ification”.

When 化 is used as a suffix after an adjective or noun, it expresses modification into a property or a state; e.g. 现代化 “modernize,” 工业化 “industrialize,” 规范化 “standardize,” 国际化 “internationalize,” 美化 “beautify,” 简化 “simplify.” The noun+化 can be used as an intransitive verb, noun, or modifier. The adjective + 化 is often used as a transitive verb which takes object directly after it.

1. 文字的规范化是一个意义重大的工作。

The standardization of characters is a work of great significance.

2. 北京、上海都是相当国际化的城市。

Beijing and Shanghai are considerably international cities.

3. 自从 50 年代以来，政府一直提倡简化汉字。

The government has been promoting the simplification of Chinese characters since the 50's.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 用手机的人为什么一直在增加? (可以用来, 难怪)
2. 手机的好处和坏处是什么?
3. 你认为什么时候应该把手机关掉? 为什么?
4. 你经常用什么方法跟朋友联系? 你写信吗?  
(不是…就是…, 很少)
5. 有些人常常换手机, 为什么呢? 这不是很麻烦吗? (固然)
6. 你会不会打汉字? 打得快不快? (比)
7. “电脑汉字化”是什么意思?
8. “全世界成了一个地球村”这句话是什么意思?
9. 除了互联网把中国和世界联系在一起以外, 请你另外举一个例子来说明“中国走进了世界, 世界也走进了中国”。

### II. Complete the following sentences.

1. 在中国的大学里, \_\_\_\_\_, 类似的情况在我的大学里也常常发生。
2. \_\_\_\_\_, 我真同情他们。
3. 这种电视虽然\_\_\_\_\_, 但是\_\_\_\_\_, 而且\_\_\_\_\_, 所以很受欢迎。
4. 他\_\_\_\_\_, 甚至于\_\_\_\_\_, 难怪\_\_\_\_\_。
5. 在交通建设方面, 中国政府不但\_\_\_\_\_, 而且\_\_\_\_\_, 显然\_\_\_\_\_。
6. 我的新手机可以用来\_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, 另外还能\_\_\_\_\_呢!
7. 京九线\_\_\_\_\_, 为南北客运提供了很大的便利。
8. 随着商品房的上市, \_\_\_\_\_。

### III. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.

1. A: 美国的老年人一般都跟子女住在一起吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (因为…的缘故, 不是…就是…)

2. A: 过去许多人有营养不良的问题，可是现在肥胖成了城市居民的烦恼了。  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (难怪，想方设法，有的…有的…)
3. A: 写简体字比写繁体字快，打简体字也比打繁体字快吗？看简体字和看繁体字呢？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (不比，至于)
4. A: 听说他们的孩子没有考上大学。  
B: 是啊！他们夫妇整天 \_\_\_\_\_。 (忙着，而，忽略)
5. A: 铁路和高速公路的建设到底有什么重要性？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (用来，加强，缩短)
6. A: 在你看来，邮局会因为电子邮件的普遍化而被取代吗？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一天比一天，随着…而…)

#### IV. Translate into Chinese.

1. Originally they were only friends, and didn't start dating until a couple of months ago. Because they already had a certain understanding about each other, they were not worried that a long-distance romance would bring them any trouble. They often send short messages and write e-mails to each other. Even though they don't meet very often, their relationship has developed quite successfully.
2. It is quite dangerous to use a cellular phone in the car to chat with your friends. It is quite possible that either you will hit someone or someone will hit you if you don't pay attention while driving.
3. Sending text messages is no more troublesome than making a phone call; especially if you don't like to waste time chatting with people, sending text messages can be said to be a convenient method of communication. No wonder nowadays young people love sending text messages.

#### V. Composition

One of the drawbacks of the communication age is the loss of personal freedom as a result of ever increasing modes of contact. For example, thirty years ago, if a person wanted to get away from work, s/he simply left the office. However, with the advent of cellular phones, pagers, and other means of communication, it is becoming harder and harder to maintain a clear dividing line between work and personal time. How do you deal with this problem personally?

## 第三十八课 开放留学政策

校园的布告栏上贴着许多托福和 GRE 考试的广告，大多是补习班教人怎么预备这两个考试的信息。据说每年有几十万大学本科生和研究生为了申请美国大学和研究生院而<sup>(1)</sup>参加这两个考试。

我有个中国朋友很担心地告诉我，要是中国的留学政策继续开放下去，中国最优秀的人才都会到美国

---

布告栏	bùgàolán	n.	bulletin board
贴	tiē	v.	paste; stick; glue
托福	tuōfú	n.	TOEFL; Test of English as a Foreign Language
补习班	bǔxíbān	n.	cram school
预备	yùbèi	v.	prepare
几十万	jǐshíwàn	n.	hundreds of thousands
本科生	běnkēshēng	n.	undergraduate student
研究生	yánjiūshēng	n.	graduate student
申请	shēnqǐng	v.	apply for
研究生院	yánjiūshēng yuàn	n.	graduate school
参加	cānjiā	v.	participate; attend (an event)
继续	jìxù	v.	continue
优秀	yóuxiù	adj.	outstanding; excellent
人才	rén cái	n.	person of ability; talented person

去了，这对中国的发展是不利<sup>(2)</sup>的。所以他主张中国政府限制学生出国，让他们毕业以后留在中国，为中国服务。这个说法当然不是完全没有道理。许多发展中国家都面临着“人才外流”的问题。三、四十年前的台湾、香港和新加坡也都讨论过这个问题。但是现在这三个地区从海外回去的留学生越来越多了，他们都愿意为自己的家乡服务。所谓“人才外流”只是一个暂时的现象，我们不能因为人才暂时的流失就永远不开放留学政策。

不利	búlì	<i>adj.</i>	disadvantageous; harmful (The positive form is 有利.)
主张	zhǔzhāng	<i>v.</i>	advocate; maintain
限制	xiànzhì	<i>v.</i>	limit
出国	chū//guó	<i>v.-o.</i>	go abroad
留	liú	<i>v.</i>	stay; remain; keep
面临	miànlín	<i>v.</i>	be faced with; be confronted with
外流	wàiliú	<i>v.</i>	outflow; drain
新加坡	Xīnjiāpō	<i>n.</i>	Singapore
家乡	jiāxiāng	<i>n.</i>	hometown
暂时	zànshí	<i>adj./adv.</i>	temporary; transient; for the time being 我暂时还不想回美国去。
流失	liúshī	<i>v.</i>	run off; to be washed away
永远	yǒngyuǎn	<i>adv.</i>	forever (永远 followed by negation means “never”) 他永远都不会回来了: He will never come back. 他不会永远都不回来: He will not stay away forever.

再说，不放宽留学政策只能限制大学生出国，并不能吸引已经在国外的留学生回国。只有开放的留学政策，再加上发达的经济，才能吸引留学生回国。

只要中国在政治上继续开放，在经济上继续发展，留学生回国，只是一个时间上的问题。

---

吸引	xīyǐn	v.	attract
回国	huí//guó	v.-o.	return to one's country

---

## ★ 繁体字课文

校園的佈告欄上貼著許多托福和 GRE 考試的廣告，大多是補習班教人怎麼預備這兩個考試的信息。據說每年有幾十萬大學本科生和研究生為了申請美國大學和研究生院而(1)參加這兩個考試。

我有個中國朋友很擔心地告訴我，要是中國的留學政策繼續開放下去，中國最優秀的人才都會到美國去了，這對中國的發展是不利(2)的。所以他主張中國政府限制學生出國，讓他們畢業以後留在中國，為中國服務。這個說法當然不是完全沒有道理。許多發展中

國家都面臨著“人才外流”的問題。三、四十年前的臺灣、香港和新加坡也都討論過這個問題。但是現在這三個地區從海外回去的留學生越來越多了，他們都願意為自己的家鄉服務。所謂“人才外流”只是一個暫時的現象，我們不能因為人才暫時的流失就永遠不開放留學政策。

再說，不放寬留學政策只能限制大學生出國，並不能吸引已經在國外的留學生回國。只有開放的留學政策，再加上發達的經濟，才能吸引留學生回國。

只要中國在政治上繼續開放，在經濟上繼續發展，留學生回國，只是一個時間上的問題。

## 60 语法点

(1) 每年有几十万本科生和研究生为了申请美国大学和研究生院而参加这个考试。

Every year, several hundreds of thousands of college and graduate students take this examination in order to apply to American colleges and graduate schools.

为了 indicates the target, purpose, or cause of an action (See L. 16, Note 2). 而 introduces the action taken.

1. 他为了考好托福而上了一个补习班。

He went to a cram school in order to test better on the TOEFL.

2. 中国政府为了缩小城乡差距而努力加强交通建设。

In order to close the gap between town and country, the Chinese government is working hard to strengthen transportation infrastructure.

(2) 这对中国的发展是很不利的。

This is disadvantageous to the development of China.

A 对 B 不利 means that A is disadvantageous to B. The opposite of 不利 is 有利 “advantageous.” To form a question, you can either say “A 对 B 有利吗?” or “A 对 B 不利吗?”. Do not use “A 对 B 利不利?” or “A 对 B 有没有利?”

1. 吃得太多对健康很不利。

It is harmful to your health to eat too much.

2. 交通不发达对经济建设很不利。

Falling behind on transportation is disadvantageous to economic development.

3. 提倡普通话对教育的发展是有利的。

It is advantageous to the development of education to promote Putonghua.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 在中国哪些人会参加托福和 GRE 考试？他们参加这两个考试的目的是什么？（为了…而…）
2. 为什么中国人担心最优秀的人才都跑到国外去了？  
(对…不利)
3. 本科生快毕业的时候，所面临的问题有哪些？  
(面临着…的问题／烦恼／压力， 同时)
4. 如果你是个中国的留学生，什么样的条件会吸引你回国服务？ (...， 再加上...)
5. 有哪些现象对一个国家的发展是不利的？
6. 哪些条件对找工作是有利的？哪些条件对找工作是不利的？
7. 美国有没有“人才外流”的现象？
8. 有人说“毕业就是失业”，你同意吗？(有／没有道理)

**II. Explain the following phrases beginning each one with “所谓.”**

1. 人才外流      2. 补习班      3. 留学      4. 家乡

**III. Rearrange the phrases into a grammatically correct sentence.**

1. 死记硬背，为了，是很不利的，而，考试，对学习
2. 可能，人才外流，留学政策，的放宽，的现象，引起
3. 都面临着，美国大学，的压力，托福考试，的中国本科生，申请
4. 家乡，的留学生，服务，为自己的，都愿意，回去，许多，海外。

**IV. For each section, choose one character to fill in each blank.**

宽，而，制，说，法，越，放

我反对政府限\_\_\_\_\_留学生出国。为了要留住优秀的人才  
\_\_\_\_\_不开\_\_\_\_\_留学政策是很不值得的。再\_\_\_\_\_, 越不放\_\_\_\_\_  
留学政策，\_\_\_\_\_有人想方设\_\_\_\_\_要出国。

为，跟，但，引，不，对，交

这样，我们不\_\_\_\_\_会失去\_\_\_\_\_其他国家\_\_\_\_\_流的机会，  
而且也不能吸\_\_\_\_\_已经在海外的留学生回来\_\_\_\_\_国家服务。  
这\_\_\_\_\_国家的人才发展是很\_\_\_\_\_利的。

供，外，重，其，谓，为，内

要避免留学生\_\_\_\_\_流，与\_\_\_\_\_控制每年出国的人数，不如提\_\_\_\_\_稳定的工作环境，尊\_\_\_\_\_他们的研究自由，并且提高国\_\_\_\_\_的生活水平。我相信，所\_\_\_\_\_“回国就是失业”的说法，一定会成\_\_\_\_\_历史。

**V. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 大家都在谈“地球村”这个观念，这是不是说我们以后不必再分什么中国人、美国人、日本人了呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (所谓…)
2. A: 你知道不知道为什么中国要进行文字改革?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (为了…而…)
3. A: 过去多么好啊！人人都有铁饭碗，不必担心失业。  
B: 那倒不见得，\_\_\_\_\_。 (对…不利)

#### VI. Translate into Chinese.

1. The so-called “iron rice bowl” means a stable job in the government or schools. A person who has an “iron rice bowl” need never worry about losing his/her job because of bad performance, but there is little chance of promotion (e.g. further career development). This system is disadvantageous to talented people. (Use 而 in one of your sentences.)
2. If your company continues to restrict talented people from going abroad to study, you will be faced with the “brain drain” problem. You will not be able to attract people to work for your company.
3. Attached on the bulletin board are the application requirements (standards) of the graduate school. The requirements they set are to my advantage. I don’t think I need to go to the cram school. I can prepare for the graduate school exam by myself.

#### VII. Composition

In the final paragraph, the author implies that the resolution of China’s “brain drain” will come with political and economic change over time. How long do you think it will take before there is a noticeable shift in the direction of movement for students who have earned degrees studying abroad? In order to help your analysis, consider the factors that pull talent away from China versus the factors that draw talent back to China. For example, do you think there are better opportunities for a person working in America whose native language is not English or would that person be better off working with a foreign company in his/her own country?

## 第三十九课 下岗

自从改革开放以来，下岗职工成了中国一个新的社会问题。下岗，在美国人看来，是失业或者提前退休；这两个问题在任何一个市场经济的社会中都存在，并不是新话题，可是对中国人来说，却是一个新的挑战。

中国老百姓过去几十年来，总是把就业的责任放在政府或单位身上<sup>(1)</sup>。从工作到住房，从保险到孩子的教育，都依靠政府或者单位的安排。现在因为改革

---

下岗	xìa/gǎng	v.-o.	be laid off; be fired 下: step down, 岗: a post 工厂职工下岗以后，连温饱的生活都过不上了。
职工	zhígōng	n.	staff and workers
提前	tíqián	v./adv.	shift to an earlier time, ahead of schedule; beforehand
退休	tuìxiū	v.	retire
市场经济	shìchǎng jīngjì	n.	market economy
挑战	tiǎozhàn	n./v.	challenge
单位	dānweì	n.	(work) unit
在…身上	zài...shēn.shàng		on one; with one; on one's body
保险	bǎoxiǎn	n.	insurance

开放，渐渐由计划经济转向市场竞争，许多单位必须解雇过多的工作人员来减轻负担；这也就是美国人所说的“layoff”，在美国是常有的事。

在中国，一方面有下岗职工的问题，另一方面却普遍存在“有人没活儿干，有活儿没人干”的矛盾现象。“活儿”就是工作，“干”就是“做”。换一句话说<sup>(2)</sup>，就是“有的人找不到工作，而有的工作却找不到人。”这一方面说明许多想找工作的人缺乏专业训

---

计划	jìhuà	n./v.	plan; project, plan
计划经济	jìhuà jīngjì	n.	planned economy
转向	zhuǎnxiàng	v.	turn to 转: turn 向: towards 世界上的大公司一个一个转向中国发展。
解雇	jiěgù	v.	lay off; fire 他把许多工作不努力的职员解雇了。
过 adj.	guò...	pref.	too; exceeding
工作人员	gōngzuò rényuán	n.	personnel; staff member
减轻	jiǎnqīng	v.	alleviate
活儿	huór	n.	(colloquial) work
干	gàn	v.	(colloquial) do
专业	zhuānyè	adj./n.	professional, one's major

练，另一方面也表现了中国人自古以来就有看不起<sup>(3)</sup>体力工作的传统。

中国人自古就把工作分成脑力工作和体力工作两类。用脑力的人往往是所谓的“知识分子”，而用体力的主要是农民和工人。知识分子总认为用体力来维持生活是一件不体面的事。有时他们宁可下岗，也不去当工人。因此要解决下岗职工再<sup>(4)</sup>就业的问题，还得从改变人们对工作的想法开始；得让人们觉得，所有的工作都是值得尊重的，不劳而获才是可耻的。

---

自古以来	zì gǔ yǐlái		since ancient times
看不起	kàn.bu qǐ	v.-c.	look down upon; despise
体力	tǐlì	n.	physical strength
分成	fēnchéng	v.-c.	divide into
脑力	nǎolì	n.	brains; mental capability
农民	nóngmín	n.	farmer
体面	tǐ.miàn	adj.	attracting respect on account of a wealthy or proper appearance 不体面的事儿/穿得很体面
当	dāng	v.	be; work as; serve as 我大学毕业以后想当老师。 他在一家银行当职员。
不劳而获	bù láo ér huò	idm.	gain without effort
可耻	kěchǐ	adj.	shameful

许多人对下岗问题非常担心，认为这是改革开放中的一个危机，我却不这样想。我认为下岗所反映的是中国过去经济结构的不合理，而不是市场经济所带来的不稳定。中国政府有勇气面对这个问题，坚持走改革开放的道路，是非常可喜的。

危机	wēiji	n.	crisis; precarious point
合理	héli	adj.	reasonable
勇气	yǒngqì	n.	courage; bravery
面对	miànduì	v.	face; confront (actively) (It differs with 面临 in that 面临 means being confronted with something passively. See L. 38) 你得面对这个困难，想办法解决。 面对人才外流的现象，中国政府提出了许多吸引留学生回国服务的办法。

## ★ 繁体字课文

自從改革開放以來，下崗職工成了中國一個新的社會問題。下崗，在美國人看來，是失業或者提前退休；這兩個問題在任何一個市場經濟的社會中都存在，並不是新話題，可是對中國人來說，卻是一個新的挑戰。

中國老百姓過去幾十年來，總是把就業的責任放在政府或單位身上<sup>(1)</sup>。從工作到住房，從保險到孩子的教育，都依靠政府或者單位的安排。現在因為改革開放，漸漸由計劃經濟轉向市場競爭，許多單位必須解雇過多的工作人員來減輕負擔；這也就是美國人所說的“layoff”，在美國是常有的事。

在中國，一方面有下崗職工的問題，另一方面卻普遍存在“有人沒活兒幹，有活兒沒人幹”的矛盾現象。“活兒”就是工作，“幹”就是“做”。換一句話說<sup>(2)</sup>，就是“有的人找不到工作，而有的工作卻找不到人。”這一方面說明許多想找工作的人缺乏專業訓練，另一方面也表現了中國人自古以來就有看不起<sup>(3)</sup>體力工作的傳統。

中國人自古就把工作分成腦力工作和體力工作兩類。用腦力的人往往是所謂的“知識分子”，而用體力的主要是農民和工人。知識分子總認為用體力來維持生活是一件不體面的事。有時他們寧可下崗，也不去當工人。因此要解決下崗職工再<sup>(4)</sup>就業的問題，還得從改變人們對工作的想法開始；得讓人們覺得，所有的工作都是值得尊重的，不勞而獲才是可恥的。

許多人對下崗問題非常擔心，認為這是改革開放中的一個危機，我卻不這樣想。我認為下崗所反映的是中國過去經濟結構的不合理，而不是市場經濟所帶來的不穩定。中國政府有勇氣面對這個問題，堅持走改革開放的道路，是非常可喜的。

## 八 语法点

- (1) 中国老百姓过去几十年来，总是把就业的责任放在政府或单位身上。

During past decades, Chinese people have always placed the responsibility for obtaining employment on the government or the work unit.

在…上 indicates the place at which a person or thing has arrived due to an action, such as 把书放在桌子上, or 躺在床上. When the phrase between 在 and 上 is an animate object, 身上 should be used instead of 上。

1. 他们只有一个孩子，所以他们把所有的注意力都集中在  
这个孩子身上。

They have only one child. Therefore, they concentrate all their attention on him.

2. 我们的希望在年轻人身上。

Our hope rests on [the shoulders of] young people.

3. 找得到找不到工作是你自己的事，不应该把这个责任放  
在学校身上。

Whether or not you can find a job is your business. You should not place this responsibility on your school.

The phrase 从 + animate noun + (的) 身上 means “from the animate noun.” For inanimate nouns, you can say 从学校里 “from school,” 从工作中 “from work,” 从经济结构上 “from the economic structure.” For an animate noun, you always add (的) 身上 after the animate noun.

4. 他从爷爷身上爬下来。

He climbed off grandpa.

5. 我从张先生身上看到了一些中国人特有的习惯。

I learned (saw) some specific Chinese customs from Mr. Zhang.

- (2) …换一句话说，就是有的人找不到工作，而有的工作  
却找不到人。

...In other words, there are people who cannot find a job and there are jobs that cannot find people.

换一句话说 means “in other words.” Similar expressions are 换句话说, 换个说法 “in another way of saying this,” 换个角度来看 “to look from a different angle.”

1. 中国已经成了一个市场经济的社会。换一句话说, 各方面的竞争都增加了。

China has already become a market economy. In other words, competition in every field has increased.

2. 回国的留学生越来越多。换一句话说, 就是他们越来越愿意为自己的家乡服务。

There are more and more students who return to China after studying abroad. In other words, they are more willing to serve their homeland.

- (3) …另一方面也表现了中国人自古以来就有看不起体力工作的传统。

On the other hand, it also shows the ancient Chinese tradition of looking down upon physical labor.

看不起 means “to belittle” or “to look down upon.” The positive form看得起 means “not to look down upon” instead of “to respect.”

1. 你要好好努力, 别让人看不起。

Work hard. Don't let people look down [on you].

2. 从前的社会看不起离婚的妇女。

The old society looked down on women who were divorced.

3. 他花钱买很贵的汽车, 就是为了要让人看得起他。

The reason that he spent money to buy an expensive car was so that people wouldn't look down on him.

Compare this grammar with L. 10, Note (5). 买不起一千块钱的画 means “cannot afford to buy a painting for one thousand dollars.” V 得/不起 in this sense means “can/cannot afford to v.” Therefore, in addition to the meaning of “to belittle,” 看不起 also means “unable to afford to see...” 看得起, in addition to the meaning of “not to look down,” also means “able to afford to see...”

4. 他很穷, 看不起大夫。

He was so poor that he could not afford to see a doctor.

5. 那位大夫只知道赚钱, 拒绝为穷人看病, 所以大家都很看不起他。

That doctor only knew how to make money, and refused to see poor people. Therefore, people looked down upon him.

(4) 要解决下岗职工再就业的问题…

If we want to solve the problem of re-employing these unemployed workers, …

This 再 is a prefix which precedes a verb or a noun to form a new word which means “re-,” e.g. 再版 “reprint,” 再婚 “remarry,” 再教育 “reeducation,” and 再分配 “redistribution.” Compare this usage with the one in L. 2, Note (15).

## 练习

**I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.**

1. 什么是“不劳而获”？（换一句话说）
2. 为什么“下岗职工”会越来越多？下岗职工的再教育、再就业会面临什么困难？（看不起）
3. 在中国，用体力工作和用脑力工作的人，地位上有什么不同？在别的社会里也有这样的差异吗？（自古以来就…）
4. 在这一课中，出现了哪两种经济形式？各有什么优点和缺点？（把…分成…）
5. “有人没活儿干，有活儿没人干”这句话是什么意思？一般来说，什么样的活儿可能没人干？什么样的人可能会没有活儿干？
6. 访问几个中国的年轻人，了解他们对工作的想法。  
(在／从…身上)

**II. Choose the correct answer.**

1. 因为公司的经济有困难，我们只好\_\_\_\_\_过多的工作人员。  
①下岗    ②解雇    ③失业    ④退休

2. 我\_\_\_\_\_你的看法，但是请你不要强迫我接受你的看法。  
①尊重 ②尊敬 ③尊严 ④遵守
3. 他为了为穷人服务，在偏远的地区当大夫，赚的钱比他的同学都少。这是\_\_\_\_\_的。  
①勇气 ②很有勇气 ③体面 ④有体面
4. 他家里那么有钱，却喜欢不劳而获，我\_\_\_\_\_。  
①可耻他 ②真可耻 ③尊敬他 ④看不起他
5. 他有五个孩子，收入也不多，要\_\_\_\_\_生活真不容易。  
①保护 ②保持 ③维持 ④坚持

**III. Make a sentence with the underlined structure(s).**

1. 所有的工作都是值得尊重的，不劳而获才是可耻的。
2. 要解决下岗职工再就业的问题，得从改变人们对工作的想法开始。
3. 中国自古就把工作分成脑力工作和体力工作两类。
4. 中国老百姓总是把就业的责任放在政府的身上。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 在过去的中国社会里，男女的工作是怎么分配的?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (把…放在…的身上)
2. A: 在街上，到处都可以看到人们用手机打电话。  
B: 是啊，\_\_\_\_\_。 (换一句话说)
3. A: 老板，这本书我找不到，是不是已经不出版了呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (再 V.)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Chinese people divide jobs into two categories, “using the brain” and “using physical strength,” which is similar to Americans’ “white collar” (白领, báilǐng, white-collar) and “blue collar” (蓝领, lánlǐng, blue-collar). In other words, one refers to working in the office, and the other refers to laboring in the factory.
2. Chinese parents put all their hope in their children. They want their children to get the best education and they arrange everything in their children’s lives.

However, because they love their children too much (use 因为…的缘故), their children lose the ability and courage to confront challenges.

3. In the old economic system, because they could not learn anything new, many people did not advance after working in the same unit for many years. This is disadvantageous to the progress of the society. Therefore, I think that the phenomenon of *Xiagang* is not necessarily a bad thing. People will realize that only continuous learning can prevent one from being eliminated from the market.

## VI. Composition

When a worker in your country loses his job and has no income, does the government do anything to help him? If the same thing happens to a worker in China, does the socialist government do anything to help him? If you were to be laid off, in which country would you like to stay? Why? Explain your reasons from the angles of the job market, government involvement, the likelihood of getting help from families, living standards, and so on.

## 第四十课 北京的“古今中外”

从元代（1271-1368）开始，北京就是中国的国都。由于这个特殊的历史原因，在北京我们还可以看到许多保存完好的古代建筑，像故宫、天坛、颐和园等。此外<sup>(1)</sup>，也有许多寺庙是明（1368-1644）清（1644-1911）两朝的建筑。北京城里的街道也大致保持了原来的设计，以天安门为中心，向四方伸展出去。正因为

---

古今中外	gǔ jīn zhōng wài	<i>idm.</i>	ancient and modern; Chinese and foreign; at all times and in all places
元代	Yuándài	<i>n.</i>	the Yuan Dynasty
国都	guódū	<i>n.</i>	the national capital
保存	bǎocún	<i>v.</i>	preserve; keep (prevent from deteriorating) 这个博物馆里保存了许多古画。 冰箱的作用就是保存食物。
完好	wánhǎo	<i>adj.</i>	intact; whole
天坛	Tiāntán	<i>n.</i>	the Temple of Heaven
此外	cǐwài	<i>adv.</i>	besides; moreover
寺庙	sìmiào	<i>n.</i>	temple (The measure word is 座.)
——朝	...cháo	<i>n.</i>	dynasty
设计	shèjì	<i>v./n.</i>	design
四方	sìfāng	<i>n.</i>	four directions
伸展	shēnzhǎn	<i>v.</i>	extend; stretch

---

这种整齐的设计，北京人大都有很清楚的方向感。他们在说明方向的时候，很少说向左、向右，而是说往东、往西，或往南、往北。这当然要(2)比前后左右精确得多。

在北京可以看到五六百年前的建筑，也可以看到最现代的摩天大楼。几百年来变化不大的四合院儿和小

整齐	zhěngqí	<i>adj.</i>	orderly; neat 北京的街道非常整齐。 他的书都整整齐齐地放在桌子上。
大都	dàdōu	<i>adv.</i>	for the most part; mostly 出国的学生大都在美国留学。
方向	fāngxiàng	<i>n.</i>	direction
——感	...gǎn	<i>suffix</i>	sense of ... 责任感/安全感/危机感/紧张感
方向感	fāngxiànggǎn	<i>n.</i>	sense of direction
左	zuǒ	<i>adj.</i>	left
右	yòu	<i>adj.</i>	right
精确	jīngquè	<i>adj.</i>	precise
摩天大楼	mótian dàlóu	<i>n.</i>	skyscraper
变化	biànhuà	<i>v./n.</i>	change (变化 is an intransitive verb, whereas 改变 can be used both as a transitive and an intransitive verb.) 北京这几年变化得很快。
四合院儿	sìhéyuànér	<i>n.</i>	a traditional Chinese-style compound with rooms around a courtyard

胡同儿往往就保留在宽阔的环城公路旁边儿。为了举办2008年的奥林匹克运动会（奥运会），中国政府在北京建了国家体育场（鸟巢）、国家游泳中心（水立方）和国家大剧院。去北京的人都想看看这三个最现代化的建筑。

在衣食住行各方面，北京都是古今中外同时并

胡同儿	hútòngr	<i>n.</i>	traditional alleys in Beijing
宽阔	kuānkuò	<i>adj.</i>	wide; spacious
环城公路	huáncéng gōnglù	<i>n.</i>	the roads circling the city; ring road; loop road
举办	jǔbàn	<i>v.</i>	hold (an exhibition, contest, etc.)
奥林匹克	Àolínpīkè	<i>n.</i>	the Olympics; Olympic
运动会	yùndònghuì	<i>n.</i>	a sporting match; games
奥运会	Àoyùnhuì	<i>n.</i>	abbreviation of 奥林匹克运动会
体育场	tǐyùchǎng	<i>n.</i>	stadium
国家体育场	Guójia Tǐyùchǎng	<i>n.</i>	National Stadium
鸟巢	Niǎocháo	<i>n.</i>	Bird's Nest
游泳	yóuyǒng	<i>v.</i>	swim
国家游泳中心	Guójia Yóuyǒng Zhōngxīn	<i>n.</i>	National Aquatics Center
水立方	Shuǐlìfāng	<i>n.</i>	the Water Cube
剧院	jùyuàn	<i>n.</i>	theater
国家大剧院	Guójia Dà Jùyuàn	<i>n.</i>	National Centre for the Performing Arts
衣食住行	yī shí zhù xíng	<i>idm.</i>	“clothing, food, shelter and transportation” – the four basic necessities of life

存。最现代的欧洲轿车和人力三轮车同时出现在长安街上；北京烤鸭和肯德基炸鸡出现在同一幢楼里；一方面能欣赏到地道的京剧和相声，一方面又能看到最新的美国电影。我还发现许多美国的电视剧和电影都有中文配音。在我看来，有一点儿别扭，在中国人看来却是再自然不过了<sup>(3)</sup>。

---

轿车	jiào chē	<i>n.</i>	sedan
三轮车	sānlúnchē	<i>n.</i>	three-wheel cart
长安街	Cháng'ān Jiē	<i>n.</i>	Chang'an Street, a major street in Beijing
肯德基	Kěndéjī	<i>n.</i>	KFC the state of Kentucky is 肯塔基 Kěntājī
炸鸡	zhá jī	<i>n.</i>	fried chicken
幢	zhuàng	<i>AN</i>	measure word for buildings
欣赏	xīnshǎng	<i>v.</i>	enjoy; appreciate 这个小说太严肃了，能欣赏的人不多。
地道	dì dao	<i>adj.</i>	authentic; genuine; real 这家饭馆有地道的北京烤鸭。
京剧	Jīngjù	<i>n.</i>	Beijing Opera
相声	xiàng sheng	<i>n.</i>	traditional Chinese comic dialogue
电视剧	diànshūjù	<i>n.</i>	TV drama; soap opera
配音	pèi/yīn	<i>n./v.-o.</i>	dubbing, dub
别扭	biè niu	<i>adj.</i>	awkward
协调	xié tiáo	<i>adv./adj.</i>	in harmony; harmoniously, well-coordinated

---

正是这种古今中外协调并存的现象，给北京增添了许多趣味和活力。

---

增添	zēngtiān	v.	add; increase
趣味	qùwèi	n.	fun; interest
活力	huólì	n.	vigor; energy

## ★ 繁体字课文

從元代（1271-1368）開始，北京就是中國的國都。由於這個特殊的歷史原因，在北京我們還可以看到許多保存完好的古代建築，像故宮、天壇、頤和園等。此外<sup>(1)</sup>，也有許多寺廟是明（1368-1644）清（1644-1911）兩朝的建築。北京城裏的街道也大致保持了原來的設計，以天安門為中心，向四方伸展出去。正因為這種整齊的設計，北京人大都有很清楚的方向感。他們在說明方向的時候，很少說向左、向右，而是說往東、往西，或往南、往北。這當然要<sup>(2)</sup>比前後左右精確得多。

在北京可以看到五六百年前的建築，也可以看到最現代的摩天大樓。幾百年來變化不大的四合院兒和小胡同兒往往就保留在寬闊的環城公路旁邊兒。為了舉辦2008年的奧林匹克運動會（奧運會），中國政府在北京

建了國家體育場（鳥巢），國家游泳中心（水立方）和國家大劇院。去北京的人都想看看這三個最現代化的建築。

在衣食住行各方面，北京都是古今中外同時並存。最現代的歐洲轎車和人力三輪車同時出現在長安街上；北京烤鴨和肯德基炸雞出現在同一幢樓裏；一方面能欣賞到地道的京劇和相聲，一方面又能看到最新的美國電影。我還發現許多美國的電視劇和電影都有中文配音。在我看來，有一點兒彆扭，在中國人看來卻是再自然不過了(3)。

正是這種古今中外協調並存的現象，給北京增添了许多趣味和活力。

### 语法点

(1) ……此外，也有许多寺庙是明清两朝的建筑。

Besides, there are many temples from the Ming and Qing Dynasties.

此外，“besides (the afore-mentioned),” literally means “除了这个以外。” It may be followed by a pause in spoken language.

1. 中国经济上的发展吸引了许多优秀的人才回国。此外，政治上的开放也是留学生愿意回国服务的原因之一。

China's economic development has drawn many talented people back to the country. Moreover, political liberalness is also one of the reasons that students who have studied abroad are willing to come back to serve their country.

2. 现代社会中，妇女在经济上比较独立。此外，与男性的交往也越来越公开，越来越自由。

In modern society, women are relatively independent when it comes to economics. In addition, their association with men has become more and more open and free.

(2) 这当然要比前后左右精确得多。

This is, of course, much more precise than using “left,” “right,” “front,” and “back.”

When used in a sentence of comparison with 比, 要 shows estimation or judgment. 要 can occur either before the adjective or before 比。

1. 在我看来，中国的城乡差距要比美国的大得多。

In my opinion, the disparity between the city and the countryside in China is much larger than that in America.

2. 现代社会的竞争比过去的要激烈一点儿。

Competition in modern society is more intense than that in the past.

(3) 在中国人看来，却是再自然不过了。

But from the perspective of the Chinese, nothing could be more natural.

An adjective or descriptive phrase is put in the construction 再…不过了 to indicate the superlative.

1. 这样的生活真是再舒服不过了

Nothing is more comfortable than this kind of life.

2. 出租汽车又多又便宜，再方便不过了。

Taxis are both plentiful and cheap. Nothing could be more convenient.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 北京的地位从什么时候开始变得很重要？为什么？  
(由于…的原因)
2. 请说说在你的国家，有些什么保存完好的历史建筑？
3. 要缩小城乡差距，有什么有效的方法？(…，此外…)
4. 为什么大家都想出国留学？你想不想？为什么？  
(正因为…所以…)
5. 有人才外流现象的国家都是什么样的国家？(大都)
6. 你觉得听相声有趣还是看京剧有趣？(A 比 B 要 adj. 得多)
7. 北京街上最吸引你的是什么？(同时并存)
8. 你最常用哪一种方式跟朋友联系？为什么？(再…不过了)
9. 选一个你比较熟的中外城市，说一说这个城市的设计特色。
10. 请你说说北京城里有什么现象代表了“古”、“今”、“中”、“外”这四种特色？

### II. Choose the correct word to complete each sentence.

1. 电影快开始了，要是他还不到，我们就不必为他（保留，保存）这个座位了。
2. 由于他一直跟中国朋友保持联系，所以虽然已经离开中国五年了，中文能力还是（保持，保存）着一定的水平。
3. 有许多古老的、有趣的文化传统，在现代社会里还是值得（保留，保障）。
4. 现代的摩天大楼（改变，变化）了北京人住的观念。
5. 北京一直是中国的文化中心，(可，正)因为这个原因，我们必须让有代表性的中国建筑在北京保存下来。
6. 经过几千年的发展，文字产生了（变化，变成）是不可避免的。
7. 北京的街道（看起来，出现）非常整齐。
8. 我（发现，出现）最近市场上（发现，出现）了许多便宜的手机。

9. 传统社会把工作（大致，大都）分为两类，一类是用脑力的，一类是用体力的。

**III. Rewrite each sentence using the expressions provided.**

1. 学生所写的练习中常常又有繁体字又有简体字。（并存）
2. 这里的电影大都是中国电影。美国电影也很流行，吸引了不少人。（…，此外…）
3. 外国人认为京剧要比相声容易懂。（在…看来）
4. 为了改进发音，我常常看电视上用汉语配音的美国影片，可是光听起不了什么作用。（…不大）

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 为了让你了解中国人传统的生活，我决定请你住在四合院里，你看怎么样?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 （再…不过了）
2. A: 你去过中国，也在美国住过，你能不能在衣食住行方面比较一下这两个国家?  
B: 可以啊。比方说，\_\_\_\_\_。 （…要比…多了）
3. A: 你觉得外国影片用本国语言配音有什么优点?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 （…，此外…）
4. A: 我到北京去，想送一些礼物给朋友，你觉得送什么好?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 （再…不过了）

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. Because this temple has been largely preserved in its original design, nothing could be more appropriate than using it to demonstrate the architecture characteristics of Ming dynasty to students.
2. Recently a new type of play has appeared which presents western stories in the form of Beijing Opera. From my perspective, nothing could be more awkward than this kind of Beijing Opera which combines Chinese and western elements (use 并存).
3. Beijing is where the capital of China resides; besides, it is also China's cultural center. It is precisely because of this importance in politics and culture that modernization in Beijing is occurring much faster than in other areas of China.

4. The aviation transportation infrastructure in Southern China is centered in Shanghai. To the north one can reach Beijing in a couple of hours; to the south one can reach Guangzhou in a couple of hours. Nothing could be more convenient than the aviation transportation in Shanghai.

## VI. Composition

One of the problems of modernization in countries that had highly developed pre-modern societies is obstacles created by physical remnants of the former society. *Siheyuanr* (the traditional residential compound) and *Hutongr* (traditional alleys in Beijing) are examples of historical treasures which have greatly impeded future growth of the city. Policy makers often find themselves confronted with the question of what to preserve and how to modernize. If you were a city planner, what measures would you take to preserve the ancient heritage of the city while ensuring sufficient modernization and adaptability?

## 第四十一课 各有所长

甲：中国最近十几年来，汽车工业的发展非常快，私家车的数量和二十世纪八十年代比起来增加了好几倍。这是老百姓生活水平提高最好的证明。

乙：私家车的增加当然带来了很多便利，可是也会带来许多问题。中国人口多，都市很拥挤。如果人人都有汽车，不但停车是个问题，空气污染也会更严重。所以我认为中国应该多发展公共交通建设，像铁路、公路和机场。这么做，对大多数的中国人可能更有帮助。

各有所长	gè yǒu suǒ cháng	<i>idm.</i>	each has his own strong points
倍	bèi	<i>n.</i>	-times; -fold
证明	zhèngmíng	<i>n./v.</i>	proof, prove
都市	dūshì	<i>n.</i>	city; metropolis
停车	tíng//chē	<i>v.-o.</i>	park (one's car)
空气	kōngqì	<i>n.</i>	the air
污染	wūrǎn	<i>n./v.</i>	pollution, pollute
公路	gōnglù	<i>n.</i>	highway; main road
大多数	dàduōshù	<i>n.</i>	great majority

甲：其实，中国的公共交通建设是相当不错的，尤其是在大城市里，都有非常便宜的公共汽车、电车或地铁。不过，现在大家的收入增加了，在生活上也想有点儿享受，过些舒服日子。买辆汽车，装个空调，不算是<sup>(1)</sup>奢侈浪费。美国哪个家庭没有汽车、空调啊？

乙：中国和美国的情形不一样。美国的面积不比中国小，可是人口只有中国的四分之一<sup>(2)</sup>；中国不比美国大，可是人口却是美国的四倍。

甲：发展的方式不能完全一样，这我同意。但是舒适不舒适是有个客观标准的。汽车比自行车方便，

---

电车	diàncar	<i>n.</i>	(electric) tram
地铁	dìtiě	<i>n.</i>	subway
享受	xiǎngshòu	<i>n./v.</i>	ease and comfort; enjoyment, enjoy
过日子	guò rì.zi	<i>v.-o.</i>	lead a life
日子	rì.zi	<i>n.</i>	day; date
装	zhuāng	<i>v.</i>	set up; install
算是	suànshì	<i>v.</i>	be considered as; be regarded as
奢侈	shēchǐ	<i>adj.</i>	luxurious; extravagant
四分之一	sì fēn zhī yī		one fourth
舒适	shūshì	<i>adj./n.</i>	comfortable, comfort
客观	kèguān	<i>adj.</i>	objective

---

有空调的屋子比没有空调的舒服，抽水马桶比传统的厕所卫生，这不都是很明显的吗？

乙：你总是说舒服、方便。你要知道，舒服方便的东西不一定对健康有帮助。我真羡慕中国人能骑自行车上下班。这不但解决了交通堵塞的问题，还为每个人提供了运动的机会。在美国许多大城市里，并没有为自行车预备的车道，就是(3)要骑车上下班也做不到。

甲：当然，每一种制度、每一种生活方式都有长处也有短处。这就叫做“各有所长，各有所短”。短处应该改进，长处应该保留。

抽水马桶	chōushuǐ máitǒng	n.	flushing toilet
羡慕	xiànmù	v.	admire; envy
上下班	shàng xià/bān	v.-o.	go to work and get off work 上班: go to work 下班: get off work
运动	yùndòng	v./n.	exercise
车道	chēdào	n.	(traffic) lane
长处	cháng.chù	n.	strong point; good point
短处	duǎn.chù	n.	shortcoming; weakness
各有所短	gè yǒu suǒ duǎn	idm.	each has his own shortcomings

## ★ 繁体字课文

甲：中國最近十幾年來，汽車工業的發展非常快，私家車的數量和二十世紀八十年代比起來增加了好幾倍。這是老百姓生活水平提高最好的證明。

乙：私家車的增加當然帶來了很多便利，可是也會帶來許多問題。中國人口多，都市很擁擠。如果人人都有汽車，不但停車是個問題，空氣污染也會更嚴重。所以我認為中國應該多發展公共交通建設，像鐵路、公路和機場。這麼做，對大多數的中國人可能更有幫助。

甲：其實，中國的公共交通建設是相當不錯的，尤其是在大城市裏，都有非常便宜的公共汽車、電車或地鐵。不過，現在大家的收入增加了，在生活上也想有點兒享受，過些舒服日子。買輛汽車，裝個空調，不算是(1)奢侈浪費。美國哪個家庭沒有汽車、空調啊？

乙：中國和美國的情形不一樣。美國的面積不比中國小，可是人口只有中國的四分之一(2)；中國不比美國大，可是人口卻是美國的四倍。

甲：發展的方式不能完全一樣，這我同意。但是舒適不舒適是有個客觀標準的。汽車比自行車方便，有空調的屋子比沒有空調的舒服，抽水馬桶比傳統的廁所衛生，這不都是很明顯的嗎？

乙：你總是說舒服、方便。你要知道，舒服方便的東西不一定對健康有幫助。我真羨慕中國人能騎自行車上下班。這不但解決了交通堵塞的問題，還為每個人提供了運動的機會。在美國許多大城市

裏，並沒有為自行車預備的車道，就是(3)要騎車上下班也做不到。

甲：當然，每一種制度、每一種生活方式都有長處也有短處。這就叫做“各有所長，各有所短”。短處應該改進，長處應該保留。

## 语法点

(1) 买辆汽车，装个空调，不算是奢侈浪费。

It should not be regarded as extravagance or a waste to buy a car or install air conditioning.

算 means “to be considered as” or “to be regarded as.” When the object is polysyllabic, 是 is sometimes added after 算. The “…算是” pattern is always passive sentence. One can never say 我算他是一个好人. See L. 30, Note (2).

1. 他可以算是今年最好的学生。

He may be considered this year's best student.

2. 跟南方比起来，北京的夏天不算热。

Compared to the South, Beijing's summer does not count as hot.

3. 要是一个星期看完这本书，就算是很快了。

Finishing this book in one week would surely be considered fast.

(2) 美国…人口只有中国的四分之一。

The population of America is only one fourth (the population) of China.

X 是 Y 的四分之一 means “X is one fourth of Y.” 三分之二 means “two thirds.” 四分之三 means “three quarters.” 十分之九 means “nine tenths.” For percentages, use 百分之 + number. For example, 百分之十 is “ten percent.”

1. 他把收入的四分之一花在衣服上。

He spent one fourth of his income on clothes.

2. 百分之五十以上的学生都去过中国。

More than fifty percent of students have been to China.

(3) 就是要骑车上下班也做不到。

One cannot ride a bicycle to commute to work even if one wants to.

就是…也… is the same as the pattern 即使…也… . See L. 32, Note

(2). Other variations of this pattern are “就算…也…” and “就算是…也…”

1. 就是小孩子，也要买门票。

Everyone needs to buy an admission ticket, even if he is a child.

2. 就是你有钱，也不应该浪费呀！。

You shouldn't waste even if you are rich.

3. 就算你吃得少，如果不运动，还是瘦不下来。

If you don't exercise, you won't be able to slim down even if you eat very little.

4. 你的收入就算是比我多，我也不羡慕你。

I don't envy you, even though your income is higher than mine.

## ✍ 练习

I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 有什么方法可以减少空气污染？（…，这样做，…）

2. 你知道在美国人口中，有多少中国人吗？（…分之…）

3. 听说住在纽约 (New York) 的人宁可坐出租汽车上下班，也不愿意自己开车，为什么？（因为，再说，就是…也…）

4. 在中国，最有名的快餐店是哪一家？（算是…）

5. 除了私家车的增加以外，还有哪些情形可以证明老百姓的生活水平提高了？（此外）

6. 你羡慕中国人骑自行车上下班吗？为什么？

7. 有哪些客观的标准可以证明一个城市达到了现代化的水平？

8. 你认为死记硬背算不算是学中文最好的方法？

**II. Make a sentence using each underlined structure.**

1. 大城市里并没有为自行车预备的车道，就是要骑车上下班也做不到。
2. 私家车的数量和二十年代八十年代比起来，增加了不少。
3. 买辆汽车，装个空调，不算是奢侈浪费。
4. 我认为中国应该多发展公共交通建设。

**III. Rewrite the sentence using question word (e.g. 谁, 哪儿, 哪) to make it a rhetorical question.**

1. 这么简单的事，人人都会做。
2. 现在大家的收入都增加了，人人都想过舒服一点儿的日子。
3. 任何一个大城市都有交通堵塞的问题。
4. 美国快餐太受欢迎了，无论什么地方都买得到汉堡包。

**IV. Fill in each blank with one character from the list.**

少，低，几，多，使，观，高，此，助，当，一，生，对

要解决空气污染问题，有好\_\_\_\_种方式。\_\_\_\_使用公共交通工具，少开私家车，可以减\_\_\_\_空气污染，\_\_\_\_空气干净一些。提\_\_\_\_私家车的价钱，降\_\_\_\_公共交通工具的票价 (piàojìa, fare)，也是方法之\_\_\_\_。\_\_\_\_外，在城市里多种树 (zhòngshù, to plant trees) 也是一个相\_\_\_\_不错的办法。由于工厂所产\_\_\_\_的污染也是空气变差的主要原因，我们得找出一个客\_\_\_\_的标准来限制工厂的空气污染。我想，这些方法\_\_\_\_提高空气的质量都有帮\_\_\_\_。

**V. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 请你说明你怎么分配每个月的收入？都用在哪些方面？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...分之...)

2. A: 听说你换了个新工作，觉得怎么样？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...和...比起来)

3. A: 公司决定派张先生去北京新设立的办事处，你还是在原来的单位，没有改变。

B: 什么? \_\_\_\_\_, 为什么\_\_\_\_\_? (A 不比 B *adj.*)

4. A: 在你看来，在美国哪一个社会问题最严重?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (算是…)

#### VI. Translate into Chinese.

1. I think everyone has his/her own strong and weak points. You don't need to force yourself to do things that you are obviously not going to achieve; besides, you don't need to envy other people's strong points. It is very possible that they are no better than you.
2. The income of this family is only one third of ours, but they lead a very extravagant and prodigal life. For example, they drive an imported European sedan to commute to work.
3. To most people, enjoying fresh air is considered a basic requirement of life. However, the rapidly increasing number of cars has brought a very serious air pollution problem. This situation still has not been improved even though the price of cars has been raised much higher than before.

#### VII. Composition

Everyone wants to enjoy the material comforts of air-conditioning in hot summer months, a quick car-ride to work, and convenient access to electricity and telecommunications. However, these luxuries come at a price. They pollute our environment, use up our resources, and contribute to the problem of over-crowding. Do you think that everyone, or anyone, has the right to a life filled with these luxuries? What kinds of responsibilities come with the blessings of the technological advances that we now enjoy? Would it be right for an American to have these amenities but not a Chinese citizen? How about a person of our generation versus our grandchildren or great-grandchildren? Do you see any equitable solutions to this dilemma?

## 第四十二课 香港

1997年7月1日是中国当代史上一个重要的日子。从这一天起，中国对香港恢复行使主权，结束了香港一个半(1)世纪的殖民地历史。

在1840年到1842年的鸦片战争中，中国被英国打败了。清朝政府除了付给英国大量的赔款以外，还把

当代	dāngdài	<i>adj.</i>	contemporary
当代史	dāngdàishǐ	<i>n.</i>	contemporary history
恢复	huīfù	<i>v.</i>	resume
行使	xíngshǐ	<i>v.</i>	perform; exercise
主权	zhǔquán	<i>n.</i>	sovereignty
结束	jiéshù	<i>v.</i>	finish; conclude
殖民地	zhímíndì	<i>n.</i>	colony
鸦片	yāpiàn	<i>n.</i>	opium
战争	zhànzhēng	<i>n.</i>	war
鸦片战争	Yāpiàn Zhànzhēng	<i>n.</i>	the Opium War
英国	Yīngguó	<i>n.</i>	Britain; England
打败	dǎbèi	<i>v.</i>	defeat; beat, be defeated
大量	dàliàng	<i>adj./adv.</i>	a large number; a great deal 大量的生词/大量进口/大量投 资在交通建设上
赔款	péikuǎn	<i>n.</i>	indemnity; reparations

香港割让给了英国。鸦片战争是帝国主义侵略中国的开始。从此以后的一百多年，中国一再战败，受到了种种不平等的待遇。香港的回归，象征着这个耻辱的结束。

一百五十年来，在英国人的统治下<sup>(2)</sup>，香港在政治、经济、文化、语言各方面都和中国大陆有了明显的不同。中国政府为了适应这两个不同的体制，对香港采取了“一国两制”的政策，使香港在回归以后能继续发展。所谓“港人治港”，就是这个意思。

---

割让	gēràng	v.	cede
帝国	dìguó	n.	empire
——主义	zhǔyì	n.	-ism; doctrine
帝国主义	dìguó zhǔyì	n.	imperialism
战败	zhàngbài	v.	be defeated
种种	zhǒngzhǒng	adj.	all kinds of
待遇	dài yù	n.	treatment
回归	huíguī	n./v.	return
耻辱	chǐrǔ	n.	humiliation; shame
统治	tǒngzhì	n./v.	governance, rule; govern
适应	shìyìng	v.	suit; adapt; get with it
体制	tǐzhì	n.	system
一国两制	yìguó liǎngzhì	n.	one country, two systems
港人治港	Gǎngrén zhì Gǎng		“Hong Kong citizens govern Hong Kong”

上个星期我去了一趟香港。除了特别行政区的区旗以外，真看不出有任何改变！我的香港朋友都说这是一次平稳的过渡。回归前后<sup>(3)</sup>，香港的股票和房地产价格也相当稳定。这是香港人对将来充满信心<sup>(4)</sup>最好的证明。

香港一向以英语为官方语言，而一般人日常生活中常说广东话。普通话在香港本来是很不“普通”的。但是我相信，随着香港的回归，普通话一定会渐渐成为香港人通用的语言。

趟	tàng	<i>AN</i>	measure word for a trip
特别行政区	Tèbié Xíngzhèngqū	<i>n.</i>	Special Administrative Region
区旗	qūqí	<i>n.</i>	regional flag 国旗: national flag
平稳	píngwěn	<i>adj.</i>	smooth and steady; stable
…前后	...qiánhòu		around the time of ...
股票	gǔpiào	<i>n.</i>	stock
房地产	fángdìchǎn	<i>n.</i>	real estate
价格	jiàgé	<i>n.</i>	price
将来	jiānglái	<i>n.</i>	future; in the future
充满	chōngmǎn	<i>v.</i>	be full of; brimming with
信心	xìnxīn	<i>n.</i>	confidence
官方	guānfāng	<i>adj.</i>	official
成为	chéngwéi	<i>v.</i>	become; turn into
通用	tōngyòng	<i>adj.</i>	in common use; current

## ★繁体字课文

1997年7月1日是中國當代史上一個重要的日子。從這一天起，中國對香港恢復行使主權，結束了香港一個半(1)世紀的殖民地歷史。

在1840年到1842年的鴉片戰爭中，中國被英國打敗了。清朝政府除了付給英國大量的賠款以外，還把香港割讓給了英國。鴉片戰爭是帝國主義侵略中國的開始。從此以後的一百多年，中國一再戰敗，受到了種種不平等的待遇。香港的回歸，象徵著這個恥辱的結束。

一百五十年來，在英國人的統治下(2)，香港在政治、經濟、文化、語言各方面都和中國大陸有了明顯的不同。中國政府為了適應這兩個不同的體制，對香港採取了“一國兩制”的政策，使香港在回歸以後能繼續發展。所謂“港人治港”，就是這個意思。

上個星期我去了一趟香港。除了特別行政區的區旗以外，真看不出有任何改變！我的香港朋友都說這是一次平穩的過渡。回歸前後(3)，香港的股票和房地產價格也相當穩定。這是香港人對將來充滿信心(4)最好的證明。

香港一向以英語為官方語言，而一般人日常生活中常說廣東話。普通話在香港本來是很不“普通”的。但是我相信，隨著香港的回歸，普通話一定會漸漸成為香港人通用的語言。

## 语法点

(1) …结束了香港一个半世纪的殖民地历史。

… ended one century and a half of colonial history in Hong Kong.

In L. 41, Note (2), we learned how to read simple fractions in Chinese. Here we are going to learn how to read a mixed number (a whole number plus a proper fraction) in Chinese.

For an expression of a number plus a half, the pattern is “No. + AN + 半” or “No. + AN + 半 + (的) n.”

五块半 = five and a half dollars

两年半 = two and a half years

一个半月 = one and a half months

两斤半 (的) 牛肉 = 2 and a half kilograms of beef

七个半星期的课程 = 7 and a half weeks of program

For a whole number and a proper fraction, the pattern is “No. 又…分之…”

一又四分之一 (个) 世纪 = 1 and 1/4 centuries

四又二分之一 (个) 小时 = 4 and 1/2 hours

五又四分之三公斤 = 5 and 3/4 kilograms

(2) 在英国的统治下，香港在各方面和中国大陆有明显的不同。

Under British dominion, there were clear differences between Hong Kong and China in every regard.

When used with a substantive or verbal phrase, 在…下 means “under certain conditions.”

1. 在这种情形下，“入乡随俗”是最好的办法。

In this type of situation, “do as the Romans do” is the best way [to act].

2. 在中美关系不断加强的情形下，英语的重要性渐渐增加。

With the continuous strengthening of Sino-American relations, the importance of English is gradually growing.

(3) 回归前后，香港的股票和房地产价格也相当稳定。

Around the time of the Return, Hong Kong's stock and real estate prices were also quite steady.

前后 occurs after a word or phrase denoting an approximate point of time.

1. 1949 年前后，中国无论在政治方面、经济方面，都相当不稳定。

Around 1949, China was unstable both politically and economically.

2. 大概在他上小学前后，家庭的经济情况起了变化。

His family's economic situation changed about the time he went to elementary school.

(4) 这是香港人对将来充满信心最好的证明。

This is the best proof that Hong Kong people are full of confidence in their future.

The object of 充满 is usually an abstract noun; e.g. 充满信心，充满希望，充满同情. When there is a recipient of the 充满… phrase, the recipient is always preposed with a 对.

1. 我对新的一年充满了希望。

I am full of hope for the new year.

2. 他一直努力学习，对自己充满了信心。

He has been studying diligently and is filled with confidence.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions with the expressions when provided.

1. 你有没有注意过香港回归以后的发展？在政治、社会、经济各方面都跟回归以前一样吗？
2. 学者们都认为中国在世界上的地位会越来越重要，为什么？  
(在…下)

3. 所谓“港人治港”是什么意思？这种制度可以用在中国其他地区吗？
4. 请你说说看：(1)乒乓外交(2)香港回归(3)北京奥运，这三件事对中国来说，有什么意义？
5. 你对自己的将来有什么计划？为什么有这样的想法？  
(对…充满…)

**II. Rearrange the phrases in parentheses to make a grammatically correct sentence.**

1. (不平等，一再，他，的待遇，种种，受到)，使他对当地人相当失望。
2. 1997年7月1日 (的日子，中国，主权，恢复，对香港，是，行使)。
3. (“港人治港”，的统治，对香港，的政策，采取了，中国)，这使香港人对将来充满信心。
4. (改革开放，证明，的消失，最好的，铁饭碗制度，是，成功)

**III. Make a sentence using each underlined structure.**

1. 这是香港人对将来有信心最好的证明。
2. 鸦片战争是帝国主义侵略中国的开始。
3. 香港的回归，象征着这个耻辱的结束。
4. 1997年7月1日是中国当代史上一个重要的日子。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 现在房地产的价格越来越低，这对经济有什么影响?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (在…下)
2. A: 你是什么时候开始对电脑感兴趣的?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (…，从此以后，…)
3. A: 你选择投资房地产，而不是股票市场，为什么?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (对…充满…)

## V. Translate into Chinese.

1. Because they repeatedly lost battles (在…的情形下), the Qing government could not do anything but cede Hong Kong to Great Britain in the nineteenth century. From then on, Hong Kong was governed by Great Britain, opening a century and a half of colonial history.
2. The change in the district flag symbolized the beginning of China's exertion of sovereignty over Hong Kong. In the next fifty years, China will adopt the policy of "one country, two systems" in order to keep the economic development of Hong Kong.
3. Around the time that Hong Kong returned to China, there were an increasing number of people starting to study *Putonghua*, because after 1997 Hong Kong would no longer be a colony of Great Britain. The official language would be changed from English to *Putonghua*.

## VI. Composition

In her autobiographical novel,<sup>1</sup> Wang Anyi (王安忆), a contemporary PRC author, writes,

“我们在上海这城市里，就像是个外来户（foreign family）。…普通话是我们家中的语言，这使我跟人交往有了困难。”

In other words, even after fifty years of CCP leadership and advocacy of *Putonghua* in Shanghai, everyone still speaks the Shanghai dialect, and those who do not speak the dialect have a hard time functioning as fully accepted individuals in local society. Now that Hong Kong has returned to mainland leadership, the official language there is also *Putonghua*. However, given Wang Anyi's statement about the use of Shanghai dialect in Shanghai, what do you predict about the acceptance of *Putonghua* in Hong Kong? In short, do you agree with the textbook's view that everyone in Hong Kong will be speaking *Putonghua* instead of Cantonese in the near future, or do you think that they will retain their original language in all but the most formal situations? What factors affect their choice of language, and what are the forces for and against change?

---

<sup>1</sup> Wang, Anyi. *Jishi he Xugou: Chuangzao Shijie Fangshi zhi Yizhong* (Reality and Fiction: One way of Creating the World). Beijing: People's Literature Press, 1993.

## 第四十三课 怀旧

今天我去琉璃厂买了一本 1969 年出版的《毛主席语录》。我发现只有外国人在那家书店里看文革时期的杂志和当年的一些宣传画儿。

外国人来到中国，常常带着一定的怀旧情绪。他们在找一个过去的中国。早一点儿的是明代（1368-1644）、清代（1644-1911）的中国，晚一点儿的是文革时期（1966-1976）的中国。

这次来到北京以后，我才发现外国专家学者在美

怀旧	huáijiù	n./v.	a sense of nostalgia; nostalgic sentiments, recollect the good old days
语录	yǔlù	n.	recorded utterance; book of quotations
文革	Wéngé	n.	Cultural Revolution (an abbreviation of 文化大革命) 革命 géming: revolution
时期	shíqī	n.	(time) period
当年	dāngnián	t.w.	in those years (days)
情绪	qíngxù	n.	feeling; sentiments
专家	zhuānjiā	n.	expert

国所经常讨论的话题，并不见得是一般中国人最感兴趣(1)的题目。例如“文化大革命”，在美国到今天还是“当代中国”研究的主要议题，但是现在谈“文革”的中国人实在不多了。

“文革”对中国人来说，是过去的历史。现在他们对“外资企业”、“合资企业”和“商品房”的兴趣远远超过对“文革”的兴趣。对一个二十几岁的年轻人来说，“文革”只剩下一个模糊的印象；就像越南战争，对美国大学生来说，已经是他们出生以前的

感兴趣	gǎn xìngqù	v.-o.	be interested in 对中国历史很感兴趣。
议题	yìtí	n.	subject under discussion; issue
外资	wàizī	n.	foreign capital
企业	qǐyè	n.	enterprise; industry; business
合资	hézī	adj.	joint venture
远远	yuǎnyuǎn	adv.	far (in degree); by far
超过	chāoguò	v.	exceed; surpass
剩下	shèng.xia	v.	be left (over); remain 买了书以后，我只剩下 10 块钱了。
模糊	mó.hu	adj.	vague; blurred
越南	Yuènán	n.	Vietnam
出生	chūshēng	v.	be born 我出生在 1981 年。 我是在北京出生的。

历史了。

有些外国人，一提起中国，就联想到“农业社会”、“大家庭”、“小老婆”、“缠脚”、“舞龙”、“舞狮”这些所谓的中国传统。其实这些“中国特色”不是早已不存在了，就是正在快速地消失。

一个在现代中国城市里长大的孩子，从小喝可口可乐，吃麦当劳，看美国电视剧，穿牛仔裤、T恤，骑山地车，玩电子游戏，他们和美国孩子的不同越来越

提起	tíqǐ	v.-c.	mention; speak of
联想	liánxiǎng	v.	associate; connect in the mind
农业	nóngyè	n.	agriculture
小老婆	xiǎolǎo.po	n.	mistress; concubine
缠脚	chán//jiǎo	v.-o.	foot-binding
舞龙	wǔlóng	v.-o.	Chinese dragon dance
舞狮	wǔshī	v.-o.	Chinese lion dance
消失	xiāoshī	v.	disappear
从小	cóngxiǎo	adv.	from childhood
麦当劳	Màidāngláo	n.	McDonald's
牛仔裤	niúzăikù	n.	jeans
T恤	tī xù	n.	T-shirt
山地车	shāndìchē	n.	mountain bike
电子游戏	diànzǐ yóuxì	n.	video game
游戏	yóuxì	n.	game

小了，要想在现代的北京找到古代的中国，恐怕不是很容易了。

在中国看不到舞龙、舞狮，老外难免<sup>(2)</sup>有点儿失望，但是高兴也好，失望也好<sup>(3)</sup>，中国的现代化是挡不住的。

---

恐怕	kǒngpà	<i>adv.</i>	be afraid
老外	lǎowài	<i>n.</i>	(colloquial) foreigner
难免	nánmiǎn	<i>adv./adj.</i>	hard to avoid, inevitable
失望	shīwàng	<i>v.</i>	be disappointed 他对这次比赛的成绩很失望
高兴	gāoxìng	<i>adj.</i>	happy
挡不住	dǎng.buzhù	<i>v.-c.</i>	be unable to (be) resist(ed); be unable to (be) stop(ped)

## ★ 繁体字课文

今天我去琉璃廠買了一本 1969 年出版的《毛主席語錄》。我發現只有外國人在那家書店裏看文革時期的雜誌和當年的一些宣傳畫兒。

外國人來到中國，常常帶著一定的懷舊情緒。他們在找一個過去的中國。早一點兒的是明代（1368-1644）、清代（1644-1911）的中國，晚一點兒的是文革時期（1966-1976）的中國。

這次來到北京以後，我才發現外國專家學者在美國所經常討論的話題，並不見得是一般中國人最感興趣<sup>(1)</sup>的題目。例如“文化大革命”，在美國到今天還是“當代中國”研究的主要議題，但是現在談“文革”的中國人實在不多了。

“文革”對中國人來說，是過去的歷史。現在他們對“外資企業”、“合資企業”和“商品房”的興趣遠遠超過對“文革”的興趣。對一個二十幾歲的年輕人來說，“文革”只剩下一個模糊的印象；就像越南戰爭，對美國大學生來說，已經是他們出生以前的歷史了。

有些外國人，一提起中國，就聯想到“農業社會”、“大家庭”、“小老婆”、“纏腳”、“舞龍”、“舞獅”這些所謂的中國傳統。其實這些“中國特色”不是早已不存在了，就是正在快速地消失。

一個在現代中國城市裏長大的孩子，從小喝可口可樂，吃麥當勞，看美國電視劇，穿牛仔褲、T恤，騎山地車，玩電子遊戲，他們和美國孩子的不同越來越小了，要想在現代的北京找到古代的中國，恐怕不是很容易了。

在中國看不到舞龍、舞獅，老外難免<sup>(2)</sup>有點兒失望，但是高興也好，失望也好<sup>(3)</sup>，中國的現代化是擋不住的。

## 语法点

(1) …并不见得是一般中国人最感兴趣的题目。

(This) is not a topic that most interests ordinary Chinese people.

To say “to be interested in something,” use 对…感兴趣 or 对…有兴趣. Adverbs such as 不/没, 很, 特别, 非常, 相当 may be added before 感兴趣 or 有兴趣.

1. 我对文革时期的历史特别感兴趣。

I am especially interested in the history of the Cultural Revolution.

2. 你对经济有没有兴趣?

Are you interested in economics?

(2) 看不到舞龙、舞狮，老外难免有点儿失望。

It is unavoidable for foreigners to feel a bit disappointed about not seeing the dragon or lion dances.

难免 is an adverb used in the second clause of a sentence to indicate a rather unavoidable result of action in the first clause. It differs from 一定 in that it conveys a lower degree of inevitability. Note that after 难免 both positive and negative forms mean the same. Therefore, 难免会生气 and 难免不生气 both mean “will get mad unavoidably.” 难免 is usually used in a proposition instead of a description.

1. 说外国语的时候，难免会说错。

=说外国语的时候，难免不说错。

It is hard not to make mistakes when speaking a foreign language.

2. 好几个人住在一间小屋子里，难免会发生冲突。

=好几个人住在一间小屋子里，难免不会发生冲突。

When several people live in one small room, it is difficult to avoid conflict.

(3) 高兴也好，失望也好，中国的现代化是挡不住的。

It doesn't matter whether one is happy or disappointed about it, China's modernization is unstoppable.

With two or more words or phrases which are opposite or related in meaning, …也好, …也好 shows by examples that whatever the circumstances may be, the outcome remains unchanged. It is often used in conjunction with 都, 也, or other such adverbs in the second clause.

- 麦当劳也好，肯德基也好，中国人对这些外来的事务都很感兴趣。

The Chinese are very interested in anything foreign, whether it is McDonald's or Kentucky Fried Chicken.

- 中国话也好，日本话也好，什么外国语他都不感兴趣。

He is not interested in any foreign language, whether it is Chinese or Japanese.

- 在国内念书也好，到国外留学也好，英语能力都相当重要。

English proficiency is very important, no matter if one is studying at home or abroad.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the expressions when provided.

1. 你到中国来，是想看看现代的中国，还是传统的中国？

(…也好，…也好)

2. 看到传统的中国慢慢消失，现代的中国快速发展，你有什么想法？为什么？（挡不住）

3. 你对中国哪一方面的研究议题最感兴趣？为什么？

4. 在你的国家，政府比较重视经济的发展还是教育的发展？为什么？（远远超过…）

5. 一提起中国制造的商品，你就会联想到什么？

6. 老外常常带着一定的怀旧情绪去找一个过去的中国。中国人到美国去，是不是也有同样的情形？（在找…的美国）

7. 说外国语说错了，你会不好意思吗？（难免）

8. 外国人要在中国就业或是成为中国居民，最大的困难/烦恼是什么？（恐怕是…）

9. 对你来说，讨论越南战争、文化大革命这些当年的历史议题有没有意义？为什么？（早已…）

**II. Identify and correct the error.**

1. 宣传画儿往往 带到 一定的 政治信息。

①      ②      ③      ④

2. 现在的经济学家对“合资企业”这类的 议题很兴趣。

①      ②      ③      ④

3. 我很失望这里的麦当劳，因为服务没有我想象中的那么好。

①      ②      ③      ④

4. 你一提起中国城，我就联想了“舞龙”、“舞狮”这些

①      ②      ③

正在快速消失的中国传统。

④

**III. Fill in each blank with one character from the list.**

几, 去, 对, 分, 感, 要, 怕

批评外国学者专家\_\_\_\_当代的中国不\_\_\_\_兴趣，恐\_\_\_\_是对他们研究的了解不够。历史系 (xì, department) 研究的是过\_\_\_\_的历史，所以“文革”当然是主\_\_\_\_的题目。中文系所讨论的，是\_\_\_\_千年来的文学著作，但这些只是中国研究的一部\_\_\_\_，并不是全部。

在, 对, 着, 绪, 生, 已, 过

在政治系和经济系里，学者对当代的兴趣远远超\_\_\_\_了对过去的兴趣。他们很清楚中国是个很大的国家，只要有一点儿小小的改变都会\_\_\_\_世界产\_\_\_\_重大的影响。所谓的怀旧情\_\_\_\_，也许在历史系、中文系还存\_\_\_\_着，可是在政治、经济方面，学者早\_\_\_\_向前看，不再带\_\_\_\_任何怀旧的想法了。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 学校提供的外国语言课都很好，真不知道该学中文还是日文。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (...也好, …也好)

2. A: 这孩子天天都在玩电子游戏，真让人担心。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (难免)

3. A: 空气污染越来越严重了，这都是因为使用私家车上下班的人越来越多的缘故！

B: 你能怎么办呢？\_\_\_\_\_！ (挡不住)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. I thumbed through this book once when it was first published ten years ago. Because I was not interested in ancient history, only a vague impression of the book remained in my mind. I guess your understanding of it is definitely far greater than mine.
2. It is inescapable for some Chinese people to associate American food with either Coca-Cola or McDonald's (use 一提起). In fact, whether it is Coca-Cola or McDonald's, neither can completely represent (代表, dàibiǎo) American food. I am afraid it is not easy to find traditional American food even in a big city like Beijing.
3. No matter whether it is in newspapers or in magazines, there is a lot of discussion going on about the issue of joint-capital industries. Everyone is filled with a certain hope, because a lot of economic experts and scholars are publicizing the success brought by this new industrial mode.

#### VI. Composition

Right now you are an American (or at least a foreign national) in China. Did you come to see old Chinese society? Were you upset when you saw that China had changed over the last hundred years? If your interest in China is in its history or events of an era which is now past, why are you interested in that time period? How can understanding the past help us to deal with the present? What are the difficulties with studying current situations as opposed to events that have already passed?

## 第四十四课 学习外语

每天早晨，在校园里都能看到许多中国学生在专心地学习英文，有的念课本，有的听收音机。我还在报上看见天津一家百货商场设了一个“英语桥”，用这个来吸引顾客。果然<sup>(1)</sup>，这个办法立刻引起了大家的注意，“英语桥”上热闹得不得了<sup>(2)</sup>。许多人觉得一边儿买东西，一边儿<sup>(3)</sup>练习英语实在是一举两得。北京的

---

外语	wàiyǔ	<i>n.</i>	foreign language
专心	zhuānxīn	<i>adj.</i>	concentrate one's attention; be absorbed
念	niàn	<i>v.</i>	read aloud
课本	kèběn	<i>n.</i>	textbook
天津	Tiānjīn	<i>n.</i>	Tianjin
桥	qiáo	<i>n.</i>	bridge
果然	guǒrán	<i>adv.</i>	as expected; sure enough
引起	yǐnqǐ	<i>v.</i>	raise; arouse
不得了	bùdéliao	<i>adv.</i>	extremely; exceedingly 贵得不得了/忙得不得了
一边儿A — 边儿B	yìbiānr A yìbiānr B	<i>conj.</i>	doing A while doing B; doing A as doing B
一举两得	yì jǔ liǎng dé	<i>idm.</i>	kill two birds with one stone

---

公园儿、街头、校园也常有所谓的“英语角”，任何人都可以到这样的地方来用英语互相(4)交谈。

中国孩子一进小学就必须开始学习英语，有的甚至从幼儿园就开始了，中年人学英语的也很多。这一方面当然是因为英语是世界上最通行的一种语言，另一方面也反映了中国人对学习外来事物的热情。

美国中文教学的历史相当短。一般大学到了二十世纪七十年代才开始教中文。第二次世界大战以前，只有少数大学开中文课。美国大学的文学、历史和语

街头	jiētóu	<i>p.w.</i>	street corner; street
角	jiǎo	<i>n.</i>	corner
互相	hùxiāng	<i>adv.</i>	mutually; with each other
幼儿园	yòu'ér yuán	<i>n.</i>	kindergarten; nursery school
通行	tōngxíng	<i>adj.</i>	current (practice); general (practice) 全国通行的办法/全世界通行的语言
外来	wàilái	<i>adj.</i>	outside; external; foreign
事物	shìwù	<i>n.</i>	thing; object
教学	jiàoxué	<i>n.</i>	teaching; education; pedagogy
第二次 世界大战	Diì èr Cì Shìjìè Dàzhàn	<i>n.</i>	the Second World War (1939-1945)
少数	shǎoshù	<i>adj./n.</i>	small number; few; minority
开	kāi	<i>v.</i>	offer (a course)

言课程一向是以欧美为中心；一直到朝鲜战争以后，美国才渐渐认识到太平洋地区，尤其是中国和日本，在国际事务上的重要性。

最近几年，学习亚洲语言的美国学生虽然增加了一些，但毕竟<sup>(5)</sup>还是少数。中美关系越来越密切，我相信学习中文的学生也会不断地增加。

中国学生学习英语也好，美国学生学习中文也好，大多数人都有一个功利的动机，希望学会一种外语，对将来找工作有好处。这当然没有什么不对。但

---

课程	kèchéng	<i>n.</i>	course; curriculum
朝鲜战争	Cháoxiān Zhàanzhēng	<i>n.</i>	the Korean War (1950-1953)
太平洋	Tàipíngyáng	<i>n.</i>	the Pacific Ocean
日本	Rìběn	<i>n.</i>	Japan
事务	shìwù	<i>n.</i>	general affairs
重要性	zhòngyàoxìng	<i>n.</i>	importance
亚洲	Yàzhōu	<i>n.</i>	Asia
毕竟	bìjìng	<i>adv.</i>	after all; all in all
密切	mìqiè	<i>adj./adv.</i>	close, carefully; closely; intently 关系密切/密切联系/密切注意
不断	búduàn	<i>adv.</i>	constantly; continuously
功利	gōnglì	<i>n.</i>	utility; material gain
动机	dòngjī	<i>n.</i>	motive; intention

是，我之所以<sup>(6)</sup>学习中文，是希望通过<sup>(7)</sup>语言的学习来进一步了解中国社会和中国人的生活。我认为这比找到工作更有意义。

---

之所以	zhǐsuǒyǐ	<i>conj.</i>	the reason that
通过	tōngguò	<i>prep.</i>	by means of; by way of 老师通过考试来了解学生的水平。

## ★ 繁体字课文

每天早晨，在校園裏都能看到許多中國學生在專心地學習英文，有的念課本，有的聽收音機。我還在報上看見天津一家百貨商場設了一個“英語橋”，用這個來吸引顧客。果然<sup>(1)</sup>，這個辦法立刻引起了大家的注意，“英語橋”上熱鬧得不得了<sup>(2)</sup>。許多人覺得一邊兒買東西，一邊兒<sup>(3)</sup>練習英語實在是一舉兩得。北京的公園兒、街頭、校園也常有所謂的“英語角”，任何人都可以到這樣的地方來用英語互相<sup>(4)</sup>交談。

中國孩子一進小學就必須開始學習英語，有的甚至從幼兒園就開始了，中年人學英語的也很多。這一方面當然是因為英語是世界上最通行的一種語言，另一方面也反映了中國人對學習外來事物的熱情。

美國中文教學的歷史相當短。一般大學到了二十世紀七十年代才開始教中文。第二次世界大戰以前，

只有少數大學開中文課。美國大學的文學、歷史和語言課程一向是以歐美為中心；一直到朝鮮戰爭以後，美國才漸漸認識到太平洋地區，尤其是中國和日本，在國際事務上的重要性。

最近幾年，學習亞洲語言的美國學生雖然增加了一些，但畢竟<sup>(5)</sup>還是少數。中美關係越來越密切，我相信學習中文的學生也會不斷地增加。

中國學生學習英語也好，美國學生學習中文也好，大多數人都有一個功利的動機，希望學會一種外語，對將來找工作有好處。這當然沒有什麼不對。但是，我之所以<sup>(6)</sup>學習中文，是希望通過<sup>(7)</sup>語言的學習來進一步了解中國社會和中國人的生活。我認為這比找到工作更有意義。

## ◎ 语法

(1) 果然，这个办法立刻引起了大家的注意。

Just as expected, this method attracted people's attention immediately.

果然, meaning “as expected” or “sure enough,” indicates that something has turned out just as expected or stated. 果然 can precede the subject or predicate of a sentence and modify a negative phrase.

1. 他告诉我这家商场的东西特别贵。果然，我发现一般要贵百分之五左右。

He told me that the things in this department store were particularly expensive. Just as expected, I found the prices were in general about 5% higher than in other stores.

2. 我到了那家旧书店，果然找到了许多文革时期的杂志。

I went to that used book store and, as expected, found many magazines from the period of the Cultural Revolution.

(2) 英语桥上热闹得不得了。

The “English Bridge” was unbelievably lively.

“不得了” can be used by itself to mean “wonderful,” “amazing,” “awful,” or just “wow!” In common usage, “adj. 得不得了” means “extremely adj.” or “unbelievably adj.”

1. 他才十五岁就进入中国国家乒乓球队，真是不得了。

He was only 15 years old when he entered China’s national table tennis team, which is truly amazing.

2. 我爸爸对饭桌礼节讲究得不得了，你可别闹笑话。

My father is extremely particular about dinner table etiquette; please don’t make a fool of yourself.

(3) 一边儿买东西，一边儿练习英语，实在是一举两得。

Shopping while practicing English is really “killing two birds with one stone.”

When used with two verbs or verbal phrases, “一边儿…一边儿…” indicates that two actions occur at the same time. Often the second verb denotes the main action whereas the first denotes the accompanying action.

1. 你别一边儿听音乐一边儿看书。要是你不专心，怎么记得住呢？

Don’t listen to music while reading. If you don’t concentrate, how can you memorize?

2. 他们两个人一边儿聊天，一边儿往图书馆走去。

They chatted as they walked to the library.

(4) 任何人都可以到这样的地方用英语互相交谈。

Anyone can go to this kind of place to chat together in English.

“互相,” meaning “mutually” or “each other,” is used to modify polysyllabic words or phrases. See L. 28, Note (6).

1. 这两个说法互相矛盾。

These two statements contradict each other.

2. 这种互相敌对的局面对双方都没有好处。

This type of mutual hostility is of no benefit to either party.

(5) 学习亚洲语言的学生虽然增加了一些，但毕竟还是少数。

Although the number of students studying Asian languages has increased, these students are ultimately still in the minority.

毕竟, meaning “after all” or “in the final analysis,” is used in a declarative sentence to point out the crucial point of a matter.

1. 他虽然在中国住了二十年，但是毕竟是个美国人，还保留了许多美国习惯。

Although he has been living in China for twenty years, he is, after all, an American. He still retains many American habits.

2. 虽然他很聪明，但是毕竟年纪太轻，经验不够。

Although he is smart, in the end he is just too young and does not have enough experience.

- (6) 我之所以学习中文，是希望通过语言的学习来了解中国的社会。

The reason I study Chinese is that I want to understand Chinese society through language study.

When using 之所以, the first clause relates a result, and 之所以 follows immediately after the subject in the form *Subj. + 之所以 + the result*. The second clause in the pattern 是因为 or 是由于 puts stress on the cause.

1. 最近几年，美国的中文教育之所以快速发展，是因为美国人认识到了亚洲国家的重要性。

Chinese language study in America has flourished in recent years because Americans have recognized the importance of Asian nations.

2. 中国政府之所以努力建设交通，是由于交通是现代化的基础。

The Chinese government is actively developing transportation because transportation is the basis of modernization.

- (7) 我之所以学习中文，是希望通过语言的学习来了解中国的社会。

While 通过 can mean “pass through” in 通过海关 (L.1) and “pass” in 通过考试 (L. 29), here it means “by means of,” “by way of.” Usually it takes a noun or nominal phrase as its object. 通过 + N. forms an adverbial phrase used to modify the main sentence. There is no negative form because it is an adverbial phrase.

1. 战争是最坏的办法，最好通过相互沟通来解决国与国

之间的冲突。

War is the worst method; we'd best solve the conflicts between countries through communication.

2. 通过互联网，我们可以很容易地跟远处的朋友联系。

Via the internet, we can easily communicate with friends who are a great distance away.

3. 只有通过研究，我们才能了解问题的根本原因。

Only through research can we understand the basic reasons for the problems.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions using the structures when provided.

1. 麦当劳为什么可以吸引那么多的顾客?

(Subject之所以…是因为…)

2. 你洗澡的时候，会同时做其他的事吗？(一边儿…一边儿…)

3. 多使用公共交通工具，有什么好处？(一举两得)

4. 请说出世界上最通行的语言／信用卡 (xìnyòngkǎ, credit card)。

5. 你会说几种外语？是什么时候开始学的？你认为在美国的外语教育很落后吗？

6. 请说一说美国人学习中文的动机是什么？跟中国人学英文的动机一样吗？

7. 在中国说中文能帮助你“入乡随俗”吗？

8. 中国人对学习外来的事物非常有兴趣，请你说说你在中国看到哪些事情反映出中国人这方面的热情？

9. 到中国学习中文花费相当高；再说，每年夏天很多美国大学都会开中文课程，你为什么不留在美国学中文？(毕竟)

10. 旅游有什么好处？(通过)

**II. Rewrite each sentence using the expression in parentheses.**

1. 这种教学方法非常落后，根本不能引起学生的兴趣。  
(adj. 得不得了)
2. 因为“一对一”的教学方法非常有效，所以我们一直坚持使用这种方法。(Subject之所以…，是因为…)。
3. 收音机里的新闻广播说得很快，你要同时又写又听，几乎是不可能的。(一边儿…，一边儿…)。
4. 价钱降低了以后，像你所说的一样，这个商场吸引了很多顾客。(果然)

**III. Choose the correct answer.**

1. 我希望\_\_\_\_\_对亚洲事务的了解，对太平洋地区的投资计划做出一些贡献。  
①经过 ②通过 ③超过 ④随着
2. 要是能在工作时使用中文，这对我来说\_\_\_\_\_ 有帮助。  
①很 ②还 ③比 ④渐渐
3. 我虽然只学了一年的中文，但是跟中国人用中文\_\_\_\_\_ 应该没有问题。  
①互相谈 ②通行 ③互相交谈 ④互相说
4. \_\_\_\_\_，真是一举两得。  
①看美国电影，又能学英文，又能了解美国文化  
②她既聪明又漂亮  
③多数人一方面有学习的动机，一方面有功利的想法  
④早晨的校园里，有的念课本，有的听收音机
5. 虽然这家饭馆的菜相当不错，但\_\_\_\_\_ 知道的人太少了，所以不到三个月就关门了。  
①甚至 ②毕竟 ③尤其 ④最后

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 国内的研究生院不错，你为什么一定要出国留学呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. (Subject之所以…，是因为…)

2. A: 听收音机学英文，和到“英语桥”跟其他中国人用英语互相交谈，这两个学习方法你觉得哪个有效？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (毕竟)

3. A: 请你告诉我，他是怎么被车子撞着的？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (一边儿…，一边儿…)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. It does not matter whether you have utilitarian or academic motivations; we all hope that the economic development of the Pacific region will improve through your efforts. After all, you are one of the few people who realize the importance of this area.
2. I choose to live in the Chinese students' dormitory because I want to learn further about Chinese college students (use 之所以). I often chat with them while having dinner. As a result, my Chinese has improved a lot. This is really "killing two birds with one stone."
3. He told me that I could find many advertisements for "Chinese Corner" here on campus. Just as expected, there were quite a few advertisements attached on the bulletin board. There were even more than I could find in the newspaper.

#### VI. Composition

The author asserts that English is one of the world's most widely-adopted languages. Do you believe that this circumstance is solely related to the large number of native English speakers, or are there other factors involved (historical, economic, military, or political)? Chinese speakers also number among the most populous, and many scholars, bureaucrats, and entrepreneurs predict that China may very well be the world's most economically and militarily powerful country within a few generations. However, many students in America and elsewhere still do not choose to study Chinese, whereas all Chinese students study English. Do you have any friends with an interest in foreign languages and cultures who have not chosen to study Chinese? What are some of their reasons?

## 第四十五课 看电视

甲：据北京《光明日报》最近的报道，看电视已经成了中国城镇居民最主要的休闲活动之一。这是近年来一个新的变化。

乙：这个现象产生的原因是什么呢？

甲：我想，看电视的人数快速增加和电视机的普及是很有关系的。据统计，1985 年中国城镇居民每<sup>(1)</sup>一百户家庭只有 17.2 台彩色电视机；到了 1997 年，

---

光明	guāngmíng	<i>n./adj.</i>	light, bright
光明日报	Guāngmíng Rìbào	<i>n.</i>	Guangming Daily (newspaper)
城镇	chéngzhèn	<i>n.</i>	city and town
近年来	jìnniánlái	<i>adv.</i>	recently; recently
电视机	diànshījī	<i>n.</i>	television set
普及	pǔjí	<i>v./adj.</i>	be available to all; popularize 普及教育/电脑很普及
统计	tǒngjì	<i>n./v.</i>	statistics, add up; count
户	hù	<i>AN</i>	measure word for household
17.2	shíqī diǎn èr		seventeen point two
台	tái	<i>AN</i>	measure word for machines
彩色	cǎisè	<i>adj.</i>	color (as opposed to black and white); multicolor

平均每每一户都至少<sup>(2)</sup>有一台彩电了。到了二十一世纪，没有电视的家庭已经不容易找到了。电视机增加得这么快，看电视的人自然就越来越多了。

乙：我认为，电视机增加，只是看电视人数增加的原因之一。节目内容的改变影响也很大。

甲：你说的对极了。最近几年，中国电视在节目内容上有了相当大的改变。比方说，政治宣传减少了，娱乐性和服务性的节目增加了。新闻报道也开始反映一些社会和政治上的问题。这些改变都是老百姓所欢迎的。当然，色情和暴力也渐渐在节目中出现。但比起美国的电视节目来<sup>(3)</sup>，中国的节目还是<sup>(4)</sup>干净多了。

---

平均	píngjūn	<i>adv./adj.</i>	average
至少	zhìshǎo	<i>adv.</i>	at least
彩电	cǎidiàn	<i>n.</i>	color TV set; 彩色电视机
节目	jiému	<i>n.</i>	(TV, radio, etc.) show; program
内容	nèiróng	<i>n.</i>	content
娱乐	yúlè	<i>n.</i>	entertainment
色情	sèqing	<i>n.</i>	pornography
暴力	bàolì	<i>n.</i>	violence

乙：我觉得中国的电视节目太干净了，看起来有点儿无聊。

甲：这是因为我们认为电视节目起着社会教育的作用。为了孩子和社会道德，电视节目应该受到控制。

乙：我不同意你的看法。我认为电视节目应该反映社会现实。无论什么问题，电视都可以报导。过分保护孩子，反而常常害了孩子，使他们不了解社会上的许多问题。

甲：这我不反对。但是像美国那样色情和暴力泛滥，也不理想啊！

无聊	wúliáo	<i>adj.</i>	silly; stupid; bored; boring
控制	kòngzhì	<i>v.</i>	control 这个传染病很厉害，要是控制得不好，很可能引起更大的问题。
现实	xiànshí	<i>n.</i>	reality; actuality
报导	bàodǎo	<i>v./n.</i>	report, broadcast; 报道
害	hài	<i>v.</i>	harm; damage
泛滥	fàn làn	<i>v./adj.</i>	be in flood; inundate; overrun; overabundant; unchecked spreading 减肥的广告到处泛滥，对年轻人有不好的影响。

乙：其实，美国并不像你想象的那么乱。我们也是有许多法律保护孩子的。好比说在许多州，21岁以下(5)的人不许在公开场合买酒或喝酒。这在中国人看来，就不容易理解了。

甲：每一个国家都有自己的风俗和法律，这叫做“国情不同”。

乙：对了。因为“国情不同”，所以我们得互相尊重。

---

好比说	hǎobìshuō		for instance; for example
州	zhōu	n.	state
…以下	…yǐxià	postp.	under (a given point or line)
不许	bùxǔ	v.	not be allowed to, not allow 17岁以下的人不许开车。 我父母不许我12点以后回家。
风俗	fēngsú	n.	common customs
国情	guóqíng	n.	the condition or situation of a nation

## ★繁體字课文

甲：據北京《光明日報》最近的報導，看電視已經成了中國城鎮居民最主要的休閒活動之一。這是近年來一個新的變化。

乙：這個現象產生的原因是什麼呢？

甲：我想，看電視的人數快速增加和電視機的普及是很有關係的。據統計，1985年中國城鎮居民每(1)一百戶家庭只有17.2台彩色電視機；到了1997年，平均每一家戶都至少(2)有一台彩電了。到了二十一世紀，沒有電視的家庭已經不容易找到了。電視機增加得這麼快，看電視的人自然就越來越多了。

乙：我認為，電視機增加，只是看電視人數增加的原因之一。節目內容的改變影響也很大。

甲：你說的對極了。最近幾年，中國電視在節目內容上有了相當大的改變。比方說，政治宣傳減少了，娛樂性和服務性的節目增加了。新聞報導也開始反映一些社會和政治上的問題。這些改變都是老百姓所歡迎的。當然，色情和暴力也漸漸在節目中出現。但比起美國的電視節目來(3)，中國的節目還是(4)乾淨多了。

乙：我覺得中國的電視節目太乾淨了，看起來有點兒無聊。

甲：這是因為我們認為電視節目起著社會教育的作用。為了孩子和社會道德，電視節目應該受到控制。

乙：我不同意你的看法。我認為電視節目應該反映社會現實。無論什麼問題，電視都可以報導。過分

保護孩子，反而常常害了孩子，使他們不了解社會上的許多問題。

甲：這我不反對。但是像美國那樣色情和暴力氾濫，也不理想啊！

乙：其實，美國並不像你想像的那麼亂。我們也是有許多法律保護孩子的。好比說在許多州，21 歲以下(5)的人不許在公開場合買酒或喝酒。這在中國人看來，就不容易理解了。

甲：每一個國家都有自己的風俗和法律，這叫做“國情不同”。

乙：對了。因為“國情不同”，所以我們得互相尊重。

### 语法点

(1) 每一百户家庭只有 17.2 台彩色电视机。

There are only 17.2 color television sets for every one hundred households.

This sentence pattern “每…只…” indicates how small a number is, while “每…就…” emphasizes the significance of the statement followed by 就。

1. 他每个星期只上两堂课。

He only has two classes a week.

2. 据报道，在 1979 年左右中国每一百对夫妻只有 4.7 对离婚；但是到了 2006 年，每一百对夫妻就有 20 对离婚。

According to a report, only 4.7 couples out of every 100 couples divorced around 1979 in China; however, in 2006 twenty out of 100 couples had filed for divorce.

3. 在美国，每一百名儿童中，就有 22 名儿童有肥胖的问题，而男生是女生的两倍。

In America, 22 out of 100 children have obesity problems, and boys are twice as likely as girls to be obese.

(2) 平均每一户都至少有一台彩电。

On average, there is at least one color TV in each house.

至少 usually precedes a verb which is followed by a number-AN construction to indicate the least number. It can also precede a phrase, a clause, or even a sentence to indicate the smallest extent.

1. 在饭馆儿里吃一顿饭，至少得花三十块钱。

One needs to spend at least 30 dollars when eating in a restaurant.

2. 他没懂我的意思，至少没完全懂我的意思。

He didn't understand what I said, at least he didn't fully understand it.

3. 要是你不能去看他，至少你应该给他打个电话。

If you cannot go to see him, you should at least call him.

(3) 比起美国的电视节目来，中国的节目还是干净多了。

*Compared to American TV shows, those of China are still very clean.*

比起…来 is an adverbial phrase meaning “when compared with ....” 来 is sometimes omitted. The subject is put after 比起……来 most of the time. See L. 8, Note (7) and L. 22, Note (2).

1. 比起过去(来)，现在的年轻人更愿意接受外国的东西。

Compared to the young people in the past, the young people nowadays are much more willing to accept things from abroad.

2. 比起大城市(来)，农村的发展远远落后。

Compared to the big cities, the development in the countryside falls far behind.

(4) 当然，色情和暴力也渐渐在节目中出现。但比起美国的电视节目来，中国的节目还是干净多了。

Of course, pornography and violence emerge gradually. However, compared to American TV shows, those of China are still very clean.

还是 here means the situation remains the same no matter how the conditions change. 虽然 or 即使 is often used in the first clause.

1. 虽然旧的问题解决了，但是新的问题还是会产生的。

Old problems have been solved, but new problem will still arise.

2. 纽约的中国饭馆儿当然没有北京的那么地道，但还是相当好。

The Chinese restaurants in New York are not as authentic as those in Beijing of course, but they still are very good.

(5) 21岁以下的人不许在公开场合喝酒。

People under 21 are not allowed to drink in public.

以下 means “below (a certain level)” or “less than (a certain) number.”

See 以上 in L. 34, Note (1).

1. 十六岁以下的人不能开车。

People under 16 are not allowed to drive cars.

2. 要是你得了B以下的成绩，下学期就不能选这门课了。

If you get a grade worse than a B, you cannot take this course next semester.

3. 我每个月的花费都在四百块钱以下。

My monthly expenses are less than 400 dollars.

## 练习

### I. Answer the following questions.

1. 哪一类的电视节目对孩子有好处？哪一类有坏处？
2. 为了不让孩子看到有害的电视节目，你认为应该由政府控制电视节目的内容，还是把这个责任放在父母身上？
3. 在美国，做哪些事情在法律上是有年龄限制的？
4. 请说一说电视节目的社会作用是什么？“反映社会现实”是不是说电视节目的内容应该跟生活中发生的事情一模一样？
5. 什么是“国情不同”？是不是说到了外国就不应该批评那儿的生活习惯、风俗和法律，而应该“入乡随俗”？

### II. Make a sentence using the underlined structure.

1. 据统计，中国城镇居民每一户都至少有一台电视了。
2. 虽然电视节目应该反映社会现实，但是有些内容还是不应该让孩子们看。
3. 过分保护孩子，反而常常害了孩子。
4. 电视机增加，只是看电视人口增加的原因之一。

### III. Choose the correct answer.

1. 现在电视机、音响这些家用电器在中国的小康家庭中已经很\_\_\_\_\_了。  
①普及 ②欢迎 ③广 ④经常
2. 你真的认为“三代同堂”是最理想的生活方式吗？我\_\_\_\_\_。  
①实在不同意你的看法 ②不同意你  
③跟你的看法不同意 ④对你的看法很不同意实在
3. 让孩子决定自己的将来吧！要是什么都为他们安排，\_\_\_\_\_限制了他们的的发展。  
①反而 ②却 ③因此 ④居然
4. \_\_\_\_\_小孩儿不能看这部电影。  
①以下十三岁的 ②比十三岁以下的  
③十三岁以下的 ④十三岁的以下

5. \_\_\_\_\_, 现在色情和暴力泛滥的情形严重多了。

- ①比起五十年代来      ②比起来五十年代  
③比较五十年代      ④比较和五十年代

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 在你们学校学习的中国学生多不多?

B: 并不多, \_\_\_\_\_. (每…只…)

2. A: 中国的电视节目跟美国的比起来有什么不同?

B: \_\_\_\_\_. (adj. 点儿)

3. A: 现在的电视有太多色情暴力的节目, 父母跟孩子一起看太尴尬了, 所以我认为看电视只有坏处, 没有好处。

B: \_\_\_\_\_.

(虽然…, 但…还是…)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. In America, the reason that pornography and violence are rampant is not because there are no laws, but because of different customs. According to the American view, having pornographic content in TV shows is a manifestation of freedom of speech, which should not be restrained.
2. In the past few years, TV shows in China have changed significantly. Even though they are not as liberal and open as American shows, at least they reflect social reality. Television is no longer a tool for political propaganda, but has the function of education and entertainment.
3. TV influences children very much. According to statistics, six out of ten children who frequently watch violent shows imitate what the characters do in the shows and do violent things. In order to prevent this situation from happening, parents should take the responsibility of educating their children and helping them choose the shows which are good for them.

**VI. Composition**

It is evident that there is more and more violent and pornographic content in TV shows today. While some people express concern about freedom of speech, others suggest the censorship of TV programs. What is your position on this issue? What can you do to make our TV programs better for younger generations? If you were given a chance to produce a TV show, what would your show be like?

## 第四十六课 《新的中国》是不是一本好教材？

甲：这个学期，我们用了《新的中国》作为(1)教材，我非常不喜欢这本书！

作者总是介绍中国进步的一面，很少提到落后的一面。看了这本书以后，让人以为中国没有任何问题。政府很好，老百姓很快乐，大家都高高兴兴地过日子。其实，我在北京看到许多乞丐。贫富不均是谁都看得到的问题。有钱人开最

学期	xuéqí	<i>n.</i>	semester; school term
作为	zuòwéi	<i>prep.</i>	as... 我们用“好好学习，天天向上”作为这个月的标语。
作者	zuòzhě	<i>n.</i>	author
介绍	jièshào	<i>v.</i>	introduce
提到	tídiào	<i>v.-c.</i>	mention
快乐	kuàilè	<i>adj.</i>	merry; happy
乞丐	qǐgài	<i>n.</i>	beggar
贫富不均	pín fù bù jūn	<i>idm.</i>	inequalities in wealth; gap between rich and poor

贵的欧洲汽车，穷人连自行车都买不起。有钱人吃一顿饭所花的钱，往往比一般人一个月的收入还多得多。周末去郊区参观的时候，我发现郊区的许多公共设备比北京城里落后得多。这些问题连一个外国学生都看得到，难道<sup>(2)</sup>作者看不到吗？我看了这本书，觉得有点儿像政府的宣传。一本好的教科书应该反映实际的社会，而不是只说好的一面，不说坏的一面。换一句话说，这本教科书美化了中国。我们只是学了一年中文的外国学生，我们靠教科书来了解中国。要是教科书不反映真实的中国，那么我们对中国的了解就是错误的。

穷人	qióngrén	<i>n.</i>	poor people
顿	dùn	<i>AN</i>	measure word for a meal
一般人	yìbānrén	<i>n.</i>	common people
难道	nándào	<i>adv.</i>	Could it be that...?
教科书	jiàokēshū	<i>n.</i>	textbook
美化	měihuà	<i>v.</i>	beautify
真实	zhēnshí	<i>adj.</i>	true; real
错误	cuòwù	<i>adj./n.</i>	error; mistake, wrong

乙：我完全不同意你的看法！

我觉得《新的中国》是一本非常好的教材！

我不但学到了许多有用的生词和句型，也了解了中国人的生活和文化。我最喜欢的是每一课的安排，几乎都是为我们特别设计的。每天学的生词都和我们的生活联系在一起。这本书的设计是先从日常用语开始，渐渐地发展到比较正式的词汇。学了这本书以后，我不但能和中国人讨论日常生活，也能谈谈政治、经济、交通这些比较严肃的话题。

至于说这本书只介绍中国进步的一面，而不介绍落后的一面，我也不同意。作者也提到了中国社会的许多问题，像中国人不排队，公共厕所不干净，外国学生上当受骗，过马路很危险，中

有用	yǒuyòng	adj.	useful
生词	shēngcí	n.	new word
句型	jùxíng	n.	sentence pattern
词汇	cíhuì	n.	vocabulary
至于说	zhìyúshuō		as for; as to; 至于
受骗	shòu//piàn	v.-o.	be cheated; be deceived

国人不大遵守交通规则，中国的教育制度只强调死记硬背而不重视分析和理解，中国有比较严重的下岗问题等等。他还说到城乡差距是中国目前最严重的问题之一。你怎么说作者只介绍中国好的一面，而不介绍坏的一面呢？说到(3)贫富不均，这并不只是中国才有的问题。难道美国就没有贫富不均的问题吗？北京固然有乞丐，难道纽约、华盛顿就没有乞丐吗？中国这几年的进步是大家都看得到的。二十世纪六十年代中国有许多人吃不饱，穿不暖，可是现在许多人都得了肥胖症。也许你说这并不是进步，但这样的改变却是事实。改变固然不一定是进步，但进步却一定是一种改变。

---

说到	shuōdào	v.-c.	talk about
纽约	Niǔyùē	n.	New York
华盛顿	Huáshèngdūn	n.	Washington, D. C.
——症	zhèng	suffix	...syndrome; disease
肥胖症	féipàngzhèng	n.	obesity
事实	shìshí	n.	fact

中国社会还有许许多多的问题。从随地吐痰、不排队到空气污染，每一件事都让人觉得很不愉快，但是每个问题都在改善。公共厕所越来越干净了就是个最好的例子。所以，我觉得这本书并不是政府的宣传！

至于你说：你靠教科书来了解中国。教科书所介绍的中国是非常有限的，我们得靠自己的眼睛、耳朵和脑子来了解中国。要想真正<sup>(4)</sup>地了解中国，你非得自己看、自己听、自己分析不可！靠教科书是不行的，也是不够的。

---

愉快	yúkuài	<i>adj.</i>	cheerful; joyful 愉快的旅行/聊得很愉快
改善	gǎishàn	<i>v.</i>	improve; make (something) better 改善人民生活/改善工作条件
有限	yǒuxiàn	<i>adj.</i>	limited 有限的投资/有限的信息/时间有限
脑子	nǎo.zi	<i>n.</i>	brains; mind
真正	zhēnzhèng	<i>adv./adj.</i>	truly; really, genuine; true; real 真正有效的办法/真正的朋友

## ★繁體字课文

甲：這個學期，我們用了《新的中國》作為(1)教材，我非常不喜歡這本書！

作者總是介紹中國進步的一面，很少提到落後的一面。看了這本書以後，讓人以為中國沒有任何問題。政府很好，老百姓很快樂，大家都高興地過日子。其實，我在北京看到許多乞丐。貧富不均是誰都看得到的問題。有錢人開最貴的歐洲汽車，窮人連自行車都買不起。有錢人吃一頓飯所花的錢，往往比一般人一個月的收入還多得多。週末去郊區參觀的時候，我發現郊區的許多公共設備比北京城裏落後得多。這些問題連一個外國學生都看得到，難道(2)作者看不到嗎？我看了這本書，覺得有點像政府的宣傳。一本好的教科書應該反映實際的社會，而不是只說好的一面，不說壞的一面。換一句話說，這本教科書美化了中國。我們只是學了一年中文的外國學生，我們靠教科書來了解中國。要是教科書不反映真實的中國，那麼我們對中國的了解就是錯誤的。

乙：我完全不同意你的看法！

我覺得《新的中國》是一本非常好的教材！我不但學到了許多有用的生詞和句型，也了解了中國人的生活和文化。我最喜歡的是每一課的安排，幾乎都是為我們特別設計的。每天學的生詞都和我們的生活聯繫在一起。這本書的設計是先從日常用語開始，漸漸地發展到比較正式的辭彙。學了這本書以後，我不但能和中國人討論日

常生活，也能談談政治、經濟、交通這些比較嚴肅的話題。

至於說這本書只介紹中國進步的一面，而不介紹落後的一面，我也不同意。作者也提到了中國社會的許多問題，像中國人不排隊，公共廁所不乾淨，外國學生上當受騙，過馬路很危險，中國人不大遵守交通規則，中國的教育制度只強調死記硬背而不重視分析和理解，中國有比較嚴重的下崗問題等等。他還說到城鄉差距是中國目前最嚴重的問題之一。你怎麼說作者只介紹中國好的一面，而不介紹壞的一面呢？說到(3)貧富不均，這並不只是中國才有的問題。難道美國就沒有貧富不均的問題嗎？北京固然有乞丐，難道紐約、華盛頓就沒有乞丐嗎？中國這幾年的進步是大家都看得到的。二十世紀六十年代中國有許多人吃不飽，穿不暖，可是現在許多人都得了肥胖症。也許你說這並不是進步，但這樣的改變卻是事實。改變固然不一定是進步，但進步卻一定是一種改變。

中國社會還有許許多多的問題。從隨地吐痰、不排隊到空氣污染，每一件事都讓人覺得很不愉快，但是每個問題都在改善。公共廁所越來越乾淨了就是個最好的例子。所以，我覺得這本書並不是政府的宣傳！

至於你說：你靠教科書來了解中國。教科書所介紹的中國是非常有限的，我們得靠自己的眼睛，耳朵和腦子來了解中國。要想真正(4)地了解中國，你非得自己看、自己聽、自己分析不可！靠教科書是不行的，也是不夠的。

## 语法点

(1) 这个学期，我们用了《新的中国》作为教材。

We used *A New China* as our textbook this semester.

用 A 作为 B means “to use A as B.” 作为 can also take a noun phrase as its object and be used as an adverbial phrase to modify a *subject + predicate* sentence.

1. 我们要用天安门上的标语作为今天讨论的题目。

We want to use the slogans on Tiananmen as the topic of today's discussion.

2. 作为一个老师，照顾学生是我的责任。

As a teacher, taking care of the students is my responsibility.

3. 作为一个现代社会的人，必须会用电脑。

As a member of modern society, one must be able to use a computer.

(2) 这些问题连一个外国学生都看得到，难道作者看不到吗？

The literal meaning of 难道 is “do you mean to say that...?” 难道 is a rhetorical word, and very often the question particle “吗” is used at the end of a sentence to form a rhetorical sentence. 难道 can be placed either before the subject or after the subject.

1. 难道你真的忘了怎么写你的中文名字了吗？

Did you really forget how to write your Chinese name?

2. 你难道谁也不关心吗？

Do you really not care about anyone?

3. 不要再减肥了！你难道要把自己饿死吗？

Don't diet any more! Are you really going to starve yourself to death?

(3) 说到贫富不均，这并不只是中国才有的问题。

Speaking of wealth inequality, this is not just a Chinese problem.

说到/起, 谈到/起 or 提到/起 mean “speaking of.” These structures are usually placed at the beginning of a sentence or after the subject to start a topic. These structures can also serve as regular verbs, e.g. “作者总是介绍中国进步的一面，很少提到落后的一面,” or “他还说到城乡差距是中国目前最严重的问题之一。”

- 说到中国特色，外国人经常会想起“舞龙”、“舞狮”、“裹小脚”这些传统。

Speaking of China's special characteristics, foreigners often think about the traditions of "the dragon dance," "the lion dance," and "foot-binding."

- 谈到游泳，我听说你最近在游泳减肥，这个办法有效吗？

Speaking of swimming, I heard that you are swimming to lose weight. Does it work?

- 提起北京的景点，我最喜欢的就是长城。

Speaking of the scenic spots in Beijing, the Great Wall is my favorite.

- (4) 要想真正地了解中国，你非得自己看、自己听、自己分析不可。

If you truly want to understand China, you must see, hear, and analyze for yourself.

In L. 2, Note (9) we learned about the usage of 真. 真, 真的 and 真正 all have very close meanings. Also review L. 16, Note (3).

真 is used in an exclamatory sentence.

- 这个学校真好！

This school is so good!

- 这本书真是一本好教材！

This book is such a nice textbook!

真的, used as an adverb, emphasizes that the statement following it is true.

- A: 他真的同意了？

B: 是啊！他真的同意了。我怎么会骗你呢！

A: Did he really agree?

B: Yes. He really did agree. Would I lie to you?

- 这所大学真的很好，你应该上这所大学。

This university is really a good one. You should go to this university.

- 那幅画真的是明代的古画，价钱当然不便宜。

It really is an ancient painting from the Ming Dynasty; its price is of course pretty high.

真正 means “authentic,” “genuine” or “true;” e.g. 真正的中国菜, 真正的朋友. 真正 can only be used before a noun as a modifier, not as a predicate. You can never say 这个中国菜很真正; the correct form is 这是真正的中国菜。

1. 在这种地方，很难找到真正的古董。

It's very hard to find authentic antiques in these kinds of places.

2. 只有到北京去，才能看见真正的北京人的日常生活。

Only if you go to Beijing, can you truly see Beijing people's daily life.

When used as adverb, 真正地 is interchangeable with 真的. The adverbial word “地” is optional.

1. 真正(地)/真的 喜欢中国文化的人对京剧一定不陌生。

Those who truly enjoy Chinese culture are definitely no strangers to Beijing Opera.

2. 她想跟一个真正(地)/真的能使她快乐的人谈恋爱。

She wants to date someone who can really make her happy.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions.

1. 在你看来，有哪些社会问题是中国特有的？有哪些是跟其他国家相同的？
2. 你常跟中国朋友讨论哪些话题？他们愿意谈比较严肃的话题吗？
3. 你认为《新的中国》对中国的观察是表面的还是深入的？你怎么看出来的？
4. 你认为最理想的中文教科书是什么样的？《新的中国》可以说是一本理想的中文教材吗？
5. “改变固然不一定是进步，但进步却一定是一种改变”这句话是什么意思？请你用一个例子来说明。

**II. Use 难道 to rewrite the underlined sentences.**

1. 我们靠教科书来了解中国，所以教科书应该反映真实的中国。
2. 你为什么不多吃一点? 你一定是认为我做的菜不够好吃。
3. 他从 60 分进步到 70 分，进步已经很大了，你为什么还不满意?
4. 卖快餐的商人，在赚中国人钱的时候，也应该为中国人的健康想想。

**III. Choose the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 受骗的经验，我上个星期在机场上了出租汽车司机的当，多花了 100 块钱。  
①说到 ②说 ③说得 ④说着
2. 他因为压力太大，不断地吃，结果\_\_\_\_\_ 肥胖症。  
①传染了 ②拿了 ③得了 ④受了
3. 他对中国的看法\_\_\_\_\_。  
①是错误的 ②很错误 ③错 ④错误一点儿
4. 我知道他去了中国，但是\_\_\_\_\_ 清楚他什么时候回来。  
①太不 ②不大 ③大不 ④一点儿不
5. 你\_\_\_\_\_ 不知道他很穷吗？他穷得没有办法请你上饭馆吃饭，这就是他不愿意跟你出去的\_\_\_\_\_ 原因。  
①难道…真 ②真是…真 ③难道…真正 ④真正…真是
6. 他变成了乞丐以后，一个星期能吃到两、三\_\_\_\_\_ 饭就算很不错了。  
①桌 ②个 ③顿 ④点儿
7. \_\_\_\_\_ 一个国际化的百货商场，这里的服务还没达到一定的水平。  
①至于 ②像 ③是 ④作为

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 你真奇怪，手机已经这么普及了，为什么你坚持不用呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (不大…)

2. A: 在美国的中国饭馆儿里，吃得到很好的中国菜吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (真正)

3. A: 五十年代的社会，贫富不均的问题并不严重，又没有色情、暴力泛滥，我宁可生活在那样的社会里。

B: 我不同意你的看法，\_\_\_\_\_。 (难道)

4. A: 我非常喜欢吃中国菜，尤其是川菜，又香 (fragrant) 又辣，好吃极了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (说到)

A: 好，我一定会去吃吃看。

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

- As a foreign student who is learning Chinese, I don't have much interest in a textbook that reads like propaganda. This kind of textbook overly beautifies the reality, and is very boring to read. It is tiring enough to learn new vocabulary and sentence patterns. How could you possibly force us to accept the author's viewpoints (use 难道)?
- Speaking of urban beautification, the 2008 Olympic Games in Beijing is a very good example. The Chinese government tried hard to improve Beijing's air quality, strengthen the traffic infrastructure, solve the problem of beggars and street vendors, and build many modernized buildings. Tourists can see the truly progressive side of Beijing.
- The poor become poorer, and the rich become richer. This is so-called "inequality of wealth." This phenomenon is currently becoming more and more evident. From housing to job opportunities, the social resources the poor get are very limited. To truly solve this problem, we must start with education.

#### VI. Composition

请你对“新的中国”这本书做出一些批评。先介绍这本书的结构，再说出你对这本书的想法。这本书对中国的观察是表面的还是深入的？对中国的批评是公正的还是不合理的？书中所介绍的生词有没有用？句型的说明有没有道理？你喜欢这本书吗？还是受不了这本书？

## 第四十七课 中华民族

许多人以为“中国人”就是“汉人”，“中国话”就是“汉语”。这个看法并不完全正确。中国是个多民族的国家，汉族只是中华民族当中最大的一族，大约占全中国人口的百分之<sup>(1)</sup>九十五左右<sup>(2)</sup>。除了汉族以外，中国还有五、六十个少数民族。少数民族的人口虽然不多，但是分布很广。一般来说，汉族

---

中华民族	Zhōnghuá Mínzú	<i>n.</i>	the Chinese Nation (people)
民族	mínzú	<i>n.</i>	nation; a people; race; rationality
汉人	Hàn rén	<i>n.</i>	the Han people
正确	zhèngquè	<i>adj.</i>	correct; right
多民族	duō mínzú	<i>adj.</i>	multi-racial
——族	zú	<i>suffix</i>	race; nationality
百分之…	bǎifēn zhī ...	<i>n.</i>	percent 20%: 百分之二十
左右	zuǒyòu	<i>n.</i>	about; or so (used after a number)
少数民族	shǎoshù mínzú	<i>n.</i>	minority
分布	fēnbù	<i>v.</i>	be distributed (over an area); be scattered
广	guǎng	<i>adj.</i>	vast; wide 他的兴趣很广，什么都想学。

居住在比较适宜农业生产的东南大平原上。少数民族多半分布在东北、西北、西南等地和内蒙古、西藏、新疆等自治区。他们有自己的语言，有的也有自己的文字，他们的宗教信仰也往往和汉族不同。满族、藏族、蒙古族和回族是几个主要的少数民族，他们都有悠久的历史和伟大的传统。

居住	jūzhù	v.	live; reside; dwell
适宜	shìyí	v.	be suitable for; be appropriate for
生产	shēngchǎn	v./n.	produce, production (for concrete nouns) 产生: produce (for abstract nouns) 生产汽车/产生问题
东南	dōngnán	n.	southeast
平原	píngyuán	n.	plain; flatlands
东北	dōngběi	n.	northeast
西北	xīběi	n.	northwest
西南	xī'nán	n.	southwest
内蒙古	Nèi Měnggǔ	n.	Inner Mongolia
新疆	Xīnjiāng	n.	Xinjiang
自治区	zìzhìqū	n.	autonomous region
宗教	zōngjiào	n.	religion
信仰	xìnyǎng	n.	belief; faith; conviction
满族	Mǎnzú	n.	the Man (Manchu) people
藏族	Zàngzú	n.	the Zang (Tibetan) people
回族	Huízú	n.	the Hui people
悠久	yōujǐu	adj.	long; long-standing

蒙古人在十三世纪打败了宋朝（960-1279），建立了元朝（1271-1368）。这个蒙古大帝国虽然时间不长，但是帝国的面积却是中国历史上最大的。满洲人在 1644 年消灭了明朝（1368-1644），建立了清朝。清朝在十九世纪中期以前，在政治、经济、军事、文化各方面都有很高的成就。1842 年鸦片战争以后，由于帝国主义的侵略和政府的腐败，清朝才渐渐地衰落了。满人和汉人在当时分得很清楚，满人是统治阶级，汉人是被统治阶级，但是现在已经是一家人了。

---

宋朝	Sòngcháo	<i>n.</i>	the Song Dynasty
建立	jiàn lì	<i>v.</i>	establish; set up
满州	Mǎnzhōu	<i>n.</i>	Manchuria
消灭	xiāomìè	<i>v.</i>	eliminate; abolish; exterminate; wipe out
中期	zhōngqī	<i>n.</i>	middle period (of a dynasty, century, reign)
腐败	fǔbài	<i>n./adj.</i>	corruption, corrupt; rotten
衰落	shuāiluò	<i>v./adj.</i>	decline; be on the wane
当时	dāngshí	<i>t.w.</i>	then; at that time
阶级	jiējí	<i>n.</i>	(social) class
一家人	yǐjiārén	<i>n.</i>	of one family or clan

最近几年因为交通建设的加强和广播电视深入每一个地区，汉人和少数民族的距离正在逐渐缩小，互通婚姻的现象也越来越普遍了。中华民族也是一个“大熔炉”啊！

---

逐渐	zhújiàn	<i>adv.</i>	gradually
通婚	tōng//hūn	<i>v.</i>	intermarry (between countries, races, social classes, etc. The subjects of 通婚 usually do not refer to individuals, but to a class of people.) 异国通婚/中国人与外国人通婚
熔炉	rónglú	<i>n.</i>	melting pot

## ★繁体字课文

許多人以為“中國人”就是“漢人”，“中國話”就是“漢語”。這個看法並不完全正確。中國是個多民族的國家，漢族只是中華民族當中最大的一族，大約占全中國人口的百分之(1)九十五左右(2)。除了漢族以外，中國還有五、六十個少數民族。少數民族的人口雖然不多，但是分佈很廣。一般來說，漢族居住在比較適宜農業生產的東南大平原上。少數民族多半分佈在東北、西北、西南等地和內蒙古、西藏、新疆等自治區。他們有自己的語言，有的也有自己的文字，他們的宗教信仰也往往和漢族不同。滿族、藏

族、蒙古族和回族是幾個主要的少數民族，他們都有悠久的歷史和偉大的傳統。

蒙古人在十三世紀打敗了宋朝（960-1279），建立了元朝（1271-1368）。這個蒙古大帝國雖然時間不長，但是帝國的面積卻是中國歷史上最大的。滿洲人在1644年消滅了明朝（1368-1644），建立了清朝。清朝在十九世紀中期以前，在政治、經濟、軍事、文化各方面都有很高的成就。1842年鴉片戰爭以後，由於帝國主義的侵略和政府的腐敗，清朝才漸漸地衰落了。滿人和漢人在當時分得很清楚，滿人是統治階級，漢人是被統治階級，但是現在已經是一家人了。

最近幾年因為交通建設的加強和廣播電視深入每一個地區，漢人和少數民族的距離正在逐漸縮小，互通婚姻的現象也越來越普遍了。中華民族也是一個“大熔爐”啊！

## 语法点

(1) 汉族占全中国人口的百分之九十五左右。

The Han nationality makes up around 95% of China's population

90% = 百分之九十      45% = 百分之四十五

18% = 百分之十八      2.54% = 百分之二点五四

0.5% = 百分之零 (líng) 点五

1. 据报道，现在的大学生当中，有百分之八十以上的学生预备出国留学。

According to the report, among today's college students, more than 80% prepare to study abroad.

2. 城市居民每个月在交通、通信上的花费是他们收入的百分之八点四。

Urban citizens' monthly expenses on traffic and communications are 8.4% of their income.

3. 据统计，1955年美国白人占全部人口的百分之九十，但是到了2020年，会下降到百分之六十。

According to statistics, Caucasians constituted 90% of the American population in 1955. This number will drop to 60% in 2020.

(2) 汉族占全中国人口的百分之九十五左右。

左右 is usually used after a numeral, a number-*AN* phrase, or a numeral plus a noun which does not need a measure word to show that the number is approximate.

1. 他的年龄在四十左右。

He is around 40 years old.

2. 从美国寄一封信到中国需要一个星期左右。

It takes about one week to send a letter from America to China.

3. 参加这次活动的有五十人左右。

There were about 50 people who participated in this activity.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions with the expressions when provided.

- 除了中国以外，还有哪些国家是多民族国家？有没有只有一个民族的国家？
- 为什么汉族居住的地方是发展比较好的部分，而少数民族却住在偏远的地区？
- 少数民族和汉族接触的时候，会产生什么问题？
- 在你的国家里，有没有少数民族，他们的人口占多少？  
(百分之…)
- 要使少数民族的地位提高，政府需要采取什么政策？

**II. Choose the correct answer.**

1. 蒙古人虽然不是汉人，但是\_\_\_\_\_建立了中国历史上最大的国家。  
①却      ②并      ③才
2. 他在房地产事业上很有\_\_\_\_\_，所以许多人都很羡慕他。  
①成功      ②成就      ③成本
3. 我不能\_\_\_\_\_这里的天气，又闷热又潮湿，非常不\_\_\_\_\_居住。  
①适应，适宜      ②适宜，适应      ③合适，合适
4. 他的身体非常\_\_\_\_\_，最好不要做太激烈的运动。  
①衰弱      ②落后      ③衰落
5. 二十世纪\_\_\_\_\_以前，电脑的使用还不普遍。  
①中年      ②中间      ③中期
6. 他们虽然是\_\_\_\_\_家人，在沟通上却有很大的问题。  
①全      ②一      ③整个
7. 由于这家工厂\_\_\_\_\_的电脑质量不好，结果\_\_\_\_\_了许多使用上的问题。  
①生产，产生      ②产生，生产      ③产生，产生      ④生产，生产

**III. Explain the following words.**

1. 大熔炉
2. 通婚
3. 侵略
4. 少数民族

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 美国有多少年的历史?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (左右)
2. A: 我一个月的收入才三千块，但是在住房上就要付一千五百块钱。换句话说，\_\_\_\_\_。 (百分之…)  
B: 难怪你没办法买车。
3. A: 你对什么样的专业最感兴趣?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (…当中)

#### V. Translate into Chinese.

1. The culture of minorities is absolutely not inferior to that of the Han people. However, owing to a lack of written language, in addition to the fact that minorities are spread out in remote areas, Han people often have an incorrect understanding of them. (use 再加上)
2. China is a multi-racial country; however, the population of the minorities is only about 5 percent of the total population of China while their residential area covers less than 50 percent of the total land in China.
3. Owing to the difference in religious beliefs, there was no intermarriage between these two classes in the past. Now that one class is not separated from the other so strictly, the distance between them is decreasing, and intermarriage has been more common.

#### VI. Composition

The Chinese government has actively pursued pro-minority policies. For example, minorities can be schooled in their own language and culture in minority schools, receive some leniency in terms of family planning and religious rights, and have special quotas at national universities. However, despite the active encouragement of minority cultural preservation, there are several obstacles for minorities who desire to maintain their traditional language and culture. Taking language as an example, a member of the minority community can choose to attend school in his/her native language, but doing so can, in some ways, restrict his/her future opportunities. In a country like China, where over 95% of the population speaks (or is expected to speak) a common language, not speaking that language can be an immense obstacle. One way around this problem is to learn Mandarin as a second language. However, most Han Chinese students spend their time studying English as a second language in order to help them adapt to a more global environment. For minority students who wish to seek out these global opportunities and preserve their own language, the result is that they must become proficient in three languages. What measures might you suggest to aid in the preservation of minority culture without compromising minorities' opportunities to modernize?

## 第四十八课 改变中的中国

在中国历史上，几个文化最发达、国力最强盛的朝代都是中国大量吸收外来文化的时候。譬如汉朝（206 B.C. – A.D. 220），通过丝绸之路引进了大量中亚和西亚的文化。我们现在所吃的葡萄、胡瓜（现在叫做黄瓜）还有胡琴这种乐器，都是那时从中亚、西亚

国力	guólì	<i>n.</i>	national power
强盛	qiángshèng	<i>adj.</i>	powerful and prosperous
朝代	cháodài	<i>n.</i>	dynasty
吸收	xīshōu	<i>v.</i>	absorb
汉朝	Hàncháo	<i>n.</i>	the Han Dynasty
丝绸之路	Sīchóu Zhī Lù	<i>n.</i>	the Silk Road
引进	yǐnjìn	<i>v.</i>	introduce from elsewhere
中亚	Zhōngyà	<i>n.</i>	Central Asia
西亚	Xīyà	<i>n.</i>	Western Asia
葡萄	pú.táo	<i>n.</i>	grape
胡瓜	húguā	<i>n.</i>	(archaic name for) cucumber
黄瓜	huáng.gua	<i>n.</i>	cucumber
胡琴	hú.qín	<i>n.</i>	a general term for certain kinds of two-stringed bowed instruments
乐器	yuèqì	<i>n.</i>	musical instrument

传进中国来的。胡琴的“胡”字就是“外国”的意思。要是你看到一个词带着“胡”字，像“胡琴”、“胡瓜”，十有八九本来都不是中国的东西。这个“胡”字有点儿像现在的“洋”字，比方说“洋人”、“洋火”、“洋布”等等。

汉朝初期，印度的佛教传入中国。佛教的思想一方面对中国起了一定的负面影响，另一方面也丰富了中国的文学、哲学和艺术。到了后来，佛教竟成了

---

传	chuán	v.	pass; pass on; spread
十有八九	shí yǒu bā jiǔ	<i>idm.</i>	in eight or nine cases out of ten; most likely
洋	yáng	<i>adj.</i>	western; foreign
洋人	yágrén	<i>n.</i>	foreigner (non-Chinese)
洋火	yánghuǒ	<i>n.</i>	(archaic) matches; 火柴 (huǒchái)
洋布	yángbù	<i>n.</i>	foreign clothes
印度	Yìndù	<i>n.</i>	India
佛教	Fójiào	<i>n.</i>	Buddhism
传入	chuánrù	<i>v.</i>	pass on to; spread into
丰富	fēngfù	<i>v./adj.</i>	enrich, rich
哲学	zhéxué	<i>n.</i>	philosophy
艺术	yìshù	<i>n.</i>	art
竟	jìng	<i>adv.</i>	竟然; 居然; unexpectedly; to one's surprise

中国文化中不可分割的一部分了。我们现在所看到的历史文物和名胜古迹，有许多都和佛教在中国的发展有密切的关系。

唐朝（618 - 907）是另一个大量吸收外来文化的时  
代。佛经的翻译到了唐代达到了最高的水平。那时中  
国有不少留学生到印度去留学，而日本也派了很多留  
学生到中国来学习。中印、中日以及中国和中亚、西  
亚之间的交通都是非常发达的。

在中国强盛的时候，中国人从来不担心吸收外来  
文化会影响到中国本土的文化。相反的，这些外来文  
化使中国的本土文化更丰富、更多姿多彩。

---

分割	fēngé	v.	separate; cut up; carve up
文物	wénwù	n.	cultural relic; historical relic
名胜古迹	míngshèng gǔjì	n.	places of scenic beauty and historic interest
唐朝	Tángcháo	n.	the Tang Dynasty
佛经	fójīng	n.	Buddhist sutra
翻译	fānyì	v./n.	translate; translation
本土	běntǔ	adj.	local; native
多姿多彩	duō zī duō cǎi	adj.	colorful; diverse

1842 年鸦片战争以后，中国开始了一次大规模的西化运动，但是这个向西方学习的运动和汉朝、唐朝甚至于明朝的都有一个基本的不同。十九世纪的西化运动是中国受到了帝国主义侵略以后的一种自卫运动，而汉朝和唐朝是中国的国力和文化向四方扩展的时候，所以汉唐时代和外国文化的交流是自愿的，而鸦片战争以后的西化却有一部分是被迫的。

这次我来到中国，看到最近三十年改革开放的速度和成绩，使我想起了中国历史上的这几次重大的中外文化交流。我相信这次改革的深度和速度会超过历

西化	xīhuà	<i>n.</i>	westernization
运动	yùndòng	<i>n.</i>	movement
自卫	zìwèi	<i>n.</i>	self-defense
扩展	kuòzhǎn	<i>v.</i>	expand 扩展事业/扩展方向/扩展规模
被迫	bèipò	<i>v.</i>	be forced to 他被迫改变了专业。
速度	sùdù	<i>n.</i>	speed
重大	zhòngdà	<i>adj.</i>	great; weighty; major; significant 有重大的意义/责任重大
深度	shēndù	<i>n.</i>	depth

史上任何一次西化运动。从饮食、穿着到人际关系、思维方式，中国人都在做快速的调整。这也正是中国人对中国文化充满信心最好的说明。他们并不担心中国文化会在现代化的过程中失去它的个性和特色，相反的，一个全新的中国文化正在形成。

许多人一谈到“传统”这两个字，就认为“传统”是固定的，是不变的。其实，中国传统之所以伟大，绝不在(1)它的固定和不变，而在于它与其他文化交流时能不断地吸收新成分。

穿着	chuānzhōu	n.	dress; apparel 他今天的穿着非常特别。
人际关系	rénjì guān.xi	n.	interpersonal relationship 在办公室里，穿着必须正式一点儿。
思维	sīwéi	n.	thought; thinking
调整	tiáozhěng	n./v.	adjustment, adjust
个性	gèxìng	n.	individual character; personality
全新	quánxīn	adj.	brand-new
形成	xíngchéng	v.	form; take shape
固定	gùdìng	adj.	fixed; stable
在于	zài yú	v.	lie in; rest with
成分	chéngfèn	n.	component; composition

推陈出新，日新月异，正是中国文化伟大的所在<sup>(2)</sup>。

---

推陈出新	tuī chén chū xīn	<i>idm.</i>	weed out the old to bring forth the new
日新月异	rì xīn yuè yì	<i>idm.</i>	change with each passing day
所在	suǒzài	<i>n.</i>	place; location

---

## ★繁体字课文

在中國歷史上，幾個文化最發達、國力最強盛的朝代都是中國大量吸收外來文化的時候。譬如漢朝（206 B.C. – A.D. 220），通過絲綢之路引進了大量中亞和西亞的文化。我們現在所吃的葡萄、胡瓜（現在叫做黃瓜）還有胡琴這種樂器，都是那时從中亞、西亞傳進中國來的。胡琴的“胡”字就是“外國”的意思。要是你看到一個詞帶著“胡”字，像“胡琴”、“胡瓜”，十有八九本來都不是中國的東西。這個“胡”字有點兒像現在的“洋”字，比方說“洋人”、“洋火”、“洋布”等等。

漢朝初期，印度的佛教傳入中國。佛教的思想一方面對中國起了一定的負面的影響，另一方面也豐富了中國的文學、哲學和藝術。到了後來，佛教竟成了中國文化中不可分割的一部分了。我們現在所看到的歷史文物和名勝古蹟，有許多都和佛教在中國的發展有密切的關係。

唐朝（618 – 907）是另一個大量吸收外來文化的時代。佛經的翻譯到了唐代達到了最高的水平。那時中國有不少留學生到印度去留學，而日本也派了很多留學生到中國來學習。中印、中日以及中國和中亞、西亞之間的交通都是非常發達的。

在中國強盛的時候，中國人從來不擔心吸收外來文化會影響到中國本土的文化。相反的，這些外來文化使中國的本土文化更豐富、更多姿多彩。

1842 年鴉片戰爭以後，中國開始了一次大規模的西化運動，但是這個向西方學習的運動和漢朝、唐朝甚至於明朝的都有一個基本的不同。十九世紀的西化運動是中國受到了帝國主義侵略以後的一種自衛運動，而漢朝和唐朝是中國的國力和文化向四方擴展的時候，所以漢唐時代和外國文化的交流是自願的，而鴉片戰爭以後的西化卻有一部分是被迫的。

這次我來到中國，看到最近三十年改革開放的速度和成績，使我想起了中國歷史上的這幾次重大的中外文化交流。我相信這次改革的深度和速度會超過歷史上任何一次西化運動。從飲食、穿著到人際關係、思維方式，中國人都在做快速的調整。這也正是中國人對中國文化充滿信心最好的說明。他們並不擔心中國文化會在現代化的過程中失去它的個性和特色，相反的，一個全新的中國文化正在形成。

許多人一談到“傳統”這兩個字，就認為“傳統”是固定的，是不變的。其實，中國傳統之所以偉大，絕不在於<sup>(1)</sup>它的固定和不變，而在於它與其他文化交流時能不斷地吸收新成分。

推陳出新，日新月異，正是中國文化偉大的所在<sup>(2)</sup>。

## 语法点

(1) 中国传统文文化之所以伟大，绝在于它的固定和不变，而在于它与其他文化交流时能不断地吸收新成分。

The greatness of Chinese culture certainly does not lie in its stability and immutability, but in its constant assimilation of new elements when engaged in cultural exchange.

The first usage of 在于 is to indicate the essence or nature of an object. It usually takes a noun, a verb, or a phrase as its object. The subject of 在于 is usually a noun phrase.

1. 这所学校最大的问题并不在于宿舍不够，而在于图书馆的书太少。

The biggest problem in this school is not a lack of dormitories, but too few books in its library.

2. 民主的基础在于人人平等

The foundation of democracy lies in the equality of all people.

The second meaning of 在于 is “to be determined by...” or “to depend on....” The subject is usually a choice-type question.

3. 这件事能不能成功在于我们有没有决心和信心。

Our success in this matter depends on whether or not we have determination and confidence.

4. 去不去在于你自己。

You determine whether you go or not.

(2) 推陈出新，日新月异，正是中国文化伟大的所在。

Weeding out the old to bring forth the new and changing with each passing day is exactly the seat of Chinese culture's greatness.

所在 refers to both physical and abstract location.

1. 改变的速度太快，就是中国问题的所在。

China's problem rests on the too rapid pace of its transition.

2. 让我们找一个风景优美的所在，好好的休息两天。

Let's find a beautiful, scenic place [a place with beautiful scenery] and take a break for a few days.

## ✍ 练习

### I. Answer the following questions with the expressions when provided.

1. 在现代化的过程中，为什么中国人不担心失去自己的特色？
2. 外来文化对中国产生了什么影响？你跟中国人接触的时候，有没有发现中国人越来越国际化？如果是，在哪些方面？如果不是，为什么？
3. 请你说说北京这个城市的特色。（…是…的所在）
4. 在世界历史上，有哪些文化交流是自愿的，哪些是被迫的？
5. 在文化交流的过程中，宗教有什么重要性？从西方和东方的角度，谈一谈这个问题。（在于）

### II. Make a sentence using the underlined expression.

1. 要是一个词带着“胡”字，像“胡琴”、“胡瓜”，十有八九本来都不是中国的东西。
2. 佛教的思想对中国起了一定的负面影响。
3. 汉唐时代和外国的交流是自愿的，而鸦片战争以后的西化却有一部分是被迫的。
4. 推陈出新，日新月异，正是中国文化伟大的所在。

### III. Choose a word from the list to fill in each blank.

(A) 维, 对, 程, 吸, 可, 受, 略, 丰, 入, 满
(B) 起, 盛, 仰, 来, 推, 有, 姿, 正

(A) 我对中国的将来充\_\_\_\_\_了希望。虽然在开放的过\_\_\_\_\_中，传统观念会\_\_\_\_\_到挑战，但是也会\_\_\_\_\_引更多使本土文化更\_\_\_\_\_富的成分。旧的思\_\_\_\_\_方式不是不\_\_\_\_\_调整的，从外国传\_\_\_\_\_的新文化也不见得都有侵\_\_\_\_\_性。

(B) 从宗教信\_\_\_\_\_到现代的电子通信方式，十\_\_\_\_\_八九都能\_\_\_\_\_正面的影响。任何一种外\_\_\_\_\_的文化都可能使中国

更强\_\_\_\_\_，因为\_\_\_\_\_陈出新\_\_\_\_\_是使中国文化多彩多\_\_\_\_\_的原因。

**IV. Complete the dialogues with the expressions provided.**

1. A: 现在男女的交往越来越公开，越来越平等，发生婚外关系的可能也就大大地增加了！  
B: 我完全不同意你的看法，\_\_\_\_\_。 (在于)
2. A: 你担不担心回国的留学生会抢你的饭碗，增加工作竞争？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (从来不…，相反的，…)
3. A: 你为什么那么喜欢中国？中国到底有什么特色这么吸引你？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (…正是中国特色的所在)
4. A: 学习外语到底有什么重要性？  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 (在于…)

**V. Translate into Chinese.**

1. The reason that I work so hard to carry out this reform movement is absolutely not because our traditional system is not unique, but because we need to absorb external components to find something new in what is old (use 推陈出新).
2. I never worried that I would not be able to expand my career after I came to China. On the contrary, from the very beginning I knew that China was where I would be successful.
3. Now not only do I speak Chinese faster, the depth of what I can express is also greater than in the past. This trip to China has enriched my understanding of foreign culture.

**VI. Composition**

You have been in China for at least two months now. In your opinion, what major changes have taken place here in the past few months or years? Do you think China will continue to progress at this pace? Should we in the West change how we depict China?

## Pinyin Index

**A**

aīyā, 哎呀, *interj.*, Oh!; Ah! (It expresses anger, irritation, contempt or disappointment.), L. 10, p. 92  
 ài, 爱, *v.*, love to, L. 33, p. 300  
 àihù, 爱护, *v.*, cherish; treasure, L. 33, p. 300  
 àiqíng, 爱情, *n.*, romantic love, L. 32, p. 289  
 ài.ren, 爱人, *n.*, one's husband or wife, L. 19, p. 173  
 āndìng, 安定, *adj.*, stable; quiet; settled (modify abstract nouns only), L. 24, p. 220  
 ānpái, 安排, *v./n.*, arrange, arrangement, L. 16, p. 142  
 ānquán, 安全, *adj.*, safe, L. 2, p. 13  
 àn, 岸, *n.*, bank; shore; coast, L. 15, p. 135  
 ànmó, 按摩, *v.*, massage, L. 8, p. 71  
 àn.shàng, 岸上, *p.w.*, on the bank; on the shore, L. 15, p. 135  
 Àolínpíkè, 奥林匹克, *n.*, the Olympics; Olympic, L. 40, p. 362  
 Àoyùnhuì, 奥运会, *n.*, abbreviation of 奥林匹克运动会, L. 40, p. 362

**B**

bābǎo, 八宝, *n.*, eight treasures (choice ingredients of certain special dishes), L. 20, p. 186  
 bǎwò, 把握, *n.*, assurance; certainty, L. 18, p. 163  
 bái.sè, 白色, *n./adj.*, white, L. 16, p. 143  
 bái.tiān, 白天, *n.*, daytime; day, L. 6, p. 54  
 bǎifēn zhī ..., 百分之..., *n.*, percent, L. 47, p. 427  
 bǎihuò shāngchǎng, 百货商场, *n.*, department store, L. 11, p. 102  
 bānmǎ, 斑马, *n.*, zebra, L. 21, p. 193  
 bānmǎxiàn, 斑马线, *n.*, pedestrian crossing; cross-walk (marked with stripes like those of a zebra), L. 21, p. 193  
 bǎnběn, 版本, *n.*, edition, L. 30, p. 271  
 bàn, 办, *v.*, do; manage; handle, L. 4, p. 39  
 bàn.fǎ, 办法, *n.*, way; means; measure, L. 23, p. 211  
 bàngōngshì, 办公室, *n.*, office, L. 27, p. 243  
 bànsīchù, 办事处, *n.*, office; agency, L. 27, p. 243  
 bāng/máng, 帮忙, *v.-o.*, help, L. 5, p. 48  
 bāngzhù, 帮助, *n./v.*, help, L. 36, p. 327  
 bàng, 棒, *adj.*, (colloquial) good; excellent, L. 10, p. 92  
 bàngwǎn, 傍晚, *t.w.*, evening; dusk, L. 14, p. 128  
 bāo, 包, *n.*, swelling; lump, L. 5, p. 47  
 bāo.zi, 包子, *n.*, steamed stuffed bun, L. 20, p. 183

bǎo, 饱, *adj.*, full (from eating), L. 34, p. 308  
 bǎochí, 保持, *v.*, keep; maintain; preserve (prevent from changing), L. 30, p. 270  
 bǎocún, 保存, *v.*, preserve; keep (prevent from deteriorating), L. 40, p. 360  
 bǎohù, 保护, *v.*, protect, L. 7, p. 64  
 bǎoliú, 保留, *v.*, retain; continue to have; keep, L. 31, p. 281  
 bǎoxiǎn, 保险, *n.*, insurance, L. 39, p. 350  
 bǎozhàng, 保障, *n./v.*, safety net, guarantee; safeguard, L. 32, p. 289  
 bào, 报, *n.*, newspaper, L. 12, p. 114  
 bào, 抱, *v.*, carry in one's arms; embrace; cradle, L. 16, p. 145  
 bàodào, 报道, *n./v.*, report, broadcast, L. 32, p. 288  
 bàodǎo, 报导, *v./n.*, report, broadcast, L. 45, p. 407  
 bàoli, 暴力, *n.*, violence, L. 45, p. 406  
 bàoqiàn, 抱歉, *adj.*, be sorry; feel apologetic, L. 19, p. 173  
 bǎozhǐ, 报纸, *n.*, newspaper, L. 31, p. 281  
 bēi, 背, *v.*, carry on the back, L. 16, p. 145  
 bēi.zi, 杯子, *n.*, cup; glass, L. 7, p. 63  
 běi, 北, *n.*, north, L. 4, p. 38  
 běifāngréng, 北方人, *n.*, Northerner, L. 20, p. 182  
 Běijīng, 北京, *n.*, Beijing, L. 1, p. 1  
 Běijīng Dàxué, 北京大学, *n.*, Peking University, L. 29, p. 261  
 bēi, 倍, *n.*, -times; -fold, L. 41, p. 370  
 bēijǐng, 背景, *n.*, background, L. 28, p. 252  
 bēipò, 被迫, *v.*, be forced to, L. 48, p. 438  
 běnkēshēng, 本科生, *n.*, undergraduate student, L. 38, p. 343  
 běnlái, 本来, *adv.*, originally; at first, L. 3, p. 26  
 běntǔ, 本土, *adj.*, local; native, L. 48, p. 437  
 bǐfang, 比方, for instance, L. 12, p. 113  
 bǐ.fangshuō, 比方说, for instance; for example, L. 18, p. 163  
 bǐjiào, 比较, *adv./v.*, comparatively, compare, L. 4, p. 37  
 bǐjǐào, 比较, *v.*, compare, L. 30, p. 272  
 bìjìng, 毕竟, *adv.*, after all; all in all, L. 44, p. 397  
 bìmiǎn, 避免, *v.*, avoid; refrain from, L. 20, p. 186  
 Bìshǔ Shānzhuāng, 避暑山庄, *n.*, "avoid-heat-mountain-villa"; (Imperial) Summer Residence, L. 13, p. 121

- bìxū, 必须, *v.*, must, L. 35, p. 318  
 bì/yè, 毕业, *v.-o.*, graduate, L. 27, p. 244  
 bìyéshēng, 毕业生, *n.*, college graduate, L. 27, p. 244  
 biàn, 变, *v.*, change; become different, L. 31, p. 279  
 biànchéng, 变成, *v.*, become; turn into, L. 31, p. 279  
 biànhuà, 变化, *v./n.*, change, L. 40, p. 361  
 biànlì, 便利, *n./adj.*, convenience, convenient, L. 37, p. 336  
 biànshí, 辨识, *v.*, distinguish and recognize, L. 23, p. 211  
 biāoyǔ, 标语, *n.*, slogan (usually written on a banner or poster), L. 22, p. 200  
 biāozhǔn, 标准, *n./adj.*, standard; criterion, standard, L. 28, p. 252  
 biǎo, 表, *n.*, form; table, L. 4, p. 39  
 biǎomiàn, 表面, *n.*, surface; outside, L. 11, p. 103  
 biǎomiàn.shàng, 表面上, *adv.*, on the surface, L. 11, p. 103  
 biǎoshì, 表示, *v.*, show; use words to express; indicate, L. 19, p. 171  
 biǎoxiàn, 表现, *v.*, show; display, L. 11, p. 103  
 biǎoxiàn, 表现, *n.*, performance (in school, work, behavior), L. 29, p. 262  
 biè.niù, 别扭, *adj.*, awkward, L. 40, p. 364  
 bīnyǔ, 宾语, *n.*, object, L. 20, p. 185  
 bīng, 冰, *n.*, ice, L. 6, p. 54  
 bīngjīng, 冰激凌, *n.*, ice cream, L. 33, p. 300  
 bīngshuǐ, 冰水, *n.*, ice water, L. 6, p. 54  
 bīngxiāng, 冰箱, *n.*, refrigerator, L. 34, p. 310  
 bìng, 病, *v.*, be sick; be ill, L. 5, p. 46  
 bìngcún, 并存, *v.*, exist simultaneously, L. 26, p. 235  
 Bōyīn, 波音, *n.*, Boeing, L. 36, p. 327  
 bówùguǎn, 博物馆, *n.*, museum, L. 30, p. 269  
 búbì, 不必, *adv.*, need not; not have to, L. 8, p. 72  
 búdào, 不到, *v.*, less than; not yet, L. 13, p. 121  
 búduàn, 不断, *adv.*, constantly; continuously, L. 44, p. 397  
 búgòu, 不够, *v./adv.*, not enough, L. 23, p. 211  
 búguò, 不过, *adv.*, but; however, L. 1, p. 3  
 bújiàn.dé, 不见得, *v./adv.*, not necessarily; not likely, L. 35, p. 318  
 bùlì, 不利, *adj.*, disadvantageous; harmful, L. 38, p. 344  
 bùyàojin, 不要紧, it doesn't matter; don't worry, unimportant, L. 19, p. 172  
 bùyòngshuō, 不用说, *conj.*, not to mention; needless to say, L. 3, p. 24  
 búzài, 不再, *adv.*, no longer, L. 27, p. 245  
 bùxíbān, 补习班, *n.*, cram school, L. 38, p. 343  
 bù, 部, *AN*, measure word for cars or movies, L. 1, p. 2  
 bùdébù, 不得不, *adv.*, have no choice but to; have to, L. 3, p. 26  
 bùděliǎo, 不得了, *adv.*, extremely; exceedingly, L. 44, p. 395  
 bùfen, 部分, *n.*, a portion; a part, L. 34, p. 309  
 bùgān bùjìng, 不干不净, *adj.*, unclean; filthy, L. 15, p. 136  
 bù gǎndāng, 不敢当, I really don't deserve this; you flatter me, L. 19, p. 170  
 bùgào lán, 布告栏, *n.*, bulletin board, L. 38, p. 343  
 bùhǎoyì.sì, 不好意思, *adj.*, embarrassed, L. 7, p. 63  
 bù láo ér huò, 不劳而获, *idm.*, gain without effort, L. 39, p. 352  
 bùliáng, 不良, *adj.*, mal-; bad, L. 33, p. 299  
 bùrú, 不如, *v.*, not equal to; not as good as, L. 9, p. 79  
 bùxǔ, 不许, *v.*, not be allowed to, not allow, L. 45, p. 408
- C**
- cáiliào, 材料, *n.*, material, L. 17, p. 155  
 cǎilào, 材料, *n.*, ingredient, L. 20, p. 185  
 cǎiliào, 材料, *n.*, data; material, L. 30, p. 270  
 cǎidàn, 彩电, color TV set; 彩色电视机, L. 45, P. 406  
 cǎiqǔ, 采取, *v.*, adopt (something abstract), L. 34, p. 310  
 cǎisè, 彩色, *adj.*, color (as opposed to black and white); multicolor, L. 45, p. 405  
 cānguān, 参观, *v.*, visit (a place); look around, L. 13, p. 121  
 cānjiā, 参加, *v.*, participate; attend (an event), L. 38, p. 343  
 cèsuǒ, 厕所, *n.*, toilet; restroom, L. 12, p. 113  
 chājù, 差距, *n.*, gap; disparity, L. 36, p. 328  
 chāyi, 差异, *n.*, difference; divergence, L. 28, p. 251  
 chā.zi, 叉子, *n.*, fork, L. 7, p. 63  
 chá, 查, *v.*, check; inspect, L. 1, p. 2  
 chá, 茶, *n.*, tea, L. 6, p. 54  
 chà.bu duō, 差不多, *adv.*, around; about, L. 1, p. 2  
 chà.bu duō, 差不多, *adj.*, about the same; similar, L. 20, p. 182  
 chán/jiǎo, 绷脚, *v.-o.*, foot-binding, L. 43, p. 388  
 chǎnshēng, 产生, *v.*, produce (for abstract nouns), L. 31, p. 279  
 cháng, 尝, *v.*, taste, L. 13, p. 122  
 Cháng'ān Jiē, 长安街, *n.*, Chang'an Street, a major street in Beijing, L. 40, p. 363  
 Chángchéng, 长城, *n.*, the Great Wall, L. 14, p. 127  
 cháng.chù, 长处, *n.*, strong point; good point, L. 41, p. 372

- chángjiàn, 常见, *adj.*, often seen; common, L. 20, p. 185
- chángjǐnglù, 长颈鹿, *n.*, giraffe, L. 16, p. 144
- chángtú, 长途, *adj.*, long distance, L. 2, p. 14
- chǎnghé, 场合, *n.*, occasion; situation, L. 19, p. 173
- chàng//gē, 唱歌, *v.-o.*, sing-song; sing, L. 15, p. 134
- chāoguò, 超过, *v.*, exceed; surpass, L. 43, p. 387
- cháo, —朝, *n.*, dynasty, L. 40, p. 360
- cháodài, 朝代, *n.*, dynasty, L. 17, p. 154
- cháoshī, 潮湿, *adj.*, humid, L. 14, p. 129
- Cháoxiān Zhànzhēng, 朝鲜战争, *n.*, the Korean War (1950-1953), L. 44, p. 397
- chǎo, 炒, *v.*, stir-fry, L. 20, p. 184
- chēdào, 车道, *n.*, (traffic) lane, L. 41, p. 372
- chèn, 趁, *prep.*, take advantage of (time, opportunity, etc.), L. 16, p. 142
- chēng.hu, 称呼, *v./n.*, call; address, a form of address, L. 11, p. 100
- chéng, 成, *comp.*, into; become, L. 3, p. 26
- chéngběn, 成本, *n.*, cost, L. 10, p. 90
- Chéngdé, 承德, *n.*, Chengde, in Hebei Province, L. 13, p. 121
- chéngfèn, 成分, *n.*, component; composition, L. 48, p. 439
- chénggōng, 成功, *n./v./adj.*, success, succeed, successful, L. 27, p. 244
- chéngjì, 成绩, *n.*, achievement; grade, L. 23, p. 209
- chéngjìù, 成就, *n.*, achievement; accomplishment, L. 17, p. 155
- chéngkè, 乘客, *n.*, passenger, L. 13, p. 122
- chéngkěn, 诚恳, *adj.*, sincere, L. 18, p. 164
- chéng.le, 成了, *v.*, has become; became, L. 11, p. 101
- chénglǐ, 城里, *p.w.*, within the city; downtown, L. 1, p. 3
- chénglì, 成立, *v.*, found; establish, L. 15, p. 135
- chéng//liáng, 乘凉, *v.-o.*, relax in a cool place, L. 14, p. 128
- chéngqiān shàngwàn, 成千上万, *idm.*, thousands upon thousands, L. 15, p. 134
- chéng.shí, 诚实, *adj.*, honest, L. 18, p. 163
- chéngshì, 城市, *n.*, metropolis; city, L. 14, p. 129
- chéngwéi, 成为, *v.*, become; turn into, L. 42, p. 380
- chéng xiāng, 城乡, *n.*, town and country; city and countryside, L. 36, p. 328
- chéngyǔ, 成语, *n.*, a set phrase; idiom, L. 26, p. 235
- chéngzhèn, 城镇, *n.*, city and town, L. 45, p. 405
- chī.bu guàn, 吃不惯, *v.-c.*, cannot get used to eating, L. 20, p. 183
- chī.bu xià, 吃不下, *v.-c.*, be unable to eat anymore, L. 19, p. 172
- chídào, 迟到, *v.*, be late (for a fixed schedule or appointment), L. 3, p. 24
- chǐrǔ, 耻辱, *n.*, humiliation; shame, L. 42, p. 379
- chōngmǎn, 充满, *v.*, be full of; brimming with, L. 42, p. 380
- chōngtū, 冲突, *n.*, conflict; clash, L. 28, p. 252
- chóngfù, 重复, *v.*, repeat, L. 19, p. 173
- chóngxīn, 重新, *adv.*, again; anew; afresh, L. 10, p. 89
- chōushuí mǎtǒng, 抽水马桶, *n.*, flushing toilet, L. 41, p. 372
- chòu, 臭, *adj.*, smelly; stinking, L. 12, p. 115
- chòuwèir, 臭味儿, *n.*, bad smell; stench, L. 12, p. 114
- chū, 初, 初期; initial stage; early part, L. 30, p. 270
- chū, 出, *v.*, come out; publish, L. 30, p. 271
- chūbǎn, 出版, *v.*, publish; come out, L. 30, p. 269
- chūbǎnshè, 出版社, *n.*, publishing house, L. 30, p. 269
- chūfā, 出发, *v.*, set out; start off; leave, L. 17, p. 154
- chū//guó, 出国, *v.-o.*, go abroad, L. 38, p. 344
- chū//mén, 出门, *v.-o.*, go out, L. 12, p. 115
- chūshēng, 出生, *v.*, be born, L. 43, p. 387
- chūxiàn, 出现, *v.*, appear; arise; emerge, L. 28, p. 251
- chūzū qìchē, 出租汽车, *n.*, taxi, L. 9, p. 78
- chúfēi, 除非, *conj.*, only if, only when; unless, L. 26, p. 237
- chú...le ... yǐwài, 除了…以外, except for; aside from, L. 3, p. 25
- chǔli, 处理, *v.*, handle; deal with; manage, L. 25, p. 228
- Chuān, 川, *n.*, Sichuan Province; 四川, L. 20, p. 182
- chuānzhuó, 穿着, *n.*, dress; apparel, L. 48, p. 439
- chuán, 船, *n.*, boat; ship; vessel, L. 16, p. 145
- chuán, 传, *v.*, pass; pass on; spread, L. 48, p. 436
- chuánrǎn, 传染, *v.*, infect; be contagious, L. 12, p. 114
- chuánrǎnbìng, 传染病, *n.*, infectious disease, L. 12, p. 114
- chuánrù, 传入, *v.*, pass on to; spread into, L. 48, p. 436
- chuántǒng, 传统, *n.*, tradition, L. 25, p. 226
- chuāngkǒu, 窗口, *n.*, service window; window, L. 4, p. 38
- chuángpù, 床铺, *n.*, bedding, L. 2, p. 12
- chuàngzào, 创造, *v.*, create from nothing; produce; bring about, L. 23, p. 210
- cí, 词儿, *n.*, word; term, L. 11, p. 102
- cíhuì, 词汇, *n.*, vocabulary, L. 46, p. 417
- cǐwài, 此外, *adv.*, besides; moreover, L. 40, p. 360
- cóngcǐ yǐhòu, 从此以后, from then on; from now on, L. 28, p. 250

cónglái méi V. guò, 从来没 v.过, have never V-ed before, L. 3, p. 24  
 cóngqián, 从前, t.w., once upon a time; sometime ago; in past days, L. 16, p. 142  
 cóngxiǎo, 从小, adv., from childhood, L. 43, p. 388  
 cùjìn, 促进, v., promote; accelerate, L. 27, p. 244  
 cúnzài, 存在, v., exist, L. 23, p. 208  
 cuōshī, 措施, n., (political, financial, etc.) measure; step, L. 34, p. 310  
 cuòwù, 错误, adj./n., error; mistake, wrong, L. 46, p. 416

**D**

dā.yíng, 答应, v., agree; promise; answer, L. 18, p. 163  
 dáchéng, 达成, v., reach (an agreement), L. 28, p. 251  
 dádào, 达到, v., achieve (a goal), L. 34, p. 310  
 dǎ, 打, v., (in this context) add subtitles, L. 23, p. 210  
 dǎbèi, 打败, v., defeat; beat, be defeated, L. 42, p. 378  
 dǎ diànhuà, 打电话, v.-o., make a phone call; call, L. 2, p. 11  
 dǎ jiāodào, 打交道, v.-o., come into contact with; have dealings with, L. 18, p. 162  
 dǎ/kāi, 打开, v.-c., open, L. 1, p. 2  
 dǎ/pái, 打牌, v.-o., play cards, L. 21, p. 193  
 dǎ/pò, 打破, v.-c., break; smash, L. 27, p. 243  
 dǎ/qiú, 打球, v.-o., play ball; play a ball game, L. 14, p. 128  
 dǎsǎo, 打扫, v., sweep; clean, L. 2, p. 12  
 dǎ tài jiquán, 打太极拳, v.-o., do taijiquan, L. 14, p. 128  
 dǎ zhāo.hu, 打招呼, v.-o., say hello, L. 16, p. 144  
 dǎ/zì, 打字, v.-o., type; typewrite, L. 37, p. 337  
 dàbā, 大巴, n., large bus, L. 1, p. 2  
 dà bù.fen, 大部分, adj., most, L. 12, p. 115  
 dàdà.de, 大大地, adv., greatly, L. 22, p. 201  
 dàdōu, 大都, adv., for the most part; mostly, L. 40, p. 361  
 dàduō, 大多, adv., for the most part; mostly, L. 6, p. 54  
 dàdūoshù, 大多数, n., great majority, L. 41, p. 370  
 dàgài, 大概, adv., generally; approximately; perhaps, L. 12, p. 114  
 dà guimó, 大规模, adj., on a large scale, L. 17, p. 155  
 dàguōfàn, 大锅饭, n., food prepared in a large pot, L. 27, p. 245  
 dàjiā, 大家, n., everyone, L. 7, p. 62  
 dàjīe xiǎoxiàng, 大街小巷, idm., big streets and small alleys-almost everywhere/anywhere, L. 15, p. 134  
 dàiliàng, 大量, adj./adv., a large number; a great deal, L. 42, p. 378  
 dàlù, 大陆, n., mainland, L. 11, p. 102

dàshēng, 大声, adv., loudly; in a loud voice, L. 15, p. 136  
 Dàtóng, 大同, n., Datong (in Shanxi), L. 13, p. 121  
 dàtóng xiǎoyì, 大同小异, idm., largely identical but with minor differences, L. 31, p. 278  
 dàxiàng, 大象, n., elephant, L. 16, p. 144  
 dà xióngmāo, 大熊猫, n., panda; giant panda, L. 16, p. 142  
 dàyuē, 大约, adv., approximately; about, L. 11, p. 100  
 dàzhì, 大致, adv., roughly; more or less, L. 35, p. 317  
 dài, 带, v., take; bring; carry, L. 1, p. 1  
 dài, 带, v., bear; have (certain air, appearance, or unique feature), L. 8, p. 70  
 dàibiǎo, 代表, v., represent, L. 17, p. 153  
 dài.fu, 大夫, n., physician; doctor, L. 5, p. 48  
 dài/lái, 带来, v., bring about; bring along; produce, L. 23, p. 210  
 dài.tì, 替代, v., replace; substitute for, L. 11, p. 102  
 dài.yù, 待遇, n., treatment, L. 42, p. 379  
 dānqīn jiātíng, 单亲家庭, n., single-parent family, L. 32, p. 290  
 dānrénjiān, 单人间, n., single room, L. 2, p. 11  
 dānwèi, 单位, n., (work) unit, L. 39, p. 350  
 dānxīn, 担心, v., worry; feel anxious, L. 1, p. 1  
 dānyuán, 单元, n., unit, L. 35, p. 320  
 dān.zi, 单子, n., form; list, L. 9, p. 81  
 dànchǎofàn, 蛋炒饭, n., rice fried with eggs, L. 20, p. 185  
 dāng, 当, v., be; work as; serve as, L. 39, p. 352  
 dāngdài, 当代, adj., contemporary, L. 42, p. 378  
 dāngdàishǐ, 当代史, n., contemporary history, L. 42, p. 378  
 dāngdì, 当地, p.w., local; in the locality, L. 6, p. 56  
 dāngnián, 当年, t.w., in those years (days), L. 43, p. 386  
 dāngshí, 当时, t.w., then; at that time, L. 47, p. 429  
 dāngzhōng, 当中, postp., in the middle, L. 21, p. 192  
 dǎng.buzhù, 挡不住, v.-c., be unable to (be) resist(ed); be unable to (be) stop(ped), L. 43, p. 389  
 dǎng//zhù, 挡住, v.-c., stop; halt; hamper, L. 17, p. 155  
 dāo.zi, 刀子, n., knife, L. 7, p. 63  
 dào, 到, prep., up to, L. 12, p. 115  
 dào, 倒, adv., on the contrary, L. 5, p. 47  
 dào, 倒, v., pour out; empty, L. 22, p. 203  
 dào, 道, AN, measure word for dishes, L. 20, p. 185  
 dàochù, 到处, adv., everywhere; at all places, L. 22, p. 200  
 dàodá, 到达, v., arrive, L. 36, p. 327  
 dàodé, 道德, n., morals; morality; ethics, L. 22, p. 201

- dàodǐ, 到底, *adv.*, after all; exactly, L. 10, p. 90
- dàoli, 道理, *n.*, reason; sense, L. 29, p. 262
- dàolù, 道路, *n.*, road; way, L. 9, p. 79
- dào shíhòu, 到时候, until then; until that time, L. 18, p. 162
- dào...wéizhǐ, 到…为止, up to...; until..., L. 13, p. 122
- dé, 得, *v.*, contract (an illness), L. 12, p. 114
- dédào, 得到, *v.*, succeed in obtaining, L. 34, p. 311
- .déhěn, *adj.* 得很, very, L. 2, p. 13
- .de yàomìng, *adj.* 得要命, awfully; extremely, L. 3, p. 25
- děi, 得, *v.*, must; have to, L. 2, p. 14
- dēng, 登, *v.*, ascend; mount, L. 17, p. 156
- děng, 等, *v.*, wait, L. 7, p. 62
- děng, …等 *n.*, and so on; etc., L. 16, p. 144
- děngděng, 等等, and so on; etc., L. 22, p. 202
- díduì, 敌对, *adj.*, hostile; antagonistic, L. 28, p. 250
- díquè, 的确, *adv.*, indeed; really, L. 32, p. 288
- dírén, 敌人, *n.*, enemy, L. 17, p. 155
- dì, 地, *n.*, ground; floor, L. 16, p. 143
- dìdao, 地道, *adj.*, authentic; genuine; real, L. 40, p. 363
- Dì èr Cì Shìjiè Dàzhàn, 第二次世界大战, *n.*, the Second World War (1939–1945), L. 44, p. 396
- dìguó, 帝国, *n.*, empire, L. 42, p. 379
- dìguó zhǔyì, 帝国主义, *n.*, imperialism, L. 42, p. 379
- dìqíū, 地球, *n.*, the earth, L. 37, p. 337
- dìqíucūn, 地球村, *n.*, the global village, L. 37, p. 337
- dìqū, 地区, *n.*, area; district, L. 36, p. 327
- dìtiě, 地铁, *n.*, subway, L. 41, p. 371
- dìwèi, 地位, *n.*, position; status; standing, L. 19, p. 170
- dìxià, 地下, *adj.*, underground; subterranean, L. 21, p. 193
- dìzhǐ, 地址, *n.*, address, L. 4, p. 39
- dǎn, 点, *v.*, check (the number) to see if correct, L. 9, p. 81
- dǎn, ——点, *n.*, aspect; feature, L. 25, p. 228
- dǎn//cài, 点菜, *v.-o.*, order dishes (in a restaurant), L. 20, p. 182
- dàn, 电, *n.*, electricity, L. 7, p. 64
- dàn, 店, *n.*, shop; store, L. 8, p. 69
- dàncān, 电车, *n.*, (electric) tram, L. 41, p. 371
- dànhuà, 电话, *n.*, telephone; phone call, L. 2, p. 11
- dànnǎo, 电脑, *n.*, computer, L. 31, p. 280
- dànshì, 电视, *n.*, television, L. 2, p. 12
- dànshitī, 电视机, *n.*, television set, L. 45, p. 405
- dànshitù, 电视剧, *n.*, TV drama; soap opera, L. 40, p. 363
- dànyǐng, 电影, *n.*, movie, L. 30, p. 269
- dànyǐngyuàn, 电影院, *n.*, movie theater, L. 37, p. 336
- dànzǐ, 电子, *adj.*, electronic, L. 30, p. 271
- dànzǐ jisùànji, 电子计算机, *n.*, computer, L. 30, p. 271
- dànzǐ yóujìan, 电子邮件, *n.*, e-mail, L. 37, p. 335
- dànzǐ yóuxì, 电子游戏, *n.*, video game, L. 43, p. 388
- dīng, “叮, *v.*, sting; bite, L. 5, p. 47
- dīu, 丢, *v.*, lose (something), L. 4, p. 38
- dōng, 东, *n.*, east, L. 4, p. 38
- dōngběi, 东北, *n.*, northeast, L. 47, p. 428
- dōngnán, 东南, *n.*, southeast, L. 47, p. 428
- dōng nán xī běi, 东南西北, the east, the south, the west, and the north; every direction, L. 36, p. 328
- dōngsǔn, 冬笋, *n.*, bamboo shoot, L. 20, p. 185
- dǒng, 懂, *v.*, understand; comprehend; know, L. 3, p. 25
- dòngcí, 动词, *n.*, verb, L. 20, p. 185
- dòngjī, 动机, *n.*, motive; intention, L. 44, p. 397
- dòngwù, 动物, *n.*, animal, L. 16, p. 142
- dòngwùyuán, 动物园, *n.*, zoo, L. 16, p. 142
- dòngzuò, 动作, *n.*, movement; notion; action, L. 12, p. 114
- dòufu, 豆腐, *n.*, bean curd; tofu, L. 20, p. 184
- dūshì, 都市, *n.*, city; metropolis, L. 41, p. 370
- dúlì, 独立, *n./adj.*, independence, independent, L. 35, p. 319
- dúshēng zǐnǚ, 独生子女, *n.*, “single-born-son-daughter”; only child, L. 33, p. 300
- dǔ, 堵, *v.*, stop up; block up, L. 9, p. 78
- dǔ//chē, 堵车, *v.-o.*, have a traffic jam, L. 9, p. 78
- dǔsè, 堵塞, *v.*, block up; stop up, L. 9, p. 79
- dù.zi, 肚子, *n.*, stomach; abdomen, L. 5, p. 46
- dǎn.chù, 短处, *n.*, shortcoming; weakness, L. 41, p. 372
- dǎnxiìn, 短信, *n.*, “short-letter”, text message, L. 37, p. 337
- dùan, 段, *AN*, paragraph; part; segment, L. 19, p. 171
- dùanliàn, 锻炼, *v.*, exercise; engage in physical training, L. 14, p. 128
- dùi, 对, *prep.*, about; toward, L. 1, p. 2
- dùifāng, 对方, *n.*, the other side; the other party, L. 18, p. 162
- dùihuà, 对话, *n.*, dialogue; conversation, L. 19, p. 171
- dùimian, 对面, across from; in front of, L. 4, p. 38
- dùiyú, 对于, *prep.*, 对; on; for; about; to, L. 30, p. 269
- dūn, 蹲, *v.*, squat on one's heels, L. 12, p. 113
- dùn, 颅, *AN*, measure word for a meal, L. 46, p. 416
- duō, 多——, *pref.*, multi-, L. 23, p. 209
- duōbàn, 多半儿, *adv.*, mostly, L. 3, p. 26
- duō dà, 多大, how old (used in a question), L. 18,

- p. 164
- duōfāngmiàn, 多方面, *adj.*, many-sided; in many ways, L. 28, p. 250
- duō guǎn xiānshì, 多管闲事, *v.*, poke one's nose into others' business, L. 26, p. 236
- duō mǐnzhú, 多民族, *adj.*, multi-racial, L. 47, p. 427
- duōyú, 多余, *adj.*, unnecessary; surplus, L. 26, p. 236
- duō zī duō cǎi, 多姿多彩, *adj.*, colorful; diverse, L. 48, p. 437
- E**
- érqǐe, 而且, *conj.*, and; as well (as), furthermore, L. 2, p. 13
- értóng, 儿童, *n.*, children, L. 35, p. 317
- ěr.duo, 耳朵, *n.*, ear, L. 16, p. 143
- Èrhuán, 二环, *n.*, Second Ring Road, L. 9, p. 78
- F**
- fā, 发, *v.*, send; send out; give out, L. 37, p. 337
- fádá, 发达, *adj.*, developed; flourishing, L. 30, p. 271
- fáifú, 发福, *v.-o.*, gain weight, L. 33, p. 298
- fáipào, 发票, *n.*, bill; receipt, L. 9, p. 80
- fáishāo, 发烧, *v.-o.*, have a fever, L. 5, p. 47
- fāshēng, 发生, *v.*, occur; take place happen; take place, L. 32, p. 289
- fáxiàn, 发现, *v.*, find; discover, L. 3, p. 26
- fázhǎn, 发展, *v./n.*, develop, development, L. 9, p. 79
- fázhǎnzhōng guójia, 发展中国家, *n.*, developing country, L. 24, p. 220
- fǎlǜ, 法律, *n.*, law, L. 32, p. 290
- fáláng, 发廊, *n.*, barbershop; hairdresser's, L. 8, p. 69
- fányì, 翻译, *v./n.*, translate; translation, L. 48, p. 437
- fānnǎo, 烦恼, *n./adj.*, worries; vexation, be vexed; be worried, L. 33, p. 299
- fánróng, 繁荣, *adj.*, prosperous; flourishing, L. 17, p. 154
- fántǐzì, 繁体字, *n.*, traditional Chinese characters, L. 23, p. 210
- fǎnduì, 反对, *v.*, oppose; be opposed to; object to, L. 35, p. 318
- fǎn'érl, 反而, *conj.*, on the contrary; instead, L. 33, p. 299
- fǎnyìng, 反映, *v.*, reflect; reflex; mirror, L. 25, p. 227
- fàngguǎnr, 饭馆儿, *n.*, restaurant, L. 2, p. 13
- fānlàn, 泛滥, *v./adj.*, be in flood; inundate; overrun, overabundant; unchecked spreading, L. 45, p. 407
- fānzhuō, 饭桌, *n.*, dining table, L. 19, p. 170
- fāngbiàn, 方便, *adj.*, convenient, L. 2, p. 14
- fāngfǎ, 方法, *n.*, way; method, L. 20, p. 184
- fāngmiàn, 方面, *n.*, respect; aspect; side, L. 2, p. 14
- fāngshì, 方式, *n.*, pattern; fashion; way, L. 6, p. 56
- fāngxiàng, 方向, *n.*, direction, L. 40, p. 361
- fāngxiànggǎn, 方向感, *n.*, sense of direction, L. 40, p. 361
- fāngyán, 方言, *n.*, dialect, L. 23, p. 208
- fāngdichǎn, 房地产, *n.*, real estate, L. 42, p. 380
- fāngzhǐ, 防止, *v.*, prevent; guard against; avoid, L. 17, p. 155
- fǎngwèn, 访问, *v.*, visit (formally), L. 28, p. 250
- fàngkuān, 放宽, *v.*, relax (restrictions), L. 30, p. 272
- fàng/pì, 放屁, *v.-o.*, pass gas; fart, L. 26, p. 235
- fàng//xīn, 放心, *v.-o.*, set one's mind at rest; feel relieved, L. 2, p. 11
- fēijī, 飞机, *n.*, airplane, L. 1, p. 1
- féipàng, 肥胖, *n./adj.*, obesity; obese, L. 33, p. 299
- feipàngzhèng, 肥胖症, *n.*, obesity, L. 46, p. 418
- fèiyòng, 费用, *n.*, expenses; costs; fees, L. 34, p. 309
- fēn, 分, *v.*, divide; separate; part, L. 11, p. 101
- fēnbù, 分布, *v.*, be distributed (over an area); be scattered, L. 47, p. 427
- fēnchéngheng, 分成, *v.-c.*, divide into, L. 39, p. 352
- fēng'gē, 分割, *v.*, separate; cut up; carve up, L. 48, p. 437
- fēnpèi, 分配, *v.*, distribute; allot, L. 27, p. 244
- fēnxī, 分析, *v./n.*, analyze, analysis, L. 29, p. 261
- fēnchǎng, 坟场, *n.*, graveyard; cemetery, L. 35, p. 317
- fēn.liàng, 分量, *n.*, amount, L. 34, p. 309
- fēngfù, 丰富, *adj.*, rich; abundant, L. 24, p. 220
- fēngfù, 丰富, *v./adj.*, enrich, rich, L. 48, p. 436
- fēngjǐng, 风景, *n.*, scenery; landscape, L. 4, p. 39
- fēngsú, 风俗, *n.*, common customs, L. 45, p. 408
- fēngwèir, 风味儿, *n.*, special flavor; local flavor, L. 13, p. 122
- fēngrènji, 缝纫机, *n.*, sewing machine, L. 34, p. 309
- Fójiào, 佛教, *n.*, Buddhism, L. 48, p. 436
- fójīng, 佛经, *n.*, Buddhist sutra, L. 48, p. 437
- fūfū, 夫妇, *n.*, married couple; (lit.) husband and wife, L. 32, p. 290
- fūqī, 夫妻, *n.*, married couple, L. 32, p. 289
- fú, 幅, *AN*, measure word for painting, L. 10, p. 89
- fúhào, 符号, *n.*, sign; symbol; notation, L. 31, p. 280
- fú.qi, 福气, *n.*, good fortune, L. 33, p. 298
- fúwù, 服务, *n./v.*, service, serve; give service to, L. 8, p. 71
- fúwùyuán, 服务员, *n.*, service personnel, L. 4, p. 37
- fúzhuāng, 服装, *n.*, dress; clothing, L. 8, p. 70
- fǔbài, 腐败, *n./adj.*, corruption, corrupt; rotten, L. 47,

- p. 429
- fù, 付, *v.*, pay, L. 19, p. 174
- fù, 负, *v.*, carry on the back; bear, L. 33, p. 300
- fùdān, 负担, *n.*, burden; load, L. 35, p. 319
- fùjìn, 附近, *p.w.*, nearby; in the vicinity, L. 4, p. 37
- fùmiàn, 负面, *adj.*, negative, L. 29, p. 261
- fùnǚ, 妇女, *n.*, women (as a collective noun), L. 32, p. 288
- fùyù, 富裕, *adj.*, rich; wealthy; prosperous, L. 34, p. 308
- fù zérèn, 负责任, *v.-o.*, be responsible for; be accountable for, L. 33, p. 300
- fù//zhàng, 付账, *v.-o.*, pay a bill, L. 19, p. 174
- G**
- gāi, 该, *aux.*, should; ought to; 应该, L. 5, p. 48
- gǎi, 改, *v.*, change; alter; correct, L. 3, p. 26
- gǎibiàn, 改变, *n./v.*, change; alter, L. 12, p. 115
- gǎi//diào, 改掉, *v.-c.*, give up; drop, L. 22, p. 202
- gǎigē, 改革, *v.*, reform, L. 11, p. 101
- gǎigé kāifàng, 改革开放, *n.*, the opening-up and reform policy of China starting in the late 1970's, L. 11, p. 101
- gǎijìn, 改进, *v./n.*, improve, improvement, L. 36, p. 326
- gǎishàn, 改善, *v.*, improve; make (something) better, L. 46, p. 419
- gānbēi, 千杯, Cheers!; Bottoms up!, L. 19, p. 172
- gāngà, 尴尬, *adj.*, awkward; embarrassed, L. 24, p. 219
- gānjìng, 干净, *adj.*, clean; neat and tidy, L. 3, p. 26
- gǎn, 感, *suffix*, sense of ..., L. 40, p. 361
- gǎn.bu shàng, 赶不上, *v.-c.*, cannot catch up with, L. 9, p. 79
- gǎnjǐn, 赶紧, *adv.*, without loosing time; hastily; quickly, L. 16, p. 144
- gǎn xìngqù, 感兴趣, *v.-o.*, be interested in, L. 43, p. 387
- gàn, 干, *v.*, (colloquial) do, L. 39, p. 351
- gāng, 刚, *adv.*, just, L. 3, p. 25
- gǎng, 岗, *n.*, a post, L. 39, p. 350
- Gǎngrén zhì Gǎng, 港人治港, "Hong Kong citizens govern Hong Kong", L. 42, p. 379
- gāokǎo, 高考, *n.*, the entrance examination for colleges and universities, L. 29, p. 260
- gāosù gōnglù, 高速公路, *n.*, expressway; freeway, L. 1, p. 3
- gāoxìng, 高兴, *adj.*, happy, L. 43, p. 389
- gāoyǎ, 高雅, *adj.*, refined; elegant, L. 26, p. 236
- gào.su, 告诉, *v.*, tell; inform, L. 15, p. 136
- gē, 歌, *n.*, song, L. 15, p. 134
- gē.bo, 胳膊, *n.*, arm, L. 5, p. 47
- gēràng, 割让, *v.*, cede, L. 42, p. 379
- géilí, 隔离, *v.*, keep apart; isolate; segregate, L. 28, p. 251
- géming, 革命, *n.*, revolution, L. 43, p. 386
- gè, 各 *n.*, *adj.*, each; every, L. 6, p. 56
- gè fù gè de, 各付各的, go Dutch, L. 19, p. 174
- gèháng gèyè, 各行各业, *n.*, all trades and professions, L. 27, p. 244
- gèréni, 个人, *adj.*, individual; personal, L. 18, p. 164
- gèshì gèyàng, 各式各样, *adj.*, every kind of; all sorts of; all kinds of, L. 15, p. 135
- gèxìng, 个性, *n.*, individual character; personality, L. 48, p. 439
- gè yǒu suǒ cháng, 各有所长, *idm.*, each has his own strong points, L. 41, p. 370
- gè yǒu suǒ duǎn, 各有所短, *idm.*, each has his own shortcomings, L. 41, p. 372
- gèzhǒng gèyàng, 各种各样, *adj.*, all kinds of, L. 22, p. 200
- gěi miàn.zi, 给面子, *v.-o.*, show due respect for somebody's feelings, L. 18, p. 162
- gēnbén, 根本, *adv.*, utterly; completely; at all (always used in negative sentences), L. 1, p. 2
- gèng, 更, *adv.*, even more, more, still more, L. 3, p. 24
- gōngchǎng, 工厂, *n.*, factory, L. 24, p. 219
- gōnggòng, 公共, *adj.*, public; communal, L. 4, p. 37
- gōnggòng qìchē, 公共汽车, *n.*, bus, L. 4, p. 37
- gōngjiāochē, 公交车, *n.*, same as 公共汽车; bus, L. 16, p. 142
- gōngjīn, 公斤, *n.*, kilogram, L. 33, p. 298
- gōngjù, 工具, *n.*, tool; instrument, L. 13, p. 122
- gōngkāi, 公开, *adj.*, public; open (places, information, etc.), L. 32, p. 289
- gōnglì, 功利, *n.*, utility; material gain, L. 44, p. 397
- gōnglù, 公路, *n.*, highway, main road, L. 41, p. 370
- gōngpíng, 公平, *adj.*, fair; just, L. 29, p. 261
- gōnggrén, 工人, *n.*, manual worker; workman, L. 24, p. 220
- gōngsī, 公司, *n.*, company; corporation, L. 24, p. 220
- gōngwei, 恭维, *v.*, compliment, L. 33, p. 298
- gōngyèhuà, 工业化, *n.*, industrialization, L. 35, p. 320
- gōngyuán, 公园儿, *n.*, park, L. 4, p. 38
- gōngzī, 工资, *n.*, wages; salary, L. 25, p. 228
- gònghéguó, 共和国, *n.*, republic, L. 22, p. 201
- gòngxièn, 贡献, *n./v.*, contribution, contribute, L. 24, p. 221
- gōutōng, 沟通, *v.*, communicate, L. 23, p. 209
- gòumǎi, 购买, *v.*, purchase, L. 36, p. 327

- gǔ, 股, *AN*, measure word for strength, smell, etc., L. 12, p. 114
- gǔdài, 古代, *n.*, ancient times, L. 14, p. 127
- gǔdiǎn, 古典, *adj.*, classical, L. 30, p. 271
- gǔdǒng, 古董, *n.*, antique, L. 10, p. 89
- gǔhuàr, 古画儿, *n.*, ancient painting, L. 10, p. 90
- gǔ jīn bìngcún, 古今并存, the ancient and the current exist simultaneously, L. 26, p. 235
- gǔ jīn zhōng wài, 古今中外, *idm.*, ancient and modern; Chinese and foreign; at all times and in all places, L. 40, p. 360
- gǔlǎo, 古老, *adj.*, ancient; age-old, L. 1, p. 3
- gǔpiào, 股票, *n.*, stock, L. 42, p. 380
- gùdìng, 固定, *adj.*, fixed; stable, L. 48, p. 439
- Gùgōng, 故宫, *n.*, the Palace Museum, L. 14, p. 127
- gùrán, 固然, *conj.*, it is true that; no doubt, L. 29, p. 261
- guā//hú.zi, 刮胡子, *v.-o.*, shave one's beard, L. 8, p. 71
- guà//hào, 挂号, *v.-o.*, register; send by registered mail, L. 4, p. 38
- guài.bu.de, 怪不得, *conj.*, no wonder; so that's why, L. 6, p. 54
- guānchá, 观察, *v.*, observe; watch; survey, L. 13, p. 122
- guān//diào, 关掉, *v.-c.*, turn off, L. 5, p. 48
- guānfāng, 官方, *adj.*, official, L. 42, p. 380
- guānguāng, 观光, *v.*, go sightseeing, L. 15, p. 134
- guānguāngkè, 观光客, *n.*, tourist; sightseer, L. 15, p. 134
- guān//mén, 关门, *v.-o.*, (said of stores, offices, etc.) close, L. 9, p. 80
- guānniàn, 观念, *n.*, concept; notion; idea, L. 27, p. 244
- guān.xi, 关系, *n.*, relevance, relationships, L. 1, p. 3
- guān.xi, 关系, *n.*, connections; relationships, L. 29, p. 261
- guǎn, 馆, *n.*, shops, L. 8, p. 69
- guǎn.zi, 馆子, *n.*, (informal) restaurant, L. 20, p. 183
- guàn//huài, 惯坏, *v.-c.*, spoil, L. 2, p. 13
- guāng, 光, *adv.*, only; alone; merely, L. 23, p. 211
- guāngmíng, 光明, *n./adj.*, light, bright, L. 45, p. 405
- Guāngmíng Rìbào, 光明日報, *n.*, Guangming Daily (newspaper), L. 45, p. 405
- guǎng, 广, *adj.*, vast; wide, L. 47, p. 427
- guǎngbō, 广播, *n./v.*, radio broadcast, broadcast, L. 23, p. 211
- Guǎngdōng, 广东, *n.*, Guangdong Province, L. 20, p. 183
- guǎnggào, 广告, *n.*, advertisement, L. 22, p. 201
- guàng, 逛, *v.*, stroll; go window-shopping, L. 10, p. 91
- guīfàn, 规范, *adj./n.*, standard; normal, norm, L. 23, p. 208
- guīfànzhì, 规范字, *n.*, standardized characters, L. 23, p. 208
- guīmó, 規模, *n.*, scale; scope; dimensions, L. 17, p. 155
- guīzé, 规则, *n.*, regulation; rule, L. 21, p. 193
- guì, 贵, *adj.*, expensive, L. 6, p. 55
- guǐtái, 柜台, *n.*, counter, L. 4, p. 40
- guō, 锅, *n.*, pot; pan; cauldron, etc., L. 7, p. 63
- guódū, 国都, *n.*, the national capital, L. 40, p. 360
- guójí, 国际, *adj.*, international, L. 1, p. 1
- guójia, 国家, *n.*, country; state; nation, L. 23, p. 209
- Guójia Dà Jùyuàn, 国家大剧院, *n.*, National Centre for the Performing Arts, L. 40, p. 362
- Guójia Tǐyùchǎng, 国家体育场, *n.*, National Stadium, L. 40, p. 362
- Guójia Yóuyǒng Zhōngxīn, 国家游泳中心, *n.*, National Aquatics Center, L. 40, p. 362
- guónèi, 国内, *adj.*, internal; domestic, L. 13, p. 122
- guóqíng, 国情, *n.*, the condition or situation of a nation, L. 45, p. 408
- Guóyǔ, 国语, *n.*, Mandarin Chinese, L. 23, p. 209
- Guóyǔ, 国语, *n.*, the national language; (here) the National Language of China, L. 31, p. 280
- guòrán, 果然, *adv.*, as expected; sure enough, L. 44, p. 395
- guò, 过, *v.*, pass; cross, L. 4, p. 38
- guò, 过, *v.*, spend (time); pass (time duration), L. 9, p. 80
- guò..., 过 *adj., pref.*, too; exceeding, L. 39, p. 351
- guòchéng, 过程, *n.*, course; process, L. 28, p. 251
- guòdù, 过渡, *v./n.*, transit, transition, L. 34, p. 311
- guòfèn, 过分, *adv.*, excessively; over-, L. 29, p. 262
- guòjiē tiānqiáo, 过街天桥, *n.*, overhead bridge that goes across a street; overpass, L. 21, p. 192
- guòqù, 过去, *n./adv.*, past, in the past; formerly, L. 23, p. 209
- guò rì.zi, 过日子, *v.-o.*, lead a life, L. 41, p. 371
- guò//.shàng, 过上, *v.-c.*, be able to have (a high standard of living), L. 34, p. 311

## H

- hái.zi, 孩子, *n.*, child; children; kid, L. 16, p. 145
- hǎi, 海, *n.*, sea, L. 15, p. 134
- hǎiguān, 海关, *n.*, customs, L. 1, p. 1
- hǎiwài, 海外, *p.w.*, overseas; abroad, L. 11, p. 101
- hǎixiá, 海峡, *n.*, strait, L. 31, p. 278
- hǎixiá liǎng'ān, 海峡两岸, *n.*, (here) the two coasts of the Taiwan Strait; mainland China and Taiwan,

- L. 31, p. 278
- hài, 害, v., harm; damage, L. 45, p. 407
- hamburger, 汉堡包, n., hamburger, L. 33, p. 300
- Hànrén, 汉人, n., the Han people, L. 47, p. 427
- Hànyǔ, 汉语, n., Chinese language, L. 27, p. 243
- Hànyǔ pīnyīn, 汉语拼音, n., the Chinese phonetic alphabet, L. 31, p. 280
- Hànzì, 汉字, n., Chinese characters, L. 23, p. 210
- hángkōng, 航空, n., aviation, L. 36, p. 327
- hángyè, 行业, n., trade; profession, L. 27, p. 244
- háo, 毫, in the least, L. 31, p. 279
- háo wú, 毫无, not in the least, L. 31, p. 279
- hǎobǐshuō, 好比说, for instance; for example, L. 45, p. 408
- hǎochu, 好处, n., benefit; gain; profit; advantage, L. 3, p. 27
- hǎo jǐ..., 好几..., quite a few, L. 5, p. 48
- hǎoxiàng...shì.de, 好像…似的, adv., seem; as if, L. 16, p. 144
- hǎozài, 好在, adv., luckily; fortunately, L. 1, p. 2
- hào, 号, n., number, L. 4, p. 39
- hào.zi, 耗子, n., mouse; rat, L. 26, p. 236
- hē/jiǔ, 喝酒, v.-o., drink alcoholic liquor, L. 15, p. 134
- hē/zui, 喝醉, v.-c., be drunk, L. 19, p. 172
- hé, 河, n., river, L. 16, p. 145
- héli, 合理, adj., reasonable, L. 39, p. 353
- hé.qi, 和气, adj., friendly; polite; amiable, L. 8, p. 71
- heshì, 合适, adv./adj., properly, proper; appropriate; suitable, L. 11, p. 103
- hézī, 合资, adj., joint venture, L. 43, p. 387
- hēi, 黑, adj., dark, L. 14, p. 128
- hēisè, 黑色, n./adj., black, L. 16, p. 143
- hěnshǎo, 很少, adv., seldom, L. 6, p. 54
- hōnggānji, 烘干机, n., dryer (for drying wet clothes), L. 7, p. 62
- hónglùdēng, 红绿灯, n., traffic light, L. 9, p. 80
- hóngshāo, 红烧, v., braise in soy sauce, L. 20, p. 184
- hóu.zi, 猴子, n., monkey, L. 16, p. 145
- Hòuhǎi, 后海, n., Houhai; a famous lake in Beijing, L. 15, p. 134
- hòulái, 后来, n., afterwards, L. 1, p. 2
- hòumén, 后门儿, n., back door, L. 29, p. 261
- hūliè, 忽略, v., neglect, L. 31, p. 278
- hú, 湖, n., lake, L. 15, p. 135
- Húnán, 湖南, n., Hunan Province, L. 20, p. 183
- hútòngr, 胡同儿, n., traditional alleys in Beijing, L. 40, p. 362
- hú.zi, 胡子, n., beard, L. 8, p. 71
- hù, 戶, AN, measure word for household, L. 45, p. 405
- hùxiāng, 互相, adv., mutually; with each other, L. 44, p. 396
- hùzhào, 护照, n., passport, L. 9, p. 81
- huā, 花, v., spend (time or money), L. 16, p. 143
- huāfèi, 花费, n./v., expenses, spend; cost, L. 34, p. 308
- Huāhuā gōngzǐ, 花花公子, n., Playboy, L. 1, p. 2
- huā/qián, 花钱, v.-o., spend (money), L. 10, p. 92
- huāyuán, 花园, n., garden, L. 15, p. 135
- huáli, 华丽, adj., magnificent; resplendent, L. 14, p. 128
- Huáshèngdūn, 华盛顿, n., Washington, D. C., L. 46, p. 418
- huà ——化, suffix, -ize; -ization, L. 37, p. 337
- huàjù, 话剧, n., modern drama; stage play, L. 30, p. 269
- huà shé tiān zú, 画蛇添足, idm., draw a snake and add feet to it — ruin the effect by adding something superfluous, L. 26, p. 236
- huàtí, 话题, n., topic of conversation, L. 18, p. 164
- huáijù, 怀旧, n./v., a sense of nostalgia; nostalgic sentiments, recollect the good old days, L. 43, p. 386
- huainiàn, 怀念, v., cherish the memory of; think fondly of, L. 11, p. 103
- huānyíng, 欢迎, v., welcome; be received favorably, L. 37, p. 336
- huáncíng gōnglù, 环城公路, n., the roads circling the city; ring road; loop road, L. 40, p. 362
- huánjìng, 环境, n., environment, L. 7, p. 64
- huàn, 换, v., change, L. 2, p. 12
- huángdì, 皇帝, n., emperor, L. 15, p. 135
- huángjiā, 皇家, adj., imperial, L. 15, p. 135
- huifù, 恢复, v., resume, L. 42, p. 378
- huidá, 回答, n./v., answer, L. 18, p. 163
- huíguī, 回归, n./v., return, L. 42, p. 379
- húi/guó, 回国, v.-o., return to one's country, L. 38, p. 345
- Huízú, 回族, n., the Hui people, L. 47, p. 428
- hūnwài guānxi, 婚外关系, n., extra-marital affair, L. 32, p. 289
- hūnyīn, 婚姻, n., marriage, L. 32, p. 289
- hùnluàn, 混乱, n./adj., chaos; confusion, in chaos, L. 23, p. 210
- huór, 活儿, n., (colloquial) work, L. 39, p. 351
- huódòng, 活动, n., activity, L. 16, p. 142
- huólì, 活力, n., vigor; energy, L. 40, p. 364
- huǒchē, 火车, n., “fire-car”; train, L. 13, p. 121
- huò, 货, n., goods, L. 11, p. 102
- huò, 或, conj., 或者; or, L. 35, p. 317

huòyùn, 货运, *n.*, cargo transportation, L. 36, p. 326  
huòzhě, 或者, *conj.*, or, L. 18, p. 162

**J**

jī, 机, *n.*, 机器 (*jīqì*); machine, L. 7, p. 62  
jī, 鸡, *n.*, chicken, L. 20, p. 184  
jīběn, 基本, *adj.*, basic; fundamental, L. 20, p. 184  
jīchǎng, 机场, *n.*, airport, L. 1, p. 1  
jīchǔ, 基础, *n.*, foundation, L. 33, p. 301  
jīhū, 几乎, *adv.*, almost; nearly; practically, L. 11, p. 103  
jīhuì, 机会, *n.*, opportunity; chance, L. 13, p. 122  
jīliè, 激烈, *adj.*, intense; sharp; fierce, L. 35, p. 318  
jí, 急, *v.*, worry; make anxious; make impatient, L. 9, p. 79  
jíle, *adj.* 极了, extremely; very, L. 2, p. 14  
jǐshǐ, 即使, *conj.*, even though; even if, L. 32, p. 289  
jǐ, 挤, *v./adj.*, crowd; pack; cram, L. 35, p. 320  
jǐshíwàn, 几十万, *n.*, hundreds of thousands, L. 38, p. 343  
jì, 寄, *v.*, send; mail, L. 4, p. 38  
jì...yě..., 既...也..., *conj.*, both ...and; as well as, L. 12, p. 114  
jīchéngchē, 计程车, *n.*, taxi, L. 31, p. 280  
jìde, 记得, *v.*, remember, L. 20, p. 184  
jǐhuà, 计划, *n./v.*, plan; project, plan, L. 39, p. 351  
jǐhuà jīngjì, 计划经济, *n.*, planned economy, L. 39, p. 351  
jìsuàn, 计算, *v.*, calculate, L. 27, p. 243  
jīsuàncài, 计算机, *n.*, computer, L. 27, p. 243  
jìxù, 继续, *v.*, continue, L. 38, p. 343  
jìyì, 记忆, *n.*, memory, L. 29, p. 262  
jì/zhu, 记住, *v.-c.*, memorize, L. 20, p. 184  
jiā, 家, *AN*, measure word for business establishments, L. 8, p. 69  
jiā, 加, *v.*, add; put in, L. 11, p. 102  
jiāchángcài, 家常菜, *n.*, home cooking; simple meal, L. 19, p. 173  
jiājiàn, 加建, *v.*, (of buildings) extend; expand; add extra building, L. 17, p. 155  
jiājù, 家具, *n.*, furniture, L. 24, p. 219  
jiākuài, 加快, *v.*, speed up; accelerate, L. 36, p. 327  
jiāqiáng, 加强, *v.*, strengthen; enhance, L. 36, p. 328  
jiātíng, 家庭, *n.*, family; household; home, L. 25, p. 227  
jiāxiāng, 家乡, *n.*, hometown, L. 38, p. 344  
jiāyòng diànqì, 家用电器, *n.*, household appliances, L. 7, p. 63  
jiāzhòng, 加重, *v.*, make or become heavier; increase the weight of, L. 35, p. 319

jiǎ, 甲, *n.*, the first of the ten Heavenly Stems; used as a pronoun here meaning “the first person”, L. 32, p. 288  
jià, 价, *n.*, 价钱; 价格; price, L. 10, p. 89  
jiàgé, 价格, *n.*, price, L. 42, p. 380  
jiān, 煎, *v.*, fry in shallow oil, L. 20, p. 184  
jiānchí, 坚持, *v.*, insist on; persist in, L. 6, p. 56  
jiǎn, 剪, *v.*, cut (with scissors); clip; trim, L. 8, p. 71  
jiǎnchá, 检查, *v./n.*, check; examine; inspect, inspection, L. 1, p. 3  
jiǎnchēng, 简称, *n.*, the abbreviated form of a name, L. 20, p. 184  
jiǎn//fèi, 减肥, *v.-o.*, go on a diet to lose weight, L. 33, p. 298  
jiǎnlòu, 简陋, *adj.*, simple and crude, L. 28, p. 250  
jiǎnqīng, 减轻, *v.*, alleviate, L. 39, p. 351  
jiǎnshǎo, 减少, *v.*, decrease; reduce, L. 22, p. 201  
jiǎntǐzì, 简体字, *n.*, simplified Chinese characters, L. 23, p. 210  
jiǎnzǐ, 简直, *adv.*, simply; virtually, L. 2, p. 13  
jiàn, 建, *v.*, build; construct, L. 17, p. 154  
jiànjiàn, 渐渐, *adv.*, gradually, L. 11, p. 101  
jiànkāng, 健康, *n./adj.*, health; physique, healthy, L. 2, p. 14  
jiànli, 建立, *v.*, establish; set up, L. 47, p. 429  
jiàn//miàn, 见面, *v.-o.*, meet (somebody), L. 33, p. 298  
jiànshè, 建设, *v./n.*, construct, construction, L. 36, p. 326  
jiànzhù, 建筑, *n.*, building, L. 14, p. 128  
Jiāng, 江, *n.*, Jiangsu Province; 江苏, L. 20, p. 182  
jiānglái, 将来, *n.*, future; in the future, L. 42, p. 380  
Jiāng Zhè, 江浙, *n.*, Jiangsu and Zhejiang Provinces; 江苏省 and 浙江省, L. 20, p. 182  
jiǎng, 讲, *v.*, stress; pay attention to; be particular about, L. 22, p. 202  
jiǎng//jià, 讲价, *v.-o.*, bargain; haggle over the price, L. 10, p. 89  
jiǎng/jiù, 讲究, *v.*, be particular about; pay attention to; be fastidious about, L. 19, p. 171  
jiǎng wénmíng, 讲文明, stress on decorum, L. 22, p. 202  
jiàngdī, 降低, *v.*, reduce; drop; lower, L. 24, p. 221  
jiàngluò, 降落, *v.*, land; descend, L. 1, p. 1  
jiāo, 交, *v.*, make (friends), L. 13, p. 122  
jiāo, 教, *v.*, teach, L. 18, p. 164  
jiāo, 交, *v.*, hand over; deliver, L. 25, p. 228  
jiāoliú, 交流, *n./v.*, interaction, exchange; interchange, L. 28, p. 250  
jiāoqū, 郊区, *n.*, suburb, L. 17, p. 154

- jiāotán, 交谈, v., talk with each other; converse; chat, L. 13, p. 122
- jiāotōng, 交通, n., traffic, L. 9, p. 79
- jiāotōng dùsè, 交通堵塞, n., traffic jam, L. 9, p. 79
- jiāowǎng, 交往, n./v., contact; association, associate with, L. 31, p. 281
- jiǎo, 角, n., corner, L. 44, p. 396
- jiǎodù, 角度, n., angle; point of view, L. 3, p. 27
- jiǎo.zi, 饺子, n., dumpling, L. 20, p. 183
- jiào, 叫, v., be called as; call, L. 8, p. 69
- jiàocái, 教材, n., teaching material, L. 30, p. 271
- jiàochē, 轿车, n., sedan, L. 40, p. 362
- jiàokēshū, 教科书, n., textbook, L. 46, p. 416
- jiàoxué, 教学, n., teaching; education; pedagogy, L. 44, p. 396
- jiào.xun, 教训, n., lesson; moral, L. 22, p. 202
- jiào.yù, 教育, n., education, L. 29, p. 260
- jiē, 接, v., meet; welcome; fetch, L. 1, p. 1
- jiē, 街, n., street, L. 4, p. 38
- jiēchù, 接触, v., come into contact with, L. 31, p. 281
- jiēdào, 街道, n., street, L. 30, p. 270
- jiéjí, 阶级, n., (social) class, L. 47, p. 429
- jiējǐng, 街景, n., street scene, L. 21, p. 194
- jiēshòu, 接受, v., accept, L. 28, p. 252
- jiētóu, 街头, p.w., street corner; street, L. 44, p. 396
- jiéguō, 结构, n., structure, L. 20, p. 185
- jiéguǒ, 结果, adv./n., as a result, result, L. 5, p. 47
- jié/hūn, 结婚, v.-o., marry; get married, L. 31, p. 279
- jiémù, 节目, n., (TV, radio, etc.) show; program, L. 45, p. 406
- jiéshěng, 节省, v., economize; save; use sparingly, L. 7, p. 64
- jiéshù, 结束, v., finish; conclude, L. 42, p. 378
- jiěfàng, 解放, n./v., the liberation of China in 1949, liberate; emancipate, L. 30, p. 272
- jiégù, 解雇, v., lay off; fire, L. 39, p. 351
- jiějué, 解决, v., solve, L. 34, p. 310
- jièkǒu, 借口, n., excuse, L. 2, p. 14
- jièlán, 芥兰, n., Chinese leaf mustard, L. 20, p. 186
- jièshào, 介绍, v., introduce, L. 46, p. 415
- jiēhuángsè, 金黄色, n./adj., golden yellow, L. 16, p. 144
- jīnsīhóu, 金丝猴, n., golden monkey, L. 16, p. 144
- jinzhāng, 紧张, adj., (said of a financial market) tight; tense; high demand, L. 34, p. 310
- jinzhāng, 紧张, adj., tense; intense; strained, L. 5, p. 48
- jiìn, 近, adj., close; near, L. 2, p. 13
- jiìn, 禁, v., prohibit; ban; forbid, L. 30, p. 272
- jiìn, 尽, v., exert; exhaust, L. 35, p. 318
- jiìnbbù, 进步, n./v., advance; progress; improvement (cannot be followed by an object), L. 12, p. 115
- jinlái, 近来, adv., recently, L. 33, p. 298
- jinniánlái, 近年来, adv., 最近几年来, L. 45, p. 405
- jinrù, 进入, v., enter; get into, L. 17, p. 154
- jinxíng, 进行, v., carry on; carry out; conduct, L. 28, p. 251
- jin'yíbù, 进一步, adv., go a step further; further, L. 18, p. 163
- jīngcháng, 经常, adv., often; frequently, L. 3, p. 26
- jīngdiǎn, 经典, n., classics, L. 30, p. 271
- jīngjì, 经济, n., economy, L. 24, p. 221
- Jīngjiǔxiàn, 京九线, n., Beijing-Kowloon (Railway) Line, L. 36, p. 326
- Jīngjù, 京剧, n., Beijing Opera, L. 40, p. 363
- jīngquè, 精确, adj., precise, L. 40, p. 361
- jīng.shen, 精神, n., vigor; vitality; spirit, L. 6, p. 54
- jīngtōng, 精通, v., be highly proficient in; possess mastery of, L. 30, p. 271
- jīngyàn, 经验, n., experience, L. 30, p. 271
- jīngdiǎn, 景点, n., scenic spot, L. 14, p. 127
- jīng, 敬, v., offer politely, L. 19, p. 172
- jīng, 竞, adv.,竟然;居然; unexpectedly; to one's surprise, L. 48, p. 436
- jīnglǎoyuàn, 敬老院, n., nursing home, L. 35, p. 318
- jīngzhēng, 竞争, n./v., competition, compete, L. 27, p. 244
- jiǔ, 久, adj., long; for a long time, L. 12, p. 113
- jiǔ, 酒, n., wine; liquor, L. 15, p. 134
- jiǔbā, 酒吧, n., bar; barroom, L. 15, p. 134
- Jiǔlóng, 九龙, n., Kowloon, L. 36, p. 326
- jiù/yè, 就业, v.-o., obtain employment, L. 24, p. 220
- jūmín, 居民, n., resident, L. 33, p. 299
- jūrán, 居然, adv., unexpectedly; to one's surprise, L. 13, p. 121
- jūzhù, 居住, v., live; reside; dwell, L. 47, p. 428
- júmiàn, 局面, n., aspect; situation, L. 28, p. 250
- jǔbàn, 举办, v., hold (an exhibition, contest, etc.), L. 40, p. 362
- jǔxíng, 举行, v., hold (a meeting, ceremony, etc.), L. 29, p. 260
- jùjué, 拒绝, v., reject, L. 18, p. 162
- jùlí, 距离, n., distance; disparity, L. 36, p. 327
- jùshuō, 据说, adv., it is said; they say, L. 1, p. 2
- jùxíng, 句型, n., sentence pattern, L. 46, p. 417
- jùyuàn, 剧院, n., theater, L. 40, p. 362
- juédìng, 决定, v./n., decide, decision, L. 8, p. 69
- jūnshì, 军事, n., military affairs, L. 17, p. 155

## K

kāfēi, 咖啡, *n.*, coffee, L. 3, p. 25  
 kāi, 开 (车), *v.*, drive (a car), L. 1, p. 2  
 kāi, 开, *v.*, offer (a course), L. 44, p. 396  
 kāifāng, 开放, *v.*, open; liberalize, L. 11, p. 101  
 kāifàng, 开放, *v.*, open to the public, L. 15, p. 135  
 kāi/huì, 开会, *v.-o.*, hold a meeting; have a meeting, L. 25, p. 227  
 kāi//kāi, 开开, *v.-c.*, “open-open”; 打开; open, L. 5, p. 48  
 kāishǐ, 开始, *v.*, start; begin, L. 3, p. 24  
 kāishuǐ, 开水, *n.*, boiled water, L. 6, p. 55  
 kāi wánxiào, 开玩笑, *v.-o.*, joke; make fun of, L. 10, p. 90  
 kàn.bu qǐ, 看不起, *v.-c.*, look down upon; despise, L. 39, p. 352  
 kànfa, 看法, *n.*, view; a way of looking at a thing, L. 28, p. 251  
 kǎoshì, 考试, *n./v.*, test; examination, take a test, L. 29, p. 260  
 kǎoyā, 烤鸭, *n.*, roast duck, L. 20, p. 185  
 kào, 靠, *v.*, depend on; rely on, L. 23, p. 211  
 kě, 可, *adv.*, but; 可是, L. 3, p. 25  
 kěai, 可爱, *adj.*, lovable; lovely; cute, L. 16, p. 143  
 kěchǐ, 可耻, *adj.*, shameful, L. 39, p. 352  
 Kěkǒukělè, 可口可乐, *n.*, Coca Cola, L. 33, p. 300  
 kěnéng, 可能, *adv./n.*, probably; maybe, possibility, L. 24, p. 220  
 kěxī, 可惜, *adv.*, it's a pity; it's too bad, L. 8, p. 71  
 kěxǐ, 可喜, *adj.*, gratifying; heartening, L. 30, p. 272  
 kěběn, 课本, *n.*, textbook, L. 44, p. 395  
 kēchéng, 课程, *n.*, course; curriculum, L. 44, p. 397  
 kèguān, 客观, *adj.*, objective, L. 41, p. 371  
 kèhù, 客户, *n.*, client; customer, L. 36, p. 327  
 kè.rén, 客人, *n.*, guest, L. 19, p. 171  
 kètào, 客套, *n.*, polite remarks; civilities, L. 19, p. 174  
 kètàohuà, 客套话, *n.*, polite expressions; civilities; social decorum, L. 33, p. 298  
 kèyùn, 客运, *n.*, passenger transportation, L. 36, p. 326  
 Kéndéjī, 肯德基, *n.*, KFC, L. 40, p. 363  
 kěndìng, 肯定, *v.*, affirm; confirm; approve; regard as positive, L. 30, p. 272  
 Kěntājī, 肯塔基, Kentucky, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363  
 kōngdòng, 空洞, *adj.*, empty; hollow; devoid of content, L. 23, p. 208  
 kōngqì, 空气, *n.*, the air, L. 41, p. 370  
 kōngtiáo, 空调, *n.*, air-conditioning, L. 2, p. 12  
 kǒngpà, 恐怕, *adv.*, be afraid, L. 43, p. 389  
 kòngzhì, 控制, *v.*, control, L. 45, p. 407

kǒuhào, 口号, *n.*, slogan; watchword, L. 23, p. 208  
 kù.zi, 裤子, *n.*, trousers, L. 26, p. 235  
 kuài, 块, *n.*, dollar; buck, L. 4, p. 39  
 kuài, 块, *AN*, piece; lump; chunk, L. 5, p. 46  
 kuàicān, 快餐, *n.*, fast food, L. 27, p. 243  
 kuàilè, 快乐, *adj.*, merry; happy, L. 46, p. 415  
 kuàisù, 快速, *adj.*, fast; high-speed, L. 35, p. 320  
 kuàizi, 筷子, *n.*, chopsticks, L. 7, p. 63  
 kuān, 宽, *adj.*, wide; broad, L. 1, p. 3  
 kuānkùò, 宽阔, *adj.*, wide; spacious, L. 40, p. 362  
 kuàngquán, 矿泉, *n.*, mineral spring, L. 6, p. 55  
 kuàngquánshuǐ, 矿泉水, *n.*, mineral water, L. 6, p. 55  
 kùnnán, 困难, *adj./n.*, difficult; difficulty, L. 3, p. 24  
 kuòzhǎn, 扩展, *v.*, expand, L. 48, p. 438

**L**

lā dù.zi, 拉肚子, *v.-o.*, suffer from diarrhea; have loose bowels, L. 5, p. 46  
 lājī, 垃圾, *n.*, garbage; rubbish, L. 22, p. 203  
 là, 辣, *adj.*, peppery; hot, L. 20, p. 182  
 lái wǎng, 来往, *n.*, communication; relations, L. 31, p. 278  
 láizì, 来自, *v.*, come from, L. 16, p. 144  
 láng, 廊, *n.*, gallery; a room or building devoted to the exhibition of works of art, L. 8, p. 70  
 làngfèi, 浪费, *v./adj.*, waste; squander, extravagant, L. 6, p. 54  
 láodònglì, 劳动力, *n.*, labor force, L. 24, p. 220  
 láobàixìng, 老百姓, *n.*, the common people, L. 15, p. 135  
 láobǎn, 老板, *n.*, shopkeeper; boss, L. 10, p. 89  
 láogōng, 老公, *n.*, (colloquial) husband, L. 11, p. 102  
 láohǔ, 老虎, *n.*, tiger, L. 16, p. 144  
 láoniánrén, 老年人, *n.*, the elderly; senior citizens, L. 35, p. 317  
 láopo, 老婆, *n.*, (colloquial) wife, L. 11, p. 102  
 láowài, 老外, *n.*, (colloquial) foreigner, L. 43, p. 389  
 láoyàng.zi, 老样子, *n.*, the way a thing or person used to look, L. 30, p. 270  
 Léi Fēng, 雷锋, *n.*, Lei Feng (1940-1962), a soldier who died on duty and was hailed as a model for the youth of China, L. 22, p. 202  
 lèi, 类, *n.*, type; category, L. 1, p. 2  
 lèisì, 类似, *adj.*, similar, L. 19, p. 173  
 lěngqì, 冷气, *n.*, air conditioner; air conditioning, L. 31, p. 280  
 lí, 离, *v.*, be away from; from, L. 2, p. 13  
 lí/hūn, 离婚, *v.-o.*, divorce, L. 32, p. 288  
 líkāi, 离开, *v.*, leave, L. 36, p. 328

- lǐ/fà, 理发, *v.-o.*, (of men) get a haircut; (of women) go to the hairdresser's, L. 8, p. 69
- lǐjé, 礼节, *n.*, courtesy; etiquette, L. 19, p. 174
- lǐjiě, 理解, *v.*, understand; comprehend, L. 26, p. 236
- lǐmào, 礼貌, *n.*, courtesy; politeness, L. 18, p. 164
- lǐwù, 礼物, *n.*, present; gift, L. 24, p. 219
- lǐxiǎng, 理想, *adj./n.*, ideal, L. 23, p. 209
- lǐ.hai, 厉害, *adv./adj.*, terribly, terrible; severe, L. 9, p. 78
- lǐ.hai, 厉害, *adj.*, sharp; fierce, capable, L. 25, p. 228
- lìkè, 立刻, *adv.*, immediately; at once; right away, L. 31, p. 280
- lìshǐ, 历史, *n.*, history, historical, L. 17, p. 153
- lì.zi, 例子, *n.*, example, L. 31, p. 280
- lián, 廉, *adj.*, low-priced; inexpensive; cheap, L. 24, p. 220
- lián...dōu ..., 连…都..., *conj.*, even, L. 9, p. 79
- liánjià, 廉价, *adj.*, low-priced; cheap, L. 24, p. 220
- liánjiē, 连接, *v.*, connect, L. 36, p. 326
- liánxi, 联系, *v.*, integrate; link, L. 36, p. 328
- liánxiāng, 联想, *v.*, associate; connect in the mind, L. 43, p. 388
- liǎn, 脍, *n.*, (said of people or animals) face, L. 5, p. 47
- liàn qìgōng, 练气功, *v.-o.*, practice *qigong*, L. 33, p. 299
- liànrén, 恋人, *n.*, lovers (used only to describe people, not to address them), L. 14, p. 128
- liànxí, 练习, *v./n.*, practice, exercise, L. 13, p. 122
- liáng, 凉, *adj.*, cold; cool, L. 6, p. 55
- liàng, 晾, *v.*, air dry; dry in the sun, L. 7, p. 62
- liàng, 亮, *v.*, light; brighten; shine, L. 15, p. 135
- liàng, 辆, *AN*, measure word for cars, L. 17, p. 154
- liáo/tiānr, 聊天儿, *v.-o.*, chat, L. 8, p. 71
- liǎojiě, 了解, *v.*, understand, L. 22, p. 203
- língqíán, 零钱, *n.*, small change, L. 12, p. 115
- líng, 另, *adj.*, the other; another, L. 3, p. 27
- língwài, 另外, *adv.*, in addition; moreover; besides, L. 11, p. 103
- liú, 留, *v.*, stay; remain; keep, L. 38, p. 344
- Liúlíchǎng, 琉璃厂, *n.*, *Liulichang*, L. 30, p. 270
- liúshī, 流失, *v.*, run off; to be washed away, L. 38, p. 344
- liúxíng, 流行, *v.*, be prevalent; be popular, L. 35, p. 317
- liúxuéshēng, 留学生, *n.*, foreign student, L. 2, p. 13
- liù/niǎor, 遛鸟儿, *v.-o.*, take a stroll with one's caged bird, L. 14, p. 128
- lóu, 楼, *n.*, story; floor; a multi-storied building, L. 9, p. 81
- lù, 路, *AN*, route, L. 4, p. 37
- lù.shàng, 路上, *adv.*, on the way, L. 13, p. 122
- lǚguǎn, 旅馆, *n.*, hotel, L. 2, p. 13
- lǚxíng, 旅行, *v.*, travel, L. 9, p. 81
- lǚxíng zhípiào, 旅行支票, *n.*, traveler's check, L. 9, p. 81
- luàn, 乱, *adj.*, in disorder; in a mess, L. 8, p. 69
- luàn, 乱 *v.*, *adv.*, randomly; arbitrarily, L. 22, p. 203
- luàn zhōng yǒu xù, 乱中有序, *idm.*, finding order in chaos, L. 21, p. 194
- lùn, 论, *v.*, mention; regard; consider, L. 19, p. 170
- luòhòu, 落后, *adj.*, backward, L. 17, p. 154
- M**
- má.fan, 麻烦, *adj.*, troublesome; inconvenient, L. 7, p. 63
- má.fan, 麻烦, *v.*, bother; to trouble somebody, L. 9, p. 80
- mǎlù, 马路, *n.*, road; street; avenue, L. 21, p. 192
- mǎtǒng, 马桶, *n.*, toilet, L. 12, p. 113
- .ma, 麻, modal particle, L. 2, p. 12
- mǎi.bu.qǐ, 买不起, *v.-c.*, cannot afford, L. 10, p. 90
- mǎimài, 买卖, *v./n.*, buy and sell, trade, L. 34, p. 310
- Mǎidāngláo, 麦当劳, *n.*, McDonald's, L. 43, p. 388
- mán.tou, 馒头, *n.*, steamed bun, L. 20, p. 183
- mǎnyì, 满意, *adj.*, satisfied; pleased, L. 35, p. 319
- Mǎnzhou, 满州, *n.*, Manchuria, L. 47, p. 429
- Mǎnzú, 满族, *n.*, the Man (Manchu) people, L. 47, p. 428
- máng, 忙, *adj./v.*, busy, be fully occupied, L. 37, p. 335
- mánglù, 忙碌, *adj.*, busy, L. 14, p. 129
- máng.zhe, 忙着, *v.*, be busy with, L. 37, p. 335
- māo, 猫, *n.*, cat, L. 26, p. 237
- máo, 毛, *n.*, dime, L. 4, p. 39
- máo, 毛, *n.*, hair (of animals); fur, L. 16, p. 144
- máodùn, 矛盾, *n.*, contradiction; conflict, L. 28, p. 252
- máojin, 毛巾, *n.*, towel, L. 2, p. 12
- Máo zhǔxí, 毛主席, *n.*, Chairman Mao, L. 22, p. 200
- méi xiǎngdào, 没想到, *adv.*, unexpectedly, L. 6, p. 55
- měifàguǎn, 美发馆, *n.*, "beautify-hair store" - barbershop; hairdresser's, L. 8, p. 69
- měihuà, 美化, *v.*, beautify, L. 46, p. 416
- měiyuán, 美元, *n.*, U.S. dollar, L. 9, p. 81
- mēnrè, 网热, *adj.*, hot and suffocating; muggy, L. 14, p. 129
- ménkǒur, 门口儿, *n.*, gate; doorway; entrance, L. 21, p. 192
- ménpiào, 门票, *n.*, entrance ticket; admission ticket, L. 14, p. 127
- míyǔ, 谜语, *n.*, riddle; conundrum, L. 26, p. 236
- mǐfan, 米饭, *n.*, (cooked) rice, L. 20, p. 183

- mìqiè, 密切, *adj./adv.*, close, carefully; closely; intently, L. 44, p. 397
- mǐnfēi, 免费, *adj.*, “exempt-charge”; free of charge; free, L. 12, p. 114
- mǐnqiang, 勉强, *adv.*, reluctantly; grudgingly, L. 32, p. 290
- mìan, 面, *n.*, noodle, L. 5, p. 46
- mìanduì, 面对, *v.*, face; confront (actively), L. 39, p. 353
- mìanjī, 面积, *n.*, area (the product of the length times the width), L. 36, p. 328
- mìnlín, 面临, *v.*, be faced with; be confronted with, L. 38, p. 344
- mìngqian, 面前, *postp.*, in the face of; in front of, L. 18, p. 164
- mìanshi, 面食, *n.*, wheat-based food, L. 20, p. 182
- mìntiao, 面条, *n.*, noodle, L. 20, p. 183
- mìanzi, 面子, *n.*, face; dignity, L. 18, p. 162
- Mín, 民, *n.*, 中华民国; the Republic of China (1912 – present, the government moved to Taiwan in 1949), L. 30, p. 270
- mínzú, 民族, *n.*, nation; a people; race; rationality, L. 47, p. 427
- míng, 名, *n.*, first name, L. 4, p. 39
- míng.bai, 明白, *adj./v.*, clear; obvious, know; understand, L. 20, p. 186
- míngcí, 名词, *n.*, noun, L. 20, p. 185
- Míngdài, 明代, *n.*, the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644), L. 10, p. 89
- míngshèng gǔjì, 名胜古迹, *n.*, places of scenic beauty and historic interest, L. 48, p. 437
- míngxiǎn, 明显, *adj.*, evident; obvious, L. 34, p. 308
- míngxìnpian, 明信片, *n.*, postcard, L. 4, p. 40
- mócā, 摩擦, *n.*, clash (between two parties); friction, L. 35, p. 320
- mó.hu, 模糊, *adj.*, vague; blurred, L. 43, p. 387
- mótèr, 模特儿, *n.*, human figure used to display clothes or other merchandise; model, L. 8, p. 70
- mótian dàilou, 摩天大楼, *n.*, skyscraper, L. 40, p. 361
- mò, 末, *n.*, end; last stage, L. 30, p. 270
- mòqī, 末期, *n.*, last phase; final phase, L. 31, p. 278
- mòshēng, 陌生, *adj.*, strange; unfamiliar, L. 11, p. 100
- mǔ, 母, *adj.*, female (used for animal), L. 16, p. 144
- mǔài, 母爱, *n.*, motherly love, L. 16, p. 145
- mǔhóu, 母猴, *n.*, she-monkey, L. 16, p. 144
- mùqian, 目前, *t.w.*, now; at present, L. 13, p. 122
- N
- ná, 拿, *v.*, seize; capture, L. 26, p. 236
- nǎ.li, 哪里, I am flattered; It is nothing. (used as a polite reply to a compliment), L. 19, p. 170
- nà.me, 那么, *adv.*, then; so, L. 23, p. 211
- nǎi.nai, 奶奶, *n.*, grandmother, L. 16, p. 145
- nán, 南, *n.*, south, L. 4, p. 38
- nánđào, 难道, *adv.*, Could it be that...?, L. 46, p. 416
- nánfāng, 南方, *n.*, the south, L. 36, p. 326
- nánfāngré, 南方人, *n.*, Southerner, L. 20, p. 183
- nánguài, 难怪, *adv.*, no wonder, L. 37, p. 336
- nánhái, 男孩儿, *n.*, boy, L. 25, p. 226
- nánmiǎn, 难免, *adv./adj.*, hard to avoid, inevitable, L. 43, p. 389
- nánnuǎlǎoshào, 男女老少, *n.*, men and women, young and old, L. 11, p. 101
- nánqiang běidiào, 南腔北调, *idm.*, some speak with southern accents and some with northern tunes, L. 23, p. 208
- nánrén, 男人, *n.*, man, L. 25, p. 228
- nánshuō, 难说, *adj.*, it's hard to say; you never can tell, L. 19, p. 174
- nǎo, 脑, *n.*, brain, L. 3, p. 25
- nǎolì, 脑力, *n.*, brains; mental capability, L. 39, p. 352
- nǎo.zi, 脑子, *n.*, brains; mind, L. 46, p. 419
- nào xiào.hua, 闹笑话, *v.-o.*, make a fool of oneself, L. 26, p. 237
- nèikù, 内裤, *n.*, underpants; undershorts, L. 7, p. 62
- Nèi Měnggǔ, 内蒙古, *n.*, Inner Mongolia, L. 47, p. 428
- nèiróng, 内容, *n.*, content, L. 45, p. 406
- nèiyi, 内衣, *n.*, underwear; undergarments, L. 7, p. 62
- nénggàn, 能干, *adj.*, able; capable; competent, L. 25, p. 227
- nénglì, 能力, *n.*, ability; capability, L. 29, p. 262
- nǐhóngdēng, 窓虹灯, *n.*, neon light; neon tube, L. 15, p. 135
- nì, 腻, *adj.*, satiating; greasy, L. 33, p. 300
- niándài, 年代, *n.*, a decade, age; era, L. 22, p. 201
- niánjì, 年纪, *n.*, age, L. 19, p. 170
- niánlíng, 年龄, *n.*, age, L. 35, p. 317
- niánqīng, 年轻, *adj.*, young, L. 11, p. 100
- niàn, 念, *v.*, read aloud, L. 44, p. 395
- Niǎocháo, 鸟巢, *n.*, Bird's Nest, L. 40, p. 362
- nín, 您, *pron.*, you (polite form), L. 2, p. 14
- nìngkě, 宁可, *conj.*, would rather, L. 7, p. 63
- nírou, 牛肉, *n.*, beef, L. 5, p. 46
- níuzáikù, 牛仔裤, *n.*, jeans, L. 43, p. 388
- Niúyùe, 纽约, *n.*, New York, L. 46, p. 418
- nóngcūn, 农村, *n.*, countryside; rural area, L. 23, p. 211
- nóngmín, 农民, *n.*, farmer, L. 39, p. 352
- nóngyè, 农业, *n.*, agriculture, L. 43, p. 388

nǔlì, 努力, *adv./adj.*, with great effort, L. 2, p. 14  
 nǚhái, 女孩儿, *n.*, girl, L. 25, p. 226  
 nǚrén, 女人, *n.*, woman, L. 25, p. 228  
 nǚshì, 女士, *n.*, (a polite term for a woman, married or unmarried) lady; madam, L. 11, p. 101  
 nuǎn, 暖, *adj.*, warm, L. 34, p. 308

**O**

o, 噢, *interj.*, oh (indicating understanding), L. 10, p. 89  
 Ōuzhōu, 欧洲, *n.*, Europe, L. 24, p. 220

**P**

pá/shān, 爬山, *v.-o.*, climb mountains, L. 33, p. 299  
 pà, 怕, *v.*, fear; be afraid of, L. 4, p. 38  
 pāi, 拍, *v.*, take (photos, movies, etc.); shoot, L. 16, p. 144  
 pái//duì, 排队, *v.-o.*, line up; form a line, L. 7, p. 62  
 pái.zi, 牌子, *n.*, plate; sign, L. 22, p. 200  
 pài, 派, *v.*, dispatch; send, L. 1, p. 1  
 pán.zi, 盘子, *n.*, plate; dish; tray, L. 7, p. 63  
 pángbiānr, 旁边儿, *n.*, side; by the side of; nearby, L. 4, p. 40  
 pàng, 胖, *v./adj.*, become fat; fat, L. 33, p. 298  
 pàng.zi, 胖子, *n.*, fat person; plump person, L. 33, p. 298  
 pǎo/bù, 跑步, *v.-o.*, jog, L. 14, p. 128  
 pào, 泡, *v.*, brew, L. 6, p. 55  
 pào//chá, 泡茶, *v.-o.*, make tea, L. 6, p. 55  
 péikuǎn, 赔款, *n.*, indemnity; reparations, L. 42, p. 378  
 péi/qiān, 赔钱, *v.-o.*, lose money (in business transaction), L. 10, p. 90  
 pèifú, 佩服, *v.*, admire; have respect for, L. 17, p. 155  
 pèi/yīn, 配音, *n./v.-o.*, dubbing, dub, L. 40, p. 364  
 pèng//dào, 碰到, *v.-c.*, run into; meet, L. 19, p. 173  
 pīng, 批评, *v.*, criticize, L. 29, p. 262  
 píjiǔ, 啤酒, *n.*, beer, L. 15, p. 136  
 pírù, 譬如, for example; such as, L. 26, p. 236  
 piānyuǎn, 偏远, *adj.*, remote; faraway, L. 36, p. 327  
 pián.yi, 便宜, *adj.*, inexpensive; cheap, L. 10, p. 91  
 piào, 票, *n.*, ticket, L. 16, p. 143  
 pīnyīn, 拼音, *n.*, phonetic transcription, L. 31, p. 280  
 pín fù bù jūn, 贫富不均, *idm.*, inequalities in wealth; gap between rich and poor, L. 46, p. 415  
 pīngpāng, 乒乓, *n.*, table tennis; ping-pong, 乒乓球, L. 28, p. 250  
 píng, 平, *adj.*, flat; smooth; level, L. 1, p. 3  
 píng, 瓶, *n.*, bottle, L. 6, p. 55  
 píng'ān, 平安, *adj.*, safe and sound; without mishap,

L. 22, p. 200  
 píngcháng, 平常, *adj.*, common; ordinary, L. 27, p. 243  
 píngděng, 平等, *adj./n.*, equal, equality, L. 11, p. 101  
 píngjūn, 平均, *adv./adj.*, average, L. 45, p. 406  
 píngmù, 屏幕, *n.*, TV screen, L. 23, p. 210  
 píngshí, 平时, *adv.*, ordinarily; normally, L. 14, p. 129  
 píngwěn, 平稳, *adj.*, smooth and steady; stable, L. 42, p. 380  
 píngyuán, 平原, *n.*, plain; flatlands, L. 47, p. 428  
 pǔbiàn, 普遍, *adj.*, widespread; general; common, L. 7, p. 62  
 pǔjí, 普及, *v./adj.*, be available to all; popularize, L. 45, p. 405  
 pǔtōng, 普通, *adj.*, common; ordinary, L. 23, p. 208  
 pǔtōnghuà, 普通话, *n.*, Putonghua (common speech of the Chinese language), L. 23, p. 208  
 pù.zi, 铺子, *n.*, (archaic) store; shop, L. 30, p. 270

**Q**

qī.zi, 妻子, *n.*, wife, L. 32, p. 289  
 qí, 骑, *v.*, ride (an animal or a bicycle), L. 9, p. 79  
 qíguài, 奇怪, *adj.*, strange; awkward; weird, L. 19, p. 174  
 qíjì, 奇迹, *n.*, miracle; wonder; wonderful achievement, L. 17, p. 153  
 Qí Lǔ, 齐鲁, *n.*, ancient names for Shandong, L. 20, p. 183  
 qíshí, 其实, *adv.*, actually; in fact, L. 11, p. 103  
 qítā, 其他, *adj.*, other; else, L. 30, p. 269  
 qǐ, 起, *v.*, rise; grow, L. 21, p. 193  
 qǐ.bù liǎo, 起不了, *v.-c.*, unable to rise, L. 21, p. 193  
 qǐgài, 乞丐, *n.*, beggar, L. 46, p. 415  
 qǐyè, 企业, *n.*, enterprise; industry; business, L. 43, p. 387  
 qǐ zuòyòng, 起作用, *v.-o.*, be effective; have effect, L. 21, p. 193  
 qìchē, 汽车, *n.*, automobile; motor vehicle; car, L. 4, p. 37  
 qìgōng, 气功, *n.*, *qigong*, a system of deep breathing exercises, L. 33, p. 299  
 qiān/zì, 签字, *v.-o.*, sign, L. 9, p. 81  
 qiānwàn, …千万, ten million, L. 14, p. 129  
 qiānhòu, …前后, around the time of ..., L. 42, p. 380  
 qiāngdiào, 强调, *v.*, emphasize; stress, L. 29, p. 262  
 qiǎngpò, 强迫, *v.*, force; compel; coerce, L. 28, p. 252  
 qiǎng.zhe, 抢着, *v.*, vie for; scramble for, L. 19, p. 174  
 qiáo, 桥, *n.*, bridge, L. 44, p. 395  
 qiǎo, 巧, *adj.*, coincidental; fortuitous, L. 10, p. 92

- qiǎokělì, 巧克力, *n.*, chocolate, L. 33, p. 300
- qié.zi, 茄子, *n.*, eggplant, L. 20, p. 185
- qīnlüè, 侵略, *v.*, invade, L. 17, p. 155
- Qīndài, 秦代, *n.*, Qin Dynasty (221-206 B.C.), L. 17, p. 155
- Qínshǐhuáng, 秦始皇, *n.*, Qin Shi Huang; First Emperor of Qin (259-210 B.C.), L. 17, p. 154
- qing, 轻, *adj.*, (said of age) young; small in number, degree, etc., L. 19, p. 171
- Qīng, 清, *n.*, 清代; the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911), L. 30, p. 270
- Qīng, 青, *n.*, 青海 Qinghāi; Qinghai Province, L. 36, p. 326
- qīngcài, 青菜, *n.*, vegetable, L. 20, p. 184
- qīngchǎo, 清炒, *v.*, stir-fry without soy sauce, L. 20, p. 185
- qīng.chu, 清楚, *adj.*, clear, L. 3, p. 25
- Qīngmò Míncū, 清末民初, the end years of the Qing Dynasty and the beginning years of the Republic of China, L. 30, p. 270
- qīngsōng, 轻松, *adj.*, light; relaxed, L. 15, p. 136
- Qīngzàng Tiēlù, 青藏铁路, *n.*, Qinghai-Tibet (Railway) Line, L. 36, p. 326
- qīngzhēng, 清蒸, *v.*, steam in clear soup (usually without soy sauce), L. 20, p. 184
- qīngkuàng, 情况, *n.*, situation, L. 21, p. 194
- qīng.xìng, 情形, *n.*, situation, L. 19, p. 174
- qīngxù, 情绪, *n.*, feeling; sentiments, L. 43, p. 386
- qǐng//jià, 请假, *v.-o.*, ask for leave, L. 5, p. 46
- qǐng//kè, 请客, *v.-o.*, invite somebody to dinner; entertain guests, L. 19, p. 171
- qǐngwèn, 请问, “please-ask;” (polite) excuse me; may I ask you?, L. 4, p. 37
- qióng, 穷, *adj.*, poor; poverty-stricken, L. 10, p. 90
- qióngrén, 穷人, *n.*, poor people, L. 46, p. 416
- qiúduì, 球队, *n.*, ball team, L. 28, p. 250
- qiújì, 球技, *n.*, ball-playing skills, L. 28, p. 250
- qūqí, 区旗, *n.*, regional flag, L. 42, p. 380
- qǔdài, 取代, *v.*, replace, L. 34, p. 310
- qùchù, 去处, *n.*, place; resort; site, L. 14, p. 129
- qùwèi, 趣味, *n.*, fun; interest, L. 40, p. 364
- quán, 全 *n.*, *adj.*, whole; entire; total, L. 22, p. 202
- quán, 权, *n.*, 权利 (quánlì); rights, L. 28, p. 251
- quán, 全, *adv.*, 完全; completely; entirely, L. 30, p. 269
- quánjiāfú, 全家福, *n.*, “all house happiness;” a hodgepodge of ingredients cooked together in one pot, L. 20, p. 186
- quánxīn, 全新, *adj.*, brand-new, L. 48, p. 439
- quàn, 劝, *v.*, urge; advise; try to persuade, L. 19, p. 171
- quàn//cài, 劝菜, *v.-o.*, “encourage-dish;” urge (the guest) to eat, L. 19, p. 171
- quàn//jiǔ, 劝酒, *v.-o.*, “encourage-liquor;” urge (the guest) to drink, L. 19, p. 171
- quēdiǎn, 缺点, *n.*, shortcoming; defect; weakness, L. 29, p. 262
- quēfá, 缺乏, *v.*, lack; be short of, L. 29, p. 261
- què, 却, *adv.*, but; yet; however, L. 3, p. 25
- quèshí, 确实, *adv.*, really; indeed, L. 34, p. 310
- R**
- ránér, 然而, *conj.*, yet; but; however, L. 28, p. 251
- ràng, 让, *v.*, let; allow, L. 1, p. 2
- ràng, 让, *v.*, give way to; yield, L. 21, p. 192
- rè, 热, *adj.*, hot, L. 2, p. 12
- rè nao, 热闹, *adj.*, (of a place) lively; bustling with noise and excitement, L. 15, p. 134
- rèqíng, 热情, *n./adj.*, enthusiasm; warmth, warm; enthusiastic; warmhearted, L. 19, p. 171
- rèshuǐpíng, 热水瓶, *n.*, thermos bottle, L. 6, p. 55
- rénccái, 人才, *n.*, person of ability; talented person, L. 38, p. 343
- rénjì guānxi, 人际关系, *n.*, interpersonal relationship, L. 48, p. 439
- rénkǒu, 人口, *n.*, population, L. 14, p. 129
- rénlèi, 人类, *n.*, human being, L. 17, p. 153
- rénlì, 人力, *n.*, human labor, L. 17, p. 155
- rénmǐn, 人民, *n.*, people, L. 22, p. 201
- rénmǐnbì, 人民币, *n.*, RMB; *Renminbi*, Chinese monetary unit, L. 9, p. 80
- rénquán, 人权, *n.*, human rights, L. 28, p. 251
- rénshān rénhǎi, 人山人海, *idm.*, huge crowds of people, L. 14, p. 127
- rénshù, 人数, *n.*, the number of people, L. 32, p. 288
- rénwù, 人物, *n.*, figure; personage; character (in a novel, etc.), L. 10, p. 91
- gōngzuò rényuán, 工人员, *n.*, personnel; staff member, L. 39, p. 351
- rénshòu, 忍受, *v.*, endure; bear, L. 32, p. 289
- rénhé, 任何, *adj.*, any; whichever; whatever, L. 14, p. 127
- rèn.shí, 认识, *v.*, know (Chinese characters, a person or place); be familiar with, L. 11, p. 100
- rèn.shí dào, 认识到, *v.*, realize; understand; comprehend; recognize, L. 27, p. 244
- rèn.wéi, 认为, *v.*, think; consider; hold, L. 3, p. 26
- Rìběn, 日本, *n.*, Japan, L. 44, p. 397
- rìcháng shēnghuó, 日常生活, *adj.*, daily life, L. 7, p. 63

- rì xīn yuè yì, 日新月异, *idm.*, change with each passing day, L. 48, p. 440
- rìyòngpǐn, 日用品, *n.*, daily necessities, L. 34, p. 309
- rì.zi, 日子, *n.*, day; date, L. 41, p. 371
- rónglú, 熔炉, *n.*, melting pot, L. 47, p. 430
- róngmào, 容貌, *n.*, facial features; appearance; looks, L. 8, p. 70
- róngyì, 容易, *adj.*, easy, L. 6, p. 55
- ròu, 肉, *n.*, meat, L. 5, p. 46
- ròusī, 肉丝, *n.*, julienne meat; shredded meat (unless otherwise specified, this usually refers to pork on a menu), L. 20, p. 185
- rúguǒ, 如果, *conj.*, if; supposing that, L. 20, p. 185
- rùkǒu, 入口, *n.*, entrance, L. 16, p. 143
- rùxiāng suísuí, 入乡随俗, *idm.*, after entering a country, follow its customs; “When in Rome, do as the Romans do.”, L. 19, p. 174
- rùxué, 入学, *v.-o.*, start school; enter school, L. 29, p. 260
- rù//zuò, 入座, *v.-o.*, take one’s seat at a banquet, ceremony, etc., L. 19, p. 171
- ruǎnwò, 软卧, *n.*, soft bunk (on a train), L. 13, p. 121
- S**
- sāndài tóngtáng, 三代同堂, *idiom*, three generations living under the same roof (part of the “big family” system in old China), L. 35, p. 319
- sānlúnchē, 三轮车, *n.*, three-wheel cart, L. 40, p. 362
- sānxiān, 三鲜, *n.*, three kinds of fresh delicacies, L. 20, p. 186
- sàn//bù, 散步, *v.-o.*, take a walk; go for a walk, L. 15, p. 134
- sèqíng, 色情, *n.*, pornography, L. 45, p. 406
- shān, 山, *n.*, mountain, L. 17, p. 154
- shāndíchē, 山地车, *n.*, mountain bike, L. 43, p. 388
- Shāndōng, 山东, *n.*, Shandong Province, L. 20, p. 183
- shānshuǐhuàr, 山水画儿, *n.*, landscape painting, L. 10, p. 89
- Shānxī, 山西, *n.*, Shanxi Province, L. 13, p. 121
- shāngchǎng, 商场, *n.*, market; shopping arcade, L. 11, p. 102
- shāngdiàn, 商店, *n.*, store; shop, L. 2, p. 13
- shānghài, 伤害, *v.*, injure; harm (in an abstract sense), L. 32, p. 290
- shāngpǐn, 商品, *n.*, commodity; merchandise, L. 24, p. 221
- shāngpǐnfáng, 商品房, *n.*, commercialized housing, L. 34, p. 310
- shāngrén, 商人, *n.*, businessman; merchant, L. 33,
- p. 300
- shāngyè, 商业, *n.*, commerce; trade; business, L. 22, p. 201
- shāngyèxìng, 商业性, *n.*, commercial business, L. 22, p. 201
- shàng, 上, *v.*, go to; be engaged (in work, study, etc.) at a fixed time, L. 3, p. 24
- shàng//bān, 上班, *v.-o.*, go to work, L. 41, p. 372
- shàng cèsuo, 上厕所, *v.-o.*, go to the bathroom, L. 12, p. 113
- shàng//chē, 上车, *v.-o.*, get in (a car); get on (a bus, train), L. 9, p. 80
- shàng//dàng, 上当, *v.-o.*, be taken in; be fooled, L. 10, p. 92
- Shànghǎi, 上海, *n.*, Shanghai, L. 36, p. 327
- shàng//shì, 上市, *v.-o.*, (said of seasonal goods or new products) go on the market, L. 34, p. 310
- shàngwǎng, 上网, *v.-o.*, get on or log on to the Internet, L. 37, p. 336
- shàng xià//bān, 上下班, *v.-o.*, go to work and get off work, L. 41, p. 372
- shàngyī, 上衣, *n.*, upper outer garment, L. 15, p. 136
- shàngzuo, 上座, *n.*, seat of honor, L. 19, p. 170
- sháor, 勺儿, *n.*, spoon; ladle, L. 7, p. 63
- shǎoshù, 少数, *adj./n.*, small number; few; minority, L. 44, p. 396
- shǎoshù mínzú, 少数民族, *n.*, minority, L. 47, p. 427
- shéchǐ, 奢侈, *adj.*, luxurious; extravagant, L. 41, p. 371
- shè, 设, *v.*, set up; establish, L. 24, p. 220
- shèbèi, 设备, *n.*, equipment; facility, L. 8, p. 70
- shèhui, 社会, *n.*, society, L. 11, p. 103
- shèjì, 设计, *v./n.*, design, L. 40, p. 360
- shèlì, 设立, *v.*, 设; establish, L. 27, p. 243
- shēn, 深, *adj.*, deep; penetrating; profound, L. 16, p. 144
- shēndù, 深度, *n.*, depth, L. 48, p. 438
- shēnqǐng, 申请, *v.*, apply for, L. 38, p. 343
- shēnrù, 深入, *v.*, go deep into, L. 23, p. 211
- shēntǐ, 身体, *n.*, body; health, L. 3, p. 25
- shēnzhǎn, 伸展, *v.*, extend; stretch, L. 40, p. 360
- shén, 神, *n.*, god; deity; divinity, L. 17, p. 153
- shén.me.de, 什么的, and so on; and what not, L. 20, p. 184
- shènzhì, 甚至, *adv.*, even, L. 21, p. 193
- shēng, 生, *v.*, give birth to; bear, L. 25, p. 226
- shēngcí, 生词, *n.*, new word, L. 46, p. 417
- shēngchǎn, 生产, *v./n.*, produce, production (for concrete nouns), L. 47, p. 428
- shēngdòng, 生动, *adj.*, lively; vivid, L. 26, p. 235

- shēnghuó, 生活, *n.*, life, L. 6, p. 56  
 shēnghuó, 生活, *v.*, live, L. 13, p. 121  
 shēng//qì, 生气, *v.-o.*, get angry; be offended by; be angry at, L. 16, p. 143  
 shēng//xué, 升学, *v.-o.*, enter a higher level of school, L. 35, p. 317  
 shěng, 省, *n.*, province, L. 20, p. 182  
 shěngmíng, 省名, *n.*, name of a province, L. 20, p. 184  
 shèng.xia, 剩下, *v.*, be left (over); remain, L. 43, p. 387  
 shī.fu, 师傅, *n.*, a term used to address a skilled craftsman such as a taxi driver, shoemaker, chef, etc., L. 8, p. 71  
 shīgē, 诗歌, *n.*, poems (诗) and songs (歌); poetry, L. 30, p. 271  
 shīgù, 失去, *v.*, lose, L. 32, p. 289  
 shīwàng, 失望, *v.*, be disappointed, L. 43, p. 389  
 shīyè, 失业, *v.*, lose one's job, L. 24, p. 220  
 shī.zi, 狮子, *n.*, lion, L. 16, p. 144  
 shíchā, 时差, *n.*, jet lag; time difference, L. 1, p. 3  
 shídài, 时代, *n.*, era; times, L. 17, p. 154  
 shíjì, 实际, *adv./adj.*, actually; in reality, actual; real, L. 20, p. 186  
 shíqi, 时期, *n.*, (time) period, L. 43, p. 386  
 shíqī diǎn èr, 十七点二, L. 45, p. 405  
 shíshí, 时时, *adv.*, often; all the time, L. 21, p. 192  
 shítáng, 食堂, *n.*, dining hall, L. 2, p. 13  
 shíwù, 食物, *n.*, food, L. 33, p. 300  
 shí yǒu bā jiǔ, 十有八九, *idm.*, in eight or nine cases out of ten; most likely, L. 48, p. 436  
 shízài, 实在, *adv.*, really; honestly; indeed, L. 19, p. 172  
 shǐ, 史, *n.*, (suffix) ... history, L. 17, p. 153  
 shǐ, 使, *v.*, enable; make, L. 24, p. 221  
 shǐyòng, 使用, *v.*, use; make use of; apply, L. 26, p. 235  
 shìchǎng, 市场, *n.*, market, L. 10, p. 91  
 shìchǎng jīngjì, 市场经济, *n.*, market economy, L. 39, p. 350  
 shìjì, 世纪, *n.*, century, L. 22, p. 201  
 shìjiè, 世界, *n.*, world, L. 10, p. 89  
 shìmín, 市民, *n.*, citizen; urban dweller, L. 12, p. 114  
 shì.qing, 事情, *n.*, thing, L. 3, p. 26  
 shìqū, 市区, *n.*, downtown area; urban district, L. 17, p. 154  
 shìshí, 事实, *n.*, fact, L. 46, p. 418  
 shìwù, 事物, *n.*, thing; object, L. 44, p. 396  
 shìwù, 事务, *n.*, general affairs, L. 44, p. 397  
 shìyè, 事业, *n.*, enterprise; undertaking; career, L. 30, p. 271  
 shìyí, 适宜, *v.*, be suitable for; be appropriate for, L. 47, p. 428  
 shìying, 适应, *v.*, suit; adapt; get with it, L. 42, p. 379  
 shōufei, 收费, *v.*, collect a fee; charge, L. 12, p. 115  
 shōukàn, 收看, *v.*, watch (television), L. 23, p. 211  
 shōurù, 收入, *n.*, income, L. 32, p. 289  
 shōuting, 收听, *v.*, listen to (radio broadcast), L. 23, p. 211  
 shōuyǎng, 收养, *v.*, adopt; take in and bring up, L. 25, p. 226  
 shōuyīnji, 收音机, *n.*, radio, L. 34, p. 309  
 shōubǎo, 手表, *n.*, watch, L. 34, p. 309  
 shǒudū, 首都, *n.*, capital, L. 1, p. 1  
 shǒujī, 手机, *n.*, cellular phone, L. 37, p. 335  
 shǒuyì, 手艺, *n.*, skill; craftsmanship; workmanship, L. 19, p. 173  
 shǒuzhī.jiā, 手指甲, *n.*, fingernail, L. 8, p. 71  
 shòu, 受, *v.*, receive; suffer, L. 6, p. 55  
 shòu, 受, *v.*, receive (受 usually takes a verb as an object), L. 11, p. 101  
 shòu, 售, *v.*, sell, L. 11, p. 102  
 shòu, 瘦, *v./adj.*, thin, L. 33, p. 299  
 shòu .bu liǎo, 愛不了, *v.-c.*, cannot stand (or endure), L. 12, p. 113  
 shòudào, 受到, *v.*, receive (usually take a verb as object), L. 30, p. 272  
 shòuhuòyuán, 售货员, *n.*, salesclerk; shop assistant, L. 11, p. 102  
 shòu//piàn, 受骗, *v.-o.*, be cheated; be deceived, L. 46, p. 417  
 shòu//zuì, 受罪, *v.-o.*, endure hardships; tortures, rough condition, etc.; have a hard time, L. 6, p. 55  
 shūcài, 蔬菜, *n.*, vegetable, L. 34, p. 309  
 shūdiàn, 书店, *n.*, bookstore, L. 30, p. 269  
 shū.fu, 舒服, *adj.*, comfortable, L. 1, p. 3  
 shūmù, 书目, *n.*, catalogue of titles; booklist, L. 30, p. 271  
 shūshì, 舒适, *adj./n.*, comfortable, comfort, L. 41, p. 371  
 shūxiě, 书写, *v.*, write, L. 23, p. 210  
 shú, 熟, *adj.*, familiar, L. 26, p. 237  
 shù, 树, *v.*, (in writing) set up; establish, L. 22, p. 202  
 shùliàng, 数量, *n.*, number; quantity, L. 36, p. 326  
 shù xīnfēng, 树新风, foster healthy tendencies, L. 22, p. 202  
 shuāiluò, 衰落, *v./adj.*, decline; be on the wane, L. 47, p. 429  
 shuāngfāng, 双方, *n.*, both sides; the two parties, L. 28, p. 251

- shuāngrénjīān, 双人间, *n.*, double room, L. 2, p. 11  
 Shuǐlìfang, 水立方, *n.*, the Water Cube, L. 40, p. 362  
 shuǐní, 水泥, *n.*, cement, L. 28, p. 250  
 shuǐpíng, 水平, *v.*, standard; level, L. 24, p. 221  
 shuìzhāo, 睡着, *v.-c.*, fall asleep, L. 1, p. 3  
 shùnlì, 顺利, *adj.*, smooth; successful, L. 2, p. 11  
 shuōdào, 说到, *v.-c.*, talk about, L. 46, p. 418  
 shuōfa, 说法, *n.*, wording; way of saying a thing, L. 31, p. 280  
 shuōmíng, 说明, *v.*, explain; show, L. 23, p. 209  
 sījī, 司机, *n.*, driver, L. 9, p. 78  
 sījiāchē, 私家车, *n.*, private car, L. 9, p. 79  
 Símátái, 司马台, *n.*, Simatai, place name, 120 km northeast of Beijing, where the Ming Changcheng is located, L. 17, p. 154  
 sīshì, 私事, *n.*, private affairs, L. 18, p. 164  
 sīwéi, 思维, *n.*, thought; thinking, L. 48, p. 439  
 sīxiǎng, 思想, *n.*, thinking; thought, L. 22, p. 203  
 sījī yìngbèi, 死记硬背, *v.*, rote memorizing, L. 29, p. 261  
 sīrén, ⋯死人, *adv.*, extremely; ...to death, L. 9, p. 79  
 sìdàjiànr, 四大件儿, *n.*, the four big things, L. 34, p. 309  
 sìfang, 四方, *n.*, four directions, L. 40, p. 360  
 sì fēn zhī yī, 四分之一, one fourth, L. 41, p. 371  
 sìhéyuàn, 四合院儿, *n.*, a traditional Chinese-style compound with rooms around a courtyard, L. 40, p. 361  
 sìhū, 似乎, *adv.*, as if; seemingly, L. 8, p. 70  
 sìmiào, 寺庙, *n.*, temple (The measure word is 座.), L. 40, p. 360  
 sōng, 松, *adj.*, loose; slack, L. 1, p. 3  
 sòng, 送, *v.*, walk (somebody); accompany; escort, L. 19, p. 172  
 sòng, 送, *v.*, give (a present), L. 24, p. 219  
 Sòngcháo, 宋朝, *n.*, the Song Dynasty, L. 47, p. 429  
 súhuà, 俗话, *n.*, common saying; proverb, L. 26, p. 235  
 sùdù, 速度, *n.*, speed, L. 48, p. 438  
 sùshè, 宿舍, *n.*, dormitory, L. 1, p. 3  
 suànshì, 算是, *v.*, be considered as; be regarded as, L. 41, p. 371  
 suíbiàn, 随便, *adv.*, do as one pleases; do at will, L. 19, p. 170  
 suíbiàn, 随便, *adv.*, carelessly, L. 22, p. 203  
 suídì, 随地, *adv.*, anywhere; everywhere, L. 22, p. 200  
 suíshēn, 随身, *adv.*, “follow-person;” (carry) on one’s person; (take) with, L. 12, p. 115  
 suízhe, 随着, *conj.*, along with; in the wake of, L. 28, p. 252  
 suì, 岁, *n.*, (age unit) ...years old, L. 33, p. 298  
 suōduǎn, 缩短, *v.*, shorten, L. 36, p. 327  
 suōxiǎo, 缩小, *v.*, narrow; reduce; lessen, L. 36, p. 328  
 suǒ, 所, *AN*, measure word for school and hospital, L. 22, p. 200  
 suǒwèi, 所谓, *adj.*, so-called, L. 34, p. 309  
 suǒyǒu, 所有, *adj.*, all (所有的+*n.* is usually followed by 都), L. 11, p. 100  
 suǒzài, 所在, *n.*, place; location, L. 48, p. 440
- T**
- tā, 它, *pron.*, it (for inanimate objects or animals), L. 17, p. 153  
 tái, 台, *AN*, measure word for machines, L. 45, p. 405  
 Táiwān, 台湾, *n.*, Taiwan, L. 11, p. 101  
 tàijíquán, 太极拳, *n.*, taijiquan, a kind of traditional Chinese shadow boxing, L. 14, p. 128  
 Tàipíngyáng, 太平洋, *n.*, the Pacific Ocean, L. 44, p. 397  
 tài.tai, 太太, *n.*, wife; Mrs., L. 11, p. 102  
 tán de lái, 谈得来, *v.-c.*, get along well, L. 2, p. 11  
 tán lián’ài, 谈恋爱, *v.-o.*, date (someone); be in love, L. 14, p. 128  
 táng, 糖, *n.*, candy; sugar, L. 33, p. 300  
 Tángcháo, 唐朝, *n.*, the Tang Dynasty, L. 48, p. 437  
 tǎng, 躺, *v.*, lie; recline, L. 16, p. 143  
 tàng, 趟, *AN*, measure word for a trip, L. 42, p. 380  
 tǎotài, 淘汰, *v.*, eliminate through selection or competition; render obsolete; die out; fall into disuse, L. 35, p. 318  
 tǎolùn, 讨论, *v.*, discuss, L. 31, p. 278  
 tèbié, 特别, *adv./adj.*, especially, special, L. 2, p. 12  
 Tèbié Xíngzhèngqū, 特别行政区, *n.*, Special Administrative Region, L. 42, p. 380  
 tèchǎn, 特产, *n.*, special local product, L. 13, p. 122  
 tèdiǎn, 特点, *n.*, characteristic; trait, L. 11, p. 103  
 tèsè, 特色, *n.*, characteristic; distinguishing feature, L. 11, p. 103  
 tèshū, 特殊, *adj.*, special, L. 21, p. 194  
 tèyǒu, 特有, *adj.*, specific; characteristic, L. 21, p. 194  
 téng, 疼, *v./adj.*, ache, sore; painful, L. 5, p. 46  
 tī xù, T恤, *n.*, T-shirt, L. 43, p. 388  
 tíchàng, 提倡, *v.*, advocate; promote, L. 23, p. 209  
 tí/chū, 提出, *v.-c.*, put forward; advance; raise, L. 22, p. 202  
 tídào, 提到, *v.-c.*, mention, L. 46, p. 415  
 tígāo, 提高, *v.*, raise; heighten; increase, L. 24, p. 221  
 tígōng, 提供, *v.*, offer; provide; supply, L. 3, p. 26  
 tímù, 题目, *n.*, title; subject; topic, L. 22, p. 203  
 tíqǐ, 提起, *v.-c.*, mention; speak of, L. 43, p. 388

- tíqián, 提前, *v./adv.*, shift to an earlier time, ahead of schedule; beforehand, L. 39, p. 350
- tǐlì, 体力, *n.*, physical strength, L. 39, p. 352
- tǐ.miàn, 体面, *adj.*, attracting respect on account of a wealthy or proper appearance, L. 39, p. 352
- tǐxiàn, 体现, *v.*, embody; reflect; give expression to, L. 29, p. 261
- tǐyù, 体育, *n.*, physical education; sports, L. 28, p. 251
- tǐyùchǎng, 体育场, *n.*, stadium, L. 40, p. 362
- tǐzhì, 制体, *n.*, system, L. 42, p. 379
- Tiān'ānmén, 天安门, *n.*, Tian An Men; Gate of Heavenly Peace, L. 22, p. 201
- Tiānjīn, 天津, *n.*, Tianjin, L. 44, p. 395
- tiānqì, 天气, *n.*, weather, L. 2, p. 12
- Tiāntán, 天坛, *n.*, the Temple of Heaven, L. 40, p. 360
- tiāntáng, 天堂, *n.*, heaven; paradise, L. 35, p. 317
- tián, 填, *v.*, fill in (a form), L. 4, p. 39
- tián, 甜, *adj.*, sweet, L. 20, p. 182
- tiáo, 条, *AN*, measure word for things narrow and long, L. 4, p. 38
- tiáojiàn, 条件, *n.*, condition, L. 2, p. 12
- tiáozhěng, 调整, *n./v.*, adjustment, adjust, L. 48, p. 439
- tiǎozhàn, 挑战, *n./v.*, challenge, L. 39, p. 350
- tiào//wǔ, 跳舞, *v.-o.*, dance, L. 14, p. 128
- tiē, 贴, *v.*, paste; stick; glue, L. 38, p. 343
- tiēfànwǎn, 铁饭碗, *n.*, “iron rice bowl” – a secure job, L. 27, p. 243
- tiělù, 铁路, *n.*, railroad, L. 36, p. 326
- tingshuō, 听说, *v.*, be told; hear of; hear, L. 2, p. 13
- tíng, 停, *v.*, stop, L. 21, p. 192
- tíng//chē, 停车, *v.-o.*, park (one's car), L. 41, p. 370
- tíngfàng, 停放, *v.*, park; place (a car or a bicycle), L. 22, p. 203
- tǐng, 挺, *adv.*, very; quite, L. 19, p. 174
- tōngdào, 通道, *n.*, passageway, L. 21, p. 193
- tōngguò, 通过, *v.*, pass; pass through; go through, L. 1, p. 1
- tōngguò, 通过, *v.*, pass; be successful (in a test), L. 29, p. 261
- tōngguò, 通过, *prep.*, by means of; by way of, L. 44, p. 398
- tōng/hūn, 通婚, *v.*, intermarry (between countries, races, social classes, etc. The subjects of 通婚 usually do not refer to individuals, but to a class of people.), L. 47, p. 430
- tōngxìn, 通信, *n./v.*, communication, communicate by letter, L. 37, p. 336
- tōngxíng, 通行, *adj.*, current (practice); general (practice), L. 44, p. 396
- tōngyòng, 通用, *adj.*, in common use; current, L. 42, p. 380
- tóngqíng, 同情, *v./n.*, sympathize, sympathy, L. 37, p. 335
- tóngshí, 同时, *adv.*, at the same time; in the meantime, L. 27, p. 243
- tóngshì, 同事, *n.*, colleague; fellow worker, L. 25, p. 227
- tóngwū, 同屋, *n.*, roommate, L. 2, p. 11
- tóngyi..., 同一..., the same ..., L. 23, p. 210
- tóngyi, 同意, *v.*, agree; approve, L. 18, p. 162
- tóngzhì, 同志, *n.*, comrade, L. 11, p. 100
- tǒngjì, 统计, *n./v.*, statistics, add up; count, L. 45, p. 405
- tǒngzhì, 统治, *n./v.*, governance, rule; govern, L. 42, p. 379
- tóufa, 头发, *n.*, hair, L. 8, p. 69
- tóunǎo, 头脑, *n.*, brains; mind (It is not used for the physical brain.), L. 3, p. 25
- tóuzi, 投资, *v./n.*, invest, investment, L. 36, p. 326
- túshūguǎn, 图书馆, *n.*, library, L. 30, p. 271
- túshūguǎnyuán, 图书馆员, *n.*, librarian, L. 30, p. 271
- tǔ, 土, *adj.*, rustic; lacking in social graces or polish, L. 8, p. 70
- tǔdì, 土地, *n.*, land, L. 36, p. 328
- tǔ/tán, 吐痰, *v.-o.*, spit; expectorate, L. 22, p. 200
- tù, 吐, *v.*, vomit, L. 5, p. 46
- tuánjié, 团结, *v.*, unite; rally, L. 22, p. 202
- tuī chén chū xīn, 推陈出新, *idm.*, weed out the old to bring forth the new, L. 48, p. 440
- tuīràng, 推让, *v.*, decline (a position, favor, etc. out of modesty), L. 19, p. 171
- tuīxíng, 推行, *v.*, carry out; practice, L. 23, p. 209
- tui, 髋, *n.*, leg, L. 12, p. 113
- tuìxiū, 退休, *v.*, retire, L. 39, p. 350
- tuō, 脱, *v.*, take off; cast off, L. 26, p. 235
- tuōfú, 托福, *n.*, TOEFL; Test of English as a Foreign Language, L. 38, p. 343

## W

- wàiguó, 外国, *n.*, foreign country, L. 3, p. 27
- wàijiāo, 外交, *n.*, diplomacy; foreign affairs, L. 28, p. 250
- wài lái, 外来, *adj.*, outside; external; foreign, L. 44, p. 396
- wài liú, 外流, *v.*, outflow; drain, L. 38, p. 344
- wài shì chù, 外事处, *n.*, foreign affairs office, L. 1, p. 1
- wài yǔ, 外语, *n.*, foreign language, L. 44, p. 395
- wàizī, 外资, *n.*, foreign capital, L. 43, p. 387

- wánchéng, 完成, *n./v.*, completion, complete, L. 36, p. 326
- wánhǎo, 完好, *adj.*, intact; whole, L. 40, p. 360
- wǎn, 碗, *AN/n.*, bowl, L. 5, p. 46
- wǎnnián, 晚年, *n.*, one's later years, L. 35, p. 319
- wǎnshùi, 晚睡, *v.*, go to bed late, L. 3, p. 24
- Wàn lǐ Chángchéng, 万里长城, *n.*, the Great Wall, covers a total length of over 8851 kilometers, L. 17, p. 153
- wàn suì, 万岁, *v.*, long live, L. 22, p. 201
- Wángfǔjīng, 王府井, *n.*, Wangfujing, Beijing's most famous business area, L. 9, p. 78
- wǎng, 往, *prep.*, in the direction of; towards, L. 4, p. 38
- wǎng, 网, *n.*, (here) Internet; the Internet, L. 37, p. 336
- wǎngwǎng, 往往, *adv.*, often; frequently, L. 11, p. 103
- wàngjì, 忘记, *v.*, forget, L. 26, p. 236
- wēiji, 危机, *n.*, crisis; precarious point, L. 39, p. 353
- wēixiǎn, 危险, *adj.*, dangerous, L. 21, p. 192
- wéi, 围, *v.*, surround; enclose, L. 28, p. 250
- wéichí, 维持, *v.*, sustain; keep; maintain, L. 32, p. 289
- wéihù, 维护, *v.*, maintain; upkeep, L. 17, p. 154
- wěidà, 伟大, *adj.*, great; mighty, L. 16, p. 145
- wèi, 为, *prep.*, for, L. 12, p. 114
- wèi.dao, 味道, *n.*, taste; flavor, L. 34, p. 309
- wèi.le, 为了, *prep.*, for; for the sake of; in order to, L. 16, p. 142
- wèishēng, 卫生, *adj.*, hygienic; sanitary, L. 12, p. 113
- wèishēngzhǐ, 卫生纸, *n.*, toilet paper, L. 12, p. 114
- wēn, 溫, *adj.*, warm, L. 34, p. 308
- wēnbǎo, 温饱, *adj.*, adequately fed and clothed, L. 34, p. 308
- wén, 闻, *v.*, smell, L. 12, p. 114
- Wéngé, 文革, *n.*, Cultural Revolution (an abbreviation of 文化大革命), L. 43, p. 386
- wénhuà, 文化, *n.*, culture, L. 19, p. 174
- wénmíng, 文明, *n.*, civilization; culture, L. 22, p. 202
- wénwù, 文物, *n.*, cultural relic; historical relic, L. 48, p. 437
- wénxué, 文学, *n.*, literature, L. 30, p. 271
- wén.zi, 蚊子, *n.*, mosquito, L. 5, p. 47
- wěndìng, 稳定, *adj.*, stable (only modify abstract nouns), L. 27, p. 244
- wèntí, 问题, *n.*, trouble; problem; question, L. 5, p. 47
- wǒ jìng nín, 我敬您, To your health!, L. 19, p. 172
- wūrǎn, 污染, *n./v.*, pollution, pollute, L. 41, p. 370
- wú, 无, (written) there is no, L. 31, p. 279
- wúliáo, 无聊, *adj.*, silly; stupid, bored; boring, L. 45, p. 407
- wúlùn, 无论, *conj.*, no matter what, how, etc.; regardless of, L. 11, p. 100
- wǔjiào, 午觉, *n.*, afternoon nap, L. 6, p. 54
- wǔlóng, 舞龙, *v.-o.*, Chinese dragon dance, L. 43, p. 388
- wǔshī, 舞狮, *v.-o.*, Chinese lion dance, L. 43, p. 388
- wù, 勿, *adv.*, (written) do not, L. 22, p. 200
- wùhuì, 误会, *n./v.*, misunderstanding, misunderstand, L. 31, p. 279
- wùměi jiàilán, 物美价廉, *idm.*, excellent quality at low prices – a bargain buy, L. 24, p. 221

## X

- xī, 西, *n.*, west, L. 4, p. 38
- xībēi, 西北, *n.*, northwest, L. 47, p. 428
- xīfan, 稀饭, *n.*, rice or millet gruel; porridge, L. 20, p. 183
- xīguā, 西瓜, *n.*, watermelon, L. 5, p. 46
- xīhuà, 西化, *n.*, westernization, L. 48, p. 438
- xīlánhuār, 西兰花儿, *n.*, broccoli, L. 20, p. 185
- xīnnán, 西南, *n.*, southwest, L. 47, p. 428
- xīwàng, 希望, *v./n.*, hope; wish, L. 21, p. 193
- xīyǐn, 吸引, *v.*, attract, L. 38, p. 345
- Xizàng, 西藏, *n.*, Tibet, L. 36, p. 326
- xíguàn, 习惯, *v./n.*, be accustomed to; be used to, habit; custom, L. 3, p. 24
- xǐ, 洗, *v.*, wash, L. 3, p. 24
- xǐshǒutái, 洗手台, *n.*, sink (in a restroom), L. 12, p. 114
- xǐ/tóu, 洗头, *v.-o.*, wash one's hair; shampoo one's hair, L. 8, p. 71
- xǐ/wǎn, 洗碗, *v.-o.*, clean the dishes (after a meal), L. 7, p. 63
- xǐwǎnjī, 洗碗机, *n.*, dishwasher, L. 7, p. 63
- xǐyījī, 洗衣机, *n.*, washing machine, L. 7, p. 62
- xǐ/zǎo, 洗澡, *v.-o.*, have a bath; bathe, L. 3, p. 24
- xiārénr, 虾仁儿, *n.*, shelled fresh shrimp, L. 20, p. 185
- xià, 下, *v.*, step down, L. 39, p. 350
- xià/bān, 下班, *v.-o.*, get off work, L. 41, p. 372
- xià/chē, 下车, *v.-o.*, get out of (a car), L. 9, p. 80
- xià//gǎng, 下岗, *v.-o.*, be laid off; be fired, L. 39, p. 350
- xiàjiàng, 下降, *v.*, descend; drop, L. 32, p. 288
- xià/qí, 下棋, *v.-o.*, play chess, L. 14, p. 128
- xiàtiān, 夏天, *n.*, summer, L. 2, p. 12
- xiān.sheng, 先生, *n.*, Mr., L. 1, p. 1
- xiān.sheng, 先生, *n.*, husband, L. 31, p. 278
- xiǎnrán, 显然, *adv.*, obviously; clearly, L. 17, p. 154
- xiān, 县, *n.*, county, L. 23, p. 209
- xiàndàihuà, 现代化, *adj./n.*, modern, modernization, L. 1, p. 3

- xiànjīn, 现金, *n.*, cash, L. 9, p. 81  
 xiànmù, 羡慕, *v.*, admire; envy, L. 41, p. 372  
 xiànshí, 现实, *n.*, reality; actuality, L. 45, p. 407  
 xiànxìang, 现象, *n.*, phenomenon, L. 23, p. 209  
 xiànzhì, 限制, *v.*, limit, L. 38, p. 344  
 Xiāng, 湘, *n.*, Hunan Province; 湖南, L. 20, p. 182  
 xiāngdāng, 相当, *adv.*, quite; considerably, L. 25, p. 226  
 xiāngfǎn, 相反, *adj.*, opposite, L. 8, p. 70  
 Xiānggǎng, 香港, *n.*, Hong Kong, L. 11, p. 101  
 xiānghù, 相互, *adj.*, mutual; each other, L. 28, p. 252  
 xiāngtóng, 相同, *adj.*, alike; the same; identical, L. 19, p. 174  
 xiāngxìn, 相信, *v.*, believe, L. 31, p. 281  
 xiāngyìng, 相应, *adj.*, corresponding; relevant, L. 18, p. 162  
 xiāng.zi, 箱子, *n.*, luggage; box; case; trunk; suitcase, L. 24, p. 219  
 xiǎngfāng shèfǎ, 想方设法, *v.*, conjure up all kinds of methods, L. 33, p. 299  
 xiǎngshòu, 享受, *v.*, enjoy, L. 24, p. 221  
 xiǎngshòu, 享受, *n./v.*, ease and comfort; enjoyment, enjoy, L. 41, p. 371  
 xiǎngxiàng, 想象, *v./n.*, imagine, imagination, L. 1, p. 3  
 xiàng, 向, *prep.*, from, L. 6, p. 56  
 xiàng, 像, *n.*, statue; portrait; picture, L. 17, p. 153  
 xiàng, 向, *postp.*, towards, L. 39, p. 351  
 xiàngshàng, 向上, *v.*, make progress; go upward, L. 22, p. 200  
 xiàng.sheng, 相声, *n.*, traditional Chinese comic dialogue, L. 40, p. 363  
 xiàngzhēng, 象征, *n./v.*, symbol, symbolize, L. 17, p. 153  
 xiāofèi, 消费, *n.*, consumption, L. 34, p. 308  
 xiāohào, 消耗, *v.*, consume; expend; exhaust, L. 34, p. 309  
 xiāomiè, 消灭, *v.*, eliminate; abolish; exterminate; wipe out, L. 47, p. 429  
 xiāoshī, 消失, *v.*, disappear, L. 43, p. 388  
 xiāobāo, 小包, *n.*, small parcel, L. 4, p. 39  
 xiǎochī, 小吃, *n.*, snack; refreshments, L. 13, p. 122  
 xiǎofēi, 小费, *n.*, tip; gratuity, L. 8, p. 72  
 xiǎoháir, 小孩儿, *n.*, kid; child, L. 33, p. 298  
 xiǎohóur, 小猴儿, *n.*, baby monkey, L. 16, p. 145  
 xiǎo.jiě, 小姐, *n.*, miss; Miss, L. 11, p. 100  
 xiǎokāng, 小康, *adj.*, (said of a family or society) comparatively well-off, L. 34, p. 308  
 xiǎolǎo.po, 小老婆, *n.*, mistress; concubine, L. 43, p. 388  
 xiǎoshuō, 小说, *n.*, fiction; novel, L. 30, p. 271  
 xiǎotānr, 小摊儿, *n.*, vendor's stand; stall, L. 15, p. 136  
 xiǎoxué, 小学, *n.*, elementary school, L. 22, p. 200  
 xiào, 笑, *v.*, ridicule; laugh at, L. 25, p. 227  
 xiào.hua, 笑话, *n.*, joke, L. 25, p. 226  
 xiàoshùn, 孝顺, *v.*, show filial piety, L. 35, p. 319  
 xiàoyuán, 校园, *n.*, campus, L. 2, p. 13  
 xiēhòuyǔ, 歇后语, *n.*, a two-part metaphorical or allegorical saying, L. 26, p. 235  
 xiétiáo, 协调, *adv./adj.*, in harmony; harmoniously; well-coordinated, L. 40, p. 363  
 xié.yì, 协议, *n.*, agreement, L. 28, p. 251  
 xiě.zi, 鞋子, *n.*, shoe, L. 24, p. 219  
 xiě.fǎ, 写法, *n.*, way of writing, L. 23, p. 210  
 xīn..., 新 *v.*, *adv.*, newly..., L. 36, p. 327  
 xīnfēng, 新风, *n.*, (in writing) new practice; new custom, L. 22, p. 202  
 Xinjiāpō, 新加坡, *n.*, Singapore, L. 38, p. 344  
 Xīnjiāng, 新疆, *n.*, Xinjiang, L. 47, p. 428  
 xīnshǎng, 欣赏, *v.*, enjoy; appreciate, L. 40, p. 363  
 xīnwén, 新闻, *n.*, news, L. 23, p. 210  
 xīn.xiān, 新鲜, *adj.*, new; novel; fresh, L. 19, p. 174  
 xīnfēng, 信封, *n.*, envelope, L. 4, p. 39  
 xīnxi, 信息, *n.*, information; message, L. 22, p. 202  
 xīnxin, 信心, *n.*, confidence, L. 42, p. 380  
 xīnyǎng, 信仰, *n.*, belief; faith; conviction, L. 47, p. 428  
 xīnzhǐ, 信纸, *n.*, letter paper, L. 4, p. 39  
 xīngfèn, 兴奋, *adj.*, excited, L. 1, p. 3  
 xīng.xīng, 猩猩, *n.*, gorilla, L. 16, p. 144  
 xīngchéng, 形成, *v.*, form; take shape, L. 48, p. 439  
 xīng.li, 行李, *n.*, luggage; baggage, L. 1, p. 2  
 xíng rén, 行人, *n.*, pedestrian, L. 12, p. 114  
 xíngshǐ, 行驶, *v.*, (of a vehicle, ship, etc.) go; travel, L. 40, p. 363  
 xíngshǐ, 行使, *v.*, perform; exercise, L. 42, p. 378  
 xíngshì, 形式, *n.*, form, L. 31, p. 281  
 xǐng, 醒, *v.*, wake up; sober up, L. 3, p. 25  
 xìng, 姓, *n.*, surname, L. 4, p. 39  
 xìngmíng, 姓名, *n.*, full name, L. 4, p. 39  
 xìngqù, 兴趣, *n.*, interest, L. 29, p. 261  
 xióngmāoguǎn, 熊猫馆, *n.*, panda habitat; panda exhibit, L. 16, p. 143  
 xiūlǐ, 修理, *v.*, repair; mend, L. 17, p. 155  
 xiū.xi, 休息, *v.*, rest; have a rest, L. 5, p. 46  
 xiūxiān, 休闲, *adj.*, recreational, L. 14, p. 128  
 xūyào, 需要, *v./n.*, need; want; require, L. 3, p. 25  
 xuānchuán, 宣传, *n./v.*, propaganda, propagandize, L. 23, p. 211  
 xuǎnzé, 选择, *v.*, select; choose, L. 20, p. 183

xué, 学, *v.*, imitate; mimic, L. 6, p. 55  
 xué/huì, 学会, *v.-c.*, learn, L. 3, p. 27  
 xuéqí, 学期, *n.*, semester; school term, L. 46, p. 415  
 xuéshù, 学术, *n.*, learning; academic, L. 28, p. 251  
 xuéxí, 学习, *v.*, study, L. 2, p. 13  
 xuézhě, 学者, *n.*, scholar; learned man, L. 30, p. 270  
 xùnliàn, 训练, *n./v.*, training, train, L. 29, p. 261

**Y**

yā, 鸭, *n.*, duck, L. 20, p. 184  
 yālì, 压力, *n.*, pressure, L. 35, p. 318  
 yāpiàn, 鸦片, *n.*, opium, L. 42, p. 378  
 Yāpiàn Zhànzhēng, 鸦片战争, *n.*, the Opium War, L. 42, p. 378  
 yāpò, 压迫, *v.*, oppress; repress, L. 25, p. 228  
 Yàzhōu, 亚洲, *n.*, Asia, L. 44, p. 397  
 yán, 严, *adj.*, strict; severe; stern, L. 1, p. 2  
 yánjiū, 研究, *v.*, consider; discuss; study, L. 18, p. 163  
 yánjiūshēng, 研究生, *n.*, graduate student, L. 38, p. 343  
 yánjiūshēng yuàn, 研究生院, *n.*, graduate school, L. 38, p. 343  
 yánlùn, 言论, *n.*, opinion on public affairs; speech, L. 30, p. 272  
 yánsù, 严肃, *adj.*, serious; solemn, L. 30, p. 271  
 yánzhòng, 严重, *adj.*, (said of illness, situation) serious, L. 9, p. 79  
 yǎnjing, 眼睛, *n.*, eye, L. 16, p. 143  
 yáng, 洋, *adj.*, western; foreign, L. 48, p. 436  
 yángbù, 洋布, *n.*, foreign clothes, L. 48, p. 436  
 yánghuǒ, 洋火, *n.*, (archaic) matches; 火柴 (*huǒchái*), L. 48, p. 436  
 yáng.qì, 洋气, *adj.*, in an ostentatious Western style; stylish, L. 8, p. 70  
 yángrénn, 洋人, *n.*, foreigner (non-Chinese), L. 48, p. 436  
 yángróuchuàn, 羊肉串儿, *n.*, mutton cubes roasted on a skewer; kebab, L. 15, p. 136  
 yántái, 阳台, *n.*, balcony; patio, L. 7, p. 62  
 yàng, 样, *n.*, 种; kind; type, L. 20, p. 185  
 yàng.zi, 样子, *n.*, appearance; shape, L. 30, p. 270  
 yāoguǒ, 腰果, *n.*, cashew, L. 20, p. 185  
 yāoqíu, 要求, *n.*, request; demand, L. 18, p. 162  
 yào.burán, 要不然, *conj.*, otherwise; or else, L. 26, p. 237  
 yàoshì, 要是, *conj.*, if, L. 10, p. 90  
 yé.ye, 爷爷, *n.*, grandfather, L. 16, p. 145  
 yěxǔ, 也许, *adv.*, maybe; perhaps, L. 5, p. 47  
 yèshì, 夜市, *n.*, night market; night fair, L. 15, p. 134  
 yī.fu, 衣服, *n.*, clothes; clothing, L. 7, p. 62

yǐjia, 衣架, *n.*, clothes hanger; coat hanger, L. 7, p. 62  
 yǐkào, 依靠, *v.*, depend on, L. 32, p. 288  
 yī shí zhù xíng, 衣食住行, *idm.*, “clothing, food, shelter and transportation” – the four basic necessities of life, L. 40, p. 362  
 yīyuàn, 医院, *n.*, hospital, L. 5, p. 48  
 yǐbù yǐbù, 一步一步, *adv.*, step by step, L. 18, p. 163  
 yídìng, 一定, *adv./adj.*, definitely, definite, L. 3, p. 26  
 yídìng, 一定, *adj.*, certain, L. 18, p. 163  
 Yínhéyuán, 颐和园, *n.*, the Summer Palace, L. 14, p. 127  
 yíkuàir, 一块儿, *adv.*, together, L. 18, p. 163  
 yímiàn, 一面, *n.*, one side; one aspect, L. 14, p. 129  
 yíqiè, 一切, *n.*, all; every; everything, L. 2, p. 11  
 yìshù, 艺术, *n.*, art, L. 48, p. 436  
 yíxiàng, 一向, *adv.*, always; all along, L. 25, p. 226  
 yízài, 一再, *adv.*, again and again; repeatedly, L. 19, p. 172  
 yǐ, 乙, *n.*, the second of ten Heavenly Stems; the second person, L. 32, p. 288  
 yǐ...wéi..., 以 A 为 B, take A as B; regard A as B, L. 35, p. 320  
 yǐwéi, 以为, *v.*, mistakenly think, L. 3, p. 26  
 yǐxià, …以下, *postp.*, under (a given point or line), L. 45, p. 408  
 yǐbān, 一般, *adj.*, general; common, L. 34, p. 309  
 yǐbān lái shuō, 一般来说, *adv.*, generally speaking, L. 3, p. 26  
 yǐbānrén, 一般人, *n.*, common people, L. 46, p. 416  
 yǐbānr A yǐbānr B, 一边儿 A 一边儿 B, *conj.*, doing A while doing B; doing A as doing B, L. 44, p. 395  
 yìguó liǎngzhì, 一国两制, *n.*, one country, two systems, L. 42, p. 379  
 yǐjīarén, 一家人, *n.*, of one family or clan, L. 47, p. 429  
 yìjiàn, 意见, *n.*, opinion; view, L. 18, p. 162  
 yǐ jǔ liǎng dé, 一举两得, *idm.*, kill two birds with one stone, L. 44, p. 395  
 yǐmú yǐyàng, 一模一样, *adj.*, exactly alike, L. 10, p. 92  
 yìsi, 意思, *n.*, meaning, L. 11, p. 101  
 yìtí, 议题, *n.*, subject under discussion; issue, L. 43, p. 387  
 yìwèi, 意味, *n.*, meaning; implication, L. 22, p. 202  
 yìyì, 意义, *n.*, meaning; significance, L. 17, p. 156  
 yǐzhí, 一直, *adv.*, all the way; all along; continuously, L. 1, p. 3  
 yǐnci, 因此, *conj.*, therefore; hence, L. 23, p. 211  
 yīnxiang, 音响, *n.*, stereo, L. 34, p. 310

- yínháng, 银行, *n.*, bank, L. 9, p. 78  
 yǐnqǐ, 引起, *v.*, raise; arouse, L. 44, p. 395  
 yǐnshí, 饮食, *n.*, drinking and eating, L. 20, p. 182  
 yìn, 印, *v.*, print, L. 30, p. 272  
 Yìndù, 印度, *n.*, India, L. 48, p. 436  
 yìnxiàng, 印象, *n.*, impression, L. 1, p. 3  
 Yǐngguó, 英国, *n.*, Britain; England, L. 42, p. 378  
 yíngyǎng, 营养, *n.*, nutrition, L. 33, p. 299  
 yǐngpiàn, 影片, *n.*, film; movie, L. 40, p. 363  
 yǐngxiǎng, 影响, *n./v.*, influence, effect, L. 11, p. 101  
 yìngzuò, 硬座, *n.*, hard seat (on a train), L. 13, p. 121  
 yōngjǐ, 拥挤, *adj.*, crowded, L. 14, p. 129  
 yōngyǒu, 拥有, *v.*, own; possess, L. 34, p. 309  
 yǒngqì, 勇气, *n.*, courage; bravery, L. 39, p. 353  
 yǒngyuǎn, 永远, *adv.*, forever, L. 38, p. 344  
 yòngyǔ, 用语, *n.*, wording; choice of words, L. 26, p. 235  
 yōudiǎn, 优点, *n.*, good point; merit; strength, L. 29, p. 262  
 yōujū, 悠久, *adj.*, long; long-standing, L. 47, p. 428  
 yōuxiān, 悠闲, *adj.*, leisurely and carefree, L. 14, p. 129  
 yōuxiù, 优秀, *adj.*, outstanding; excellent, L. 38, p. 343  
 yóu, 由, *prep.*, (done) by (somebody), L. 25, p. 228  
 yóu, 由, *prep.*, 从; from, L. 34, p. 311  
 yóuchuán, 游船, *n.*, pleasure-boat, L. 15, p. 135  
 yóujú, 邮局, *n.*, post office, L. 4, p. 37  
 yóukè, 游客, *n.*, visitor (to a park, etc.); tourist, L. 14, p. 127  
 yóupiào, 邮票, *n.*, stamp, L. 4, p. 39  
 yóuqí, 尤其, *adv.*, especially, L. 18, p. 162  
 yóuxì, 游戏, *n.*, game, L. 43, p. 388  
 yóuyǒng, 游泳, *v.*, swim, L. 40, p. 362  
 yóuyú, 由于, *prep.*, owing to; due to; thanks to, L. 16, p. 145  
 yǒu bāngzhù, 有帮助, *adj.*, helpful, L. 36, p. 327  
 yǒu dào.lì, 有道理, *adj.*, reasonable, L. 29, p. 262  
 yǒuguān, 有关, *v.*, have something to do with; relate to; concern, L. 22, p. 201  
 yǒuhài, 有害, *v./adj.*, harm, harmful, L. 33, p. 300  
 yǒu jīng.shen, 有精神, *adj.*, vigorous, L. 6, p. 54  
 yǒu jīng.yàn, 有经验, *adj.*, experienced, L. 30, p. 271  
 yǒu lǐmào, 有礼貌, *adj.*, courteous; polite, L. 18, p. 164  
 yǒu míng, 有名, *adj.*, famous, L. 14, p. 127  
 yǒuqián, 有钱, *adj.*, rich, L. 25, p. 227  
 yǒuqù, 有趣, *adj.*, interesting, L. 8, p. 70  
 yǒushí, 有时, *adv.*, 有时候; sometimes; at times; now and then, L. 6, p. 55  
 yǒuxiān, 有限, *adj.*, limited, L. 46, p. 419  
 yǒuxiào, 有效, *adj.*, effective, L. 23, p. 211  
 yǒu yìyì, 有意义, *adj.*, meaningful; significant, L. 23, p. 208  
 yǒuyòng, 有用, *adj.*, useful, L. 46, p. 417  
 yǒu yuǎnjiān, 有远见, *adj.*, farsighted, L. 23, p. 209  
 yòu, 右, *adj.*, right, L. 40, p. 361  
 yòubiānr, 右边儿, *n.*, right side; right, L. 25, p. 227  
 yòu'éryuán, 幼儿园, *n.*, kindergarten; nursery school, L. 44, p. 396  
 yú, 鱼, *n.*, fish, L. 20, p. 184  
 yúkuài, 愉快, *adj.*, cheerful; joyful, L. 46, p. 419  
 yúlè, 娱乐, *n.*, entertainment, L. 45, p. 406  
 yǔ, 与, *conj.*, and; 跟, L. 23, p. 209  
 A yǔ B zhījīān, A 与 B 之间, , between A and B, L. 23, p. 209  
 yǔlù, 语录, *n.*, recorded utterance; book of quotations, L. 43, p. 386  
 yǔmáoqíú, 羽毛球, *n.*, badminton, L. 14, p. 128  
 yǔqí shuō..., bùrú shuō..., 与其说 A, 不如说 B, *conj.*, A is not so much... as B, L. 32, p. 288  
 yǔyán, 语言, *n.*, language, L. 26, p. 235  
 yùbào, 预报, *n.*, forecast, L. 2, p. 12  
 yùbèi, 预备, *v.*, prepare, L. 38, p. 343  
 yùshì, 浴室, *n.*, bathroom; washroom, L. 2, p. 12  
 Yuándài, 元代, *n.*, the Yuan Dynasty, L. 40, p. 360  
 yuángù, 缘故, *n.*, cause; reason (generally takes a noun phrase modifier), L. 33, p. 300  
 yuánlái, 原来, *adj.*, original, former, L. 6, p. 56  
 yuányin, 原因, *n.*, reason; cause, L. 6, p. 56  
 yuǎn, 远, *adj.*, distant; far, L. 4, p. 37  
 yuǎnchù, 远处, *n.*, "far-place;" distant place, L. 13, p. 121  
 yuǎnjiān, 远见, *n.*, foresight; vision, L. 23, p. 209  
 yuǎnyuǎn, 远远, *adv.*, far (in degree); by far, L. 43, p. 387  
 yuàn.yì, 愿意, *aux.*, be willing to, L. 7, p. 63  
 Yuè, 粤, *n.*, another name for Guangdong Province, L. 20, p. 183  
 yuè lái yuè..., 越来越..., more and more..., L. 5, p. 48  
 Yuènán, 越南, *n.*, Vietnam, L. 43, p. 387  
 Yúngǎng Shíkū, 云岗石窟, *n.*, Yungang Caves, L. 13, p. 121  
 yùndòng, 运动, *v./n.*, exercise, L. 41, p. 372  
 yùndòng, 运动, *n.*, movement, L. 48, p. 438  
 yùndònghuì, 运动会, *n.*, a sporting match; games, L. 40, p. 362

Z

- zázhì, 杂志, *n.*, magazine, L. 1, p. 2  
 zài...kànлái, 在…看来, in one's opinion, L. 29, p. 262

- zài...shēn.shang, 在…身上, on one; with one; on one's body, L. 39, p. 350
- zài jiā.shàng, 再加上, *conj.*, on top of that; in addition, L. 36, p. 328
- zàishuō, 再说, *v.*, put off until sometime later, L. 18, p. 162
- zàishuō, 再说, *adv.*, moreover, L. 32, p. 289
- zài yù, 在于, *v.*, lie in; rest with, L. 48, p. 439
- zànshí, 暂时, *adj./adv.*, temporary; transient; for the time being, L. 38, p. 344
- zāng, 脏, *adj.*, dirty; filthy, L. 12, p. 115
- Zàng, 藏, *n.*, 西藏; Tibet, L. 36, p. 326
- Zàngzú, 藏族, *n.*, the Zang (Tibetan) people, L. 47, p. 428
- zāogāo, 糟糕, *interj.*, how terrible; what bad luck; too bad, L. 9, p. 79
- zǎo.chen, 早晨, *n.*, morning, L. 3, p. 25
- zǎoqǐ, 早起, *v.*, get up early, L. 3, p. 24
- zǎoyǐ, 早已, *adv.*,早就已经; already v.-ed long ago, L. 34, p. 310
- zàochéng, 造成, *v.*, cause; create; give rise to (usually a undesirable result), L. 23, p. 209
- zérèn, 责任, *n.*, responsibility, L. 26, p. 237
- zēngduō, 增多, *v.*, grow in number or quantity; pile up; increase, L. 32, p. 290
- zēngjiā, 增加, *v./n.*, add; increase; raise, L. 9, p. 79
- zēngtiān, 增添, *v.*, add; increase, L. 40, p. 364
- zhá, 炸, *v.*, fry in deep fat or oil; deep-fry, L. 20, p. 184
- zháji, 炸鸡, *n.*, fried chicken, L. 40, p. 363
- zhá shǔtiáo, 炸薯条, *n.*, French fries, L. 33, p. 300
- zhàn, 站, *n.*, station; stop, L. 4, p. 37
- zhàn, 站, *v.*, stand; on one's feet, L. 17, p. 155
- zhàn, 占, *v.*, hold; constitute; make up, L. 25, p. 228
- zhàn bài, 战败, *v.*, be defeated, L. 42, p. 379
- zhànchǎng, 战场, *n.*, battlefield; battleground, L. 35, p. 317
- zhànzhēng, 战争, *n.*, war, L. 42, p. 378
- Zhāng, 张, *n.*, Zhang (a surname), L. 1, p. 1
- zhāng, 张, *AN*, measure for paper or picture, L. 16, p. 144
- zhǎngdà, 长大, *v.*, grow up; be brought up, L. 29, p. 261
- zhàng'ài, 障碍, *n.*, obstacle; barrier, L. 28, p. 251
- zhàng.fu, 丈夫, *n.*, husband, L. 11, p. 101
- zhāodài, 招待, *v.*, receive (guests); entertain, L. 19, p. 173
- zhāo.pai, 招牌, *n.*, shop sign, L. 20, p. 183
- zhǎo, 找, *v.*, look for; try to find; seek, L. 12, p. 114
- zhǎo jièkǒu, 找借口, *v.-o.*, look for an excuse, L. 18, p. 163
- zhào.gù, 照顾, *v.*, take care of; look after, L. 2, p. 13
- zhào.gù, 照顾, *v.*, give consideration to; show consideration for; look after, L. 21, p. 192
- zhàopiānr, 照片儿, *n.*, photo; picture, L. 8, p. 70
- zhàoxiàng, 照相, *v.-o.*, take a picture; take photographs, L. 37, p. 336
- zhàoxiàngjī, 照相机, *n.*, camera, L. 16, p. 144
- zhéxué, 哲学, *n.*, philosophy, L. 48, p. 436
- Zhè, 浙, *n.*, Zhejiang Province; 浙江, L. 20, p. 182
- .zhe, 着, *comp.*, adverbial particle, L. 12, p. 115
- zhēnshí, 真实, *adj.*, true; real, L. 46, p. 416
- zhēnzhèng, 真正, *adv./adj.*, truly; really; genuine; true; real, L. 46, p. 419
- zhěnggèr, 整个儿, *adj.*, whole; entire, L. 29, p. 260
- zhěnglǐ, 整理, *v.*, put in order; straighten up, L. 2, p. 12
- zhěngqí, 整齐, *adj.*, orderly; neat, L. 40, p. 361
- zhěngtiān, 整天, *adv.*, the whole day; all day long, L. 3, p. 25
- zhèng, 正, *adv.*, exactly; precisely, L. 32, p. 290
- zhèng, ——症, *suffix*, ...syndrome; disease, L. 46, p. 418
- zhèngcè, 政策, *n.*, policy, L. 16, p. 145
- zhèngfǔ, 政府, *n.*, government, L. 22, p. 202
- zhèngmíng, 证明, *n./v.*, proof, prove, L. 41, p. 370
- zhèngquè, 正确, *adj.*, correct; right, L. 47, p. 427
- zhèngshì, 正式, *adj.*, formal; official; solemn, L. 11, p. 102
- zhèngzhì, 政治, *n.*, politics, L. 22, p. 201
- zhèngzhìxìng, 政治性, *n.*, political nature, L. 22, p. 201
- zhǐ, 只, *AN*, measure word for animals, L. 16, p. 143
- zhīlèi, 之类, and so on; and so forth; and the like, L. 20, p. 186
- zhìnèi, …之内, in; within..., L. 36, p. 327
- zhípiào, 支票, *n.*, check, L. 9, p. 81
- zhīshi fènzi, 知识分子, *n.*, intellectual; the intelligentsia, L. 23, p. 209
- zhisuoyi, 之所以, *conj.*, the reason that, L. 44, p. 398
- zhíyī, …之一, one of..., L. 36, p. 327
- zhí.dé, 值得, *v.*, be worth; deserve, L. 22, p. 203
- zhígōng, 职工, *n.*, staff and workers, L. 39, p. 350
- zhíjiē, 直接, *adv.*, directly, L. 6, p. 55
- zhímíndi, 殖民地, *n.*, colony, L. 42, p. 378
- zhíyuán, 职员, *n.*, office worker; staff member, L. 9, p. 81
- zhǐhǎo, 只好, *adv.*, have to; be forced to, L. 10, p. 91
- zhǐyào, 只要, *conj.*, as long as, L. 11, p. 100
- zhìdù, 制度, *n.*, system, L. 27, p. 244
- zhìliàng, 质量, *n.*, quality, L. 24, p. 220

- zhìshǎo, 至少, *adv.*, at least, L. 45, p. 406  
 zhìxù, 秩序, *n.*, order, L. 21, p. 194  
 zhìyú, 至于, *prep.*, as for; as to, L. 35, p. 318  
 zhìyúshuō, 至于说, as for; as to; 至于, L. 46, p. 417  
 zhìzào, 制造, *v.*, manufacture; make, L. 24, p. 219  
 Zhōngguó dàlù, 中国大陆, *n.*, mainland China, L. 11, p. 102  
 Zhōnghuá Mínguó, 中华民国, *n.*, the Republic of China (1912 – present, the government moved to Taiwan in 1949), L. 15, p. 135  
 Zhōnghuá Mínzú, 中华民族, *n.*, the Chinese Nation (people), L. 47, p. 427  
 Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gònghéguó, 中华人民共和国, *n.*, People's Republic of China, L. 22, p. 201  
 zhōngnián, 中年, *adj.*, middle-aged, L. 11, p. 103  
 zhōngqī, 中期, *n.*, middle period (of a dynasty, century, reign), L. 47, p. 429  
 zhōngwài, 中外, *adj.*, China and foreign countries, L. 14, p. 127  
 zhōngxin, 中心, *n.*, center, L. 30, p. 269  
 zhōngyú, 终于, *adv.*, at last; finally, L. 17, p. 156  
 zhǒng, 种, *n.*, a kind; a sort; a type, L. 19, p. 174  
 zhǒngzhǒng, 种种, *adj.*, all kinds of, L. 42, p. 379  
 zhòngdà, 重大, *adj.*, great; weighty; major; significant, L. 48, p. 438  
 zhòngnán qīngnǚ, 重男轻女, *idm.*, prefer sons to daughters; look up to men and down on women, L. 25, p. 226  
 zhòngshì, 重视, *v.*, think highly of; value; take something seriously, L. 29, p. 262  
 zhòngyào, 重要, *adj.*, important, L. 19, p. 174  
 zhòngyàoxìng, 重要性, *n.*, importance, L. 44, p. 397  
 zhōu, 粥, *n.*, gruel; congee (most of the time other ingredients are added in addition to rice), L. 20, p. 183  
 zhōu, 州, *n.*, state, L. 45, p. 408  
 zhōu.dào, 周到, *adj.*, attentive and satisfactory; thoughtful, L. 8, p. 71  
 zhōumò, 周末, *n.*, weekend, L. 8, p. 69  
 zhújiàn, 逐渐, *adv.*, gradually, L. 47, p. 430  
 zhú.zi, 竹子, *n.*, bamboo, L. 16, p. 143  
 zhǔ, 煮, *v.*, boil; cook, L. 20, p. 184  
 zhǔdǎo, 主导, *adj./v.*, leading; dominant; guiding, lead; guide, L. 25, p. 228  
 zhǔkè, 主客, *n.*, guest of honor, L. 19, p. 170  
 zhǔquán, 主权, *n.*, sovereignty, L. 42, p. 378  
 zhǔ.rén, 主人, *n.*, host, L. 19, p. 171  
 zhǔshí, 主食, *n.*, staple food; principal food, L. 20, p. 183  
 zhǔyào, 主要, *adj.*, main, L. 13, p. 122  
 zhǔyào, 主要, *adv.*, mainly, L. 16, p. 142  
 zhǔyì, ——主义, *n.*, -ism; doctrine, L. 42, p. 379  
 zhǔzhāng, 主张, *v.*, advocate; maintain, L. 38, p. 344  
 zhùfáng, 住房, *n.*, housing, L. 34, p. 310  
 zhùyì, 注意, *v.*, pay attention to, L. 2, p. 14  
 zhùyīn fúhào, 注音符号, *n.*, the national phonetic alphabet (in use before the Chinese phonetic alphabet was implemented), L. 31, p. 280  
 zhùzhòng, 注重, *v.*, lay stress on; pay attention to, L. 35, p. 317  
 zhùzuò, 著作, *n.*, work; book; writing, L. 30, p. 271  
 zhuānjīā, 专家, *n.*, expert, L. 43, p. 386  
 zhuānxīn, 专心, *adj.*, concentrate one's attention; be absorbed, L. 44, p. 395  
 zhuānyè, 专业, *n.*, special field of study; major, L. 29, p. 260  
 zhuānyè, 专业, *adj./n.*, professional, one's major, L. 39, p. 351  
 zhuǎn, 转, *v.*, turn, L. 39, p. 351  
 zhuǎnxìang, 转向, *v.*, turn to, L. 39, p. 351  
 zhuàn//qián, 赚钱, *v.-o.*, make money; make a profit, L. 10, p. 90  
 zhuāng, 装, *v.*, set up; install, L. 41, p. 371  
 zhuāngshì, 装饰, *n.*, decoration, L. 14, p. 128  
 zhuàng, 撞, *v.*, collide; bump against; run into, L. 21, p. 192  
 zhuàng, 檐, *AN*, measure word for building, L. 40, p. 363  
 zhuàng//zháo, 撞着, *v.-c.*, collide; bump against; run into, L. 21, p. 192  
 zhǔnbèi, 准备, *n./v.*, preparation, prepare, L. 29, p. 260  
 zhǔnshí, 准时, *adv./adj.*, punctually; on time, L. 1, p. 1  
 zhuō, 桌, *AN*, an entire table of, L. 19, p. 173  
 zhuō, 捉, *v.*, catch; capture, L. 26, p. 237  
 ziyuán, 资源, *n.*, natural resources; resources, L. 24, p. 220  
 zǐnǚ, 子女, *n.*, children; sons and daughters, L. 33, p. 300  
 zìcóng, 自从, *prep.*, since, L. 23, p. 210  
 zì gǔ yǐlái, 自古以来, since ancient times, L. 39, p. 352  
 zìhuàr, 字画儿, *n.*, calligraphy and painting, L. 30, p. 270  
 zìjǐ, 自己, *pron.*, oneself, L. 6, p. 54  
 zǐlāishuǐ, 自来水, *n.*, tap water, L. 6, p. 55  
 zìmù, 字幕, *n.*, captions (of motion pictures, etc.); subtitles, L. 23, p. 210  
 zìrán, 自然, *adv./adj.*, naturally, natural, L. 23, p. 211  
 zìwèi, 自卫, *n.*, self-defense, L. 48, p. 438

- 
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| zìxíngchē, 自行车, <i>n.</i> , bicycle, L. 9, p. 79  | zuìhǎo, 最好, <i>adv.</i> , had better; it would be best, L. 4, p. 37                     |
| zìyóu, 自由, <i>adj./n.</i> , free; liberty, L. 17, p. 153  | zuijìn, 最近, <i>adv.</i> , recently, L. 6, p. 55   |
| Zìyóu Nǚshén xiàng, 自由女神像, <i>n.</i> , Statue of Liberty, L. 17, p. 153   | zūnshǒu, 遵守, <i>v.</i> , abide by; observe, L. 21, p. 193                               |
| zìyuàn, 自愿, <i>adv.</i> , of one's own free will, L. 35, p. 318   | zūnyán, 尊严, <i>n.</i> , dignity; honor, L. 35, p. 319                                   |
| zìzhìqū, 自治区, <i>n.</i> , autonomous region, L. 47, p. 428  | zūnzhòng, 尊重, <i>v./n.</i> , respect; value; esteem, L. 28, p. 252                      |
| zōngjiào, 宗教, <i>n.</i> , religion, L. 47, p. 428   | zuǒ, 左, <i>adj.</i> , left, L. 40, p. 361   |
| zǒng, 总, <i>adv.</i> , 总是; always, L. 5, p. 47  | zuōbiānr, 左边儿, <i>n.</i> , left side; left, L. 25, p. 227                               |
| zǒngshì, 总是, <i>adv.</i> , always, L. 3, p. 26  | zuǒyòu, 左右, <i>n.</i> , about; or so (used after a number), L. 47, p. 427               |
| zǒu hòuménr, 走后门儿, <i>v.-o.</i> , get in by the back door; secure advantages through pull or influence, L. 29, p. 261 | zuò, 座, <i>AN</i> , measure word for bridges, buildings, mountains, etc., L. 21, p. 192 |
| zǒu//lù, 走路, <i>v.-o.</i> , walk; go on foot, L. 9, p. 80   | zuò//cài, 做菜, <i>v.-o.</i> , cook, L. 19, p. 173  |
| zū, 租, <i>v.</i> , rent, L. 9, p. 78  | zuòrénr, 做人, <i>v.-o.</i> , be an upright person, L. 22, p. 200                         |
| zú, ——族, <i>suffix</i> , race; nationality, L. 47, p. 427   | zuò//shàng, 坐上, <i>v.-c.</i> , get on (a vehicle), L. 1, p. 2                           |
| zúgòu, 足够, <i>adj.</i> , enough, L. 23, p. 211  | zuòwéi, 作为, <i>prep.</i> , as..., L. 46, p. 415   |
| zǔfùmǔ, 祖父母, <i>n.</i> , 祖父 and 祖母; grandparents, L. 16, p. 145   | zuò.wèi, 座位, <i>n.</i> , seat; place, L. 19, p. 171                                     |
| zǔzhī, 组织, <i>v./n.</i> , organize, organization, L. 17, p. 153   | zuòyòng, 作用, <i>n.</i> , function; effect, L. 21, p. 193                                |
| zui, 罪, <i>n.</i> , sin; hardship, L. 6, p. 55  | zuòzhě, 作者, <i>n.</i> , author, L. 46, p. 415   |

## English Index

**A**

the abbreviated form of a name, 简称, jiǎnchēng, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 abide by; observe, 遵守, zūnshǒu, *v.*, L. 21, p. 193  
 ability; capability, 能力, nénglì, *n.*, L. 29, p. 262  
 able; capable; competent, 能干, nénggàn, *adj.*, L. 25, p. 227  
 about the same; similar, 差不多, chà .bu duō, *adj.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 about; or so (used after a number), 左右, zuǒyòu, *n.*, L. 47, p. 427  
 about; toward, 对, dùi, *prep.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 above (a given point or line), …以上, yǐshàng, *postp.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 accept, 接受, jiēshòu, *v.*, L. 28, p. 252  
 ache, sore; painful, 疼, téng, *v./adj.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 achieve (a goal), 达到, dàdào, *v.*, L. 34, p. 310  
 achievement; accomplishment, 成就, chéngjiù, *n.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 achievement; grade, 成绩, chéngjì, *n.*, L. 23, p. 209  
 across from; in front of, 对面, duìmiàn, L. 4, p. 38  
 activity, 活动, huódòng, *n.*, L. 16, p. 142  
 actually; in fact, 其实, qíshí, *adv.*, L. 11, p. 103  
 actually; in reality, actual; real, 实际, shíjì, *adv./adj.*, L. 20, p. 186  
 (in this context) add subtitles, 打, dǎ, *v.*, L. 23, p. 210  
 add; increase, 增添, zēngtiān, *v.*, L. 40, p. 364  
 add; increase; raise, 增加, zēngjiā, *v./n.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 add; put in, 加, jiā, *v.*, L. 11, p. 102  
 address, 地址, dìzhǐ, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39  
 adequately fed and clothed, 温饱, wēnbǎo, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 adjustment, adjust, 调整, tiáozhěng, *n./v.*, L. 48, p. 439  
 admire; envy, 羡慕, xiànmù, *v.*, L. 41, p. 372  
 admire; have respect for, 佩服, pèifú, *v.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 adopt (something abstract), 采取, cǎiqǔ, *v.*, L. 34, p. 310  
 adopt; take in and bring up, 收养, shōuyǎng, *v.*, L. 25, p. 226  
 advance; progress; improvement (cannot be followed by an object), 进步, jìnbu, *n./v.*, L. 12, p. 115  
 adverbial particle, 着, zhe, *comp.*, L. 12, p. 115  
 advertisement, 广告, guǎnggào, *n.*, L. 22, p. 201  
 advocate; maintain, 主张, zhǔzhāng, *v.*, L. 38, p. 344  
 advocate; promote, 提倡, tíchāng, *v.*, L. 23, p. 209

affirm; confirm; approve; regard as positive, 肯定, kěndìng, *v.*, L. 30, p. 272  
 after all; all in all, 毕竟, bìjìng, *adv.*, L. 44, p. 397  
 after all; exactly, 到底, dàodǐ, *adv.*, L. 10, p. 90  
 after entering a country, follow its customs; “When in Rome, do as the Romans do.”, 入乡随俗, rùxiāng suísú, *idm.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 afternoon nap, 午觉, wǔjiào, *n.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 afterwards, 后来, hòulái, *n.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 again and again; repeatedly, 一再, yízài, *adv.*, L. 19, p. 172  
 again; anew; afresh, 重新, chóngxīn, *adv.*, L. 10, p. 89  
 age, 年纪, niánjì, *n.*, L. 19, p. 170  
 age, 年龄, niánlíng, *n.*, L. 35, p. 317  
 agree; approve, 同意, tóngyì, *v.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 agree; promise; answer, 答应, dāying, *v.*, L. 18, p. 163  
 agreement, 协议, xiéyì, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251  
 agriculture, 农业, nóngyè, *n.*, L. 43, p. 388  
 the air, 空气, kōngqì, *n.*, L. 41, p. 370  
 air conditioner; air conditioning, 冷气, lěngqì, *n.*, L. 31, p. 280  
 air dry; dry in the sun, 晾, liàng, *v.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 air-conditioning, 空调, kōngtiāo, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12  
 airplane, 飞机, fēijī, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1  
 airport, 机场, jīchǎng, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1  
 alike; the same; identical, 相同, xiāngtóng, *adj.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 all (所有的+ *n.* is usually followed by 都.), 所有, suǒyǒu, *adj.*, L. 11, p. 100  
 “all house happiness;” a hodgepodge of ingredients cooked together in one pot, 全家福, quánjiàfú, *n.*, L. 20, p. 186  
 all kinds of, 种种, zhǒngzhǒng, *adj.*, L. 42, p. 379  
 all kinds of, 各种各样, gèzhǒng gèyàng, *adj.*, L. 22, p. 200  
 all the way; all along; continuously, 一直, yìzhí, *adv.*, L. 1, p. 3  
 all trades and professions, 各行各业, gèháng gèyè, *n.*, L. 27, p. 244  
 all; every; everything, 一切, yíqiè, *n.*, L. 2, p. 11  
 alleviate, 减轻, jiǎnqīng, *v.*, L. 39, p. 351  
 around; about, 差不多, chà .bu duō, *adv.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 almost; nearly; practically, 几乎, jīhū, *adv.*, L. 11, p. 103

- along with; in the wake of, 随着, suí.zhe, *conj.*, L. 28, p. 252
- already v.-ed long ago, 早已, zǎoyǐ, *adv.*, L. 34, p. 310
- always, 总是, zǒngshì, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 26
- always, 总, zǒng, *adv.*, L. 5, p. 47
- always; all along, 一向, yíxiàng, *adv.*, L. 25, p. 226
- amount, 分量, fèn.liàng, *n.*, L. 34, p. 309
- an entire table of, 桌, zhuō, *AN*, L. 19, p. 173
- analyze, analysis, 分析, fēnxī, *v./n.*, L. 29, p. 261
- ancient and modern; Chinese and foreign; at all times and in all places, 古今中外, gǔ jīn zhōng wài, *idm.*, L. 40, p. 360
- the ancient and the current exist simultaneously, 古今并存, gǔ jīn bìngcún, L. 26, p. 235
- ancient names for Shandong, 齐鲁, Qí Lǔ, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183
- ancient painting, 古画儿, gǔhuàr, *n.*, L. 10, p. 90
- ancient times, 古代, gǔdài, *n.*, L. 14, p. 127
- ancient; age-old, 古老, gǔlǎo, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 3
- and (used in writing), 以及, yǐjǐ, *conj.*, L. 33, p. 301
- and so on; and what not, 什么的, shén.me.de, L. 20, p. 184
- and so on; and so forth; and the like, 之类, zhīlèi, L. 20, p. 186
- and so on; etc., 等等, děngděng, L. 22, p. 202
- and so on; etc., …等 *n.*, děng, L. 16, p. 144
- and; as well (as), furthermore, 而且, érqìe, *conj.*, L. 2, p. 13
- and; 跟, 与, yǔ, *conj.*, L. 23, p. 209
- angle; point of view, 角度, jiǎodù, *n.*, L. 3, p. 27
- animal, 动物, dòngwù, *n.*, L. 16, p. 142
- another name for Guangdong Province, 粤, Yuè, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183
- answer, 回答, huídá, *n./v.*, L. 18, p. 163
- antique, 古董, gǔdòng, *n.*, L. 10, p. 89
- any; whichever; whatever, 任何, rènhé, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 127
- anywhere; everywhere, 随地, suídì, *adv.*, L. 22, p. 200
- appear; arise; emerge, 出现, chūxiàn, *v.*, L. 28, p. 251
- appearance; shape, 样子, yàng.zi, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270
- apply for, 申请, shēnqǐng, *v.*, L. 38, p. 343
- approximately; about, 大约, dàyuē, *adv.*, L. 11, p. 100
- area (the product of the length times the width), 面积, miànjī, *n.*, L. 36, p. 328
- area; district, 地区, dìqū, *n.*, L. 36, p. 327
- arm, 胳膊, gē.bo, *n.*, L. 5, p. 47
- around the time of ..., …前后, qǐánhòu, L. 42, p. 380
- arrange, arrangement, 安排, ānpái, *v./n.*, L. 16, p. 142
- arrive, 到达, dàodā, *v.*, L. 36, p. 327
- art, 艺术, yìshù, *n.*, L. 48, p. 436
- as a result, result, 结果, jiéguǒ, *adv./n.*, L. 5, p. 47
- as expected; sure enough, 果然, guǒrán, *adv.*, L. 44, p. 395
- as for; as to, 至于, zhìyú, *prep.*, L. 35, p. 318
- as for; as to; 至于说, zhìyúshuō, L. 46, p. 417
- as if; seemingly, 似乎, sìhū, *adv.*, L. 8, p. 70
- as long as, 只要, zhǐyào, *conj.*, L. 11, p. 100
- as..., 作为, zuòwéi, *prep.*, L. 46, p. 415
- ascend; mount, 登, dēng, *v.*, L. 17, p. 156
- Asia, 亚洲, Yàzhōu, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397
- ask for leave, 请假, qǐng/jià, *v.-o.*, L. 5, p. 46
- aspect; feature, ——点, diǎn, *n.*, L. 25, p. 228
- aspect; situation, 局面, júmiàn, *n.*, L. 28, p. 250
- associate; connect in the mind, 联想, liánxiǎng, *v.*, L. 43, p. 388
- assurance; certainty, 把握, bǎwò, *n.*, L. 18, p. 163
- at last; finally, 终于, zhōngyú, *adv.*, L. 17, p. 156
- at least, 至少, zhìshǎo, *adv.*, L. 45, p. 406
- at the same time; in the meantime, 同时, tóngshí, *adv.*, L. 27, p. 243
- attentive and satisfactory; thoughtful, 周到, zhōu.dào, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 71
- attract, 吸引, xīyǐn, *v.*, L. 38, p. 345
- attracting respect on account of a wealthy or proper appearance, 体面, tǐ.miàn, *adj.*, L. 39, p. 352
- authentic; genuine; real, 地道, dì.dào, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 363
- author, 作者, zuòzhě, *n.*, L. 46, p. 415
- autonomous region, 自治区, zìzhìqū, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428
- automobile; motor vehicle; car, 汽车, qìchē, *n.*, L. 4, p. 37
- average, 平均, píngjūn, *adv./adj.*, L. 45, p. 406
- aviation, 航空, hángkōng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 327
- avoid; refrain from, 避免, bìmiǎn, *v.*, L. 20, p. 186
- “avoid-heat-mountain-villa”; (Imperial) Summer Residence, 避暑山庄, Bìshǔ Shānzhūāng, *n.*, L. 13, p. 121
- awfully; extremely, adj. 得要命, .de yàomìng, L. 3, p. 25
- awkward, 别扭, biè.niù, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 364
- awkward; embarrassed, 尴尬, gān'gà, *adj.*, L. 24, p. 219

**B**

- baby monkey, 小猴儿, xiǎohóur, *n.*, L. 16, p. 145
- back door, 后门儿, hòuménr, *n.*, L. 29, p. 261
- background, 背景, bēijǐng, *n.*, L. 28, p. 252
- backward, 落后, luòhòu, *adj.*, L. 17, p. 154

- bad smell; stench, 臭味儿, chòuwèir, *n.*, L. 12, p. 114  
 badminton, 羽毛球, yǔmáoqiú, *n.*, L. 14, p. 128  
 balcony; patio, 阳台, yángtái, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 ball team, 球队, qiúduì, *n.*, L. 28, p. 250  
 ball-playing skills, 球技, qiújì, *n.*, L. 28, p. 250  
 bamboo, 竹子, zhú.zi, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143  
 bamboo shoot, 冬笋, dōngsǔn, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 bank, 银行, yínháng, *n.*, L. 9, p. 78  
 bank; shore; coast, 岸, àn, *n.*, L. 15, p. 135  
 bar; barroom, 酒吧, jiǔbā, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134  
 barbershop; hairdresser's, 发廊, fàláng, *n.*, L. 8, p. 69  
 bargain; haggle over the price, 讲价, jiǎng//jià, *v.-o.*,  
     L. 10, p. 89  
 basic; fundamental, 基本, jīběn, *adj.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 bathroom; washroom, 浴室, yùshì, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12  
 battlefield; battleground, 战场, zhànchǎng, *n.*, L. 35,  
     p. 317  
 be able to have (a high standard of living), 过上,  
     guò//.shàng, *v.-c.*, L. 34, p. 311  
 be accustomed to; be used to; habit; custom, 习惯,  
     xíguàn, *v./n.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 be afraid, 恐怕, kǒngpà, *adv.*, L. 43, p. 389  
 be an upright person, 做人, zuòrén, *v.-o.*, L. 22, p. 200  
 be available to all; popularize, 普及, pǔjí, *v./adj.*, L. 45,  
     p. 405  
 be away from; from, 离, lí, *v.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 be born, 出生, chūshēng, *v.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 be busy with, 忙着, máng.zhe, *v.*, L. 37, p. 335  
 be called as; call, 叫, jiào, *v.*, L. 8, p. 69  
 be cheated; be deceived, 受骗, shòu//piàn, *v.-o.*, L. 46,  
     p. 417  
 be considered as; be regarded as, 算是, suànsì, *v.*,  
     L. 41, p. 371  
 be defeated, 战败, zhàngbài, *v.*, L. 42, p. 379  
 be disappointed, 失望, shīwàng, *v.*, L. 43, p. 389  
 be distributed (over an area); be scattered, 分布, fēnbù,  
     *v.*, L. 47, p. 427  
 be drunk, 喝醉, hē//zuì, *v.-c.*, L. 19, p. 172  
 be effective; have effect, 起作用, qǐ zuòyòng, *v.-o.*,  
     L. 21, p. 193  
 be faced with; be confronted with, 面临, miànlín, *v.*,  
     L. 38, p. 344  
 be forced to, 被迫, bēipò, *v.*, L. 48, p. 438  
 be full of; brimming with, 充满, chōngmǎn, *v.*, L. 42,  
     p. 380  
 be highly proficient in; possess mastery of, 精通,  
     jīngtōng, *v.*, L. 30, p. 271  
 be in flood; inundate; overrun, overabundant;  
     unchecked spreading, 泛滥, fànlàn, *v./adj.*, L. 45,  
     p. 407  
 be interested in, 感兴趣, gǎn xìngqù, *v.-o.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 be laid off; be fired, 下岗, xià//gǎng, *v.-o.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 be late (for a fixed schedule or appointment.), 迟到,  
     chídào, *v.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 be left (over); remain, 剩下, shèng.xià, *v.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 be particular about; pay attention to; be fastidious about,  
     讲究, jiǎng.jiù, *v.*, L. 19, p. 171  
 be prevalent; be popular, 流行, liúxíng, *v.*, L. 35, p. 317  
 be responsible for; be accountable for, 负责任, fù zérèn,  
     *v.-o.*, L. 33, p. 300  
 be sick; be ill, 病, bìng, *v.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 be sorry; feel apologetic, 抱歉, bàoqièn, *adj.*, L. 19,  
     p. 173  
 be suitable for; be appropriate for, 适宜, shìyí, *v.*, L. 47,  
     p. 428  
 be taken in; be fooled, 上当, shàng//dàng, *v.-o.*, L. 10,  
     p. 92  
 be told; hear of; hear, 听说, tīngshuō, *v.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 be unable to (be) resist(ed); be unable to (be) stop(ped),  
     挡不住, dǎng.buzhù, *v.-c.*, L. 43, p. 389  
 be unable to eat anymore, 吃不下, chī.bu xià, *v.-c.*,  
     L. 19, p. 172  
 be willing to, 愿意, yuàn.yì, *aux.*, L. 7, p. 63  
 be worth; deserve, 值得, zhí.dé, *v.*, L. 22, p. 203  
 be; work as; serve as, 当, dāng, *v.*, L. 39, p. 352  
 bean curd; tofu, 豆腐, dòu.fu, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 bear; have (certain air, appearance, or unique feature),  
     带, dài, *v.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 beard, 胡子, hú.zi, *n.*, L. 8, p. 71  
 beautify, 美化, měihuà, *v.*, L. 46, p. 416  
 "beautify-hair store" - barbershop; hairdresser's, 美发  
     馆, měifāguǎn, *n.*, L. 8, p. 69  
 become fat; fat, 胖, pàng, *v./adj.*, L. 33, p. 298  
 become; turn into, 变成, biànchéng, *v.*, L. 31, p. 279  
 become; turn into, 成为, chéngwéi, *v.*, L. 42, p. 380  
 bedding, 床铺, chuángpù, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12  
 beef, 牛肉, niúròu, *n.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 beer, 啤酒, píjiǔ, *n.*, L. 15, p. 136  
 beggar, 乞丐, qǐgài, *n.*, L. 46, p. 415  
 Beijing, 北京, Běijīng, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1  
 Beijing Opera, 京剧, Jīngjù, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363  
 Beijing-Kowloon (Railway) Line, 京九线, Jīngjiǔxiàn,  
     *n.*, L. 36, p. 326  
 belief; faith; conviction, 信仰, xìnyǎng, *n.*, L. 47,  
     p. 428  
 believe, 相信, xiāngxìn, *v.*, L. 31, p. 281

- benefit; gain; profit; advantage, 好处, *hǎo.chu*, *n.*, L. 3, p. 27
- besides; moreover, 此外, *cǐwài*, *adv.*, L. 40, p. 360
- between A and B, A 与 B 之间, *A yù B zhījiān*, L. 23, p. 209
- bicycle, 自行车, *zìxíngchē*, *n.*, L. 9, p. 79
- big streets and small alleys-almost everywhere/anywhere, 大街小巷, *dàjīe xiǎoxiàng*, *idm.*, L. 15, p. 134
- bill; receipt, 发票, *fáipào*, *n.*, L. 9, p. 80
- Bird's Nest, 鸟巢, *Niǎocháo*, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362
- black, 黑色, *hēisè*, *n./adj.*, L. 16, p. 143
- block up; stop up, 堵塞, *dǔsè*, *v.*, L. 9, p. 79
- boat; ship; vessel, 船, *chuán*, *n.*, L. 16, p. 145
- body; health, 身体, *shēntǐ*, *n.*, L. 3, p. 25
- Boeing, 波音, *Bōyīn*, *n.*, L. 36, p. 327
- boil; cook, 煮, *zhǔ*, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184
- boiled water, 开水, *kāishuǐ*, *n.*, L. 6, p. 55
- bookstore, 书店, *shūdiàn*, *n.*, L. 30, p. 269
- both ...and; as well as, 既...也..., *jì...yě...*, *conj.*, L. 12, p. 114
- both sides; the two parties, 双方, *shuāngfāng*, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251
- bother; to trouble somebody, 麻烦, *má.fan*, *v.*, L. 9, p. 80
- bottle, 瓶, *píng*, *n.*, L. 6, p. 55
- bowl, 碗, *wǎn*, *AN/n.*, L. 5, p. 46
- boy, 男孩儿, *nánhái*, *n.*, L. 25, p. 226
- brain, 脑, *nǎo*, *n.*, L. 3, p. 25
- brains; mental capability, 脑力, *nǎolì*, *n.*, L. 39, p. 352
- brains; mind, 脑子, *nǎo.zi*, *n.*, L. 46, p. 419
- brains; mind (It is not used for the physical brain.), 头脑, *tóunǎo*, *n.*, L. 3, p. 25
- braise in soy sauce, 红烧, *hóngshāo*, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184
- brand-new, 全新, *quánxīn*, *adj.*, L. 48, p. 439
- break; smash, 打破, *dǎ/pò*, *v.-c.*, L. 27, p. 243
- brew, 泡, *pào*, *v.*, L. 6, p. 55
- bridge, 桥, *qiáo*, *n.*, L. 44, p. 395
- bring about; bring along; produce, 带来, *dài/lái*, *v.*, L. 23, p. 210
- Britain; England, 英国, *Yīngguó*, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378
- broccoli, 西兰花儿, *xīlánhuār*, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185
- Buddhism, 佛教, *Fójiào*, *n.*, L. 48, p. 436
- Buddhist sutra, 佛经, *Fójīng*, *n.*, L. 48, p. 437
- build; construct, 建, *jiàn*, *v.*, L. 17, p. 154
- building, 建筑, *jiànzhù*, *n.*, L. 14, p. 128
- bulletin board, 布告栏, *bùgàolán*, *n.*, L. 38, p. 343
- burden; load, 负担, *fùdān*, *n.*, L. 35, p. 319
- bus, 公交车, *gōngjiāochē*, *n.*, L. 16, p. 142
- bus, 公共汽车, *gōnggòng qìchē*, *n.*, L. 4, p. 37
- businessman; merchant, 商人, *shāngrén*, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- busy, 忙碌, *mánglù*, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 129
- busy, be fully occupied, 忙, *máng*, *adj./v.*, L. 37, p. 335
- but; however, 不过, *búguò*, *adv.*, L. 1, p. 3
- but; yet; however, 却, *què*, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 25
- but; 可是, 可, *kě*, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 25
- buy and sell, trade, 买卖, *mǎimài*, *v./n.*, L. 34, p. 310
- (done) by (somebody), 由, *yóu*, *prep.*, L. 25, p. 228
- by means of; by way of, 通过, *tōngguò*, *prep.*, L. 44, p. 398
- C**
- calculate, 计算, *jìsuàn*, *v.*, L. 27, p. 243
- call; address, a form of address, 称呼, *chēng.hu*, *v./n.*, L. 11, p. 100
- calligraphy and painting, 字画儿, *zìhuàr*, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270
- camera, 照相机, *zhàoxiàngjī*, *n.*, L. 16, p. 144
- campus, 校园, *xiàoyuán*, *n.*, L. 2, p. 13
- candy; sugar, 糖, *tāng*, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- cannot afford, 买不起, *mǎi .bu .qǐ*, *v.-c.*, L. 10, p. 90
- cannot catch up with, 赶不上, *gǎn.bu shàng*, *v.-c.*, L. 9, p. 79
- cannot get used to eating, 吃不惯, *chī .bu guàn*, *v.-c.*, L. 20, p. 183
- cannot stand (or endure), 受不了, *shòu .bu liǎo*, *v.-c.*, L. 12, p. 113
- capital, 首都, *shǒudū*, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1
- captions (of motion pictures, etc.); subtitles, 字幕, *zìmù*, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210
- carelessly, 随便, *suíbiàn*, *adv.*, L. 22, p. 203
- cargo transportation, 货运, *huòyùn*, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326
- carry in one's arms; embrace; cradle, 抱, *bào*, *v.*, L. 16, p. 145
- carry on the back, 背, *bēi*, *v.*, L. 16, p. 145
- carry on the back; bear, 负, *fù*, *v.*, L. 33, p. 300
- carry on; carry out; conduct, 进行, *jìnxíng*, *v.*, L. 28, p. 251
- carry out; practice, 推行, *tuīxíng*, *v.*, L. 23, p. 209
- cash, 现金, *xiànjīn*, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81
- cashew, 腰果, *yāoguǒ*, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185
- cat, 猫, *māo*, *n.*, L. 26, p. 237
- catalogue of titles; booklist, 书目, *shūmù*, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271
- catch; capture, 捉, *zhuō*, *v.*, L. 26, p. 237
- cause; create; give rise to (usually a undesirable result), 造成, *zàochéng*, *v.*, L. 23, p. 209

- cause; reason (generally takes a noun phrase modifier),  
缘故, yuángrù, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- cede, 割让, gēràng, *v.*, L. 42, p. 379
- cellular phone, 手机, shǒujī, *n.*, L. 37, p. 335
- cement, 水泥, shuǐní, *n.*, L. 28, p. 250
- center, 中心, zhōngxīn, *n.*, L. 30, p. 269
- century, 世纪, shìjì, *n.*, L. 22, p. 201
- certain, 一定, yídìng, *adj.*, L. 18, p. 163
- Chairman Mao, 毛主席, Máo zhǔxí, *n.*, L. 22, p. 200
- challenge, 挑战, tiǎozhàn, *n./v.*, L. 39, p. 350
- Chang'an Street, a major street in Beijing, 长安街,  
Cháng'ān Jīē, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363
- change, 换, huàn, *v.*, L. 2, p. 12
- change, 变化, biànhuà, *v./n.*, L. 40, p. 361
- change; alter, 改变, gǎibiàn, *n./v.*, L. 12, p. 115
- change; alter; correct, 改, gǎi, *v.*, L. 3, p. 26
- change; become different, 变, biàn, *v.*, L. 31, p. 279
- change with each passing day, 日新月异, rì xīn yuè yì,  
*idm.*, L. 48, p. 440
- chaos; confusion, in chaos, 混乱, hùnluàn, *n./adj.*,  
L. 23, p. 210
- characteristic; distinguishing feature, 特色, tèsè, *n.*,  
L. 11, p. 103
- characteristic; trait, 特点, tèdiǎn, *n.*, L. 11, p. 103
- chat, 聊天儿, liáo/tiānr, *v.-o.*, L. 8, p. 71
- check, 支票, zhǐpiào, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81
- check (the number) to see if correct, 点, diǎn, *v.*, L. 9,  
p. 81
- check; examine; inspect, inspection, 检查, jiǎnchá, *v./n.*,  
L. 1, p. 3
- check; inspect, 查, chā, *v.*, L. 1, p. 2
- cheerful; joyful, 愉快, yúkuài, *adj.*, L. 46, p. 419
- Cheers!: Bottoms up!, 千杯, gān//bēi, L. 19, p. 172
- Chengde, in Hebei Province, 承德, Chéngdé, *n.*, L. 13,  
p. 121
- cherish the memory of; think fondly of, 怀念, huáiiniàn,  
*v.*, L. 11, p. 103
- cherish; treasure, 爱护, àihù, *v.*, L. 33, p. 300
- chicken, 鸡, jī, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184
- child; children; kid, 孩子, háizi, *n.*, L. 16, p. 145
- children, 儿童, értóng, *n.*, L. 35, p. 317
- children; sons and daughters, 子女, zǐnǚ, *n.*, L. 33,  
p. 300
- China and foreign countries, 中外, zhōngwài, *adj.*,  
L. 14, p. 127
- Chinese characters, 汉字, Hánzì, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210
- Chinese dragon dance, 舞龙, wǔlóng, *v.-o.*, L. 43,  
p. 388
- Chinese language, 汉语, Hányǔ, *n.*, L. 27, p. 243
- Chinese leaf mustard, 芥兰, jiélán, *n.*, L. 20, p. 186
- Chinese lion dance, 舞狮, wǔshī, *v.-o.*, L. 43, p. 388
- the Chinese Nation (people), 中华民族, Zhōnghuá  
Mínzú, *n.*, L. 47, p. 427
- the Chinese phonetic alphabet, 汉语拼音, Hányǔ pīnyīn,  
*n.*, L. 31, p. 280
- chocolate, 巧克力, qiǎokèlì, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- chopsticks, 筷子, kuàizi, *n.*, L. 7, p. 63
- citizen; urban dweller, 市民, shìmín, *n.*, L. 12, p. 114
- city and town, 城镇, chéngzhèn, *n.*, L. 45, p. 405
- city; metropolis, 都市, dūshì, *n.*, L. 41, p. 370
- civilization; culture, 文明, wénmíng, *n.*, L. 22, p. 202
- clash (between two parties); friction, 摩擦, mócā, *n.*,  
L. 35, p. 320
- (social) class, 阶级, jiējí, *n.*, L. 47, p. 429
- classical, 古典, gǔdiǎn, *adj.*, L. 30, p. 271
- classics, 经典, jīngdiǎn, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271
- clean the dishes (after a meal), 洗碗, xǐ/wǎn, *v.-o.*, L. 7,  
p. 63
- clean; neat and tidy, 干净, gānjìng, *adj.*, L. 3, p. 26
- clear, 清楚, qīngchu, *adj.*, L. 3, p. 25
- clear; obvious, know; understand, 明白, míngbai,  
*adj./v.*, L. 20, p. 186
- client; customer, 客户, kèhù, *n.*, L. 36, p. 327
- climb mountains, 爬山, pá/shān, *v.-o.*, L. 33, p. 299
- (said of stores, offices, etc.) close, 关门, guān//mén,  
*v.-o.*, L. 9, p. 80
- close, carefully; closely; intently, 密切, mìqiè, *adj./adv.*,  
L. 44, p. 397
- close; near, 近, jìn, *adj.*, L. 2, p. 13
- clothes hanger; coat hanger, 衣架, yījià, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62
- clothes; clothing, 衣服, yīfu, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62
- “clothing, food, shelter and transportation” – the four  
basic necessities of life, 衣食住行, yī shí zhù xíng,  
*idm.*, L. 40, p. 362
- Coca Cola, 可口可乐, Kěkǒukělè, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- coffee, 咖啡, kāfēi, *n.*, L. 3, p. 25
- coincidental; fortuitous, 巧, qiǎo, *adj.*, L. 10, p. 92
- cold; cool, 凉, liáng, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 55
- colleague; fellow worker, 同事, tóngshì, *n.*, L. 25,  
p. 227
- collect a fee; charge, 收费, shōufèi, *v.*, L. 12, p. 115
- college graduate, 毕业生, bìyèshēng, *n.*, L. 27, p. 244
- collide; bump against; run into, 撞, zhuàng, *v.*, L. 21,  
p. 192
- collide; bump against; run into, 撞着, zhuàng//zháo,  
*v.-c.*, L. 21, p. 192
- colony, 殖民地, zhímíndì, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378

- color (as opposed to black and white); multicolor, 彩色, cǎisè, adj., L. 45, p. 405
- color TV set, 彩电, cǎidiàn, n., L. 45, p. 406
- colorful; diverse, 多姿多彩, duō zī duō cǎi, adj., L. 48, p. 437
- come from, 来自, láizì, v., L. 16, p. 144
- come into contact with, 接触, jiēchù, v., L. 31, p. 281
- come into contact with; have dealings with, 打交道, dǎ jiāodào, v.-o., L. 18, p. 162
- come out; publish, 出版, chū, v., L. 30, p. 271
- comfortable, 舒服, shū.fu, adj., L. 1, p. 3
- comfortable, comfort, 舒适, shūshì, adj./n., L. 41, p. 371
- commerce; trade; business, 商业, shāngyè, n., L. 22, p. 201
- commercial business, 商业性, shāngyèxìng, n., L. 22, p. 201
- commercialized housing, 商品房, shāngpǐnfáng, n., L. 34, p. 310
- commodity; merchandise, 商品, shāngpǐn, n., L. 24, p. 221
- common customs, 风俗, fēngsú, n., L. 45, p. 408
- the common people, 老百姓, lǎobǎixìng, n., L. 15, p. 135
- common people, 一般人, yìbānrén, n., L. 46, p. 416
- common saying; proverb, 俗语, súhuà, n., L. 26, p. 235
- common; ordinary, 普通, pǔtōng, adj., L. 23, p. 208
- common; ordinary, 平常, píngcháng, adj., L. 27, p. 243
- communicate, 沟通, gōutōng, v., L. 23, p. 209
- communication, communicate by letter, 通信, tōngxìn, n./v., L. 37, p. 336
- communication; relations, 来往, láiwǎng, n., L. 31, p. 278
- company; corporation, 公司, gōngsī, n., L. 24, p. 220
- (said of a family or society) comparatively well-off, 小康, xiǎokāng, adj., L. 34, p. 308
- comparatively, compare, 比较, bǐjiào, adv./v., L. 4, p. 37
- compare, 比较, bǐjiào, v., L. 30, p. 272
- competition, compete, 竞争, jìngzhēng, n./v., L. 27, p. 244
- completely; entirely, 全, quán, adv., L. 30, p. 269
- completion, complete, 完成, wánchéng, n./v., L. 36, p. 326
- compliment, 恭维, gōng.wéi, v., L. 33, p. 298
- component; composition, 成分, chéngfèn, n., L. 48, p. 439
- computer, 计算机, jìsuànjī, n., L. 27, p. 243
- computer, 电脑, diànnǎo, n., L. 31, p. 280
- computer, 电子计算机, diànnǎi jìsuànjī, n., L. 30, p. 271
- comrade, 同志, tóngzhì, n., L. 11, p. 100
- concentrate one's attention; be absorbed, 专心, zhānxīn, adj., L. 44, p. 395
- concept; notion; idea, 观念, guānniàn, n., L. 27, p. 244
- condition, 条件, tiáojìan, n., L. 2, p. 12
- the condition or situation of a nation, 国情, guóqíng, n., L. 45, p. 408
- confidence, 信心, xìnxīn, n., L. 42, p. 380
- conflict; clash, 冲突, chōngtū, n., L. 28, p. 252
- conjure up all kinds of methods, 想方设法, xiǎngfǎ
- shèfǎ, v., L. 33, p. 299
- connect, 连接, liánjiē, v., L. 36, p. 326
- connections; relationships, 关系, guānxi, n., L. 29, p. 261
- consider; discuss; study, 研究, yánjiū, v., L. 18, p. 163
- constantly; continuously, 不断, búduàn, adv., L. 44, p. 397
- construct, construction, 建设, jiànshè, v./n., L. 36, p. 326
- consume; expend; exhaust, 消耗, xiāohào, v., L. 34, p. 309
- consumption, 消费, xiāofèi, n., L. 34, p. 308
- contact; association, associate with, 交往, jiāowǎng, n./v., L. 31, p. 281
- contemporary, 当代, dāngdài, adj., L. 42, p. 378
- contemporary history, 当代史, dāngdàishǐ, n., L. 42, p. 378
- content, 内容, nèiróng, n., L. 45, p. 406
- continue, 继续, jìxù, v., L. 38, p. 343
- contract (an illness), 得, dé, v., L. 12, p. 114
- contradiction; conflict, 矛盾, máodùn, n., L. 28, p. 252
- contribution, contribute, 贡献, gòngxiān, n./v., L. 24, p. 221
- control, 控制, kòngzhì, v., L. 45, p. 407
- convenience, convenient, 便利, biànlì, n./adj., L. 37, p. 336
- convenient, 方便, fāngbiàn, adj., L. 2, p. 14
- cook, 做菜, zuò/cài, v.-o., L. 19, p. 173
- corner, 角, jiǎo, n., L. 44, p. 396
- correct; right, 正确, zhèngquè, adj., L. 47, p. 427
- corresponding; relevant, 相应, xiāngyìng, adj., L. 18, p. 162
- corruption, corrupt; rotten, 腐败, fǔbài, n./adj., L. 47, p. 429
- cost, 成本, chéngběn, n., L. 10, p. 90
- Could it be that...?, 难道, nánđào, adv., L. 46, p. 416
- counter, 柜台, guìtái, n., L. 4, p. 40
- country; state; nation, 国家, guójiā, n., L. 23, p. 209

- countryside; rural area, 农村, nóngrén, n., L. 23, p. 211  
 county, 县, xiàn, n., L. 23, p. 209  
 courage; bravery, 勇气, yǒngqì, n., L. 39, p. 353  
 course; curriculum, 课程, kèchéng, n., L. 44, p. 397  
 course; process, 过程, guòchéng, n., L. 28, p. 251  
 courteous; polite, 有礼貌, yǒu lǐmào, adj., L. 18, p. 164  
 courtesy; etiquette, 礼节, lǐjié, n., L. 19, p. 174  
 courtesy; politeness, 礼貌, lǐmào, n., L. 18, p. 164  
 cram school, 补习班, bùxíbān, n., L. 38, p. 343  
 create from nothing; produce; bring about, 创造, chuangzao, v., L. 23, p. 210  
 crisis; precarious point, 危机, wēijī, n., L. 39, p. 353  
 criticize, 批评, pīpíng, v., L. 29, p. 262  
 crowd; pack; cram, 挤, jǐ, v./adj., L. 35, p. 320  
 crowded, 拥挤, yōngjǐ, adj., L. 14, p. 129  
 cultural relic; historical relic, 文物, wénwù, n., L. 48, p. 437  
 Cultural Revolution (an abbreviation of 文化大革命), 文革, Wéngé, n., L. 43, p. 386  
 culture, 文化, wénhuà, n., L. 19, p. 174  
 cup; glass, 杯子, bēizi, n., L. 7, p. 63  
 current (practice); general (practice), 通行, tōngxíng, adj., L. 44, p. 396  
 customs, 海关, hǎiguān, n., L. 1, p. 1  
 cut (with scissors); clip; trim, 剪, jiǎn, v., L. 8, p. 71
- D**
- daily life, 日常生活, rìcháng shēnghuó, adj., L. 7, p. 63  
 daily necessities, 日用品, rìyòngpǐn, n., L. 34, p. 309  
 dance, 跳舞, tiào/wǔ, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128  
 dangerous, 危险, wēixiǎn, adj., L. 21, p. 192  
 dark, 黑, hēi, adj., L. 14, p. 128  
 data; material, 材料, cáiliào, n., L. 30, p. 270  
 date (someone); be in love, 恋爱, lán liànr ài, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128  
 Datong (in Shanxi), 大同, Dàtóng, n., L. 13, p. 121  
 day; date, 日子, rìzi, n., L. 41, p. 371  
 daytime; day, 白天, báitiān, n., L. 6, p. 54  
 a decade; age; era, 年代, niándài, n., L. 22, p. 201  
 decide, decision, 决定, juédìng, v./n., L. 8, p. 69  
 decline (a position, favor, etc. out of modesty), 推让, tuīràng, v., L. 19, p. 171  
 decline; be on the wane, 衰落, shuāiluò, v./adj., L. 47, p. 429  
 decoration, 装饰, zhuāngshì, n., L. 14, p. 128  
 decrease; reduce, 减少, jiǎnshǎo, v., L. 22, p. 201  
 deep; penetrating; profound, 深, shēn, adj., L. 16, p. 144  
 defeat; beat, be defeated, 打败, dǎbài, v., L. 42, p. 378  
 definitely, definite, 一定, yídìng, adv./adj., L. 3, p. 26  
 department store, 百货商场, bǎihuò shāngchǎng, n., L. 11, p. 102  
 depend on, 依靠, yīkào, v., L. 32, p. 288  
 depend on; rely on, 靠, kào, v., L. 23, p. 211  
 depth, 深度, shēndù, n., L. 48, p. 438  
 descend; drop, 下降, xiàjìng, v., L. 32, p. 288  
 design, 设计, shèjì, v./n., L. 40, p. 360  
 develop, development, 发展, fāzhǎn, v./n., L. 9, p. 79  
 developed; flourishing, 发达, fādá, adj., L. 30, p. 271  
 developing country, 发展中国家, fāzhǎnzhōng guójia, n., L. 24, p. 220  
 dialect, 方言, fāngyán, n., L. 23, p. 208  
 dialogue; conversation, 对话, duìhuà, n., L. 19, p. 171  
 difference; divergence, 差异, chāiyì, n., L. 28, p. 251  
 difficult; difficulty, 困难, kùnnán, adj./n., L. 3, p. 24  
 dignity; honor, 尊严, zūnyán, n., L. 35, p. 319  
 dime, 毛, máo, n., L. 4, p. 39  
 dining hall, 食堂, shítáng, n., L. 2, p. 13  
 dining table, 饭桌, fànzhù, n., L. 19, p. 170  
 diplomacy; foreign affairs, 外交, wàiijiāo, n., L. 28, p. 250  
 direction, 方向, fāngxiàng, n., L. 40, p. 361  
 directly, 直接, zhíjíe, adv., L. 6, p. 55  
 dirty; filthy, 脏, zāng, adj., L. 12, p. 115  
 disadvantageous; harmful, 不利, bùlì, adj., L. 38, p. 344  
 disappear, 消失, xiāoshī, v., L. 43, p. 388  
 discuss, 讨论, tǎolùn, v., L. 31, p. 278  
 dishwasher, 洗碗机, xǐwǎnjī, n., L. 7, p. 63  
 dispatch; send, 派, pài, v., L. 1, p. 1  
 distance; disparity, 距离, jùlí, n., L. 36, p. 327  
 distant; far, 远, yuǎn, adj., L. 4, p. 37  
 distinguish and recognize, 辨识, biànshí, v., L. 23, p. 211  
 distribute; allot, 分配, fēnpèi, v., L. 27, p. 244  
 divide into, 分成, fēnchéng, v.-c., L. 39, p. 352  
 divide; separate; part, 分, fēn, v., L. 11, p. 101  
 divorce, 离婚, lí/hūn, v.-o., L. 32, p. 288  
 (colloquial) do, 千, gàn, v., L. 39, p. 351  
 do as one pleases; do at will, 随便, suíbiàn, adv., L. 19, p. 170  
 (written) do not, 勿, wù, adv., L. 22, p. 200  
 do taijiquan, 打太极拳, dǎ tàijíquán, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128  
 do; manage; handle, 办, bàn, v., L. 4, p. 39  
 doing A while doing B; doing A as doing B, 一边儿A一边儿B, yìbiānr A yìbiānr B, conj., L. 44, p. 395  
 dollar; buck, 块, kuài, n., L. 4, p. 39  
 dormitory, 宿舍, sùshè, n., L. 1, p. 3

- double room, 双人间, shuāng rén jiān, *n.*, L. 2, p. 11
- downtown area; urban district, 市区, shìqū, *n.*, L. 17, p. 154
- draw a snake and add feet to it — ruin the effect by adding something superfluous, 画蛇添足, huà shé tiān zú, *idm.*, L. 26, p. 236
- dress; apparel, 穿着, chuān zhuó, *n.*, L. 48, p. 439
- dress; clothing, 服装, fúzhuāng, *n.*, L. 8, p. 70
- drink alcoholic liquor, 喝酒, hē//jiǔ, *v.-o.*, L. 15, p. 134
- drinking and eating, 饮食, yǐnshí, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182
- drive (a car), 开 (车), kāi, *v.*, L. 1, p. 2
- driver, 司机, sījī, *n.*, L. 9, p. 78
- dryer (for drying wet clothes), 烘干机, hōnggānjī, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62
- dubbing, dub, 配音, pèi//yīn, *n./v.-o.*, L. 40, p. 364
- duck, 鸭, yā, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184
- dumppling, 饺子, jiǎozi, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183
- dynasty, 朝代, cháo dàì, *n.*, L. 17, p. 154
- dynasty, ——朝, cháo, *n.*, L. 40, p. 360
- E**
- each has his own shortcomings, 各有所短, gè yǒu suǒ duǎn, *idm.*, L. 41, p. 372
- each has his own strong points, 各有所长, gè yǒu suǒ cháng, *idm.*, L. 41, p. 370
- each; every, 各 *n.*, gè, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 56
- ear, 耳朵, ěr duo, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143
- the earth, 地球, dìqiú, *n.*, L. 37, p. 337
- ease and comfort; enjoyment, enjoy, 享受, xiǎngshòu, *n./v.*, L. 41, p. 371
- east, 东, dōng, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38
- the east, the south, the west, and the north; every direction, 东南西北, dōng nán xī běi, L. 36, p. 328
- easy, 容易, róngyì, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 55
- economize; save; use sparingly, 节省, jiéshěng, *v.*, L. 7, p. 64
- economy, 经济, jīngjì, *n.*, L. 24, p. 221
- edition, 版本, bǎn běn, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271
- education, 教育, jiào yù, *n.*, L. 29, p. 260
- effective, 有效, yǒuxiào, *adj.*, L. 23, p. 211
- eggplant, 茄子, qié zi, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185
- eight treasures (choice ingredients of certain special dishes), 八宝, bābǎo, *n.*, L. 20, p. 186
- the elderly; senior citizens, 老年人, lǎoniánrén, *n.*, L. 35, p. 317
- electricity, 电, diàn, *n.*, L. 7, p. 64
- electronic, 电子, diànnǎi, *adj.*, L. 30, p. 271
- elementary school, 小学, xiǎoxué, *n.*, L. 22, p. 200
- elephant, 大象, dàxiàng, *n.*, L. 16, p. 144
- eliminate through selection or competition; render obsolete; die out; fall into disuse, 淘汰, táo tài, *v.*, L. 35, p. 318
- eliminate; abolish; exterminate; wipe out, 消灭, xiāomiè, *v.*, L. 47, p. 429
- e-mail, 电子邮件, diànnǎi yóujìan, *n.*, L. 37, p. 335
- embarrassed, 不好意思, bùhǎoyì si, *adj.*, L. 7, p. 63
- embody; reflect; give expression to, 体现, tǐxiǎn, *v.*, L. 29, p. 261
- emperor, 皇帝, huángdì, *n.*, L. 15, p. 135
- emphasize; stress, 强调, qiángdiào, *v.*, L. 29, p. 262
- empire, 帝国, dìguó, *n.*, L. 42, p. 379
- empty; hollow; devoid of content, 空洞, kōngdòng, *adj.*, L. 23, p. 208
- enable; make, 使, shǐ, *v.*, L. 24, p. 221
- “encourage-dish,” urge (the guest) to eat, 劝菜, quàn//cài, *v.-o.*, L. 19, p. 171
- “encourage-liquor,” urge (the guest) to drink, 劝酒, quàn//jiǔ, *v.-o.*, L. 19, p. 171
- the end years of the Qing Dynasty and the beginning years of the Republic of China, 清末民初, Qīngmò Mǐnchū, L. 30, p. 270
- end; last stage, 末, mò, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270
- endure hardships, tortures, rough condition, etc.; have a hard time, 受罪, shòu//zuì, *v.-o.*, L. 6, p. 55
- endure; bear, 忍受, rěnshòu, *v.*, L. 32, p. 289
- enemy, 敌人, dí rén, *n.*, L. 17, p. 155
- enjoy, 享受, xiǎngshòu, *v.*, L. 24, p. 221
- enjoy; appreciate, 欣赏, xīnshǎng, *v.*, L. 40, p. 363
- enough, 足够, zúgòu, *adj.*, L. 23, p. 211
- enrich, rich, 丰富, fēngfù, *v./adj.*, L. 48, p. 436
- enter a higher level of school, 升学, shēng//xué, *v.-o.*, L. 35, p. 317
- enter; get into, 进入, jìn rù, *v.*, L. 17, p. 154
- enterprise; industry; business, 企业, qìyè, *n.*, L. 43, p. 387
- enterprise; undertaking; career, 事业, shìyè, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271
- entertainment, 娱乐, yúlè, *n.*, L. 45, p. 406
- enthusiasm; warmth, warm; enthusiastic; warmhearted, 热情, rèqíng, *n./adj.*, L. 19, p. 171
- entrance, 入口, rùkǒu, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143
- the entrance examination for colleges and universities, 高考, gāokǎo, *n.*, L. 29, p. 260
- entrance ticket; admission ticket, 门票, ménpiào, *n.*, L. 14, p. 127
- envelope, 信封, xìnfēng, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39
- environment, 环境, huánjìng, *n.*, L. 7, p. 64
- equal, equality, 平等, píngděng, *adj./n.*, L. 11, p. 101

- equipment; facility, 设备, shèbèi, *n.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 era; times, 时代, shídài, *n.*, L. 17, p. 154  
 error; mistake, wrong, 错误, cuòwù, *adj./n.*, L. 46, p. 416  
 especially, 尤其, yóuqí, *adv.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 especially, special, 特别, tèbìe, *adv./adj.*, L. 2, p. 12  
 establish, 设立, shèlì, *v.*, L. 27, p. 243  
 establish; set up, 建立, jiànlì, *v.*, L. 47, p. 429  
 Europe, 欧洲, Ouzhōu, *n.*, L. 24, p. 220  
 even, 甚至, shènzhì, *adv.*, L. 21, p. 193  
 even, 连…都…, lián…dōu …, *conj.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 even more, more, still more, 更, gèng, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 even though; even if, 即使, jíshǐ, *conj.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 evening; dusk, 傍晚, bàngwǎn, *t.w.*, L. 14, p. 128  
 every kind of; all sorts of; all kinds of, 各式各样, gèshì gèyàng, *adj.*, L. 15, p. 135  
 everyone, 大家, dàjiā, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 everywhere; at all places, 到处, dàochù, *adv.*, L. 22, p. 200  
 evident; obvious, 明显, míngxiǎn, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 exactly alike, 一模一样, yìmú yíyàng, *adj.*, L. 10, p. 92  
 exactly; precisely, 正, zhèng, *adv.*, L. 32, p. 290  
 example, 例子, lìzi, *n.*, L. 31, p. 280  
 exceed; surpass, 超过, chāoguò, *v.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 excellent quality at low prices – a bargain buy, 物美价廉, wùmei jiàilián, *idm.*, L. 24, p. 221  
 except for; aside from, 除了…以外, chū.le … yǐwài, L. 3, p. 25  
 excessively; over-, 过分, guòfèn, *adv.*, L. 29, p. 262  
 excited, 兴奋, xīngfèn, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 3  
 excuse, 借口, jièkǒu, *n.*, L. 2, p. 14  
 “exempt-charge”; free of charge; free, 免费, miǎnfèi, *adj.*, L. 12, p. 114  
 exercise, 运动, yùndòng, *v./n.*, L. 41, p. 372  
 exercise; engage in physical training, 锻炼, duànlìan, *v.*, L. 14, p. 128  
 exert; exhaust, 尽, jìn, *v.*, L. 35, p. 318  
 exist, 存在, cúnzài, *v.*, L. 23, p. 208  
 exist simultaneously, 并存, bìngcún, *v.*, L. 26, p. 235  
 expand, 扩展, kuòzhǎn, *v.*, L. 48, p. 438  
 expenses, spend; cost, 花费, huāfei, *n./v.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 expenses; costs; fees, 费用, fèiyòng, *n.*, L. 34, p. 309  
 expensive, 贵, guì, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 55  
 experience, 经验, jīngyàn, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271  
 experienced, 有经验, yǒu jīngyàn, *adj.*, L. 30, p. 271  
 expert, 专家, zhuānjia, *n.*, L. 43, p. 386  
 explain; show, 说明, shuōmíng, *v.*, L. 23, p. 209  
 expressway; freeway, 高速公路, gāosù gōnglù, *n.*, L. 1, p. 3
- (of buildings) extend; expand; add extra building, 加建, jiājiàn, *v.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 extend; stretch, 伸展, shēnzhǎn, *v.*, L. 40, p. 360  
 extra-marital affair, 婚外关系, hūnwài guānxì, *n.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 extremely; …to death, …死人, sìrén, *adv.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 extremely; exceedingly, 不得了, bùdéliǎo, *adv.*, L. 44, p. 395  
 extremely; very, *adj.* 极了, jíle, L. 2, p. 14  
 eye, 眼睛, yǎnjing, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143
- F**  
 (said of people or animals) face, 脍, liǎn, *n.*, L. 5, p. 47  
 face; confront (actively), 面对, miànduì, *v.*, L. 39, p. 353  
 face; dignity, 面子, miànzi, *n.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 facial features; appearance; looks, 容貌, róngmào, *n.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 fact, 事实, shìshí, *n.*, L. 46, p. 418  
 factory, 工厂, gōngchǎng, *n.*, L. 24, p. 219  
 fair; just, 公平, gōngpíng, *adj.*, L. 29, p. 261  
 fall asleep, 睡着, shuì/zháo, *v.-c.*, L. 1, p. 3  
 familiar, 熟, shú, *adj.*, L. 26, p. 237  
 family; household; home, 家庭, jiātíng, *n.*, L. 25, p. 227  
 famous, 有名, yōumíng, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 127  
 far (in degree); by far, 远远, yuǎnyuǎn, *adv.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 farmer, 农民, nóngmín, *n.*, L. 39, p. 352  
 “far-place;” distant place, 远处, yuǎnchù, *n.*, L. 13, p. 121  
 fast food, 快餐, kuàicān, *n.*, L. 27, p. 243  
 fast; high-speed, 快速, kuàisù, *adj.*, L. 35, p. 320  
 fat person; plump person, 胖子, pàngzi, *n.*, L. 33, p. 298  
 fear; be afraid of, 怕, pà, *v.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 feeling; sentiments, 情绪, qíngxù, *n.*, L. 43, p. 386  
 female (used for animal), 母, mǔ, *adj.*, L. 16, p. 144  
 fiction; novel, 小说, xiǎoshuō, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271  
 figure; personage; character (in a novel, etc.), 人物, rénwù, *n.*, L. 10, p. 91  
 fill in (a form), 填, tián, *v.*, L. 4, p. 39  
 film; movie, 影片, yǐngpiàn, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363  
 find; discover, 发现, fàxiàn, *v.*, L. 3, p. 26  
 finding order in chaos, 乱中有序, luàn zhōng yǒu xù, *idm.*, L. 21, p. 194  
 fingernail, 手指甲, shǒuzhījia, *n.*, L. 8, p. 71  
 finish; conclude, 结束, jiéshù, *v.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 “fire-car”; train, 火车, huǒchē, *n.*, L. 13, p. 121  
 first name, 名, míng, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39

- the first of the ten Heavenly Stems; used as a pronoun  
here meaning “the first person”, 甲, jiǎ, *n.*, L. 32,  
p. 288
- fish, 鱼, yú, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184
- fixed; stable, 固定, gùdìng, *adj.*, L. 48, p. 439
- flat; smooth; level, 平, píng, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 3
- flushing toilet, 抽水马桶, chōushuǐ mǎtǒng, *n.*, L. 41,  
p. 372
- “follow-person;” (carry) on one’s person; (take) with,  
随身, suíshēn, *adv.*, L. 12, p. 115
- food, 食物, shíwù, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- food prepared in a large pot, 大锅饭, dàguōfàn, *n.*,  
L. 27, p. 245
- foot-binding, 绊脚, chán/jiǎo, *v.-o.*, L. 43, p. 388
- for, 为, wèi, *prep.*, L. 12, p. 114
- for example; such as, 譬如, pìrú, L. 26, p. 236
- for instance, 比方, bǐfang, L. 12, p. 113
- for instance; for example, 比方说, bǐfangshuō, L. 18,  
p. 163
- for instance; for example, 好比说, hǎobishuō, L. 45,  
p. 408
- for the most part; mostly, 大都, dàdōu, *adv.*, L. 40,  
p. 361
- for the most part; mostly, 大多, dàduō, *adv.*, L. 6, p. 54
- for; for the sake of; in order to, 为了, wèile, *prep.*,  
L. 16, p. 142
- force; compel; coerce, 强迫, qiǎngpò, *v.*, L. 28, p. 252
- forecast, 预报, yùbào, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12
- foreign affairs office, 外事处, wài shìchù, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1
- foreign capital, 外资, wài zī, *n.*, L. 43, p. 387
- foreign clothes, 洋布, yángbù, *n.*, L. 48, p. 436
- foreign country, 外国, wài guó, *n.*, L. 3, p. 27
- foreign language, 外语, wài yǔ, *n.*, L. 44, p. 395
- foreign student, 留学生, liúxuéshēng, *n.*, L. 2, p. 13
- (colloquial) foreigner, 老外, lǎowài, *n.*, L. 43, p. 389
- foreigner (non-Chinese), 洋人, yágrén, *n.*, L. 48,  
p. 436
- foresight; vision, 远见, yuǎnjian, *n.*, L. 23, p. 209
- foresighted, 有远见, yǒu yuǎnjian, *adj.*, L. 23, p. 209
- forever, 永远, yǒngyuǎn, *adv.*, L. 38, p. 344
- forget, 忘记, wàngjì, *v.*, L. 26, p. 236
- fork, 叉子, chā.zi, *n.*, L. 7, p. 63
- form, 形式, xíngshì, *n.*, L. 31, p. 281
- form; list, 单子, dān.zi, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81
- form; table, 表, biǎo, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39
- form; take shape, 形成, xíngchéng, *v.*, L. 48, p. 439
- formal; official; solemn, 正式, zhèngshì, *adj.*, L. 11,  
p. 102
- foster healthy tendencies, 树新风, shù xīnfēng, L. 22,
- p. 202
- found; establish, 成立, chénglì, *v.*, L. 15, p. 135
- foundation, 基础, jīchǔ, *n.*, L. 33, p. 301
- the four big things, 四大件儿, sìdàjiànér, *n.*, L. 34, p. 309
- four directions, 四方, sìfāng, *n.*, L. 40, p. 360
- free; liberty, 自由, zìyóu, *adj./n.*, L. 17, p. 153
- French fries, 炸薯条, zhá shǔtiáo, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- fried chicken, 炸鸡, zhájī, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363
- friendly; polite; amiable, 和气, hé.qì, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 71
- from, 由, yóu, *prep.*, L. 34, p. 311
- from, 向, xiàng, *prep.*, L. 6, p. 56
- from childhood, 从小, cóngxiǎo, *adv.*, L. 43, p. 388
- from then on; from now on, 从此以后, cóngcǐ yǐhòu,  
L. 28, p. 250
- fry in deep fat or oil; deep-fry, 炸, zhá, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184
- fry in shallow oil, 煎, jiān, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184
- full (from eating), 饱, bǎo, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308
- full name, 姓名, xìngmíng, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39
- fun; interest, 趣味, qùwèi, *n.*, L. 40, p. 364
- function; effect, 作用, zuòyòng, *n.*, L. 21, p. 193
- furniture, 家具, jiājù, *n.*, L. 24, p. 219
- future; in the future, 将来, jiānglái, *n.*, L. 42, p. 380

## G

- gain weight, 发福, fā/fú, *v.-o.*, L. 33, p. 298
- gain without effort, 不劳而获, bù láo ér huò, *idm.*,  
L. 39, p. 352
- gallery; a room or building devoted to the exhibition of  
works of art, 廊, láng, *n.*, L. 8, p. 70
- game, 游戏, yóuxì, *n.*, L. 43, p. 388
- gap; disparity, 差距, chājù, *n.*, L. 36, p. 328
- garbage; rubbish, 垃圾, lājī, *n.*, L. 22, p. 203
- garden, 花园, huāyuán, *n.*, L. 15, p. 135
- gate; doorway; entrance, 门口儿, ménkǒur, *n.*, L. 21,  
p. 192
- general affairs, 事务, shìwù, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397
- general; common, 一般, yìbān, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 309
- generally speaking, 一般来说, yìbān lái shuō, *adv.*, L. 3,  
p. 26
- generally; approximately; perhaps, 大概, dàgài, *adv.*,  
L. 12, p. 114
- (of men) get a haircut; (of women) go to the  
hairdresser’s, 理发, lǐ/fà, *v.-o.*, L. 8, p. 69
- get along well, 谈得来, tán .de lái, *v.-c.*, L. 2, p. 11
- get angry; be offended by; be angry at, 生气, shēng/qì,  
v.-o., L. 16, p. 143
- get in (a car); get on (a bus, train), 上车, shàng//chē,  
v.-o., L. 9, p. 80

- get in by the back door; secure advantages through pull or influence, 走后门儿, zǒu hòuménr, v.-o., L. 29, p. 261
- get off work, 下班, xià/bān, v.-o., L. 41, p. 372
- get on (a vehicle), 坐上, zuò//shàng, v.-c., L. 1, p. 2
- get on or log on to the Internet, 上网, shàngwǎng, v.-o., L. 37, p. 336
- get out of (a car), 下车, xià//chē, v.-o., L. 9, p. 80
- get up early, 早起, zǎoqǐ, v., L. 3, p. 24
- giraffe, 长颈鹿, chángjǐnglù, n., L. 16, p. 144
- girl, 女孩儿, nǚhái, n., L. 25, p. 226
- give (a present), 送, sòng, v., L. 24, p. 219
- give birth to; bear, 生, shēng, v., L. 25, p. 226
- give consideration to; show consideration for; look after, 照顾, zhào.gù, v., L. 21, p. 192
- give up; drop, 放掉, găi//diào, v.-c., L. 22, p. 202
- give way to; yield, 让, ràng, v., L. 21, p. 192
- the global village, 地球村, dìqiúcūn, n., L. 37, p. 337
- go a step further; further, 进一步, jìn yíbù, adv., L. 18, p. 163
- go abroad, 出国, chū//guó, v.-o., L. 38, p. 344
- go deep into, 深入, shēnrù, v., L. 23, p. 211
- go Dutch, 各付各的, gè fù gè .de, L. 19, p. 174
- go on a diet to lose weight, 减肥, jiǎn//fèi, v.-o., L. 33, p. 298
- (said of seasonal goods or new products) go on the market, 上市, shàng//shì, v.-o., L. 34, p. 310
- go out, 出门, chū//mén, v.-o., L. 12, p. 115
- go sightseeing, 观光, guānguāng, v., L. 15, p. 134
- go to bed late, 晚睡, wǎnshuì, v., L. 3, p. 24
- go to the bathroom, 上厕所, shàng cèsuǒ, v.-o., L. 12, p. 113
- go to work, 上班, shàng//bān, v.-o., L. 41, p. 372
- go to work and get off work, 上下班, shàng xià//bān, v.-o., L. 41, p. 372
- go to; be engaged (in work, study, etc.) at a fixed time, 上, shàng, v., L. 3, p. 24
- (of a vehicle, ship, etc.) go; travel, 行驶, xíngshí, v., L. 40, p. 363
- god; deity; divinity, 神, shén, n., L. 17, p. 153
- golden monkey, 金丝猴, jīnsīhóu, n., L. 16, p. 144
- golden yellow, 金黄色, jīnhuángsè, n./adj., L. 16, p. 144
- good fortune, 福气, fú.qi, n., L. 33, p. 298
- good point; merit; strength, 优点, yōudìan, n., L. 29, p. 262
- (colloquial) good; excellent, 棒, bàng, adj., L. 10, p. 92
- goods, 货, huò, n., L. 11, p. 102
- gorilla, 狒猩, xīng.xìng, n., L. 16, p. 144
- governance, rule; govern, 统治, tǒngzhì, n./v., L. 42, p. 379
- government, 政府, zhèngfǔ, n., L. 22, p. 202
- gradually, 渐渐, jiànjiàn, adv., L. 11, p. 101
- gradually, 逐渐, zhújiàn, adv., L. 47, p. 430
- graduate, 毕业, bì/yè, v.-o., L. 27, p. 244
- graduate school, 研究生院, yánjiūshēng yuàn, n., L. 38, p. 343
- graduate student, 研究生, yánjiūshēng, n., L. 38, p. 343
- grandfather, 爷爷, yé.ye, n., L. 16, p. 145
- grandmother, 奶奶, nǎi.nai, n., L. 16, p. 145
- grandparents, 祖父母, zǔfùmǔ, n., L. 16, p. 145
- gratifying; heartening, 可喜, kěxǐ, adj., L. 30, p. 272
- graveyard; cemetery, 坟场, fénchǎng, n., L. 35, p. 317
- great majority, 大多数, dàdùoshù, n., L. 41, p. 370
- the Great Wall, 长城, Chángchéng, n., L. 14, p. 127
- the Great Wall, covers a total length of over 8851 kilometers, 万里长城, Wàn lǐ Chángchéng, n., L. 17, p. 153
- great; mighty, 伟大, wěidà, adj., L. 16, p. 145
- great; weighty; major; significant, 重大, zhòngdà, adj., L. 48, p. 438
- greatly, 大大地, dàdà.de, adv., L. 22, p. 201
- ground; floor, 地, dì, n., L. 16, p. 143
- grow in number or quantity; pile up; increase, 增多, zēngduō, v., L. 32, p. 290
- grow up; be brought up, 长大, zhǎngdà, v., L. 29, p. 261
- gruel; congee (most of the time other ingredients are added in addition to rice), 粥, zhōu, n., L. 20, p. 183
- Guangdong Province, 广东, Guǎngdōng, n., L. 20, p. 183
- Guangming Daily (newspaper), 光明日报, Guāngmíng Rìbào, n., L. 45, p. 405
- guest, 客人, kè.rén, n., L. 19, p. 171
- guest of honor, 主客, zhǔkè, n., L. 19, p. 170

## H

- had better; it would be best, 最好, zuìhǎo, adv., L. 4, p. 37
- hair, 头发, tóufa, n., L. 8, p. 69
- hair (of animals); fur, 毛, máo, n., L. 16, p. 144
- hamburger, 汉堡包, hànburgǎo, n., L. 33, p. 300
- the Han people, 汉人, Hánrén, n., L. 47, p. 427
- hand over; deliver, 交, jiāo, v., L. 25, p. 228
- handle; deal with; manage, 处理, chǔlǐ, v., L. 25, p. 228
- happy, 高兴, gāoxìng, adj., L. 43, p. 389
- hard seat (on a train), 硬座, yìngzuò, n., L. 13, p. 121

- hard to avoid, inevitable, 难免, nánmiǎn, *adv./adj.*, L. 43, p. 389
- harm, harmful, 有害, yǒuhài, *v./adj.*, L. 33, p. 300
- harm; damage, 害, hài, *v.*, L. 45, p. 407
- has become; became, 成了, chéng.le, *v.*, L. 11, p. 101
- have a bath; bathe, 洗澡, xǐ/zǎo, *v.-o.*, L. 3, p. 24
- have a fever, 发烧, fā//shāo, *v.-o.*, L. 5, p. 47
- have a traffic jam, 堵车, dù//chē, *v.-o.*, L. 9, p. 78
- have never V-ed before, 从来没 v. 过, cónglái méi *V.* guò, L. 3, p. 24
- have no choice but to; have to, 不得不, bùdébù, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 26
- have something to do with; relate to; concern, 有关, yǒuguān, *v.*, L. 22, p. 201
- have to; be forced to, 只好, zhǐhǎo, *adv.*, L. 10, p. 91
- health; physique, healthy, 健康, jiànkāng, *n./adj.*, L. 2, p. 14
- heaven; paradise, 天堂, tiāntāng, *n.*, L. 35, p. 317
- help, 帮助, bāngzhù, *n./v.*, L. 36, p. 327
- help, 帮忙, bāng//máng, *v.-o.*, L. 5, p. 48
- helpful, 有帮助, yǒu bāngzhù, *adj.*, L. 36, p. 327
- highway, main road, 公路, gōnglù, *n.*, L. 41, p. 370
- (suffix) ...history, —史, shǐ, *n.*, L. 17, p. 153
- history, historical, 历史, lìshǐ, *n.*, L. 17, p. 153
- hold (a meeting, ceremony, etc.), 举行, jǔxíng, *v.*, L. 29, p. 260
- hold (an exhibition, contest, etc.), 举办, jǔbàn, *v.*, L. 40, p. 362
- hold a meeting; have a meeting, 开会, kāi//huì, *v.-o.*, L. 25, p. 227
- hold; constitute; make up, 占, zhàn, *v.*, L. 25, p. 228
- home cooking; simple meal, 家常菜, jiāchángcài, *n.*, L. 19, p. 173
- hometown, 家乡, jiāxiāng, *n.*, L. 38, p. 344
- honest, 诚实, chéng.shí, *adj.*, L. 18, p. 163
- Hong Kong, 香港, Xiānggǎng, *n.*, L. 11, p. 101
- “Hong Kong citizens govern Hong Kong”, 港人治港, Gǎngrén zhì Gǎng, L. 42, p. 379
- hope; wish, 希望, xīwàng, *v./n.*, L. 21, p. 193
- hospital, 医院, yīyuàn, *n.*, L. 5, p. 48
- host, 主人, zhǔ.rén, *n.*, L. 19, p. 171
- hostile; antagonistic, 敌对, díduì, *adj.*, L. 28, p. 250
- hot, 热, rè, *adj.*, L. 2, p. 12
- hot and suffocating; muggy, 焉热, mēnrè, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 129
- hotel, 旅馆, lǚguǎn, *n.*, L. 2, p. 13
- Houhai; a famous lake in Beijing, 后海, Hòuhǎi, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134
- household appliances, 家用电器, jiāyòng diànpì, *n.*
- L. 7, p. 63
- housing, 住房, zhùfáng, *n.*, L. 34, p. 310
- how old (used in a question), 多大, duō dà, L. 18, p. 164
- how terrible; what bad luck; too bad, 糟糕, zāogāo, *interj.*, L. 9, p. 79
- huge crowds of people, 人山人海, rénshān rénhǎi, *idm.*, L. 14, p. 127
- the Hui people, 回族, Huízú, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428
- human being, 人类, rénlèi, *n.*, L. 17, p. 153
- human figure used to display clothes or other merchandise; model, 模特儿, móter, *n.*, L. 8, p. 70
- human labor, 人力, rénlì, *n.*, L. 17, p. 155
- human rights, 人权, rénqūán, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251
- humid, 潮湿, cháo shī, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 129
- humiliation; shame, 耻辱, chǐrǔ, *n.*, L. 42, p. 379
- Hunan Province, 湖南, Húnán, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183
- Hunan Province; 湖南, 湘, Xiāng, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182
- hundreds of thousands, 几十万, jǐshíwàn, *n.*, L. 38, p. 343
- husband, 丈夫, zhàng.fu, *n.*, L. 11, p. 101
- husband, 先生, xiān.sheng, *n.*, L. 31, p. 278
- (colloquial) husband, 老公, lǎogōng, *n.*, L. 11, p. 102
- hygienic; sanitary, 卫生, wèishēng, *adj.*, L. 12, p. 113
- I**
- I am flattered; It is nothing. (used as a polite reply to a compliment), 哪里, nǎ.li, L. 19, p. 170
- I really don't deserve this; you flatter me, 不敢当, bù gǎndāng, L. 19, p. 170
- ice, 冰, bīng, *n.*, L. 6, p. 54
- ice cream, 冰激凌, bīngjīlíng, *n.*, L. 33, p. 300
- ice water, 冰水, bīngshuǐ, *n.*, L. 6, p. 54
- ideal, 理想, lǐxiǎng, *adj./n.*, L. 23, p. 209
- if, 要是, yàoshì, *conj.*, L. 10, p. 90
- if; supposing that, 如果, rúguǒ, *conj.*, L. 20, p. 185
- imagine, imagination, 想象, xiǎngxiàng, *v./n.*, L. 1, p. 3
- imitate; mimic, 学, xué, *v.*, L. 6, p. 55
- immediately; at once; right away, 立刻, lìkè, *adv.*, L. 31, p. 280
- imperial, 皇家, huángjiā, *adj.*, L. 15, p. 135
- imperialism, 帝国主义, dìguó zhǔyì, *n.*, L. 42, p. 379
- importance, 重要性, zhòngyàoxìng, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397
- important, 重要, zhòngyào, *adj.*, L. 19, p. 174
- impression, 印象, yìnxiàng, *n.*, L. 1, p. 3
- improve, improvement, 改进, gǎijìn, *v./n.*, L. 36, p. 326
- improve; make (something) better, 改善, gǎishàn, *v.*, L. 46, p. 419
- in addition; moreover; besides, 另外, lìngwài, *adv.*,

- L. 11, p. 103  
 in an ostentatious Western style; stylish, 洋气, yáng.qì,  
*adj.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 in common use; current, 通用, tōngyòng, *adj.*, L. 42,  
     p. 380  
 in disorder; in a mess, 乱, luàn, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 69  
 in eight or nine cases out of ten; most likely, 十有八九,  
     shí yǒu bā jiǔ, *idm.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 in harmony; harmoniously, well-coordinated, 协调,  
     xiétiáo, *adv./adj.*, L. 40, p. 363  
 in one's opinion, 在……看来, zài...kànái, L. 29, p. 262  
 in recent years, 近年来, jìnniánlái, *adv.*, L. 45, p. 405  
 in the direction of; towards, 往, wǎng, *prep.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 in the face of; in front of, 面前, miànqián, *postp.*, L. 18,  
     p. 164  
 in the least, 至少, hào, L. 31, p. 279  
 in the middle, 当中, dāngzhōng, *postp.*, L. 21, p. 192  
 in those years (days), 当年, dāngnián, *t.w.*, L. 43,  
     p. 386  
 in; within..., …之内, zhīnèi, L. 36, p. 327  
 income, 收入, shōurù, *n.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 indeed; really, 的确, díquè, *adv.*, L. 32, p. 288  
 indemnity; reparations, 赔款, péikuǎn, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 independence, independent, 独立, dúlì, *n./adj.*, L. 35,  
     p. 319  
 India, 印度, Yìndù, *n.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 individual character; personality, 个性, gèxìng, *n.*,  
     L. 48, p. 439  
 individual; personal, 个人, gèrén, *adj.*, L. 18, p. 164  
 industrialization, 工业化, gōngyèhuà, *n.*, L. 35, p. 320  
 inequalities in wealth; gap between rich and poor, 贫富  
     不均, pín fù bù jūn, *idm.*, L. 46, p. 415  
 inexpensive; cheap, 便宜, pián.yí, *adj.*, L. 10, p. 91  
 infect; be contagious, 传染, chuánrǎn, *v.*, L. 12, p. 114  
 infectious disease, 传染病, chuánrǎnbìng, *n.*, L. 12,  
     p. 114  
 influence, effect, 影响, yǐngxiǎng, *n./v.*, L. 11, p. 101  
 information; message, 信息, xìnxì, *n.*, L. 22, p. 202  
 ingredient, 材料, cáiliào, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 initial stage; early part, 初, chū, L. 30, p. 270  
 injure; harm (in an abstract sense), 伤害, shānghài, *v.*,  
     L. 32, p. 290  
 Inner Mongolia, 内蒙古, Nèi Měnggǔ, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428  
 insist on; persist in, 坚持, jiānchí, *v.*, L. 6, p. 56  
 insurance, 保险, bǎoxiǎn, *n.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 intact; whole, 完好, wánhǎo, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 360  
 integrate; link, 联系, liánxì, *v.*, L. 36, p. 328  
 intellectual; the intelligentsia, 知识分子, zhī.shí fēngzì,  
     *n.*, L. 23, p. 209  
 intense; sharp; fierce, 激烈, jíliè, *adj.*, L. 35, p. 318  
 interaction, exchange; interchange, 交流, jiāoliú, *n./v.*,  
     L. 28, p. 250  
 interest, 兴趣, xìngqù, *n.*, L. 29, p. 261  
 interesting, 有趣, yǒuqù, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 intermarry (between countries, races, social classes, etc.)  
     The subjects of 通婚 usually do not refer to  
     individuals, but to a class of people.), 通婚,  
     tōng//hūn, *v.*, L. 47, p. 430  
 internal; domestic, 国内, guónèi, *adj.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 international, 国际, guójí, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 1  
 the Internet, 网, wǎng, *n.*, L. 37, p. 336  
 interpersonal relationship, 人际关系, rénji guān.xì, *n.*,  
     L. 48, p. 439  
 into; become, 成, chéng, *comp.*, L. 3, p. 26  
 introduce, 介绍, jièshào, *v.*, L. 46, p. 415  
 invade, 侵略, qīnlüè, *v.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 invest, investment, 投资, tóuzi, *v./n.*, L. 36, p. 326  
 invite somebody to dinner; entertain guests, 请客,  
     qǐng//kè, *v.-o.*, L. 19, p. 171  
 “iron rice bowl” – a secure job, 铁饭碗, tiěfànwǎn, *n.*,  
     L. 27, p. 243  
 A is not so much...as B, 与其说A, 不如说B,  
     yǔqí shuō..., bùrú shuō..., *conj.*, L. 32, p. 288  
 -ism; doctrine, —主义, zhǔyì, *n.*, L. 42, p. 379  
 it (for inanimate objects or animals), 它, tā, *pron.*,  
     L. 17, p. 153  
 it doesn't matter; don't worry, unimportant, 不要紧,  
     bùyàojǐn, L. 19, p. 172  
 it is said; they say, 据说, jùshuō, *adv.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 it is true that; no doubt, 固然, gùrán, *conj.*, L. 29,  
     p. 261  
 it's a pity; it's too bad, 可惜, kěxī, *adv.*, L. 8, p. 71  
 it's hard to say; you never can tell, 难说, nánshuō, *adj.*,  
     L. 19, p. 174  
 -ize; -ization, —化, huà, *suffix*, L. 37, p. 337
- J**
- Japan, 日本, Rìběn, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397  
 jeans, 牛仔裤, niúzǐkù, *n.*, L. 43, p. 388  
 jet lag; time difference, 时差, shíchā, *n.*, L. 1, p. 3  
 Jiangsu and Zhejiang Provinces; 江苏省 and 浙江省,  
     江浙, Jiāng Zhè, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 Jiangsu Province; 江苏, 江, Jiāng, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 Kowloon (九龙), 九龙, Jiǔlóng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326  
 jog, 跑步, pǎo//bù, *v.-o.*, L. 14, p. 128  
 joint venture, 合资, hézī, *adj.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 joke, 笑话, xiào.huà, *n.*, L. 25, p. 226  
 joke; make fun of, 开玩笑, kāi wánxiào, *v.-o.*, L. 10,

- p. 90
- julienne meat; shredded meat (unless otherwise specified, this usually refers to pork on a menu), 肉丝, ròusī, n., L. 20, p. 185
- just, 刚, gāng, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 25
- K**
- keep apart; isolate; segregate, 隔离, géilí, v., L. 28, p. 251
- keep; maintain; preserve (prevent from changing), 保持, bǎochí, v., L. 30, p. 270
- Kentucky, 肯塔基, n., L. 40, p. 363
- KFC, 肯德基, Kēndéjī, n., L. 40, p. 363
- kid; child, 小孩儿, xiǎoháir, n., L. 33, p. 298
- kill two birds with one stone, 一举两得, yì jǔ liǎng dé, *idm.*, L. 44, p. 395
- kilogram, 公斤, gōngjīn, n., L. 33, p. 298
- a kind; a sort; a type, 种, zhǒng, n., L. 19, p. 174
- kind; type, 样, yàng, n., L. 20, p. 185
- kindergarten; nursery school, 幼儿园, yòuér yuán, n., L. 44, p. 396
- knife, 刀子, dāozi, n., L. 7, p. 63
- know (Chinese characters, a person or place); be familiar with, 认识, rèn.shi, v., L. 11, p. 100
- the Korean War (1950-1953), 朝鲜战争, Cháoxiān Zhànzhēng, n., L. 44, p. 397
- labor force, 劳动力, láodònglì, n., L. 24, p. 220
- lack; be short of, 缺乏, quēfá, v., L. 29, p. 261
- (a polite term for a woman, married or unmarried) lady; madam, 女士, nǚshì, n., L. 11, p. 101
- L**
- lake, 湖, hú, n., L. 15, p. 135
- land, 土地, tǔdì, n., L. 36, p. 328
- land; descend, 降落, jiàngluò, v., L. 1, p. 1
- landscape painting, 山水画儿, shānshuǐhuàr, n., L. 10, p. 89
- (traffic) lane, 车道, chēdào, n., L. 41, p. 372
- language, 语言, yǔyán, n., L. 26, p. 235
- large bus, 大巴, dàbā, n., L. 1, p. 2
- a large number; a great deal, 大量, dàliàng, *adj./adv.*, L. 42, p. 378
- largely identical but with minor differences, 大同小异, dàtóng xiǎoyì, *idm.*, L. 31, p. 278
- last phase; final phase, 末期, mòqī, n., L. 31, p. 278
- law, 法律, fǎlù, n., L. 32, p. 290
- lay off; fire, 解雇, jiěgù, v., L. 39, p. 351
- lay stress on; pay attention to, 注重, zhùzhòng, v., L. 35, p. 317
- lead a life, 过日子, guò rì.zi, v.-o., L. 41, p. 371
- leading; dominant; guiding, lead; guide, 主导, zhǔdǎo, *adj./v.*, L. 25, p. 228
- learn, 学会, xué//huì, v.-c., L. 3, p. 27
- learning; academic, 学术, xuéshù, n., L. 28, p. 251
- leave, 离开, líkāi, v., L. 36, p. 328
- left, 左, zuǒ, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 361
- left side; left, 左边儿, zuǒbiānr, n., L. 25, p. 227
- leg, 腿, tuǐ, n., L. 12, p. 113
- Lei Feng (1940-1962), a soldier who died on duty and was hailed as a model for the youth of China, 雷锋, Léi Fēng, n., L. 22, p. 202
- leisurely and carefree, 悠闲, yōuxiān, *adj.*, L. 14, p. 129
- less than; not yet, 不到, bùdào, v., L. 13, p. 121
- lesson; moral, 教训, jiào.xùn, n., L. 22, p. 202
- let; allow, 让, ràng, v., L. 1, p. 2
- letter paper, 信纸, xìnzhǐ, n., L. 4, p. 39
- the liberation of China in 1949, liberate; emancipate, 解放, jiěfàng, n./v., L. 30, p. 272
- librarian, 图书馆员, túshūguǎnyuán, n., L. 30, p. 271
- library, 图书馆, túshūguǎn, n., L. 30, p. 271
- lie in; rest with, 在于, zài yú, v., L. 48, p. 439
- lie; recline, 躺, tǎng, v., L. 16, p. 143
- life, 生活, shēnghuó, n., L. 6, p. 56
- light, bright, 光明, guāngmíng, n./adj., L. 45, p. 405
- light; brighten; shine, 亮, liàng, v., L. 15, p. 135
- light; relaxed, 轻松, qīngsōng, *adj.*, L. 15, p. 136
- limit, 限制, xiànlì, v., L. 38, p. 344
- limited, 有限, yǒuxiàn, *adj.*, L. 46, p. 419
- line up; form a line, 排队, pái//duì, v.-o., L. 7, p. 62
- lion, 狮子, shī.zi, n., L. 16, p. 144
- listen to (radio broadcast), 收听, shōutīng, v., L. 23, p. 211
- literature, 文学, wénxué, n., L. 30, p. 271
- Liulichang, 琉璃厂, Liúlíchǎng, n., L. 30, p. 270
- live, 生活, shēnghuó, v., L. 13, p. 121
- live; reside; dwell, 居住, jūzhù, v., L. 47, p. 428
- (of a place) lively; bustling with noise and excitement, 热闹, rè.nao, *adj.*, L. 15, p. 134
- lively; vivid, 生动, shēngdòng, *adj.*, L. 26, p. 235
- local; in the locality, 当地, dāngdì, p.w., L. 6, p. 56
- local; native, 本土, běntǔ, *adj.*, L. 48, p. 437
- long distance, 长途, chángtú, *adj.*, L. 2, p. 14
- long live, 万岁, wànsuì, v., L. 22, p. 201
- long; for a long time, 久, jiǔ, *adj.*, L. 12, p. 113
- long; long-standing, 悠久, yōujǔ, *adj.*, L. 47, p. 428
- look down upon; despise, 看不起, kàn.bu qǐ, v.-c., L. 39, p. 352
- look for an excuse, 找借口, zhǎo jièkǒu, v.-o., L. 18,

- p. 163
- look for; try to find; seek, 找, zhǎo, v., L. 12, p. 114
- loose; slack, 松, sōng, adj., L. 1, p. 3
- lose, 失去, shīqù, v., L. 32, p. 289
- lose (something), 丢, diū, v., L. 4, p. 38
- lose money (in business transaction), 赔钱, péi//qián, v.-o., L. 10, p. 90
- lose one's job, 失业, shíyè, v., L. 24, p. 220
- loudly; in a loud voice, 大声, dàshēng, adv., L. 15, p. 136
- lovable; lovely; cute, 可爱, kěài, adj., L. 16, p. 143
- love to, 爱, ài, v., L. 33, p. 300
- lovers (used only to describe people, not to address them), 恋人, liánrén, n., L. 14, p. 128
- low-priced; cheap, 廉价, liánjià, adj., L. 24, p. 220
- low-priced; inexpensive; cheap, 廉, lián, adj., L. 24, p. 220
- luckily; fortunately, 好在, hǎozài, adv., L. 1, p. 2
- luggage; baggage, 行李, xíng.lì, n., L. 1, p. 2
- luggage; box; case; trunk; suitcase, 箱子, xiāng.zi, n., L. 24, p. 219
- luxurious; extravagant, 奢侈, shēchǐ, adj., L. 41, p. 371
- M**
- machine, 机, jī, n., L. 7, p. 62
- magazine, 杂志, zázhì, n., L. 1, p. 2
- magnificent; resplendent, 华丽, huálì, adj., L. 14, p. 128
- main, 主要, zhǔyào, adj., L. 13, p. 122
- mainland, 大陆, dàlù, n., L. 11, p. 102
- mainland China, 中国大陆, Zhōngguó dàlù, n., L. 11, p. 102
- mainly, 主要, zhǔyào, adv., L. 16, p. 142
- maintain; upkeep, 维护, wéihu, v., L. 17, p. 154
- make (friends), 交, jiāo, v., L. 13, p. 122
- make a fool of oneself, 闹笑话, nǎo xiào.hua, v.-o., L. 26, p. 237
- make a phone call; call, 打电话, dǎ diànhuà, v.-o., L. 2, p. 11
- make money; make a profit, 赚钱, zhuàn//qián, v.-o., L. 10, p. 90
- make or become heavier; increase the weight of, 加重, jiāzhòng, v., L. 35, p. 319
- make progress; go upward, 向上, xiàngshàng, v., L. 22, p. 200
- make tea, 泡茶, pào//chá, v.-o., L. 6, p. 55
- mal-; bad, 不良, bùliáng, adj., L. 33, p. 299
- man, 男人, nánrén, n., L. 25, p. 228
- the Man (Manchu) people, 满族, Mǎnzú, n., L. 47, p. 428
- Manchuria, 满州, Mǎnzhōu, n., L. 47, p. 429
- Mandarin Chinese, 国语, Guóyǔ, n., L. 23, p. 209
- manual worker; workman, 工人, gōngrén, n., L. 24, p. 220
- manufacture; make, 制造, zhìzào, v., L. 24, p. 219
- many-sided; in many ways, 多方面, duōfāngmiàn, adj., L. 28, p. 250
- market, 市场, shìchǎng, n., L. 10, p. 91
- market economy, 市场经济, shìchǎng jīngjì, n., L. 39, p. 350
- market; shopping arcade, 商场, shāngchǎng, n., L. 11, p. 102
- marriage, 婚姻, hūnyīn, n., L. 32, p. 289
- married couple, 夫妻, fūqī, n., L. 32, p. 289
- married couple; (lit.) husband and wife, 夫妇, fūfù, n., L. 32, p. 290
- marry; get married, 结婚, jié//hūn, v.-o., L. 31, p. 279
- massage, 按摩, ànmó, v., L. 8, p. 71
- (archaic) matches, 洋火, yānghuǒ, n., L. 48, p. 436
- material, 材料, cáiliào, n., L. 17, p. 155
- maybe; perhaps, 也许, yěxǔ, adv., L. 5, p. 47
- McDonald's, 麦当劳, Mǎidāngláo, n., L. 43, p. 388
- meaning, 意思, yìsì, n., L. 11, p. 101
- meaning; implication, 意味, yìwèi, n., L. 22, p. 202
- meaning; significance, 意义, yìyì, n., L. 17, p. 156
- meaningful; significant, 有意义, yǒu yìyì, adj., L. 23, p. 208
- measure for paper or picture, 张, zhāng, AN, L. 16, p. 144
- measure word for a meal, 顿, dùn, AN, L. 46, p. 416
- measure word for a trip, 趟, tàng, AN, L. 42, p. 380
- measure word for animals, 只, zhī, AN, L. 16, p. 143
- measure word for bridges, buildings, mountains, etc., 座, zuò, AN, L. 21, p. 192
- measure word for building, 幢, zhuàng, AN, L. 40, p. 363
- measure word for business establishments, 家, jiā, AN, L. 8, p. 69
- measure word for cars, 辆, liàng, AN, L. 17, p. 154
- measure word for cars or movies, 部, bù, AN, L. 1, p. 2
- measure word for dishes, 道, dào, AN, L. 20, p. 185
- measure word for household, 戶, hù, AN, L. 45, p. 405
- measure word for machines, 台, tái, AN, L. 45, p. 405
- measure word for painting, 幅, fú, AN, L. 10, p. 89
- measure word for school and hospital, 所, suǒ, AN, L. 22, p. 200
- measure word for strength, smell, etc., 股, gǔ, AN, L. 12, p. 114

- measure word for things narrow and long, 条, tiáo, *AN*, L. 4, p. 38
- measure; step (political, financial, etc.), 措施, cuòshī, n., L. 34, p. 310
- meat, 肉, ròu, n., L. 5, p. 46
- meet (somebody), 见面, jiàn//miàn, v.-o., L. 33, p. 298
- meet; welcome; fetch, 接, jiē, v., L. 1, p. 1
- melting pot, 熔炉, rónglú, n., L. 47, p. 430
- memorize, 记住, jì//zhu, v.-c., L. 20, p. 184
- memory, 记忆, jìyì, n., L. 29, p. 262
- men and women, young and old, 男女老少, nánnǚ láoshǎo, n., L. 11, p. 101
- mention, 提到, tíào, v.-c., L. 46, p. 415
- mention; regard; consider, 论, lùn, v., L. 19, p. 170
- mention; speak of, 提起, tíqǐ, v.-c., L. 43, p. 388
- merry; happy, 快乐, kuàilè, adj., L. 46, p. 415
- metropolis; city, 城市, chéngshì, n., L. 14, p. 129
- middle period (of a dynasty, century, reign), 中期, zhōngqī, n., L. 47, p. 429
- middle-aged, 中年, zhōngnián, adj., L. 11, p. 103
- military affairs, 军事, jūnshì, n., L. 17, p. 155
- mineral spring, 矿泉, kuàngquán, n., L. 6, p. 55
- mineral water, 矿泉水, kuàngquánshuǐ, n., L. 6, p. 55
- the Ming Dynasty (1368-1644), 明代, Míngdài, n., L. 10, p. 89
- minority, 少数民族, shǎoshù mínzú, n., L. 47, p. 427
- miracle; wonder; wonderful achievement, 奇迹, qíjì, n., L. 17, p. 153
- miss; Miss, 小姐, xiǎo.jié, n., L. 11, p. 100
- mistakenly think, 以为, yǐwéi, v., L. 3, p. 26
- mistress; concubine, 小老婆, xiǎolǎo.po, n., L. 43, p. 388
- misunderstanding, misunderstand, 误会, wùhuì, n./v., L. 31, p. 279
- modal particle, 嘿, .ma, L. 2, p. 12
- modern drama; stage play, 话剧, huàjù, n., L. 30, p. 269
- modern, modernization, 现代化, xiàndàihuà, adj./n., L. 1, p. 3
- monkey, 猴子, hóu.zi, n., L. 16, p. 145
- morals; morality; ethics, 道德, dàodé, n., L. 22, p. 201
- more and more..., 越来越..., yuè lái yuè..., L. 5, p. 48
- moreover, 再说, zàiishuō, adv., L. 32, p. 289
- morning, 早晨, zǎo.chen, n., L. 3, p. 25
- mosquito, 蚊子, wén.zi, n., L. 5, p. 47
- most, 大部分, dà bù.fen, adj., L. 12, p. 115
- mostly, 多半儿, duōbàn, adv., L. 3, p. 26
- motherly love, 母爱, mǔài, n., L. 16, p. 145
- motive; intention, 动机, dòngjī, n., L. 44, p. 397
- mountain, 山, shān, n., L. 17, p. 154
- mountain bike, 山地车, shāndìchē, n., L. 43, p. 388
- mouse; rat, 耗子, hào.zi, n., L. 26, p. 236
- movement, 运动, yùndòng, n., L. 48, p. 438
- movement; notion; action, 动作, dòngzuò, n., L. 12, p. 114
- movie, 电影, diànyǐng, n., L. 30, p. 269
- movie theater, 电影院, diànyǐngyuàn, n., L. 37, p. 336
- Mr., 先生, xiān.sheng, n., L. 1, p. 1
- multi-, 多——, duō, pref., L. 23, p. 209
- multi-racial, 多民族, duō mínzú, adj., L. 47, p. 427
- museum, 博物馆, bówùguǎn, n., L. 30, p. 269
- must, 必须, bìxū, v., L. 35, p. 318
- must; have to, 得, děi, v., L. 2, p. 14
- mutton cubes roasted on a skewer; kebab, 羊肉串儿, yángróuchuàn, n., L. 15, p. 136
- mutual; each other, 相互, xiānghù, adj., L. 28, p. 252
- mutually; with each other, 互相, hùxiāng, adv., L. 44, p. 396
- N**
- name of a province, 省名, shěngmíng, n., L. 20, p. 184
- narrow; reduce; lessen, 缩小, suōxiǎo, v., L. 36, p. 328
- nation; a people; race; rationality, 民族, mínzú, n., L. 47, p. 427
- the national capital, 国都, guódū, n., L. 40, p. 360
- National Aquatics Center, 国家游泳中心, Guójia Yóuyǒng Zhōngxīn, n., L. 40, p. 362
- National Centre for the Performing Arts, 国家大剧院, Guójia Dà Jùyuàn, n., L. 40, p. 362
- the national language; (here) the National Language of China, 国语, Guóyǔ, n., L. 31, p. 280
- the national phonetic alphabet (in use before the Chinese phonetic alphabet was implemented), 注音符号, zhùyīn fúhào, n., L. 31, p. 280
- National Stadium, 国家体育场, Guójia Tǐyùchǎng, n., L. 40, p. 362
- natural resources; resources, 资源, ziyuan, n., L. 24, p. 220
- naturally, natural, 自然, zìrán, adv./adj., L. 23, p. 211
- nearby; in the vicinity, 附近, fùjìn, p.w., L. 4, p. 37
- need not; not have to, 不必, bùbì, adv., L. 8, p. 72
- need; want; require, 需要, xūyào, v./n., L. 3, p. 25
- negative, 负面, fùmiàn, adj., L. 29, p. 261
- neglect, 忽略, hūlüè, v., L. 31, p. 278
- neon light; neon tube, 霓虹灯, níhóngdēng, n., L. 15, p. 135
- (in writing) new practice; new custom, 新风, xīnfēng, n., L. 22, p. 202

- new word, 生词, shēngcí, *n.*, L. 46, p. 417  
 New York, 纽约, Niǔyù, *n.*, L. 46, p. 418  
 new; novel; fresh, 新鲜, xīn.xiān, *adj.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 newly..., 新 *v.*, xīn..., *adv.*, L. 36, p. 327  
 news, 新闻, xīnwén, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210  
 newspaper, 报纸, bàozhǐ, *n.*, L. 31, p. 281  
 night market; night fair, 夜市, yèshì, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134  
 no longer, 不再, búzài, *adv.*, L. 27, p. 245  
 no matter what, how, etc.; regardless of, 无论, wúlùn,  
     *conj.*, L. 11, p. 100  
 no wonder, 难怪, nánquài, *adv.*, L. 37, p. 336  
 no wonder; so that's why, 怪不得, guài.bu.de, *conj.*,  
     L. 6, p. 54  
 noodle, 面条, miàntiāo, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 noodle, 面, miàn, *n.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 north, 北, běi, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 northeast, 东北, dōngběi, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428  
 Northerner, 北方人, běifāngrén, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 northwest, 西北, xīběi, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428  
 not be allowed to, not allow, 不许, bùxǔ, *v.*, L. 45,  
     p. 408  
 not enough, 不够, bùgòu, *v./adv.*, L. 23, p. 211  
 not equal to; not as good as, 不如, bùrú, *v.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 not in the least, 毫无, háo wú, L. 31, p. 279  
 not necessarily; not likely, 不见得, bùjìan.dé, *v./adv.*,  
     L. 35, p. 318  
 not to mention; needless to say, 不用说, bùyòngshuō,  
     *conj.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 noun, 名词, míngcí, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 now; at present, 目前, mùqián, *t.w.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 number, 号, hào, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39  
 a number of people, 人数, rénshù, *n.*, L. 32, p. 288  
 number; quantity, 数量, shùliàng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326  
 nursing home, 敬老院, jìnglǎoyuàn, *n.*, L. 35, p. 318  
 nutrition, 营养, yíngyǎng, *n.*, L. 33, p. 299
- O**
- obesity, 肥胖症, féipàngzhèng, *n.*, L. 46, p. 418  
 obesity; obese, 肥胖, féipàng, *n./adj.*, L. 33, p. 299  
 object, 宾语, bīnyǔ, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 objective, 客观, kèguān, *adj.*, L. 41, p. 371  
 observe; watch; survey, 观察, guānchá, *v.*, L. 13,  
     p. 122  
 obstacle; barrier, 障碍, zhàngài, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251  
 obtain employment, 就业, jiù/yè, *v.-o.*, L. 24, p. 220  
 obviously; clearly, 显然, xiǎnrán, *adv.*, L. 17, p. 154  
 occasion; situation, 场合, chǎnghé, *n.*, L. 19, p. 173  
 occur; take place happen; take place, 发生, fāshēng, *v.*,  
     L. 32, p. 289  
 of one family or clan, 一家人, yījiārén, *n.*, L. 47, p. 429  
 of one's own free will, 自愿, zìyuàn, *adv.*, L. 35, p. 318  
 offer (a course), 开, kāi, *v.*, L. 44, p. 396  
 offer politely, 敬, jìng, *v.*, L. 19, p. 172  
 offer; provide; supply, 提供, tígōng, *v.*, L. 3, p. 26  
 office, 办公室, bàngōngshì, *n.*, L. 27, p. 243  
 office worker; staff member, 职员, zhíyuán, *n.*, L. 9,  
     p. 81  
 office; agency, 办事处, bànsìchù, *n.*, L. 27, p. 243  
 official, 官方, guānfāng, *adj.*, L. 42, p. 380  
 often seen; common, 常见, chángjiàn, *adj.*, L. 20,  
     p. 185  
 often; all the time, 时时, shíshí, *adv.*, L. 21, p. 192  
 often; frequently, 往往, wǎngwǎng, *adv.*, L. 11, p. 103  
 often; frequently, 经常, jīngcháng, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 26  
 oh (indicating understanding), 哟, o, *interj.*, L. 10,  
     p. 89  
 Oh! Ah! (It expresses anger, irritation, contempt or  
     disappointment.), 哎呀, aīyā, *interj.*, L. 10, p. 92  
 the Olympics; Olympic, 奥林匹克, Àolínpǐkè, *n.*, L. 40,  
     p. 362  
 on; for; about; to, 对于, duìyú, *prep.*, L. 30, p. 269  
 on a large scale, 大规模, dà guímó, *adj.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 on one; with one; on one's body, 在…身上,  
     zài...shēn.shàng, L. 39, p. 350  
 on the bank; on the shore, 岸上, àn.shàng, *p.w.*, L. 15,  
     p. 135  
 on the contrary, 倒, dào, *adv.*, L. 5, p. 47  
 on the contrary; instead, 反而, fǎn'érl, *conj.*, L. 33,  
     p. 299  
 on the surface, 表面上, biǎomiàn.shàng, *adv.*, L. 11,  
     p. 103  
 on the way, 路上, lù.shàng, *adv.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 on top of that; in addition, 再加上, zài jiā.shàng, *conj.*,  
     L. 36, p. 328  
 once upon a time; sometime ago; in past days, 从前,  
     cóngqíán, *t.w.*, L. 16, p. 142  
 one country, two systems, 一国两制, yìguó liǎngzhì, *n.*,  
     L. 42, p. 379  
 one fourth, 四分之一, sì fēn zhí yì, L. 41, p. 371  
 one of..., …之一, zhīyī, L. 36, p. 327  
 one side; one aspect, 一面, yímiàn, *n.*, L. 14, p. 129  
 one's husband or wife, 爱人, ài.ren, *n.*, L. 19, p. 173  
 one's later years, 晚年, wǎnnián, *n.*, L. 35, p. 319  
 oneself, 自己, zìjǐ, *pron.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 only if; only when; unless, 除非, chúfēi, *conj.*, L. 26,  
     p. 237

- only; alone; merely, 光, guāng, *adv.*, L. 23, p. 211  
 open, 打开, dǎ//kāi, *v.-c.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 open to the public, 开放, kāifàng, *v.*, L. 15, p. 135  
 open; liberalize, 开放, kāifàng, *v.*, L. 11, p. 101  
 the opening-up and reform policy of China starting in the late 1970's, 改革开放, gǎigé kāifàng, *n.*, L. 11, p. 101  
 "open-open"; 打开; open, kāi//kāi, *v.-c.*, L. 5, p. 48  
 opinion on public affairs; speech, 言论, yánlùn, *n.*, L. 30, p. 272  
 opinion; view, 意见, yìjiàn, *n.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 opium, 鸦片, yāpiàn, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 the Opium War, 鸦片战争, Yāpiàn Zhàzhēng, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 opportunity; chance, 机会, jīhuì, *n.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 oppose; be opposed to; object to, 反对, fǎnduì, *v.*, L. 35, p. 318  
 opposite, 相反, xiāngfǎn, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 70  
 oppress; repress, 压迫, yāpò, *v.*, L. 25, p. 228  
 or, 或, huò, *conj.*, L. 35, p. 317  
 or, 或者, huòzhě, *conj.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 order, 秩序, zhìxù, *n.*, L. 21, p. 194  
 order dishes (in a restaurant), 点菜, diǎn//cài, *v.-o.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 orderly; neat, 整齐, zhěngqí, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 361  
 ordinarily; normally, 平时, píngshí, *adv.*, L. 14, p. 129  
 organize, organization, 组织, zǔzhī, *v./n.*, L. 17, p. 153  
 original, former, 原来, yuánlái, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 56  
 originally; at first, 本来, běnlái, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 26  
 the other side; the other party, 对方, duìfāng, *n.*, L. 18, p. 162  
 the other; another, 另, lìng, *adj.*, L. 3, p. 27  
 other; else, 其他, qítā, *adj.*, L. 30, p. 269  
 otherwise; or else, 要不然, yào.burān, *conj.*, L. 26, p. 237  
 outflow; drain, 外流, wàilíu, *v.*, L. 38, p. 344  
 outside; external; foreign, 外来, wàilái, *adj.*, L. 44, p. 396  
 outstanding; excellent, 优秀, yōuxiù, *adj.*, L. 38, p. 343  
 overhead bridge that goes across a street; overpass, 过街天桥, guòjiē tiānqiáo, *n.*, L. 21, p. 192  
 overseas; abroad, 海外, hǎiwài, *p.w.*, L. 11, p. 101  
 owing to; due to; thanks to, 由于, yóuyú, *prep.*, L. 16, p. 145  
 own; possess, 拥有, yōngyǒu, *v.*, L. 34, p. 309
- P**  
 the Pacific Ocean, 太平洋, Tàipíngyáng, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397  
 p. 397  
 the Palace Museum, 故宫, Gùgōng, *n.*, L. 14, p. 127  
 panda habitat; panda exhibit, 熊猫馆, xióngmāoguǎn, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143  
 panda; giant panda, 大熊猫, dà xióngmāo, *n.*, L. 16, p. 142  
 paragraph; part; segment, 段, duàn, *AN*, L. 19, p. 171  
 park, 公园儿, gōngyuánr, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 park (one's car), 停车, tíng//chē, *v.-o.*, L. 41, p. 370  
 park; place (a car or a bicycle), 停放, tíngfàng, *v.*, L. 22, p. 203  
 participate; attend (an event), 参加, cānjiā, *v.*, L. 38, p. 343  
 pass gas; fart, 放屁, fàng//pì, *v.-o.*, L. 26, p. 235  
 pass on to; spread into, 传入, chuánrù, *v.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 pass; be successful (in a test), 通过, tōngguò, *v.*, L. 29, p. 261  
 pass; cross, 过, guò, *v.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 pass; pass on; spread, 传, chuán, *v.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 pass; pass through; go through, 通过, tōngguò, *v.*, L. 1, p. 1  
 passageway, 通道, tōngdào, *n.*, L. 21, p. 193  
 passenger, 乘客, chéngkè, *n.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 passenger transportation, 客运, kèyùn, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326  
 passport, 护照, hùzhào, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81  
 past, in the past; formerly, 过去, guòqù, *n./adv.*, L. 23, p. 209  
 paste; stick; glue, 贴, tiē, *v.*, L. 38, p. 343  
 pattern; fashion; way, 方式, fāngshì, *n.*, L. 6, p. 56  
 pay, 付, fù, *v.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 pay a bill, 付账, fù//zhàng, *v.-o.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 pay attention to, 注意, zhùyì, *v.*, L. 2, p. 14  
 pedestrian, 行人, xíng rén, *n.*, L. 12, p. 114  
 pedestrian crossing; cross-walk (marked with stripes like those of a zebra), 斑马线, bānmǎxiàn, *n.*, L. 21, p. 193  
 Peking University, 北京大学, Běijīng Dàxué, *n.*, L. 29, p. 261  
 people, 人民, rénmín, *n.*, L. 22, p. 201  
 People's Republic of China, 中华人民共和国, Zhōnghuá Rénmín Gōnghéguó, *n.*, L. 22, p. 201  
 peppery; hot, 辣, là, *adj.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 percent, 百分之..., bǎifēn zhī ..., *n.*, L. 47, p. 427  
 perform; exercise, 行使, xíngshí, *v.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 performance (in school, work, behavior), 表现, biǎoxiàn, *n.*, L. 29, p. 262  
 (time) period, 时期, shíqí, *n.*, L. 43, p. 386  
 person of ability; talented person, 人才, réncái, *n.*, L. 38, p. 343

- personnel; staff member, 工作人员, gōngzuò rényuán, n., L. 39, p. 351
- phenomenon, 现象, xiànxìang, n., L. 23, p. 209
- philosophy, 哲学, zhéxué, n., L. 48, p. 436
- phonetic transcription, 拼音, pīnyīn, n., L. 31, p. 280
- photo; picture, 照片儿, zhàopiānr, n., L. 8, p. 70
- physical education; sports, 体育, tǐyù, n., L. 28, p. 251
- physical strength, 体力, tǐlì, n., L. 39, p. 352
- physician; doctor, 大夫, dàifu, n., L. 5, p. 48
- piece; lump; chunk, 塊, kuài, AN, L. 5, p. 46
- place; location, 所在, suǒzài, n., L. 48, p. 440
- place; resort; site, 去处, qùchù, n., L. 14, p. 129
- places of scenic beauty and historic interest, 名胜古迹, míngshèng gǔjì, n., L. 48, p. 437
- plain; flatlands, 平原, píngyuán, n., L. 47, p. 428
- plan; project, plan, 计划, jìhuà, n./v., L. 39, p. 351
- planned economy, 计划经济, jìhuà jīngjì, n., L. 39, p. 351
- plate; dish; tray, 盘子, pán.zi, n., L. 7, p. 63
- plate; sign, 牌子, pái.zi, n., L. 22, p. 200
- play ball; play a ball game, 打球, dǎ//qíu, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128
- play cards, 打牌, dǎ//pái, v.-o., L. 21, p. 193
- play chess, 下棋, xià//qí, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128
- Playboy*, 花花公子, Huāhuā gōngzǐ, n., L. 1, p. 2
- “please-ask;” (polite) excuse me; may I ask you?, 请问, qǐngwèn, L. 4, p. 37
- pleasure-boat, 游船, yóuchuán, n., L. 15, p. 135
- poems (诗) and songs (歌); poetry, 诗歌, shīgē, n., L. 30, p. 271
- poke one's nose into others' business, 多管闲事, duō guǎn xiānshì, v., L. 26, p. 236
- policy, 政策, zhèngcè, n., L. 16, p. 145
- polite expressions; civilities; social decorum, 客套话, kètāohuà, n., L. 33, p. 298
- polite remarks; civilities, 客套, kètāo, n., L. 19, p. 174
- political nature, 政治性, zhèngzhìxìng, n., L. 22, p. 201
- politics, 政治, zhèngzhì, n., L. 22, p. 201
- pollution, pollute, 污染, wūrǎn, n./v., L. 41, p. 370
- poor people, 穷人, qióngrén, n., L. 46, p. 416
- poor; poverty-stricken, 穷, qióng, adj., L. 10, p. 90
- population, 人口, rénkǒu, n., L. 14, p. 129
- pornography, 色情, sèqing, n., L. 45, p. 406
- a portion; a part, 部分, bù.fen, n., L. 34, p. 309
- position; status; standing, 地位, dìwèi, n., L. 19, p. 170
- a post, 岗, gǎng, n., L. 39, p. 350
- post office, 邮局, yóujú, n., L. 4, p. 37
- postcard, 明信片, míngxìnpiàn, n., L. 4, p. 40
- pot; pan; cauldron, etc., 锅, guō, n., L. 7, p. 63
- pour out; empty, 倒, dào, v., L. 22, p. 203
- practice, exercise, 练习, liànxí, v./n., L. 13, p. 122
- practice *qigong*, 练气功, liàn qìgōng, v.-o., L. 33, p. 299
- precise, 精确, jīngquè, adj., L. 40, p. 361
- prefer sons to daughters; look up to men and down on women, 重男轻女, zhòngnán qīngnǚ, idm., L. 25, p. 226
- preparation, prepare, 准备, zhǔnbèi, n./v., L. 29, p. 260
- prepare, 预备, yùbèi, v., L. 38, p. 343
- present; gift, 礼物, lǐwù, n., L. 24, p. 219
- preserve; keep (prevent from deteriorating), 保存, bǎocún, v., L. 40, p. 360
- pressure, 压力, yālì, n., L. 35, p. 318
- prevent; guard against; avoid, 防止, fángzhǐ, v., L. 17, p. 155
- price, 价格, jiàgé, n., L. 42, p. 380
- price, 价, jià, n., L. 10, p. 89
- print, 印, yìn, v., L. 30, p. 272
- private affairs, 私事, sīshì, n., L. 18, p. 164
- private car, 私家车, sījiāchē, n., L. 9, p. 79
- probably; maybe, possibility, 可能, kěnéng, adv./n., L. 24, p. 220
- produce (for abstract nouns), 产生, chǎnshēng, v., L. 31, p. 279
- produce, production (for concrete nouns), 生产, shēngchǎn, v./n., L. 47, p. 428
- professional, one's major, 专业, zhuānyè, adj./n., L. 39, p. 351
- prohibit; ban; forbid, 禁, jìn, v., L. 30, p. 272
- promote; accelerate, 促进, cùjìn, v., L. 27, p. 244
- proof, prove, 证明, zhèngmíng, n./v., L. 41, p. 370
- propaganda, propagandize, 宣传, xuānchuán, n./v., L. 23, p. 211
- properly, proper; appropriate; suitable, 合适, héshì, adv./adj., L. 11, p. 103
- prosperous; flourishing, 繁荣, fánróng, adj., L. 17, p. 154
- protect, 保护, bǎohù, v., L. 7, p. 64
- province, 省, shěng, n., L. 20, p. 182
- public; communal, 公共, gōnggòng, adj., L. 4, p. 37
- public; open (places, information, etc.), 公开, gōngkāi, adj., L. 32, p. 289
- publish; come out, 出版, chūbǎn, v., L. 30, p. 269
- publishing house, 出版社, chūbǎnshè, n., L. 30, p. 269
- punctually; on time, 准时, zhǔnshí, adv./adj., L. 1, p. 1
- purchase, 购买, gòumǎi, v., L. 36, p. 327
- put forward; advance; raise, 提出, tí/chū, v.-c., L. 22, p. 202

put in order; straighten up, 整理, zhěnglǐ, v., L. 2, p. 12  
put off until sometime later, 再说, zài shuō, v., L. 18, p. 162

Putonghua (common speech of the Chinese language), 普通话, pǔtōnghuà, n., L. 23, p. 208

## Q

qigong, a system of deep breathing exercises, 气功, qìgōng, n., L. 33, p. 299

Qin Dynasty (221-206 B.C.), 秦代, Qín dàì, n., L. 17, p. 155

Qin Shi Huang; First Emperor of Qin (259-210 B.C.),

秦始皇, Qínshǐhuáng, n., L. 17, p. 154

the Qing Dynasty (1644-1911), 清, Qīng, n., L. 30, p. 270

Qinghai Province, 青, Qīng, n., L. 36, p. 326

Qinghai-Tibet (Railway) Line, 青藏铁路, Qīngzàng Tiělù, n., L. 36, p. 326

quality, 质量, zhìliàng, n., L. 24, p. 220

quite a few, 好几…, hǎo jǐ..., L. 5, p. 48

quite; considerably, 相当, xiāngdāng, adv., L. 25, p. 226

## R

race; nationality, —族, zú, suffix, L. 47, p. 427

radio, 收音机, shōuyīnjī, n., L. 34, p. 309

radio broadcast, broadcast, 广播, guǎngbō, n./v., L. 23, p. 211

railroad, 铁路, tiělù, n., L. 36, p. 326

raise; arouse, 引起, yǐnqǐ, v., L. 44, p. 395

raise; heighten; increase, 提高, tígāo, v., L. 24, p. 221

randomly; arbitrarily, 乱 v., luàn, adv., L. 22, p. 203

reach (an agreement), 达成, dáchéng, v., L. 28, p. 251

read aloud, 念, niàn, v., L. 44, p. 395

real estate, 房地产, fángdìchǎn, n., L. 42, p. 380

reality; actuality, 现实, xiànshí, n., L. 45, p. 407

realize; understand; comprehend; recognize, 认识到, rěn.shí dào, v., L. 27, p. 244

really; honestly; indeed, 实在, shízài, adv., L. 19, p. 172

really; indeed, 确实, quèshí, adv., L. 34, p. 310

the reason that, 之所以, zhīsuǒyǐ, conj., L. 44, p. 398

reason; cause, 原因, yuán yīn, n., L. 6, p. 56

reason; sense, 道理, dào.lì, n., L. 29, p. 262

reasonable, 有道理, yǒu dào.lì, adj., L. 29, p. 262

reasonable, 合理, hé.lí, adj., L. 39, p. 353

receive (guests); entertain, 招待, zhāodài, v., L. 19, p. 173

receive (usually take a verb as object), 受到, shòudào, v., L. 30, p. 272

receive (受 usually takes a verb as an object), 受, shòu, v., L. 11, p. 101

receive; suffer, 受, shòu, v., L. 6, p. 55

recently, 近来, jìnlái, adv., L. 33, p. 298

recently, 最近, zuìjìn, adv., L. 6, p. 55

recorded utterance; book of quotations, 语录, yǔlù, n., L. 43, p. 386

recreational, 休闲, xiūxiān, adj., L. 14, p. 128

reduce; drop; lower, 降低, jiàngdī, v., L. 24, p. 221

refined; elegant, 高雅, gāoyǎ, adj., L. 26, p. 236

reflect; reflex; mirror, 反映, fǎnyìng, v., L. 25, p. 227

reform, 改革, gǎigé, v., L. 11, p. 101

refrigerator, 冰箱, bīngxiāng, n., L. 34, p. 310

regional flag, 区旗, qūqí, n., L. 42, p. 380

register; send by registered mail, 挂号, guà/hào, v.-o., L. 4, p. 38

regulation; rule, 规则, guīzé, n., L. 21, p. 193

reject, 拒绝, jùjué, v., L. 18, p. 162

relax (restrictions), 放宽, fàngkuān, v., L. 30, p. 272

relax in a cool place, 乘凉, chéng//liáng, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128

relevance, relationships, 关系, guān.xì, n., L. 1, p. 3

religion, 宗教, zōngjiào, n., L. 47, p. 428

reluctantly; grudgingly, 勉强, miǎnqiǎng, adv., L. 32, p. 290

remember, 记得, jì.de, v., L. 20, p. 184

remote; faraway, 偏远, piānyuǎn, adj., L. 36, p. 327

rent, 租, zū, v., L. 9, p. 78

repair; mend, 修理, xiūlǐ, v., L. 17, p. 155

repeat, 重复, chóngfù, v., L. 19, p. 173

replace, 取代, qǔdài, v., L. 34, p. 310

replace; substitute for, 代替, dài.tì, v., L. 11, p. 102

report, broadcast, 报导, bàođào, v./n., L. 45, p. 407

report, broadcast, 报道, bàođào, n./v., L. 32, p. 288

represent, 代表, dài.biǎo, v., L. 17, p. 153

republic, 共和国, gònghéguó, n., L. 22, p. 201

the Republic of China (1912 – present), the government moved to Taiwan in 1949), 中华民国, Zhōnghuá Mínguó, n., L. 15, p. 135

request; demand, 要求, yāoqiú, n., L. 18, p. 162

resident, 居民, jūmín, n., L. 33, p. 299

respect; aspect; side, 方面, fāngmiàn, n., L. 2, p. 14

respect; value; esteem, 尊重, zūnzhòng, v./n., L. 28, p. 253

responsibility, 责任, zérèn, n., L. 26, p. 237

rest; have a rest, 休息, xiūxi, v., L. 5, p. 46

restaurant, 饭馆儿, fànguǎnr, n., L. 2, p. 13

- (informal) restaurant, 馆子, guǎn.zi, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 resume, 恢复, huīfù, *v.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 retain; continue to have; keep, 保留, bǎoliú, *v.*, L. 31, p. 281  
 retire, 退休, tuìxiū, *v.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 return, 回归, huíguī, *n./v.*, L. 42, p. 379  
 return to one's country, 回国, húi//guó, *v.-o.*, L. 38, p. 345  
 revolution, 革命, gémìng, *n.*, L. 43, p. 386  
 (cooked) rice, 米饭, mǐfan, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 rice fried with eggs, 蛋炒饭, dànchǎofàn, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 rice or millet gruel; porridge, 稀饭, xīfan, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 rich, 有钱, yǒuqián, *adj.*, L. 25, p. 227  
 rich; abundant, 丰富, fēngfù, *adj.*, L. 24, p. 220  
 rich; wealthy; prosperous, 富裕, fùyù, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 riddle; conundrum, 谜语, míyǔ, *n.*, L. 26, p. 236  
 ride (an animal or a bicycle), 骑, qí, *v.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 ridicule; laugh at, 笑, xiào, *v.*, L. 25, p. 227  
 right, 右, yòu, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 361  
 right side; right, 右边儿, yòubiānr, *n.*, L. 25, p. 227  
 rights, 权, quán, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251  
 rise; grow, 起, qǐ, *v.*, L. 21, p. 193  
 river, 河, hé, *n.*, L. 16, p. 145  
 RMB; Renminbi, Chinese monetary unit, 人民币, rénmínbì, *n.*, L. 9, p. 80  
 road; street; avenue, 马路, mǎlù, *n.*, L. 21, p. 192  
 road; way, 道路, dàolù, *n.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 the roads circling the city; ring road; loop road, 环城公路, huáichéng gōnglù, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 roast duck, 烤鸭, kǎoyā, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 romantic love, 爱情, àiqíng, *n.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 roommate, 同屋, tóngwū, *n.*, L. 2, p. 11  
 rote memorizing, 死记硬背, sījì yìngbèi, *v.*, L. 29, p. 261  
 roughly; more or less, 大致, dàzhì, *adv.*, L. 35, p. 317  
 route, 路, lù, *AN*, L. 4, p. 37  
 run into; meet, 碰到, pèng//dào, *v.-c.*, L. 19, p. 173  
 run off; to be washed away, 流失, liúshī, *v.*, L. 38, p. 344  
 rustic; lacking in social graces or polish, 土, tǔ, *adj.*, L. 8, p. 70
- S**
- safe, 安全, ānquán, *adj.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 safe and sound; without mishap, 平安, píng'ān, *adj.*, L. 22, p. 200  
 safety net, guarantee; safeguard, 保障, bǎozhàng, *n./v.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 salesclerk; shop assistant, 售货员, shòuhuòyuán, *n.*, L. 11, p. 102  
 the same..., 同一..., tóngyī..., L. 23, p. 210  
 satiating; greasy, 脂, nì, *adj.*, L. 33, p. 300  
 satisfied; pleased, 满意, mǎnyì, *adj.*, L. 35, p. 319  
 say hello, 打招呼, dǎ zhāo.hu, *v.-o.*, L. 16, p. 144  
 scale; scope; dimensions, 规模, guimó, *n.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 scenery; landscape, 风景, fēngjǐng, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39  
 scenic spot, 景点, jǐngdiǎn, *n.*, L. 14, p. 127  
 scholar; learned man, 学者, xuézhě, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270  
 sea, 海, hǎi, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134  
 seat of honor, 上座, shàngzuò, *n.*, L. 19, p. 170  
 seat; place, 座位, zuò.wèi, *n.*, L. 19, p. 171  
 the second of ten Heavenly Stems; the second person, 乙, yǐ, *n.*, L. 32, p. 288  
 Second Ring Road, 二环, Èrhuán, *n.*, L. 9, p. 78  
 the Second World War (1939-1945), 第二次世界大战, Dì èr Cì Shíjiè Dàzhàn, *n.*, L. 44, p. 396  
 sedan, 轿车, jiàoche, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 seem; as if, 好像...似的, hǎoxiàng...shì.de, *adv.*, L. 16, p. 144  
 seize; capture, 拿, ná, *v.*, L. 26, p. 236  
 seldom, 很少, hěnshǎo, *adv.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 select; choose, 选择, xuǎnzé, *v.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 self-defense, 自卫, zìwèi, *n.*, L. 48, p. 438  
 sell, 售, shòu, *v.*, L. 11, p. 102  
 semester; school term, 学期, xuéqí, *n.*, L. 46, p. 415  
 send; mail, 寄, jì, *v.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 send; send out; give out, 发, fā, *v.*, L. 37, p. 337  
 sense of ..., ——感, gǎn, *suffix*, L. 40, p. 361  
 sense of direction, 方向感, fāngxiànggǎn, *n.*, L. 40, p. 361  
 a sense of nostalgia; nostalgic sentiments, recollect the good old days, 怀旧, huáijiù, *n./v.*, L. 43, p. 386  
 sentence pattern, 句型, jùxíng, *n.*, L. 46, p. 417  
 separate; cut up; carve up, 分割, fēng'gē, *v.*, L. 48, p. 437  
 (said of illness, situation) serious, 严重, yánzhòng, *adj.*, L. 9, p. 79  
 serious; solemn, 严肃, yánsù, *adj.*, L. 30, p. 271  
 service personnel, 服务员, fúwùyuán, *n.*, L. 4, p. 37  
 service window; window, 窗口, chuāngkǒu, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 service, serve; give service to, 服务, fúwù, *n./v.*, L. 8, p. 71  
 set one's mind at rest; feel relieved, 放心, fàng//xīn, v.-o., L. 2, p. 11

- set out; start off; leave, 出发, chūfā, v., L. 17, p. 154  
 a set phrase; idiom, 成语, chéngyǔ, n., L. 26, p. 235  
 set up; establish, 设, shè, v., L. 24, p. 220  
 (in writing) set up; establish, 树, shù, v., L. 22, p. 202  
 set up; install, 装, zhuāng, v., L. 41, p. 371  
 17.2, 17.2, shíqī diǎn èr, L. 45, p. 405  
 sewing machine, 缝纫机, féngrènjī, n., L. 34, p. 309  
 shameful, 可耻, kěchǐ, adj., L. 39, p. 352  
 Shandong Province, 山东, Shāndōng, n., L. 20, p. 183  
 Shanghai, 上海, Shànghǎi, n., L. 36, p. 327  
 Shanxi Province, 山西, Shānxī, n., L. 13, p. 121  
 sharp; fierce, capable, 厉害, lì.hai, adj., L. 25, p. 228  
 shave one's beard, 刮胡子, guā//hú.zi, v.-o., L. 8, p. 71  
 shelled fresh shrimp, 虾仁儿, xiārénr, n., L. 20, p. 185  
 she-monkey, 母猴, mǔhóu, n., L. 16, p. 144  
 shift to an earlier time, ahead of schedule; beforehand,  
     提前, tíqián, v./adv., L. 39, p. 350  
 shoe, 鞋子, xié.zi, n., L. 24, p. 219  
 shop sign, 招牌, zhāo.pai, n., L. 20, p. 183  
 shop; store, 店, diàn, n., L. 8, p. 69  
 shopkeeper; boss, 老板, lǎobǎn, n., L. 10, p. 89  
 shops, 馆, guǎn, n., L. 8, p. 69  
 shortcoming; defect; weakness, 缺点, quēdiǎn, n.,  
     L. 29, p. 262  
 shortcoming; weakness, 短处, duǎn.chù, n., L. 41,  
     p. 372  
 shorten, 缩短, suōduǎn, v., L. 36, p. 327  
 "short-letter", text message, 短信, duǎnxìn, n., L. 37,  
     p. 337  
 should; ought to; 应该, 该, gāi, aux., L. 5, p. 48  
 show due respect for somebody's feelings, 给面子,  
     gěi miàn.zi, v.-o., L. 18, p. 162  
 show filial piety, 孝顺, xiàoshùn, v., L. 35, p. 319  
 show; display, 表现, biǎoxiàn, v., L. 11, p. 103  
 (TV, radio, etc.) show; program, 节目, jiémù, n., L. 45,  
     p. 406  
 show; use words to express; indicate, 表示, biǎoshì, v.,  
     L. 19, p. 171  
 Sichuan Province; 四川, 川, Chuān, n., L. 20, p. 182  
 side; by the side of; nearby, 旁边儿, pángbiānr, n., L. 4,  
     p. 40  
 sign, 签字, qiān//zì, v.-o., L. 9, p. 81  
 sign; symbol; notation, 符号, fúhào, n., L. 31, p. 280  
 silly; stupid, bored; boring, 无聊, wúliáo, adj., L. 45,  
     p. 407  
 Simatai, place name, 120 km northeast of Beijing,  
     where the Ming Changcheng is located, 司马台,  
     Simátái, n., L. 17, p. 154  
 similar, 类似, lèisì, adj., L. 19, p. 173  
 simple and crude, 简陋, jiǎnlòu, adj., L. 28, p. 250  
 simplified Chinese characters, 简体字, jiǎntǐzì, n., L. 23,  
     p. 210  
 simply; virtually, 简直, jiǎnzhí, adv., L. 2, p. 13  
 sin; hardship, 罪, zui, n., L. 6, p. 55  
 since, 自从, zìcóng, prep., L. 23, p. 210  
 since ancient times, 自古以来, zì gǔ yǐlái, L. 39, p. 352  
 sincere, 诚恳, chéngkěn, adj., L. 18, p. 164  
 Singapore, 新加坡, Xīnjiāpō, n., L. 38, p. 344  
 single room, 单人间, dānrénjiān, n., L. 2, p. 11  
 "single-born-son-daughter"; only child, 独生子女,  
     dúshēng zǐnǚ, n., L. 33, p. 300  
 single-parent family, 单亲家庭, dānqīn jiātíng, n., L. 32,  
     p. 290  
 sing-song; sing, 唱歌, chàng//gē, v.-o., L. 15, p. 134  
 sink (in a restroom), 洗手台, xǐshǒutái, n., L. 12, p. 114  
 situation, 情形, qíng.xíng, n., L. 19, p. 174  
 situation, 情况, qíngkuàng, n., L. 21, p. 194  
 skill; craftsmanship; workmanship, 手艺, shǒuyì, n.,  
     L. 19, p. 173  
 skyscraper, 摩天大楼, mótiān dàilóu, n., L. 40, p. 361  
 slogan (usually written on a banner or poster), 标语,  
     biāoyǔ, n., L. 22, p. 200  
 slogan; watchword, 口号, kǒuhào, n., L. 23, p. 208  
 small change, 零钱, língqián, n., L. 12, p. 115  
 small number; few; minority, 少数, shǎoshù, adj./n.,  
     L. 44, p. 396  
 small parcel, 小包, xiǎobāo, n., L. 4, p. 39  
 smell, 闻, wén, v., L. 12, p. 114  
 smelly; stinking, 臭, chòu, adj., L. 12, p. 115  
 smooth and steady; stable, 平稳, píngwěn, adj., L. 42,  
     p. 380  
 smooth; successful, 顺利, shùnlì, adj., L. 2, p. 11  
 snack; refreshments, 小吃, xiǎochī, n., L. 13, p. 122  
 so-called, 所谓, suǒwèi, adj., L. 34, p. 309  
 society, 社会, shèhuì, n., L. 11, p. 103  
 soft bunk (on a train), 软卧, ruǎnwò, n., L. 13, p. 121  
 solve, 解决, jiějué, v., L. 34, p. 310  
 some speak with southern accents and some with  
     northern tunes, 南腔北调, nánqiāng běidiào, idm.,  
     L. 23, p. 208  
 sometimes; at times; now and then, 有时, yǒushí, adv.,  
     L. 6, p. 55  
 song, 歌, gē, n., L. 15, p. 134  
 the Song Dynasty, 宋朝, Sòngcháo, n., L. 47, p. 429  
 the south, 南方, nánfāng, n., L. 36, p. 326  
 south, 南, nán, n., L. 4, p. 38  
 southeast, 东南, dōngnán, n., L. 47, p. 428  
 Southerner, 南方人, nánfāngrén, n., L. 20, p. 183

- southwest, 西南, xīnán, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428  
 sovereignty, 主权, zhǔquán, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 special, 特殊, tèshū, *adj.*, L. 21, p. 194  
 Special Administrative Region, 特别行政区, Tèbié Xíngzhèngqū, *n.*, L. 42, p. 380  
 special field of study; major, 专业, zhuānyè, *n.*, L. 29, p. 260  
 special flavor; local flavor, 风味儿, fēngwèir, *n.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 special local product, 特产, tèchǎn, *n.*, L. 13, p. 122  
 specific; characteristic, 特有, tèyǒu, *adj.*, L. 21, p. 194  
 speed, 速度, sùdù, *n.*, L. 48, p. 438  
 speed up; accelerate, 加快, jiākuài, *v.*, L. 36, p. 327  
 spend (money), 花钱, huā//qián, *v.-o.*, L. 10, p. 92  
 spend (time or money), 花, huā, *v.*, L. 16, p. 143  
 spend (time); pass (time duration), 过, guò, *v.*, L. 9, p. 80  
 spit; expectorate, 吐痰, tǔ//tán, *v.-o.*, L. 22, p. 200  
 spoil, 惯坏, guàn//huài, *v.-c.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 spoon; ladle, 勺儿, sháoer, *n.*, L. 7, p. 63  
 a sporting match; games, 运动会, yùndònghuì, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 squat on one's heels, 蹲, dūn, *v.*, L. 12, p. 113  
 stable (only modify abstract nouns), 稳定, wěndìng, *adj.*, L. 27, p. 244  
 stable; quiet; settled (modify abstract nouns only), 安定, āndìng, *adj.*, L. 24, p. 220  
 stadium, 体育场, tǐyùchǎng, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 staff and workers, 职工, zhígōng, *n.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 stamp, 邮票, yóupiào, *n.*, L. 4, p. 39  
 stand; on one's feet, 站, zhàn, *v.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 standard; criterion, standard, 标准, biāozhǔn, *n./adj.*, L. 28, p. 252  
 standard; level, 水平, shuǐpíng, *v.*, L. 24, p. 221  
 standard; normal, norm, 规范, guīfàn, *adj./n.*, L. 23, p. 208  
 standardized characters, 规范字, guīfànzì, *n.*, L. 23, p. 208  
 staple food; principal food, 主食, zhǔshí, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 start school; enter school, 入学, rùxué, *v.-o.*, L. 29, p. 260  
 start; begin, 开始, kāishǐ, *v.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 state, 州, zhōu, *n.*, L. 45, p. 408  
 station; stop, 站, zhàn, *n.*, L. 4, p. 37  
 statistics, add up; count, 统计, tǒngjì, *n./v.*, L. 45, p. 405  
 Statue of Liberty, 自由女神像, Zìyóu Nǚshén xiàng, *n.*, L. 17, p. 153  
 statue; portrait; picture, 像, xiàng, *n.*, L. 17, p. 153  
 stay; remain; keep, 留, liú, *v.*, L. 38, p. 344  
 steam in clear soup (usually without soy sauce), 清蒸, qīngzhēng, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 steamed bun, 馒头, mán.tou, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 steamed stuffed bun, 包子, bāo.zi, *n.*, L. 20, p. 183  
 step by step, 一步一步, yíbù yíbù, *adv.*, L. 18, p. 163  
 step down, 下, xià, *v.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 stereo, 音响, yīnxiǎng, *n.*, L. 34, p. 310  
 sting; bite, 咬, dǐng, *v.*, L. 5, p. 47  
 stir-fry, 炒, chǎo, *v.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 stir-fry without soy sauce, 清炒, qīngchǎo, *v.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 stock, 股票, gǔpiào, *n.*, L. 42, p. 380  
 stomach; abdomen, 肚子, dù.zi, *n.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 stop, 停, tíng, *v.*, L. 21, p. 192  
 stop up; block up, 堵, dǔ, *v.*, L. 9, p. 78  
 stop; halt; hamper, 挡住, dǎng//zhǔ, *v.-c.*, L. 17, p. 155  
 store; shop, 商店, shāngdiàn, *n.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 (archaic) store; shop, 铺子, pù.zi, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270  
 story; floor; a multi-storied building, 楼, lóu, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81  
 strait, 海峡, hǎixiá, *n.*, L. 31, p. 278  
 strange; awkward; weird, 奇怪, qíguài, *adj.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 strange; unfamiliar, 陌生, mòshèng, *adj.*, L. 11, p. 100  
 street, 街道, jiēdào, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270  
 street, 街, jiē, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 street corner; street, 街头, jiētóu, *p.w.*, L. 44, p. 396  
 street scene, 街景, jiējǐng, *n.*, L. 21, p. 194  
 strengthen; enhance, 加强, jiāqíáng, *v.*, L. 36, p. 328  
 stress on decorum, 讲文明, jiǎng wénmíng, L. 22, p. 202  
 stress; pay attention to; be particular about, 讲, jiǎng, *v.*, L. 22, p. 202  
 strict; severe; stern, 严, yán, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 2  
 stroll; go window-shopping, 逛, guàng, *v.*, L. 10, p. 91  
 strong point; good point, 长处, cháng.chù, *n.*, L. 41, p. 372  
 structure, 结构, jiégòu, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 study, 学习, xuéxí, *v.*, L. 2, p. 13  
 subject under discussion; issue, 议题, yìtí, *n.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 suburb, 郊区, jiāoqū, *n.*, L. 17, p. 154  
 subway, 地铁, dìtiě, *n.*, L. 41, p. 371  
 succeed in obtaining, 得到, dédào, *v.*, L. 34, p. 311  
 success, succeed, successful, 成功, chénggōng, *n./v./adj.*, L. 27, p. 244

- suffer from diarrhea; have loose bowels, 拉肚子, lā dù.zi, v.-o., L. 5, p. 46
- suit; adapt; get with it, 适应, shìyìng, v., L. 42, p. 379
- summer, 夏天, xiàtiān, n., L. 2, p. 12
- the Summer Palace, 颐和园, Yíhéyuán, n., L. 14, p. 127
- summer vacation time; summer session, 暑假, shǔjià, n., L. 46, p. 415
- surface; outside, 表面, biǎomiàn, n., L. 11, p. 103
- surname, 姓, xìng, n., L. 4, p. 39
- surround; enclose, 围, wéi, v., L. 28, p. 250
- sustain; keep; maintain, 维持, wéichí, v., L. 32, p. 289
- sweep; clean, 打扫, dǎsǎo, v., L. 2, p. 12
- sweet, 甜, tián, adj., L. 20, p. 182
- swelling; lump, 包, bāo, n., L. 5, p. 47
- swim, 游泳, yóuyǒng, v., L. 40, p. 362
- symbol, symbolize, 象征, xiàngzhēng, n./v., L. 17, p. 153
- sympathize, sympathy, 同情, tóngqíng, v./n., L. 37, p. 335
- syndrome; disease, ——症, zhèng, suffix, L. 46, p. 418
- system, 制度, zhìdù, n., L. 27, p. 244
- system, 体制, tǐzhì, n., L. 42, p. 379
- T**
- table tennis; ping-pong, 乒乓球, 乒乓, píngpāng, n., L. 28, p. 250
- taijiquan, a kind of traditional Chinese shadow boxing, 太极拳, tàijíquán, n., L. 14, p. 128
- Taiwan, 台湾, Táiwān, n., L. 11, p. 101
- take (photos, movies, etc.); shoot, 拍, pāi, v., L. 16, p. 144
- take A as B; regard A as B, 以 A 为 B, yǐ…wéi..., L. 35, p. 320
- take a picture; take photographs, 照相, zhàoxiàng, v.-o., L. 37, p. 336
- take a stroll with one's caged bird, 遛鸟儿, liù//niǎor, v.-o., L. 14, p. 128
- take a walk; go for a walk, 散步, sànbù, v.-o., L. 15, p. 134
- take advantage of (time, opportunity, etc.), 趁, chèn, prep., L. 16, p. 142
- take care of; look after, 照顾, zhào.gù, v., L. 2, p. 13
- take off; cast off, 脱, tuō, v., L. 26, p. 235
- take one's seat at a banquet, ceremony, etc., 入座, rù//zuò, v.-o., L. 19, p. 171
- take; bring; carry, 带, dài, v., L. 1, p. 1
- talk about, 说到, shuōdào, v.-c., L. 46, p. 418
- talk with each other; converse; chat, 交谈, jiāotán, v., L. 13, p. 122
- the Tang Dynasty, 唐朝, Tángcháo, n., L. 48, p. 437
- tap water, 自来水, zìláiishuǐ, n., L. 6, p. 55
- taste, 尝, cháng, v., L. 13, p. 122
- taste; flavor, 味道, wèidao, n., L. 34, p. 309
- taxi, 计程车, jíchéngchē, n., L. 31, p. 280
- taxi, 出租汽车, chūzū qìchē, n., L. 9, p. 78
- tea, 茶, chá, n., L. 6, p. 54
- teach, 教, jiāo, v., L. 18, p. 164
- teaching material, 教材, jiàocái, n., L. 30, p. 271
- teaching; education; pedagogy, 教学, jiàoxué, n., L. 44, p. 396
- telephone; phone call, 电话, diànhuà, n., L. 2, p. 11
- television, 电视, diànshì, n., L. 2, p. 12
- television set, 电视机, diànshījī, n., L. 45, p. 405
- tell; inform, 告诉, gào.su, v., L. 15, p. 136
- temple (The measure word is 座.), 寺庙, sìmiào, n., L. 40, p. 360
- the Temple of Heaven, 天坛, Tiāntán, n., L. 40, p. 360
- temporary; transient; for the time being, 暂时, zànshí, adj./adv., L. 38, p. 344
- ten million, …千万, qiānwàn, L. 14, p. 129
- tense; intense; strained, 紧张, jǐnzhāng, adj., L. 5, p. 48
- a term used to address a skilled craftsman such as a taxi driver, shoemaker, chef, etc., 师傅, shī.fù, n., L. 8, p. 71
- terribly, terrible; severe, 厉害, lì.hài, adv./adj., L. 9, p. 78
- test; examination, take a test, 考试, kǎoshì, n./v., L. 29, p. 260
- textbook, 课本, kèběn, n., L. 44, p. 395
- textbook, 教科书, jiàokēshū, n., L. 46, p. 416
- the Olympics; the abbreviation of 奥林匹克运动会, 奥运会, àoyùnhuì, n., L. 40, p. 362
- the Republic of China (1912–present, the government moved to Taiwan in 1949), 民, Mín, n., L. 30, p. 270
- theater, 剧院, jùyuàn, n., L. 40, p. 362
- then; at that time, 当时, dāngshí, t.w., L. 47, p. 429
- then; so, 那么, nà.me, adv., L. 23, p. 211
- (written) there is no, 无, wú, L. 31, p. 279
- therefore; hence, 因此, yīnci, conj., L. 23, p. 211
- thermos bottle, 热水瓶, rèshuǐpíng, n., L. 6, p. 55
- thin, 瘦, shòu, v./adj., L. 33, p. 299
- thing, 事情, shì.qing, n., L. 3, p. 26
- thing; object, 事物, shìwù, n., L. 44, p. 396
- think highly of; value; take something seriously, 重视, zhòngshì, v., L. 29, p. 262
- think; consider; hold, 认为, rènwéi, v., L. 3, p. 26
- thinking; thought, 思想, sīxiǎng, n., L. 22, p. 203

- thought; thinking, 思维, sīwéi, *n.*, L. 48, p. 439
- thousands upon thousands, 成千上万, chéngqiān shàngwàn, *idm.*, L. 15, p. 134
- three generations living under the same roof (part of the “big family” system in old China), 三代同堂, sāndài tóngtáng, *idiom*, L. 35, p. 319
- three kinds of fresh delicacies, 三鲜, sānxīān, *n.*, L. 20, p. 186
- three-wheel cart, 三轮车, sānlúnchē, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362
- Tian An Men; Gate of Heavenly Peace, 天安门, Tiān'ānmén, *n.*, L. 22, p. 201
- Tianjin, 天津, Tiānjīn, *n.*, L. 44, p. 395
- Tibet, 西藏, Xīzàng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326
- Tibet, 藏, Zàng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 326
- ticket, 票, piào, *n.*, L. 16, p. 143
- tiger, 老虎, lǎohǔ, *n.*, L. 16, p. 144
- (said of a financial market) tight; tense; high demand, 紧张, jǐnzhāng, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 310
- times; -fold, 倍, bèi, *n.*, L. 41, p. 370
- tip; gratuity, 小费, xiǎofei, *n.*, L. 8, p. 72
- title; subject; topic, 题目, tímu, *n.*, L. 22, p. 203
- To your health!, 我敬您, wǒ jìng nín, L. 19, p. 172
- TOEFL; Test of English as a Foreign Language, 托福, tuōfú, *n.*, L. 38, p. 343
- together, 一块儿, yìkuair, *adv.*, L. 18, p. 163
- toilet, 马桶, mǎtōng, *n.*, L. 12, p. 113
- toilet paper, 卫生纸, wèishēngzhǐ, *n.*, L. 12, p. 114
- toilet; restroom, 厕所, cèsuǒ, *n.*, L. 12, p. 113
- too; exceeding, 过 *adj.*, guò..., *pref.*, L. 39, p. 351
- tool; instrument, 工具, gōngjù, *n.*, L. 13, p. 122
- topic of conversation, 话题, huàtí, *n.*, L. 18, p. 164
- tourist; sightseer, 观光客, guānguāngkè, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134
- towards, 向, xiàng, *postp.*, L. 39, p. 351
- towel, 毛巾, máojīn, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12
- town and country; city and countryside, 城乡, chéng xiāng, *n.*, L. 36, p. 328
- trade; profession, 行业, hángyè, *n.*, L. 27, p. 244
- tradition, 传统, chuántǒng, *n.*, L. 25, p. 226
- traditional alleys in Beijing, 胡同儿, hútòngr, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362
- traditional Chinese characters, 繁体字, fántízì, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210
- traditional Chinese comic dialogue, 相声, xiāng.sheng, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363
- a traditional Chinese-style compound with rooms around a courtyard, 四合院儿, sìhéyuàn, *n.*, L. 40, p. 361
- traffic, 交通, jiāotōng, *n.*, L. 9, p. 79
- traffic jam, 交通堵塞, jiāotōng dūsè, *n.*, L. 9, p. 79
- traffic light, 红绿灯, hónglǜdēng, *n.*, L. 9, p. 80
- training, train, 训练, xùnliàn, *n./v.*, L. 29, p. 261
- (electric) tram, 电车, diànchē, *n.*, L. 41, p. 371
- transit, transition, 渡过, guòdù, *v./n.*, L. 34, p. 311
- translate; translation, 翻译, fānyì, *v./n.*, L. 48, p. 437
- travel, 旅行, lǚxíng, *v.*, L. 9, p. 81
- traveler's check, 旅行支票, lǚxíng zhīpiào, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81
- treatment, 待遇, dài yù, *n.*, L. 42, p. 379
- trouble; problem; question, 问题, wèntí, *n.*, L. 5, p. 47
- troublesome; inconvenient, 麻烦, má.fan, *adj.*, L. 7, p. 63
- trousers, 裤子, kù.zi, *n.*, L. 26, p. 235
- true; real, 真实, zhēnshí, *adj.*, L. 46, p. 416
- truly; really, genuine; true; real, 真正, zhēnzhèng, *adv./adj.*, L. 46, p. 419
- T-shirt, T恤, tī xù, *n.*, L. 43, p. 388
- turn, 转, zhuǎn, *v.*, L. 39, p. 351
- turn off, 关掉, guān//diào, *v.-c.*, L. 5, p. 48
- turn to, 转向, zhuǎnxiàng, *v.*, L. 39, p. 351
- TV drama; soap opera, 电视剧, diànshìjù, *n.*, L. 40, p. 363
- TV screen, 屏幕, píngmù, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210
- the two coasts of the Taiwan Strait; mainland China and Taiwan, 海峡两岸, hǎixiá liǎng'àn, *n.*, L. 31, p. 278
- a two-part metaphorical or allegorical saying, 歇后语, xiēhòuyǔ, *n.*, L. 26, p. 235
- type; category, 类, lèi, *n.*, L. 1, p. 2
- type; typewrite, 打字, dǎ//zì, *v.-o.*, L. 37, p. 337

**U**

- U.S. dollar, 美元, měiyuán, *n.*, L. 9, p. 81
- unable to rise, 起不了, qǐ.bù liáo, *v.-c.*, L. 21, p. 193
- unclean; filthy, 不干不净, bùgān bùjìng, *adj.*, L. 15, p. 136
- under (a given point or line), …以下, yǐxià, *postp.*, L. 45, p. 408
- undergraduate student, 本科生, běnkēshēng, *n.*, L. 38, p. 343
- underground; subterranean, 地下, dìxià, *adj.*, L. 21, p. 193
- underpants; undershorts, 内裤, nèikù, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62
- understand, 了解, liǎojiě, *v.*, L. 22, p. 203
- understand; comprehend, 理解, lǐjiě, *v.*, L. 26, p. 236
- understand; comprehend; know, 懂, dǒng, *v.*, L. 3, p. 25
- underwear; undergarments, 内衣, nèiyī, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62

- unexpectedly, 没想到, méi xiǎngdào, *adv.*, L. 6, p. 55  
 unexpectedly; to one's surprise, 居然, jūrán, *adv.*, L. 13, p. 121  
 unexpectedly; to one's surprise, 竟, jìng, *adv.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 unit, 单元, dānyuán, *n.*, L. 35, p. 320  
 (work) unit, 单位, dānwèi, *n.*, L. 39, p. 350  
 unite; rally, 团结, tuánjé, *v.*, L. 22, p. 202  
 unnecessary; surplus, 多余, duōyú, *adj.*, L. 26, p. 236  
 until then; until that time, 到时候, dào shíhòu, L. 18, p. 162  
 up to, 到, dào, *prep.*, L. 12, p. 115  
 up to...; until..., 到…为止, dào...wéizhǐ, L. 13, p. 122  
 upper outer garment, 上衣, shàngyī, *n.*, L. 15, p. 136  
 urge; advise; try to persuade, 劝, quàn, *v.*, L. 19, p. 171  
 use; make use of; apply, 使用, shǐyòng, *v.*, L. 26, p. 235  
 useful, 有用, yǒuyòng, *adj.*, L. 46, p. 417  
 utility; material gain, 功利, gōnglì, *n.*, L. 44, p. 397  
 utterly; completely; at all (always used in negative sentences), 根本, gēnběn, *adv.*, L. 1, p. 2
- V**
- vague; blurred, 模糊, mó.hu, *adj.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 vast; wide, 广, guǎng, *adj.*, L. 47, p. 427  
 vegetable, 青菜, qīngcài, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 vegetable, 蔬菜, shūcài, *n.*, L. 34, p. 309  
 vendor's stand; stall, 小摊儿, xiǎotān, *n.*, L. 15, p. 136  
 verb, 动词, dòngcí, *n.*, L. 20, p. 185  
 very, *adj.* 得很, .dehěn, L. 2, p. 13  
 very; quite, 挺, tǐng, *adv.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 video game, 电子游戏, diànzì yóuxì, *n.*, L. 43, p. 388  
 vie for; scramble for, 抢着 *v.*, qiǎng.zhe, *v.*, L. 19, p. 174  
 Vietnam, 越南, Yuènán, *n.*, L. 43, p. 387  
 view; a way of looking at a thing, 看法, kànfa, *n.*, L. 28, p. 251  
 vigor; energy, 活力, huólì, *n.*, L. 40, p. 364  
 vigor; vitality; spirit, 精神, jīng.shen, *n.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 vigorous, 有精神, yǒu jīng.shen, *adj.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 violence, 暴力, bào lì, *n.*, L. 45, p. 406  
 visit (a place); look around, 参观, cānguān, *v.*, L. 13, p. 121  
 visit (formally), 访问, fǎngwèn, *v.*, L. 28, p. 250  
 visitor (to a park, etc.); tourist, 游客, yóukè, *n.*, L. 14, p. 127  
 vocabulary, 词汇, cíhuì, *n.*, L. 46, p. 417  
 vomit, 呕吐, tù, *v.*, L. 5, p. 46
- wages; salary, 工资, gōngzī, *n.*, L. 25, p. 228  
 wait, 等, děng, *v.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 wake up; sober up, 醒, xǐng, *v.*, L. 3, p. 25  
 walk (somebody); accompany; escort, 送, sòng, *v.*, L. 19, p. 172  
 walk; go on foot, 走路, zǒu//lù, *v.-o.*, L. 9, p. 80  
 Wangfujing, Beijing's most famous business area, 王府井, Wángfǔjǐng, *n.*, L. 9, p. 78  
 war, 战争, zhànzhēng, *n.*, L. 42, p. 378  
 warm, 暖, nuǎn, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 warm, 温, wēn, *adj.*, L. 34, p. 308  
 wash, 洗, xǐ, *v.*, L. 3, p. 24  
 wash one's hair; shampoo one's hair, 洗头, xǐ/tóu, *v.-o.*, L. 8, p. 71  
 washing machine, 洗衣机, xǐyījī, *n.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 Washington, D. C., 华盛顿, Huáshèngdūn, *n.*, L. 46, p. 418  
 waste; squander, extravagant, 浪费, làngfèi, *v./adj.*, L. 6, p. 54  
 watch, 手表, shǒubǎo, *n.*, L. 34, p. 309  
 watch (television), 收看, shōukàn, *v.*, L. 23, p. 211  
 the Water Cube, 水立方, Shuǐlìfang, *n.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 watermelon, 西瓜, xīguā, *n.*, L. 5, p. 46  
 the way a thing or person used to look, 老样子, lǎoyàng.zi, *n.*, L. 30, p. 270  
 way of writing, 写法, xiěfǎ, *n.*, L. 23, p. 210  
 way; means; measure, 办法, bànfǎ, *n.*, L. 23, p. 211  
 way; method, 方法, fǎngfǎ, *n.*, L. 20, p. 184  
 weather, 天气, tiānqì, *n.*, L. 2, p. 12  
 weed out the old to bring forth the new, 推陈出新, tuī chén chū xīn, *idm.*, L. 48, p. 440  
 weekend, 周末, zhōumò, *n.*, L. 8, p. 69  
 welcome; be received favorably, 欢迎, huānyíng, *v.*, L. 37, p. 336  
 west, 西, xī, *n.*, L. 4, p. 38  
 western; foreign, 洋, yáng, *adj.*, L. 48, p. 436  
 westernization, 西化, xīhuà, *n.*, L. 48, p. 438  
 wheat-based food, 面食, miànsí, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182  
 white, 白色, báisè, *n./adj.*, L. 16, p. 143  
 a whole day; all day long, 整天, zhěngtiān, *adv.*, L. 3, p. 25  
 whole; entire, 整个儿, zhěnggèr, *adj.*, L. 29, p. 260  
 whole; entire; total, 全, quán, *adj.*, L. 22, p. 202  
 wide; broad, 宽, kuān, *adj.*, L. 1, p. 3  
 wide; spacious, 宽阔, kuānkuò, *adj.*, L. 40, p. 362  
 widespread; general; common, 普遍, pǔbiàn, *adj.*, L. 7, p. 62  
 wife, 妻子, qī.zi, *n.*, L. 32, p. 289  
 (colloquial) wife, 老婆, lǎo.po, *n.*, L. 11, p. 102

wife; Mrs., 太太, tài.tai, *n.*, L. 11, p. 102  
wine; liquor, 酒, jiǔ, *n.*, L. 15, p. 134  
with great effort, 努力, nǔlì, *adv./adj.*, L. 2, p. 14  
within the city; downtown, 城里, chénglǐ, *p.w.*, L. 1, p. 3  
without loosing time; hastily; quickly, 赶紧, gǎnjin, *adv.*, L. 16, p. 144  
woman, 女人, nǚrén, *n.*, L. 25, p. 228  
women (as a collective noun), 妇女, fùnǚ, *n.*, L. 32, p. 288  
word; term, 词儿, cír, *n.*, L. 11, p. 102  
wording; choice of words, 用语, yòngyǔ, *n.*, L. 26, p. 235  
wording; way of saying a thing, 说法, shuōfa, *n.*, L. 31, p. 280  
(colloquial) work, 活儿, huóer, *n.*, L. 39, p. 351  
work; book; writing, 著作, zhùzuò, *n.*, L. 30, p. 271  
world, 世界, shìjè, *n.*, L. 10, p. 89  
worries; vexation, be vexed; be worried, 烦恼, fānnǎo, *n./adj.*, L. 33, p. 299  
worry; feel anxious, 担心, dānxīn, *v.*, L. 1, p. 1  
worry; make anxious; make impatient, 急, jí, *v.*, L. 9, p. 79  
would rather, 宁可, nìngkě, *conj.*, L. 7, p. 63

write, 书写, shūxiě, *v.*, L. 23, p. 210

X

Xinjiang, 新疆, Xīnjiāng, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428

Y

(age unit) ...years old, 岁, suì, *n.*, L. 33, p. 298  
yet; but; however, 然而, ránér, *conj.*, L. 28, p. 251  
you (polite form), 您, nín, *pron.*, L. 2, p. 14  
young, 年轻, niānqīng, *adj.*, L. 11, p. 100  
(said of age) young; small in number, degree, etc., 轻, qīng, *adj.*, L. 19, p. 171  
the Yuan Dynasty, 元代, Yuándài, *n.*, L. 40, p. 360  
Yungang Caves, 云岗石窟, Yúngāng Shíkū, *n.*, L. 13, p. 121

Z

the Zang (Tibetan) people, 藏族, Zàngzú, *n.*, L. 47, p. 428  
zebra, 斑马, bānmǎ, *n.*, L. 21, p. 193  
Zhang (a surname), 张, Zhāng, *n.*, L. 1, p. 1  
Zhejiang Province; 浙江, 浙, Zhè, *n.*, L. 20, p. 182  
zoo, 动物园, dòngwùyuán, *n.*, L. 16, p. 142

## Grammar Index

### A

... .a!, ...啊!, L. 17, N. 3, p. 158

### B

bǎ...V. zuò, 把…V.做, L. 20, N. 2, p. 188

bǎi fēn zhī..., 百分之…, L. 47, N. 1, p. 431

bèi, 被, L. 2, N. 10, p. 18

…bàn, …半, L. 42, N. 1, p. 382

běnlái, 本来, L. 3, N. 14, p. 33

běnlái..., ...yǐhòu...cái..., 本来…, …以后…才…, L. 15, N. 1, p. 138

A bǐ B hái adj., A 比 B 还 adj., L. 2, N. 5, p. 17

bǐjiào, 比较, L. 4, N. 1, p. 41

bǐqǐ...lái, 比起…来, L. 45, N. 3, p. 411

bìjìng, 毕竟, L. 44, N. 5, p. 400

biǎomian.shàng, 表面上, L. 11, N. 12, p. 109

bìng, 并, L. 6, N. 7, p. 59

búbì, 不必, L. 8, N. 8, p. 75

búdà, 不大, L. 5, N. 2, p. 49

búdān..., hái..., 不但…, 还…, L. 2, N. 4, p. 16

búdānbù...fǎn'ér..., 不但不…反而…, L. 33, N. 3, p. 303

búdào, 不到, L. 13, N. 2, p. 124

bùdéliǎo, 不得了, L. 44, N. 2, p. 400

bújiàn.dé, 不见得, L. 35, N. 2, p. 322

búshì...érsì..., 不是…, 而是…, L. 18, N. 6, p. 167

búshì...jiùshì..., 不是…就是…, L. 13, N. 1, p. 123

búshì...ma?, 不是…吗 ?, L. 5, N. 5, p. 50

búzài, 再不, L. 27, N. 3, p. 246

bù adj. bù adj., 不 adj. 不 adj., L. 15, N. 4, p. 138

bùbì, 不比, L. 37, N. 3, p. 339

bùdébù, 不得不, L. 3, N. 15, p. 33

bùgǎndāng, 不敢当, L. 19, N. 3, p. 177

V. bùqǐ, V.不起, L. 10, N. 5, p. 96

bùrú, 不如, L. 9, N. 5, p. 85

bù zěn.me, 不怎么, L. 11, N. 6, p. 107

bù zhidào + question, 不知道+question, L. 5, N. 10, p. 52

### C

cái, 才 (necessary condition), L. 2, N. 11, p. 19

cái, 才 (not until), L. 3, N. 12, p. 32

cái, 才 (only), L. 10, N. 8, p. 96

chèn, 趁, L. 16, N. 1, p. 147

V. chéng, V.成, L. 3, N. 16, p. 33

chéng.le, 成了, L. 11, N. 3, p. 105

chóngxīn, 重新, L. 10, N. 1, p. 94

V. chū.lái, V.出来, L. 19, N. 4, p. 177

chúfēi...yào.burán..., 除非…要不然…, L. 26, N. 3, p. 239

chú.le...yíwài, ...yě..., 除了…以外, …也…, L. 3, N. 11, p. 32

cǐwài, 此外, L. 40, N. 1, p. 365

cóng...dào..., 从…到…, L. 27, N. 1, p. 246

cóng...lái.kàn, 从…来看, L. 31, N. 3, p. 284

cóng...qǐ, 从…起, L. 23, N. 3, p. 213

cóngcǐ yǐhòu, 从此以后, L. 28, N. 2, p. 254

cónglái méi V. guò, 从来没 V.过, L. 3, N. 2, p. 29

### D

dào, 倒, L. 5, N. 3, p. 50

dào...wéizhǐ, 到…为止, L. 13, N. 3, p. 124

dàochù, 到处, L. 22, N. 1, p. 204

dàodǐ, 到底, L. 10, N. 2, p. 94

dàoshì...kèshì..., 倒是…, 可是…, L. 5, N. 4, p. 50

dào xiànzài, 到现在, L. 7, N. 2, p. 65

.de fāzhǎn, 的发展, L. 26, N. 1, p. 238

.de lì.hài, …得厉害, L. 9, N. 1, p. 83

V. .de/.bù.liǎo, V. 得／不了, L. 21, N. 4, p. 196

.de qīnlüè, 的侵略, L. 17, N. 4, p. 158

adj. .de yàomìng, adj. 得要命, L. 3, N. 10, p. 31

děngdào, 等到, L. 23, N. 9, p. 215

V. diào, V.掉, L. 5, N. 8, p. 51

dōushì, 都是, L. 5, N. 7, p. 51

duì, 对, L. 1, N. 4, p. 5

duì, 对, L. 7, N. 5, p. 66

duì, 对 (treat), L. 10, N. 3, p. 95

duì...bùlì, 对…不利, L. 38, N. 2, p. 346

duì...chōngmǎn xìnxin, 对…充满信心, L. 42, N. 4, p. 383

duì...láiishuō, 对…来说, L. 3, N. 5, p. 30

duì...yǒu bāngzhù, 对…有帮助, L. 36, N. 2, p. 330

duì...zuòchū...gòngxiān, 对…做出…贡献, L. 24, N. 3, p. 223

duìyú, 对于, L. 30, N. 1, p. 274

duō adj., 多 adj., L. 4, N. 2, p. 42

duō, 多, L. 4, N. 3, p. 42

duō V., 多 V., L. 19, N. 7, p. 178

duō N., 多 N., L. 23, N. 1, p. 213

### E

ér, 而 (but), L. 21, N. 3, p. 196

## 语法索引

ér, 而 (and), L. 29, N. 2, p. 264

### F

fēi...bùkě, 非…不可, L. 36, N. 5, p. 331  
...fēn zhī..., 分之…, L. 41, N. 2, p. 374

### G

gāngānjìngjìng.de, 千干净净的 (AABB 的),  
L. 3, N. 17, p. 33  
gǎnjiān, 赶紧, L. 16, N. 5, p. 148  
gǎn xìngqù, 感兴趣, L. 43, N. 1, p. 391  
gāng, 刚, L. 3, N. 6, p. 30  
gè V. gè.de, 各 V. 各的, L. 19, N. 9, p. 179  
gèháng gèyè, 各行各业, L. 27, N. 2, p. 246  
V. .ge O., V. 个 O., L. 8, N. 1, p. 73  
gěi... .de yìnxiàng, 给…的印象, L. 1, N. 9, p. 7  
gēn...xiāngfān, 跟…相反, L. 8, N. 4, p. 74  
gēn...yíyàng, 跟…一样, L. 29, N. 3, p. 265  
A gēn B yǒu/méiyǒu guān.xi, A 跟 B 有／没有关  
系, L. 3, N. 9, p. 31  
gēnběn, 根本, L. 1, N. 6, p. 6  
gèng, 更, L. 3, N. 4, p. 29  
gùrán, 固然, L. 29, N. 1, p. 263  
guài.bu.de, 怪不得, L. 6, N. 6, p. 58  
guāng, 光, L. 23, N. 8, p. 215  
guǒrán, 果然, L. 44, N. 1, p. 399  
V. guò.lái, V. 过来, L. 3, N. 7, p. 30

### H

hái..., bùyòngshuō..., 还…，不用说…, L. 3,  
N. 3, p. 29  
háishì, 还是, L. 45, N. 4, p. 412  
háo wú, 毫无, L. 31, N. 2, p. 283  
hǎo.ba hǎo.ba, 好吧好吧!, L. 9, N. 9, p. 86  
hǎoxiàng...shì.de, 好像…似的, L. 16, N. 4,  
p. 148  
hǎozài, 好在, L. 1, N. 5, p. 6  
hé...bǐ, 和…比, L. 22, N. 2, p. 204  
hé...bǐ qǐlái, 和…比起来, L. 8, N. 7, p. 75  
hé...bùtóng, 和…不同, L. 1, N. 12, p. 8  
hòulái, 后来, L. 1, N. 8, p. 6  
hùxiāng, 互相, L. 44, N. 4, p. 400  
—huà, 一化, L. 37, N. 4, p. 340  
huàn yíjùhuà shuō, 换一句话说, L. 39, N. 2,  
p. 355

### J

jǐhū, 几乎, L. 11, N. 7, p. 107  
jǐhū, 几乎, L. 25, N. 3, p. 230  
jíshǐ, 即使, L. 32, N. 2, p. 292  
jì...yě..., 既…也…, L. 12, N. 4, p. 118  
jiānzhí, 简直, L. 2, N. 8, p. 18

jiào zuò, 叫做, L. 8, N. 5, p. 74

jiéguǒ, 结果, L. 5, N. 6, p. 50

jìnyíbù, 进一步, L. 18, N. 4, p. 166

jiù, 就, L. 3, N. 1, p. 28

jiù, 就, L. 4, N. 7, p. 43

jiùshì, 就是, L. 7, N. 1, p. 65

jiùshì, 就是, L. 8, N. 2, p. 73

jiùshì, 就是, L. 8, N. 3, p. 73

jiùshì, 就是, L. 10, N. 6, p. 96

jiùshì wèile, 就是为了, L. 16, N. 2, p. 147

jiùshì...yě..., 就是…也…, L. 41, N. 3, p. 375

jù, 据, L. 23, N. 5, p. 214

jùshuō, 据说, L. 1, N. 3, p. 5

### K

kàn.bu.qǐ, 看不起, L. 39, N. 3, p. 356

kàn lái, 看来, L. 11, N. 10, p. 109

kě, 可, L. 2, N. 16, p. 21

kěxī, 可惜, L. 8, N. 6, p. 74

kěxǐ, 可喜, L. 30, N. 3, p. 274

kěyǐ shuōshì, 可以说是, L. 30, N. 2, p. 274

### L

lái, 来, L. 18, N. 5, p. 167

time period + lái, time period 来 (during), L. 23, N. 4,  
p. 213

lái V., 来 V. (in order to), L. 24, N. 1, p. 222

adj. .le.diǎnr, adj. 了点儿, L. 33, N. 1, p. 303

lí, 离, L. 2, N. 13, p. 20

lián...dōu..., 连…都…, L. 9, N. 4, p. 84

lián...dōu..., gèng bùyòng shuō..., 连…都…, 更不  
用说…, L. 16, N. 6, p. 149

líng/lìngwài, 另／另外, L. 3, N. 19, p. 34

língwài, 另外, L. 11, N. 8, p. 108

luàn V., 乱 V., L. 22, N. 4, p. 205

lùn, 论, L. 19, N. 1, p. 176

### M

máfan, 麻烦, L. 9, N. 10, p. 86

...ma, ...嘛, L. 2, N. 6, p. 17

máng.zhe, 忙着, L. 37, N. 1, p. 339

měi...dōu..., 每…都…, L. 17, N. 2, p. 157

měi...zhǐ..., 每…只…, L. 45, N. 1, p. 410

méi xiǎngdào, 没想到, L. 6, N. 9, p. 59

méiyǒu yì AN, 没有一 AN, L. 26, N. 2, p. 239

### N

nǎlì! nǎlì!, 哪里！哪里！, L. 19, N. 2, p. 176

nǎ yí.ge...?, 哪一个…?, L. 33, N. 5, p. 304

nà, 那, L. 2, N. 1, p. 16

nándào... .ma?, 难道…吗 ?, L. 46, N. 2, p. 422

nánguài, 难怪, L. 37, N. 2, p. 339

nánmiǎn, 难免, L. 43, N. 2, p. 391  
 nín mǎnzuō, 您慢走, L. 9, N. 11, p. 87  
 nìngkě, 宁可, L. 9, N. 8, p. 86  
 nìngkě..., yěbù..., 宁可…，也不…, L. 7, N. 3, p. 65

**Q**

qíshí, 其实, L. 11, N. 11, p. 109  
 V. qǐlái, V.起来, L. 2, N. 7, p. 17  
 V. qǐ O. lái, V.起 O.来 (start to), L. 6, N. 3, p. 57  
 V. qǐ.lái, V.起来 (link two things), L. 36, N. 1, p. 329  
 qiánhòu, 前后, L. 42, N. 3, p. 383  
 què, 却, L. 3, N. 8, p. 31

**R**

rán’ér, 然而, L. 28, N. 4, p. 255  
 ràng, 让 (let), L. 1, N. 7, p. 6  
 ràng, 让 (make), L. 6, N. 5, p. 58  
 rènhé, 任何, L. 14, N. 1, p. 130  
 rúguǒ...dehuà, 如果…的话, L. 20, N. 5, p. 189

**S**

V. shàng, V.上, L. 34, N. 4, p. 314  
 ...shàng, …上 (in a certain aspect), L. 12, N. 1, p. 117  
 shàngdāng, 上当, L. 10, N. 10, p. 97  
 shén.me.de, 什么的, L. 20, N. 4, p. 188  
 shén.me...dōu, 什么…都…, L. 9, N. 3, p. 84  
 shènzhì, 甚至, L. 21, N. 5, p. 196  
 shízài, 实在, L. 19, N. 8, p. 179  
 shǐ, 使, L. 24, N. 2, p. 222  
 shì...de, 是…的, L. 7, N. 6, p. 66  
 shì...ér bùshì..., 是…而不是…, L. 28, N. 7, p. 256  
 shì..., kěshì..., 是…，可是…, L. 2, N. 2, p. 16  
 shòu...de yǐngxiǎng, 受…的影响, L. 11, N. 4, p. 106  
 shòudào, 受到, L. 30, N. 4, p. 274  
 shuōdào, 说到, L. 46, N. 3, p. 422  
 suànshì, 算是, L. 41, N. 1, p. 374  
 suízhe, 随着, L. 28, N. 8, p. 257  
 suí.zhe...ér..., 随着…而…, L. 31, N. 5, p. 284  
 suǒ, 所, L. 32, N. 6, p. 294  
 suǒwèi, 所谓, L. 34, N. 2, p. 313  
 suǒzài, 所在, L. 48, N. 2, p. 442

**T**

tán.delái, 谈得来, L. 2, N. 3, p. 16  
 tīngshuō, 听说, L. 2, N. 12, p. 19  
 tōngguò, 通过, L. 44, N. 7, p. 401

**W**

wǎng, 往, L. 4, N. 5, p. 43  
 wǎngwǎng, 往往, L. 11, N. 9, p. 108  
 wèi, 为, L. 12, N. 3, p. 117  
 wèi.le, 为了, L. 19, N. 5, p. 178  
 wèi.le...ér..., 为了…而…, L. 38, N. 1, p. 346  
 wúlùn..., dōu..., 无论…，都…, L. 11, N. 2, p. 105

**X**

V. xià.qu, V.下去, L. 32, N. 3, p. 293  
 xiāngdāng, 相当, L. 25, N. 2, p. 230  
 xiānghù, 相互, L. 28, N. 6, p. 256  
 xiǎngqǐ, 想起, L. 28, N. 1, p. 254  
 xiàng, 向 (from), L. 6, N. 10, p. 59  
 xiàng, 向 (to, toward), L. 17, N. 6, p. 159  
 xiàng...yíyàng, 像…一样, L. 17, N. 1, p. 157  
 xiàng...zhèyàng..., 像…这样…, L. 9, N. 7, p. 85  
 —xìng, 一性, L. 22, N. 3, p. 205

**Y**

yào, 要, L. 40, N. 2, p. 366  
 yào.bu.shì, 要不是, L. 32, N. 7, p. 294  
 yàoshì, 要是, L. 10, N. 4, p. 95  
 ...yěhǎo, ...yěhǎo, …也好，…也好, L. 43, N. 3, p. 391  
 yídà N., 一大 N., L. 12, N. 6, p. 118  
 yíxiàng, 一向, L. 25, N. 1, p. 229  
 yízài.de, 一再地, L. 19, N. 6, p. 178  
 yǐ A wéi B, 以 A 为 B, L. 35, N. 3, p. 323  
 yǐjí, 以及, L. 33, N. 6, p. 305  
 yǐjīng, 已经, L. 6, N. 4, p. 58  
 yǐshàng, 以上, L. 34, N. 1, p. 313  
 yǐwéi, 以为, L. 3, N. 18, p. 34  
 yǐxià, 以下, L. 45, N. 5, p. 412  
 yì AN bǐ yì AN adj., — AN 比— AN adj., L. 9, N. 6, p. 85  
 yì V. I jiù V. 2, — V. I 就 V. 2, L. 9, N. 2, p. 83  
 yì AN yì AN.de, — AN — AN 地, L. 15, N. 3, p. 138  
 yìbān lái shuō, 一般来说, L. 3, N. 13, p. 32  
 yìbān shuō lái, 一般说来, L. 20, N. 1, p. 188  
 yǐbiānr..., yǐbiānr..., 一边儿…，一边儿…, L. 44, N. 3, p. 400  
 yǐfāngmiàn..., yǐfāngmiàn..., 一方面…，一方面…, L. 2, N. 17, p. 21

yǐjiā yíge háizi, 一家一个孩子, L. 16, N. 8, p. 150  
 yǐncǐ, 因此, L. 23, N. 7, p. 215  
 yīnwèi...de guānxì, 因为…的关系, L. 1, N. 13, p. 8  
 yīnwèi...de yuángù, 因为…的缘故, L. 33, N. 4, p. 304  
 yòng...lái..., 用…来…, L. 11, N. 5, p. 106  
 yòng A zuòwéi B, 用 A 作为 B, L. 46, N. 1, p. 422

## 语法索引

- yóu, 由 (by), L. 25, N. 4, p. 231  
yóu, 由 (from), L. 34, N. 3, p. 314  
yóuqí, 尤其, L. 18, N. 2, p. 166  
yóuyú, 由于, L. 16, N. 7, p. 149  
yǒu.de..., yǒu.de..., 有的..., 有的..., L. 14, N. 2, p. 131  
yǒudiǎnr, 有点儿, L. 1, N. 2, p. 5  
yǒu...zhòng, 有…重, L. 33, N. 2, p. 303  
yòu, 又 (moreover), L. 2, N. 14, p. 20  
yòu, 又 (repetition), L. 10, N. 9, p. 97  
yòu, 又 (contradictory dilemma), L. 18, N. 3, p. 166  
yòu...yòu..., 又…又…, L. 1, N. 10, p. 7  
A yù B zhījiān, A 与 B 之间, L. 23, N. 2, p. 213  
yǔqishuō...bùrúshuō..., 与其说…不如说…, L. 32, N. 1, p. 292  
yuánlái, 原来, L. 15, N. 2, p. 138  
yuè lái yuè adj., 越来越 adj., L. 5, N. 9, p. 51
- Z**
- zài, 在, L. 1, N. 1, p. 4  
zài, 再 (continuation), L. 2, N. 15, p. 20  
zài, 再 (and then), L. 4, N. 6, p. 43  
zài V, 再 V, L. 39, N. 4, p. 357  
zài...búguò le, 再…不过了, L. 40, N. 3, p. 366  
zài...dāngzhōng, 在…当中, L. 21, N. 1, p. 195  
zài...fāngmiàn, 在…方面, L. 31, N. 4, p. 284  
zài...kànlái, 在…看来, L. 29, N. 4, p. 265  
zài...lǐ, 在…里, L. 28, N. 3, p. 254  
zài...shàng, 在…上, L. 7, N. 4, p. 66  
zài...shēn.shàng, 在…身上, L. 39, N. 1, p. 355  
zài...xià, 在…下, L. 42, N. 2, p. 382  
zài...zhīnèi, 在…之内, L. 36, N. 3, p. 331  
zài...zhīzhōng, 在…之中, L. 31, N. 1, p. 283  
zài...zhōng, 在…中, L. 28, N. 5, p. 255  
zài jiā.shàng, 再加上, L. 36, N. 6, p. 332
- zàiishuō, 再说 (not...until then), L. 18, N. 1, p. 165  
zàiishuō, 再说 (moreover), L. 32, N. 4, p. 293  
zàiiyú, 在于, L. 48, N. 1, p. 442  
zǎojiù, 早就, L. 32, N. 8, p. 295  
zěn.me, 怎么了, L. 5, N. 1, p. 49  
zěn.me, 怎么, L. 6, N. 1, p. 57  
V. zháo, V.着, L. 21, N. 2, p. 195  
A, B, C zhèxiē N., A, B, C 这些 N., L. 12, N. 2, p. 117  
zhèyàng, 这样, L. 36, N. 7, p. 332  
zhèyìdiǎn, 这一点, L. 25, N. 5, p. 232  
V. zhe, V.着 (progressive tense), L. 6, N. 8, p. 59  
V. zhe, V.着 (continuing state), L. 12, N. 5, p. 118  
zhēn, 真, L. 2, N. 9, p. 18  
zhēnshì, 真是, L. 16, N. 3, p. 147  
zhēnzhèng, 真正, L. 46, N. 4, p. 423  
zhèng, 正, L. 32, N. 5, p. 294  
zhīlèi, 之类, L. 20, N. 6, p. 189  
zhīsuǒy..., shì..., 之所以…, 是…, L. 44, N. 6, p. 401  
zhīyī, 之一, L. 36, N. 4, p. 331  
zhí.dé, 值得, L. 22, N. 5, p. 205  
zhǐhǎo, 只好, L. 10, N. 7, p. 96  
zhǐyào....jiù..., 只要…, 就…, L. 11, N. 1, p. 105  
zhǐyǒu....cái..., 只有…, 才…, L. 14, N. 3, p. 131  
zhìshǎo, 至少, L. 45, N. 2, p. 411  
zhìyú, 至于, L. 35, N. 1, p. 322  
zhōng, 中, L. 1, N. 11, p. 8  
zhōngyú, 终于, L. 17, N. 7, p. 159  
V. zhù, V.住, L. 17, N. 5, p. 158  
V. zhù, V.住, L. 20, N. 3, p. 188  
zìcóng, 自从, L. 23, N. 6, p. 214  
zìjǐ, 自己, L. 6, N. 2, p. 57  
zuìhǎo, 最好, L. 4, N. 4, p. 42  
zuǒyòu, 左右, L. 47, N. 2, p. 432

## 主要参考书目

## References

本书语法及英语解释部分参用了以下各书。因过于琐细，未能一一注明出处。

Chao, Yuan-ren. *A Grammar of Spoken Chinese*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1968.

陈大端等. 《中文入门》. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1994.

周质平等. 《现代汉语中级课本》. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1992.

周质平等. 《华夏行》. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1996.

Li, Charles N. and Sandra A. Thompson. *Mandarin Chinese: A Functional Reference Grammar*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1981.

黎锦熙. 《国语问法》. 台北: 台湾商务印书馆, 1969.

梁实秋主编. 《最新实用汉英词典》. 台北: 远东图书公司, 1971.

林语堂主编. 《当代汉英词典》. 香港: 香港中文大学, 1972.

刘月华主编. 《实用现代汉语语法》. 北京: 北京语言文化大学出版社, 1983.

刘月华主编. 《趋向补语通释》. 北京: 北京语言文化大学出版社, 1998.

吕叔湘主编. 《现代汉语八百词》. 北京: 商务印书馆, 1980.

王还主编. 《汉英虚词词典》. 北京: 华语教学出版社, 1988.

吴景荣主编. 《汉英词典》. 北京: 外语教学与研究出版社, 1995